Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Collection of Prof. Muhammad Iqbal Mujaddidi
Preserved in Punjab University Library.

پروفیسر محمد اقبال مجددی کا مجموعہ
پنجاب یونیورسٹی لائبریری میں محفوظ شدہ

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

SHÁH 'ABBÁS THE GREAT

1920 . 9 . 17 –044 (Brit. Mus.)

Frontispiece

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

A LITERARY HISTORY OF PERSIA

VOLUME IV

Modern Times

(1500–1924)

BY

EDWARD G. BROWNE

CAMBRIDGE
AT THE UNIVERSITY PRESS
1969

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

PUBLISHED BY
THE SYNDICS OF THE CAMBRIDGE UNIVERSITY PRESS

Bentley House, 200 Euston Road, London, N.W. 1
American Branch: 32 East 57th Street, New York, N.Y. 10022

130681

Standard Book Number 521 04347 6

First published under the title of *A History of Persian Literature, 1500–1924* 1924
Re-issued 1928
Reprinted 1930
1953
1959
1969

First printed in Great Britain at The University Press, Cambridge
Reprinted in Great Britain by William Lewis (Printers) Ltd, Cardiff

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

I DEDICATE THIS VOLUME TO MY MOTHER
IN TOKEN OF A GREAT DEBT OF GRATITUDE
AND LOVE

همانم که از چشم نگذاشتی ' مدامم در آغوش بر داشتی '
گرامیترت بودم از جان خویش ' نبودت ز من هیچ کس بیش بیش '
مرا هوش وجان و روان با تواست ' دلم آشکار و نهان با تو است '

Firdawsí, *Yúsuf u Zulaykhá* (ed. Ethé, p. 240, ll. 2421–2 and 2426).

گویند مرا چو زاد مادر پستان بدهان گرفتن آموخت '
شب بر سر کاهوارهٔ من بیدار نشست و خفتن آموخت '
لب خند نهاد بر لب من بر غنچهٔ گُل شگفتن آموخت '
دستم بگرفت و پا بپا برد تا شیوهٔ راه رفتن آموخت '
یك حرف و دو حرف بر دهانم الناظ نهاد و گفتن آموخت '
پس هستی من زهستی اوست '
تا هستم و هست دارمش دوست '

Íraj Mírzá *Jalálu'l-Mamálik.*

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

PREFACE

THIS volume concludes the task which I undertook more than twenty-two years ago, and which represents the labour of a life-time, for ever since I began the study of Persian in the summer of 1880, being then only eighteen years of age, the desire to write a complete Literary History of Persia has increasingly possessed me. The first instalment, "from the earliest times until Firdawsí," carried the history down to the early days of the eleventh century of the Christian era, and was published in 1902; and the continuation, down to the Mongol Invasion in the middle of the thirteenth century, in 1906, both these volumes being published by Mr Fisher Unwin. Fourteen years elapsed ere the third volume, entitled *A History of Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion* (*A.D. 1265–1502*), saw the light. The reasons which led me to issue it in a form and under a title differing somewhat from its predecessors are explained on p. viii of the Preface, but essentially it constitutes the third volume of the *Literary History of Persia*, just as this, which deals with the last four centuries (A.D. 1500–1924), and is entitled, as foreshadowed in the same Preface (p. ix), *A History of Persian Literature in Modern Times*, is to be regarded as the fourth and last volume of the work.

Although I cannot regard this present volume as superior to its three predecessors in form or interest, and am fully aware of its defects, I think that it contains more new matter and represents more original research than the others. Owing to the opinion prevalent not only in Europe, but to a considerable extent in Turkey and India also, that poetry is the only department of Persian literature which merits much attention, and that little poetry worth reading has been produced since the time of Jámí, the literature of the last four centuries has been very much neglected, and

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the sources of which I have made use are almost exclusively Persian, and, until the nineteenth century is reached, when printing and lithography were gradually introduced into Persia, chiefly manuscript. In the formation of my Persian library I have always had regard to the requirements of my work rather than to mere beauty of illumination, illustration, or hand-writing, and I have been singularly fortunate in acquiring the very interesting collection of the late Sir Albert Houtum Schindler and a number of the rare and precious manuscripts collected by the late Ḥájji 'Abdu'l-Majíd Belshah. To Mr A. G. Ellis I am indebted for the generous loan, often for a period of several years, of many rare books to which I could not otherwise have obtained access; while for constant and ungrudging help I am under the deepest obligations to his successor in the Oriental Book Department of the British Museum, Mr E. Edwards, as well as to Dr L. Barnett, the Head of that Department.

I wish that I could have profited more by the counsel of my Persian friends, especially Mírzá Muḥammad Khán of Qazwín and Ḥájji Mírzá Yaḥyá of Dawlatábád, during the progress of this work, but to my old acquaintance Ḥusayn Dánish Bey of the Ottoman Public Debt, a notable man of letters both in Persian and Turkish, I am indebted for many valuable and illuminating observations. Another old friend, Sayyid Ḥasan Taqí-záda, fortunately chanced to visit this country after an absence of some fourteen years while the last sheets of this book were passing through the Press, and he most kindly read through the proofs and favoured me with numerous observations and corrections which will be noticed under the *Errata and Addenda*. From well-read and intelligent Persians the European student of their language can learn many things not to be found in books, at any rate in books to which he has access, while their taste and judgement, even if at times he cannot wholly agree with them, are almost always suggestive and deserving of consideration. Only a few days ago I received

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

a visit from the learned Shaykh Kázim ad-Dujayli, an Arabic-speaking Shí'a of 'Iráq who has recently joined the teaching staff of the London School of Oriental Studies, and I enquired of him what, in his opinion, were the best Arabic books on Shí'a doctrine. He at once named the five following works, none of which I had previously heard of, much less seen, though all have been printed or lithographed in Persia:

(1) *Kashfu'l-Ghitá fi Akhbári Áli'l-Mustafà*, by Shaykh Ja'far al-Kabír.

(2) *Kitábu'l Qawánín*, by al-Qummí.

(3) *Kitábu Rasá'ili'sh-Shaykh Murtadà al-Ansárí.*

(4) *Jawáhiru'l-Kalám*, by Shaykh Muḥammad Ḥasan.

(5) *Kitábu'l-Wasá'il*, by Ḥájji Mírzá Ḥusayn an-Núrí.

I will not attempt to thank individually all those who by their sympathy and interest have encouraged me in my book, or who by their skilful craftsmanship have given it form and substance. The writing of it has been a pleasure, and the completing of it is a source of thankfulness and satisfaction. Even its errors and imperfections will, I trust, by provoking criticism and stimulating research, serve to advance and extend our knowledge of the subject, and if, as I hope, I have been single-minded in this aim, I shall prefer the reasoned criticism of competent scholars to the undiscriminating praise of over-zealous friends, even as Sa'dí says:—

كُفِيتَ أذىً يا من تعدُّ محاسني ‘ علانيّتي هذا و لم تَدْرِ باطني ‘

"Thou who recountest my virtues, thou dost me harm in sooth:
Such is my outward seeming, but thou hast not known the truth."

EDWARD G. BROWNE.

June 12, 1924.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

TABLE OF CONTENTS

PAGE

PREFACE vii

PART I

AN OUTLINE OF PERSIAN HISTORY DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES

CHAP.

I. Some general considerations on the Ṣafawí Dynasty . 3

II. The Creation of the Ṣafawí Power to 930/1524. Sháh Isma'íl and his Ancestors 32

III. Culmination and Decline of the Ṣafawí Power, from Sháh Ṭahmásp (A.D. 1524–1576) to Sháh Ḥusayn (A.D. 1694–1722) 84

IV. An Outline of the history of Persia during the last two centuries (A.D. 1722–1922) 121

PART II

PERSIAN VERSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES

V. Some general considerations on the later and especially the Religious Poetry of the Persians . . . 161

VI. Poets of the Classical Tradition. Pre-Qájár period (A.D. 1500–1800) 224

VII. Poets of the Qájár period 298

PART III

PERSIAN PROSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES

VIII. The orthodox Shí'a Faith and its exponents, the Mujtahids and Mullás 353

IX. Prose writers until A.D. 1850 412

X. The most modern developments (A.D. 1850 onwards) . 458

INDEX 491

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

LIST OF ILLUSTRATIONS

I.	Sháh 'Abbás I ("the Great") . . .	*Frontispiece*
II.	Shaykh Abdál Pír-záda presenting the Uzbek leader's horse to Sháh 'Abbás . .	*To face page* 42
III.	Sháh 'Abbás II	„ „ 112
IV.	Karím Khán-i-Zand's Court . . .	„ „ 140
V.	Karím Khán-i-Zand alone . . .	„ „ 142
VI.	Áqá Muḥammad Khán and Ḥájji Ibráhím .	„ „ 144
VII.	Shifá'í, poet and physician	„ „ 256
VIII.	Autograph of the poet Ṣá'ib . . .	„ „ 266
IX.	Autograph of the poet Wiṣál . . .	„ „ 300
X.	Ḥájji Mírzá Áqásí	„ „ 328
XI.	Autograph of the poet Yaghmá . . .	„ „ 338
XII.	Muẓaffaru'd-Dín Mírzá with his tutor Riḍá-qulí Khán "Hidáyat"	„ „ 344
XIII.	Autograph of Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí	„ „ 404
XIV.	Autograph of Mullá Ṣadrá	„ „ 408
XV.	Autograph of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín-i-'Ámilí	„ „ 428
XVI.	Autograph of Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ . .	„ „ 432

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ERRATA AND ADDENDA

(The letters *T. s.* in brackets at the end of a note indicate that the correction was suggested by Taqí-záda.)

p. 170, l. 14. "*Read* معابر ('ways,' 'passages') *for* مقابر ('Tombs'), which gives no good sense." [*T. s.*] The washing of the feet before praying is a Sunní practice; the Shí'a confine themselves to mere stroking of the foot (*mash*) with the damp hand. The clasping of the hands mentioned in the succeeding *míṣrá'* is also characteristic of the Sunnís; the Shí'a let them hang down by their sides.

p. 187, l. 14. "*For* مرد *read* خلق. No Shí'a could have written this verse without exposing himself to the charge of blasphemy." [*T. s.*]

p. 188, last three lines. "The *Asrár-i-Shahádat*[1] is commonly ascribed to Mullá Áqá-yi-Darbandí, entitled 'the Promoter of mourning for the Holy Family' (*Murawwij-i-'Azá-dárí-yi-Ahl-i-Bayt*)." [*T. s.*]

p. 220, last paragraph. "Mention should be made of the poems of Ṣafí-'Alí Sháh, and of his versified Persian commentary on the *Qur'án*." [*T. s.*] (I can find no mention of him in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín*, the *Bustánu's-Siyáḥat*, or any of the Catalogues at my disposal.)

p. 221, "Rúdagí," and p. 299, "Rúdakí" should be identical in spelling, and I believe that the latter form is the more correct.

p. 222. "Mention should be made of V. Zhukovski's collection of Persian *Taṣnífs*, with Russian translations, published at St Petersburg in 1902. Berezine also published nine *Taṣnífs* with English

---

[1] It is, however, ascribed, as I have ascribed it, to Isma'íl Khán Sarbáz by Edwards in his *Catalogue of Persian Books in the British Museum*, col. 302–3. The life of Mullá Áqá-yi-Darbandí, who died at an advanced age sometime before A.D. 1873, is given in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* (Ṭihrán lith. ed. of 1304/1886, pp. 75–9). Amongst his works mention is there made of one entitled *Iksíru'l-'Ibádát fí Asrári'sh-Shahádát*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

translations set to music and adapted to the piano." [*T.z.*] (I find that I possess the former work, which is entitled ОБРАЗЦЫ ПЕРСИДСКАГО НАРОДНАГО ТВОРЧЕСТВА, but I cannot identify the latter.)

p. 338. "Two half-verses (*miṣrá'*) have been accidentally omitted after l. 7. The two verses should run thus" [*T.z.*]:—

عکسِ تو فتاده‌است در آئینهٔ عالم،

[ز آنروی همه زنقحبه گشته‌است پدیدار،

زنقحبه مُحالست ز تو دست بدارم،]

تا آنکه بزنقحبگی خود کنی اقرار،

p. 355, l. 1. There is some difference of opinion as to the proper vocalization of the place-name which I have written "Tanukábun." Taqízáda thinks it should be "Tunukábun," while Riḍá-qulí Khán in his *Anjuman-árá-yi-Náṣiri* gives it as "Tanakábun."

pp. 369–370. "The titles '*Muḥaqqiq-i-Ardabílí*' and '*Muqaddas-i-Ardabílí*' both belong to Mullá Aḥmad, so that the first line on p. 370 should read "The same *mujtahid* of Ardabíl, also entitled *Muḥaqqiq*," etc.

p. 370, last line. "Ḥájji Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Shírází and Ḥájji Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Ashtiyání are not to be mentioned in the same breath. The former was to the latter as a king is to a petty local governor." [*T.z.*]

p. 373. "Áqá Jamál-i-Khwánsárí was the author of the well-known book on the superstitions of Persian women entitled *Kitáb-i-Kulthúm Nana*. His father, Áqá Ḥusayn-i-Khwánsárí, was called *Ustádu'l-Kull fi'l-Kull* ('the Master of All in All'), and, besides many *facetiæ*, wrote glosses on the *Shahíd-i-thání's* commentary on the *Lum'a*." [*T.z.*]

p. 378, ll. 19 *et seqq.* "Many similar catechisms (with such titles as *Risála-i-'amaliyya*, *Mas'ila*, *Nukhba*, and the like) have been composed in the last century, and as many as a hundred may have been printed. One of the best known is the *Jámi'u'sh-Shatátát* of Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim ibnu'l-Ḥusayn ar-Riḍawí al-Qummí, author of the *Kitáb-i-Qawánín*." [*T.z.*] Concerning the last-named writer, see Edwards's *Catalogue of Persian printed books*, cols. 60 and 61.

p. 393, ll. 8–9. "'Alí Awsaṭ succeeded his father Ḥusayn as Imám, not 'Alí Akbar, who, together with the infant 'Alí Aṣghar, perished at Karbalá." [*T.z.*]

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

p. 407, l. 14. "The *Jámi'-i-'Abbásí* was completed in 20 chapters, and has been printed repeatedly, but the first five chapters are often published separately for the instruction of children in elementary religious duties." [*T.z.*] According to Edwards (*op. cit.*, cols. 407–8) chapters vi–xx were subsequently added to Shaykh-i-Bahá'í's unfinished work by Niẓám b. Ḥusayn-i-Sáwají.

p. 407, fourth line from the end, and p. 435, l. 5. "The *Abwábu'l-Jinán* was not by Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, but, so far as I remember, by Mullá Ḥusayn *Wá'iẓ*-i-Káshifí, the author of the well-known *Anwár-i-Suhayli*." [*T.z.*] The real author appears to have been Muḥammad b. Fatḥu'lláh Rafí'u'd-Dín, called '*Wá'iẓ-i-Qazwíní*' ('the Preacher of Qazwín'). See Edwards, *op. cit.*, cols. 405–6.

p. 410. "Sayyid Muḥammad Báqir of Rasht was only a third- or fourth-rate theologian, and Mullá Aḥmad-i-Niráqí (p. 411) only of the second class. Much more important, though omitted here, are :—

(i) Áqá-yi-Bihbihání, the founder of the Uṣúlí and Mujtahidí School, who flourished at the end of twelfth century of the *hijra.*

(ii) Shaykh Ja'far-i-'Arab (also called *al-Kabír*, 'the Great'), who was contemporary with Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh.

(iii) Shaykh Muḥammad Ḥasan, author of the *Jawáhiru'l-Kalám*, a large work in six volumes on Shí'a Jurisprudence (see p. ix *supra*).

(iv) Shaykh Murtaḍá al-Anṣárí, the founder of present-day Shí'a Law, and the Master of all the *mujtahids* of the last seventy years with the exception of—

(v) Shaykh Hádí of Ṭihrán, who was also of the first class."

p. 430. "Shaykh Aḥmad al-Aḥsá'í was not an admirer and follower but a great enemy of Mullá Ṣadrá. Of modern Persian philosophers mention should have been made of Mírzá Abu'l-Ḥasan-i-Jilwa, who died only some twenty years ago." [*T.z.*] I met him in Ṭihrán in the winter of 1887–8. See my *Year amongst the Persians*, p. 149.

p. 435. "One of the best of Mullá Muḥsin's works is the *Kalimát-i-Maknúna* ('Hidden Words'), of which mention should have been made here." [*T.z.*]

p. 441. "Dr Muḥammad of Kirmánsháh, called *Kufwí*, who died in 1326/1908, specialized in cardiac diseases, and first called attention

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

to a peculiar murmur (called in French '*empiolement*') characteristic of embolism, on which he published a monograph in French[1]. He also wrote several medical treatises on the Diseases of Women and Children in Persian." [*T.z.*]

p. 454, l. 1. "For *I'timádu'd-Dawla* read *I'timádu's-Salṭana*." [*T.z.*]

p. 468. "Newspapers existed in Persia before A.D. 1851, in the reign of Muḥammad Sháh (A.D. 1835–1848) and even in the later days of his predecessor Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh. See the *Káwa* newspaper *passim*, especially No. 6 of the New Series (*Dawra-i-Jadid*)." [*T.z.*] The article in question appeared in the issue of June 8, 1921, pp. 14–16. It mentions a rather vague report of a Persian newspaper published at Dihlí in A.D. 1798, and a much more definite report of one published in Ṭihrán in 1253/1837–8.

p. 486, end. "The articles to which reference is here made were not by Mírzá Muḥammad Khán but by myself, writing under the pen-name of *Muḥaṣṣil* ('Student')." [*T.z.*][2]

p. 488. "To say 'Mírzá Káẓim-záda,' 'Sayyid Jamál-záda,' 'Taqi-záda Khán' and the like is as contrary to Persian usage as to say in English 'Sir Grey' for 'Sir Edward Grey' and the like. Such titles as 'Mírza,' 'Sayyid' and Ḥájji can only be prefixed, as 'Khán,' 'Beg' and the like can only be suffixed, to personal names, such as Ḥasan, 'Alí and Muḥammad, not to patronymics." [*T.z.*][2]

---

[1] I have been unable to find any trace of this alleged discovery or of the French term connoting it (which I think should be *empilement*), though I have consulted two eminent physicians on the subject.

[2] Taqí-záda's letter was received in time to correct the two passages to which the two concluding notes refer, but I have allowed them to stand because the first specifies the true authorship of the articles in question, while the second lays down a rule of which I had hitherto been unaware.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

PART I.

AN OUTLINE OF PERSIAN HISTORY DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

CHAPTER I.

SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS ON THE ṢAFAWÍ DYNASTY.

Historical importance of the Ṣafawí dynasty.

The rise of the Ṣafawí dynasty in Persia at the beginning of the sixteenth century of the Christian era was an event of the greatest historical importance, not only to Persia herself and her immediate neighbours, but to Europe generally. It marks not only the restoration of the Persian Empire and the re-creation of the Persian nationality after an eclipse of more than eight centuries and a half, but the entrance of Persia into the comity of nations and the genesis of political relations which still to a considerable extent hold good. Mr R. G. Watson in the brief retrospect with which he opens his excellent *History of Persia from the beginning of the Nineteenth Century to the year 1858*[1] shows a true appreciation of the facts when he takes this period as his starting-point, for in truth it marks the transition from mediaeval to comparatively modern times. The Arab conquest in the middle of the seventh century after Christ overthrew the Zoroastrian religion and the Sásánian Empire, and reduced Persia to the position of a mere province of the Caliphate, until the Caliphate itself was destroyed by the Mongols or Tartars in the middle of the thirteenth century. Both before and after this momentous event there were, it is true, independent or quasi-independent dynasties ruling in Persia, but these were generally of Turkish or Tartar origin, like the Ghaznawís, Saljúqs, Khwárazmsháhs, and Houses of Chingíz and Tímúr; or, if Persian like the Buwayhids, exercised control over a portion only of the old Persian Empire. To the

[1] London: Smith and Elder, 1866.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Ṣafawí dynasty belongs the credit of making Persia "a nation once again," self-contained, centripetal, powerful and respected, within borders practically identical in the time of Sháh 'Abbás the Great (A.D. 1587–1628) with those of the Sásánian Empire. It was then that Iṣfahán, whither he transferred the seat of government from Qazwín, became, as the Persian saying runs, "Half the world" (*Niṣf-i-Jahán*), or "Medio mundo" as Don Juan of Persia has it, abounding in splendid buildings and skilful craftsmen, frequented by merchants from distant lands, and visited by diplomatic missions, not only from India, Transoxiana and Turkey, but from almost every European state from Russia to Spain and Portugal.

Lack of a satisfactory complete history of the dynasty.

Yet, in spite of its importance and the abundant materials available, no good complete history[1] of the Ṣafawí dynasty has yet been written. The outlines given by Sir John Malcolm and Sir Clements Markham in their histories of Persia are inadequate in scope and inaccurate in detail, and are based on very limited materials, and those not by any means the most authentic. The abundance and variety of the materials, the inaccessibility of many important sources of information, and the polyglot character of the documents concerned constitute serious obstacles to one who aspires to treat adequately of this period.

Four important unpublished Persian sources.

The four most important contemporary Persian records of its earlier portion, down to the death of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, are the *Ṣafwatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*, containing the biography of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, that celebrated saint of the thirteenth century from whom the dynasty derives its name; the *Nasab-náma-i-Silsila-i-Ṣafawiyya* on the genealogy of the family, with valuable biographical details of its earlier representatives not to be found elsewhere; the

[1] Of Krusinski's and Hanway's admirable accounts of the later Ṣafawí period I shall speak in chap. iii.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh, completed in A.D. 1577, only about a year after the death of Sháh Ṭahmásp, whose reign together with that of his father and predecessor Sháh Isma'íl, the founder of the dynasty, it records; and the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, an immense monograph on the reign of Sháh 'Abbás the Great. Not one of these has been published[1], much less translated, and all except the last are very rare even in manuscript. Of the *Nasab-náma* and the *'Álam-árá* I am fortunate enough to possess copies which formerly belonged to the late Sir Albert Houtum-Schindler, while the incomparable generosity of Mr A. G. Ellis placed at my disposal manuscripts of the two other histories mentioned above. And though the authors of later general histories in Persian, such as Riḍá-qulí Khán in his supplement to Mírkhwánd's *Rawḍatu's-Ṣafá*, have made use of some of these works, they too often not merely abridge but grievously distort the passages they cite.

Untrustworthiness of later Persian compilations.

Of such wanton distortion the following is a good instance. In July, A.D. 1599, Sháh 'Abbás the Great sent to Europe a mission accredited to the Courts of Russia Poland, Germany, France, Spain, England and Scotland, and to the Pope of Rome and the Seniory of Venice. This mission included Ḥusayn 'Alí Beg[2] as Persian Envoy, with four Persian gentlemen or "knights" (*caballeros*, as they are called in Don Juan of Persia's narrative), fifteen Persian servants, the celebrated Sir Anthony Sherley with fifteen English attendants, two Portuguese friars, and five interpreters.

A flagrant example of perverted history.

[1] Since this was written I have received through a Persian correspondent a copy of the excellent lithographed edition of the *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá* published at Bombay in 1329/1911.

[2] Don Juan calls him (f. 120[b]) "Uzen Aly Bech," but Antonio di Govea has "Ussein Alibeg," which shows clearly that the first part of the name is *Ḥusayn*, not *Úzún*, as I had at first supposed.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Travelling by way of the Caspian Sea and the Volga, they first visited Moscow, where they remained for five or six months; thence through Germany to Italy, where they were not permitted to go to Venice for fear of offending an Ottoman envoy who happened to be there at the time, but were well received at Rome, where they arrived in April, 1601, and remained for two months. Thence they proceeded by ship from Genoa to the south of France and so to Spain, where three of the four "Persian knights" adopted the Catholic faith and took the names of Don Philippe, Don Diego and Don Juan of Persia.

"Don Juan of Persia."

Sir Anthony Sherley, whose relations with his Persian colleague had from the first been very strained, separated himself from the mission at Rome, but up to that point the independent accounts written by himself and some of his companions[1] enable us to check Don Juan's narrative. Don Juan, however, having apostasized from Islám, dared not return to Persia to meet the fate of a renegade, so that for the tragic sequel we must turn to the Persian historians. In the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* under the year 1022/1613–4[2] we find an account of the arrival at Iṣfahán of ambassadors from the King of Spain, accompanied by several Christian priests and a Persian envoy returning from Europe[3]. The latter, who had incurred the Sháh's displeasure, was incontinently put to death in the most cruel manner, without being permitted any opportunity for explanation or apology; and the Sháh then explained to the Spaniards that he had dealt thus with him because of sundry treasonable and disrespectful acts of

[1] See especially *The Sherley Brothers...by one of the same House* (Chiswick, 1828), pp. 22–35.

[2] F. 230 of my MS. marked **H. 14.**

[3] Although the envoy is here named Dengiz Beg Shámlú with the title of *Yúz-báshí* (Captain), not Ḥusayn 'Alí Beg, as in Don Juan's narrative (f. 120b), there can, I think, be little doubt as to their identity.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

which he had been guilty during his mission, such as opening letters sealed with the royal seal and making known their contents; wearing mourning on the occasion of the Queen of Spain's death; and selling the credentials to the Pope with which he had been provided to a merchant who should impersonate him and derive what profit he could from the transaction. "But," the Sháh concluded, "the chief of his faults and the chief reason for his punishment was that he behaved so ill towards the attendants who accompanied him, and vexed them so much, *that several of them adopted the Christian faith and remained in Europe in order to escape from his tyranny*, so that zeal for Islám required his punishment, and thus he received his deserts."

Turning now to Riḍá-qulí Khán's supplement to the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*, a general history of Persia compiled about A.D. 1858, we find an account of the same event obviously copied, with very slight modifications, from the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, but with one important and most wanton alteration, for Sháh 'Abbás is there represented as saying that the chief of his ambassador's faults was *that several persons were disposed to embrace Islám and come to Persia, but the Persian envoy treated them so ill that they repented of their intention, returned to the Christian faith, and remained in that country*. For this deliberate falsification of history I can only account by supposing that Riḍá-qulí Khán did not wish to encourage the idea that a Persian Muslim could possibly become a Christian; but the moral I wish to draw is that the later Persian historians must be used with great caution, and that every statement should, where possible, be traced to contemporary records.

Before leaving this subject, I must refer to an erroneous conjecture of Sir John Malcolm's arising from an inadequate use of the Persian sources. In the year 1002/1593–4, being the seventh year of Sháh 'Abbás's reign, Jalál, the Chief Astrologer, foretold dis-

An error of Sir John Malcolm's.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

aster to the occupant of the Throne, and advised that the Sháh should abdicate for a few days and substitute for himself some person worthy of death on whom the prediction of the stars might be fulfilled. This was accordingly done, and a man named Yúsufí was made king for three days, at the conclusion of which he was put to death, and Sháh 'Abbás resumed the Throne. Sir John Malcolm[1] says that this Yúsufí, "whom Persian authors take care to tell us was an unbeliever," was "probably a Christian," but this is an error; he belonged to a heterodox Muslim sect called *Nuqṭawiyya* ("People of the Point") who believed in metempsychosis and other heretical doctrines, and of whose appearance and destruction a full account is given by the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*[2] and reproduced in the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*. It is therefore essential, if a true history of the Ṣafawís is to be written, that we should go back to the original sources, and, as a preliminary, that these sources, at present existing only in manuscript, should be published.

The Persian histories, however, are only part of the material available for such a work: the numerous and in some cases excellent Turkish chronicles, published and unpublished, dealing with this period, and especially with the Turco-Persian wars which continued almost without intermission during the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries, constitute an indispensable supplement and corrective. Almost more important is Firídún Bey's great collection of Turkish State Papers entitled *Munsha'át-i-Salátín*, compiled some time before 991/1583 and published at Constantinople in two volumes[3] in 1274/1858.

Turkish sources of information.

Firídún Bey.

[1] *History of Persia* (London, 1815), vol. i, p. 527.

[2] Ff. 46ᵇ–47ᵇ of my MS. H. 14.

[3] When this was written, I possessed only the first volume, which contains 626 pp. and comes down to the year 966/1558. By the kindness of my friend Ḥusayn Dánish Bey I have since acquired the second volume also.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The diplomatic correspondence contained in this valuable and insufficiently-appreciated book is arranged chronologically and is partly in Turkish, partly in Arabic, and partly in Persian. From the time of Tímúr onwards much of it is concerned with contemporary Persian affairs, and of the last half of the first volume a large portion consists of letters interchanged between the Sulṭáns Báyazíd II (A.D. 1482–1512), Salím I (A.D. 1512–1520), and Sulaymán I (A.D. 1520–1566) on the one hand, and Sháh Isma'íl (A.D. 1500–1524) and his son and successor Sháh Ṭahmásp (A.D. 1524–1576) on the other. There are also valuable journals of certain campaigns, such as that which culminated in the Battle of Cháldirán, so disastrous to the Persians, on August 23, 1514, wherein the movements of the Ottoman army and the incidents of their outward and homeward marches are chronicled day by day. Other State Papers, both Persian and Turkish, which exist only in manuscript, have hitherto remained practically unexplored[1].

Contemporary European narratives.

A third class of materials of which it is impossible to overestimate the importance consists of the writings of Europeans who visited Persia during this period on diplomatic, missionary or commercial business. Thanks to the liberal attitude of Sháh 'Abbás the Great towards Christians, the number of these in his and the succeeding reigns was very large. The best general account of them and their works with which I have met is that given by the late M. Charles Schefer, in the Introduction (pp. i–cxv) to his edition of *l'Estat de la Perse en 1660*[2] by le Père Raphaël du Mans, Superior of the Capuchin Mission at Iṣfahán, a man singularly qualified by

[1] Some other very interesting State Papers from the *Dastúru'l-Inshá* of Ṣárí 'Abdu'lláh Efendi (d. 1079/1668) have also been published and annotated by the late M. Ch. Schefer in his *Chrestomathie Persane* (Paris, 1885), vol. ii, pp. 218–259 and ۲۳۱–۲۰۹.

[2] Leroux, Paris, 1890, pp. cxv + 465.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

his high character and intellectual attainments, as well as by his prolonged sojourn of fifty years (A.D. 1644–1696) in Iṣfahán, to speak with authority. The works enumerated by M. Schefer[1] are variously written in Dutch, English, French, German, Italian, Latin, Portuguese and Spanish, but many of the more important have appeared in two or three different languages. Of their authors (excluding the earlier Venetian envoys to the Court of Úzún Ḥasan, such as Caterino Zeno, Josepho Barbaro and Ambrosio Contarini, most of whom visited Persia during the latter half of the fifteenth century, and consequently before the rise of the Ṣafawí dynasty) the best known are Anthony Jenkinson, the Sherley brothers, Cartwright, Parry and Sir Thomas Herbert of the English, and of the others Antonio di Govea, Don Garcias de Silva Figuerosa, Olearius, Teixeira, Pietro della Valle, Tavernier, Thevenot, and last but not least Chardin and Pétis de la Croix. M. Schefer does not carry his survey beyond the seventeenth century, but the final downfall of the Ṣafawís, before the Afghán onslaught in A.D. 1722 found an able historian in the Jesuit Père Krusinski, while letters from some of the Dutch merchants in Iṣfahán, a few of which have been published by H. Dunlop in his *Perzië* (Haarlem, 1912; pp. 242–7), serve to illuminate the tragic details of that disaster. From this time until the rise of the present Qájár dynasty towards the end of the eighteenth century comparatively few Europeans visited or resided in Persia, a fact due partly to the unsettled state of the country, and the consequent difficulties in the way of missionary or commercial enterprises, and partly to the

[1] To these we must not omit to add the *Mirátu'l-Mamálik* ("Mirror of Kingdoms") of the gallant Turkish admiral Sídí 'Alí Ra'is, who travelled overland from India to Turkey in A.D. 1554–6, and was received by Sháh Ṭahmásp at Qazwín. Vambéry's English translation of this book (Luzac, London, 1899) leaves a good deal to be desired.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

changed political conditions. The object of the numerous diplomatic missions from various European countries which visited Persia during and immediately before the Ṣafawí period was, in nearly all cases, to seek her cooperation in combating the formidable power of the Ottoman Turks, which was at its height during the period which began with their conquest of Constantinople in A.D. 1453 and culminated in the reigns of Sulṭáns Salím "the Grim" and Sulaymán "the Magnificent" (A.D. 1512–1566), of whom the former conquered Egypt and the Holy Cities and assumed the title of Caliph, while the latter only failed by the narrowest margin to capture Vienna. So formidable did the Turkish menace appear to European statesmen that Busbecq, Ferdinand's ambassador at the Court of Sulaymán, expressed himself in the following remarkable words: "'Tis only the Persian stands between us and ruin. The Turk would fain be upon us, but he keeps him back. This war with him affords us only a respite, not a deliverance[1]." In A.D. 1722 when the Ṣafawí dynasty, long degenerate, finally collapsed, Persia was left for the moment a negligible quantity, the Turks had ceased to be a menace to Europe, and the bitter sectarian quarrel which lay at the root of two centuries of Turco-Persian warfare gradually lost much of its virulence, especially after the development of the more conciliatory policy of the great Nádir Sháh. Under these changed conditions the earlier European policy became at once unnecessary and impossible.

From this brief survey of the sources whence our knowledge of the Ṣafawí dynasty is derived, we must now pass to the consideration of its chief characteristics. These, though clear enough in general outline, present a series of very interesting problems

Chief characteristics of the Ṣafawí dynasty.

[1] Creasy's *History of the Ottoman Turks* (London, 1877), pp. 171–2 *ad calc.* Cf. Forster and Daniell's *Life and Letters of...Busbecq* (London, 1881), vol. i, pp. 221–2.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

which even yet cannot be regarded in all cases as definitely solved. These problems group themselves under the headings of Nationality, Religion, Art and Literature, and in this order we shall now proceed to consider them.

NATIONALITY.

In what sense the Ṣafawí movement may be described as "Nationalist."

It has been said above that to the Ṣafawís belongs the credit of making Persia, after the lapse of eight centuries and a half, "a nation once again." This is true, but the nationalism which thus found expression was very different in several respects from the various forms of nationalism with which we are familiar at the present day. Language and race, which are the key-notes of the latter, played a very small part in it compared with religion. At no time was the mutual hatred of Turk and Persian more violent and bitter than during the eight years (A.D. 1512–1520) when Sulṭán Salím "the Grim," and Sháh Isma'íl, the founder of the Ṣafawí power, were the respective protagonists of the two nations. The despatches of this period, recorded by Firídún Bey, pass from the realm of diplomacy to that of vulgar abuse, and "rascally Red-heads" (*Awbásh-i-Qizil-básh*) is the politest expression wherewith the Turkish Sulṭán refers to his Persian foes. The cause of this intense hatred, equally adequate and obvious, will be discussed under the heading of "Religion," but it did not extend to race or language. When America entered the late War it was stated in the newspapers that in certain towns the people, to give vent to their hatred of everything German, collected all the German books they could find and burned them. No Turk or Persian of the sixteenth century would have given expression to his feelings of hostility in so puerile a fashion. On the contrary, it is a remarkable fact that while Sulṭán Salím and Sháh Isma'íl both possessed considerable poetic talent, the former wrote almost exclusively in Persian, and the latter, under the pen-

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

name of Khaṭá'í, almost exclusively in Turkish[1]. Ottoman hatred was directed against the heretical *Qizil-básh* as misbelievers, not as Persians (*Írání*), while the Persian language (*Fársí*) continued to hold its position as the polite idiom of literature and diplomacy. And though the ancient conflict between Írán and Túrán was familiar to all educated Turks and Persians in the classical *Sháh-náma*, or "Book of Kings," of Firdawsí, Salím, in the following curious exordium to a despatch written in April, 1514 (Ṣafar, 920)[2], compares himself to the legendary Persian kings Firídún, Kay-Khusraw and Dárá, while likening his Persian opponent Sháh Isma'íl to the Turkish protagonist Afrásiyáb:

. . امّا بعد، این خطاب مستطاب از جناب خلافت مآب ما که قاتل الکفرة و المشرکین قامع اعداء الدّین مرغم انوف الفراعین معفر تیجان الخواقین سلطان الغُزاة و المجاهدین فریدون فر سکندر در کیخسروِ عدل و داد دارای عالی نژاد سلطان سلیمشاه بن سلطان بایزید بن سلطان محمّد خانیم بسوی تو که فرمان دهِ عجم سپهسالار اعظم سردار معظّم ضحّاكِ روزگار داراب گیر و دار افراسیابِ عهد امیر اسمعیلِ نامداری سمت صدور یافت...

[After the doxology] "But to proceed. This excellent address hath been issued on our part, we who are the Refuge of the Caliphate[3], the slayer of the infidels and polytheists,

[1] See E. J. W. Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. ii, p. 261, for a brief account of Salím's Persian *Díwán*, of which a most sumptuous edition, based on numerous MSS., by the late Dr Paul Horn, was printed in Berlin as a gift to the late Sulṭán 'Abdu'l-Ḥamíd from the ex-Emperor of Germany in 1904. A number of Sháh Isma'íl's Turkish poems are given in my MS. of the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab-i-Ṣafawiyya*. See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, p. 412, where other references are given.

[2] See Firídún Bey, vol. i, p. 381.

[3] An interesting proof that, contrary to the views of Professor Nallino, the position of Caliph was already claimed by Sulṭán Salím, as it certainly was by his son and successor Sulaymán.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the extirpator of the foes of the Faith, the humbler of the Pharaohs' pride[1], the tarnisher of the Kháqán's[2] crowns, the King of those who fight and strive for Religion, whose pomp is as that of Firídún, whose Court is as that of Alexander, whose justice and equity is as that of Kay-Khusraw, that Dárá of noble descent, Sulṭán Salím Sháh, son of Sulṭán Báyazíd, son of Sulṭán Muḥammad Khán, to thee, who art the ruler of the Persians, the most mighty general and puissant leader, the Ḍaḥḥák[3] of the time, the Dáráb of the combat, the Afrásiyáb of the age, the famous Amír Isma'íl."

On the other hand I have only found one verse wherein Sháh Isma'íl is definitely identified with the Persian as contrasted with the Shí'a cause. This verse occurs in the *Aḥsanu 't-Tawárîkh*[4] and runs:

فروزندهٔ تاج و تختِ کیان ‘ فرازندهٔ اخترِ کاویان ‘

"The illuminator of the crown and throne of the Kayánians[5],
The upholder of the star of the Káwayán[6]."

For the rest, the seven tribes who formed the back-bone of the *Qizil-básh* army were, as their names Rúmlú, Shámlú, Mawṣillú, etc., sufficiently indicate, almost exclusively Turkish, as were the principal officers of the Ṣafawí army, whose war-cry, as we learn

Extensive use of Turkish under the Ṣafawís.

[1] Literally, "he who rubs in the dust the noses of the Pharaohs," alluding to Sulṭán Salím's conquest of Egypt and overthrow of the Mameluke dynasty.

[2] The Kháqán is the title given to the king of Túrán and the Turks. The word is, I believe, Mongol, and is identical with the alternative forms Qá'án and Khán.

[3] Ḍaḥḥák is the Azhi-daháka or Dragon-king of the Avesta, represented in the *Sháh-náma* as an Arab usurper.

[4] Under the year 908/1502–3, f. 47^b of Mr A. G. Ellis's MS.

[5] The second dynasty of the ancient legendary kings of Persia.

[6] Káwa was the patriotic blacksmith who led the revolt against the foreign usurper Ḍaḥḥák, and whose leather apron became the national standard under the name of *Dirafsh-i-Káwayán*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

from the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl[1], was not "Long live Persia!" or the like, but, in the Turkish language, "O my spiritual guide and master whose sacrifice I am!"

صدای قربان اولدیغم و صدقه اولدیغم پیروم مرشدم که شیوه و شعار فرقهٔ ناجیهٔ قزلباش است در میمنه و میسرهٔ کارزار انداختند،

More than a century after Isma'íl's death, when the capital had been transferred from the north of Persia to Iṣfahán, Turkish seems still to have been the language generally spoken at Court[2]. These instances, to which might be added many more, will suffice to show how different was the spirit which animated the Ṣafawí revival (though it undoubtedly produced that homogeneity which is the basis of national sentiment) from the Nationalism of the modern Pan-Turanians and "Young Persians," who put the extension and purification from foreign elements of the national language in the foremost place in their programme. At the present time the Turkish nationalists of Angora proclaim their new Caliph in Turkish instead of in the time-honoured Arabic, while Ríḍá Khán, the Persian military dictator, strives to introduce in his army a purely Persian military terminology.

RELIGION.

Essential nature of the Shí'a doctrine.

Although the Muhammadans, according to their own statements, are divided into seventy-two or seventy-three different sects[3], in later times at any rate, when certain controversies, such as those connected with Free Will and Predestination and the

[1] Add. 200, f. 41[a] of the Cambridge University Library. See Sir E. Denison Ross's description of this book in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1896, vol. xxviii, pp. 264–283.

[2] See the second English edition of Olearius (London, 1669), p. 212.

[3] See Shahristání's *Kitábu'l-Milal*, ed. Cureton, pp. 2–3.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Creation of the *Qur'án*, have sunk into a subordinate position, it may fairly be said that the capital and cardinal division is into the People of the *Sunnat* and the People of the *Shí'a*. Scattered communities of the latter are found in Asia Minor, Syria (where they are called *Mutawallí*, pl. *Matáwila*), India and other Muhammadan lands, but in Persia only is the Shí'a doctrine not only that held by the great majority of the people, but also the State Religion. Before considering how it was raised to this position by the Ṣafawís about the year A.D. 1500, we must briefly consider its essential nature, and here we cannot do better than quote Shahristání, the learned author of the *Kitábu'l-Milal*, or "Book of Sects," who died in the middle of the twelfth century, and who writes of them[1] as follows:

Shahristání cited.

"THE SHÍ'A.—They are those who took the side of (*Sháya'ú*) 'Alí in particular, declaring him to be *Imám* and *Khalífa* by explicit written deed, public or secret, and believing that the Imámate cannot quit his posterity; and that, should it do so, it is only by reason of wrong wrought by another, or prudential renunciation on his own part[2]. They assert that the Imámate is not a question of expediency but of principle: it does not depend on popular choice, so that an Imám can be set up by their appointment, but is an essential of Religion which it is not permissible for even the Apostle of God to ignore or neglect, and which cannot be transferred or committed to the common people. They are united in their assertion as to the necessity of such explicit designation [of the Imám on the part of his predecessor] and the established innocence of the Imáms of all sins, small or great, and also

[1] *Op. cit.*, pp. 108–9.

[2] *E.g.* the second Imám, al-Ḥasan, elder son of 'Alí, ostensibly surrendered his rights "for prudential reasons" (*taqiyya*) to the Umayyad Mu'áwiya, but he could not really divest himself of the sacred quality of Imám.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

in their principles of recognition and repudiation, alike in word, deed and faith, save in cases of 'prudential concealment' (*taqiyya*), in which point, however, some of the Zaydís oppose them. As to the actual transmission of the Imámate, however, there is much discussion and difference of opinion, and at each such transmission and stage there is an argument, a doctrine and a schism. There are five [principal] divisions, the Kaysánis, the Zaydís, the Imámís, the Extremists (*Ghulát*) and the Isma'ílís, of whom some incline in their principles to the Mu'tazila, some to the *Sunna* and some to Anthropomorphism (*tashbíh*)."

Put in a briefer, clearer and more concrete form, this means that all the Shí'a reject and repudiate the first three of the "Four Orthodox Caliphs" (*al-Khulafá'-u'r-Ráshidún*), Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán, who were elected, and hold that 'Alí, the cousin of the Prophet Muḥammad and the husband of his daughter Fáṭima, should have succeeded him, and had in fact been nominated by him as his successor; and that after 'Alí the succession continued in his family by Divine Right. But even within this family there was no place for election, each Imám specifically choosing and nominating his successor, as the Prophet had chosen and nominated 'Alí. Amongst those who agreed in these general principles, however, there was plenty of room for disagreement as to details. Some of the Shí'a were content that the Imám should be descended from 'Alí, and were therefore ready to recognise Muḥammad ibnu'l-Ḥanafiyya, "the son of the Ḥanafite woman"; others, including the "Sect of the Seven" or Isma'ílís and the "Sect of the Twelve" or Imámís, with which last we are chiefly concerned, limited the succession to the children born to 'Alí by his wife Fáṭima, the Prophet's daughter. With the third Imám Ḥusayn, 'Alí's younger son by Fáṭima, a new factor came into operation, for, according to quite early and respectable historians, such as

Why the Shí'a doctrine especially appeals to the Persians.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

al-Ya'qúbí[1], a daughter of the last Sásánian king of Persia, Yazdigird III, was given to him in marriage and bore him a son named 'Alí and entitled *Zaynu'l-'Ábidín*, who was the Fourth Imám, and who combined in himself direct descent from the Prophet through his daughter Fáṭima and from the ancient Royal House of Persia. Small wonder that to him and his descendants the loyal devotion of the Persians was so freely rendered!

Thus we see that the quarrel between Sunní and Shí'a is by no means one of names and personalities only, but of the essentially antagonistic doctrines of Democracy and the Divine Right of Kings. The Arabs are, and always have been, in large measure democratic in their ideas, while the Persians have ever been disposed to see in their Kings divine or semi-divine beings. And if the idea of a humanly-elected head of the State be repugnant, how much more that of an Imám, or Vice-gerent of the Prophet, chosen by popular suffrage? Hence the Imámí and Ismá'ílí sects of the Shí'a have always had their stronghold in Persia, though under the Sunní Turkish dynasties of the Ghaznawís and Saljúqs they were kept in a state of subordination[2]. They were more favoured under the Buwayhids and some of the Mongols, notably Gházán and Khudá-banda (Uljáytú), but they first obtained unquestioned supremacy throughout the whole of Persia under the Ṣafawís.

The difference between Shi'a and Sunní one of principle, not merely of persons.

Who, then, were these Ṣafawís, when did they so vehemently adopt the Shí'a doctrine, and how did they succeed in establishing their supremacy?

Origin of the Ṣafawís.

[1] He wrote about the end of the ninth Christian century, and his excellent history, edited by Houtsma, was published at Leyden in two vols. in 1883. See also vol. i of my *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, p. 229 and n. 2 *ad calc.*

[2] Abundant illustrations of this are furnished by such works of the Saljúq period as the *Siyásat-náma* and the *Ráḥatu'ṣ-Ṣudúr*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Ṣafawí is the adjective formed from Ṣafí, a notable Ṣúfí saint, named in full Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, who died in Gílán in A.D. 1334 at the age of 85 in the odour of sanctity, and who claimed to be descended in the twentieth degree from Músá Káẓim the seventh Imám[1]. That he was really a man of note in his own time is proved beyond doubt by the way in which his contemporary, the great statesman and historian Rashídu'd-Dín Faḍlu'lláh, speaks of him in his letters[2], and also by the fact that an immense biography of him, the *Ṣafwatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*, was composed shortly after his death, largely from data supplied by his son Ṣadru'd-Dín, which has been used directly or indirectly by all the historians of the great dynasty whereof he was the ancestor. Sháh Isma'íl, the actual founder of the dynasty, was sixth in descent from him, but I have found no evidence to prove that he himself adopted the violent Shí'a views characteristic of his descendants. The little evidence available points rather the other way, for in a letter written to Isma'íl's son Sháh Ṭahmásp in A.D. 1529–30 by the Uzbek leaders, they say that, according to what they have heard, Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín was a good Sunní, and express their astonishment that Ṭahmásp "neither follows the example of His Holiness Murtaḍá 'Alí, nor that of his forefather[3]." Khwája 'Alí, grandson of Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín and great-great-grandfather of Sháh Isma'íl, is the first member of the House who shows a strong Shí'a bias[4] and holds converse in his dreams with the Imáms, and his grandson Junayd and his great-grandson Ḥaydar are the first to assert their claims with the sword and to die on the field of battle.

At the beginning of the fifteenth century, then, the Ṣafawís were simply the hereditary *pírs*, *murshids*, or spiritual

[1] For the full pedigree, see the *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, p. 397 and n. 1 *ad calc.*

[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 417–18.

[3] For the text of this passage, see p. 43 *infra*.

[4] See the *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, pp. 407–8.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

directors of an increasingly large and important order of *darwíshes* or Ṣúfís which drew its adherents not only from Persia but from the Turkish provinces of Asia Minor, where they appear to have carried on an active propaganda[1]. How successful this promised to become in later days is shown by the dreadful massacre of some forty thousand of the Shí'a perpetrated in his dominions by Sulṭán Salím "the Grim" as a preliminary to his great campaign against Sháh Isma'íl in A.D. 1514[2]. To these devoted *darwíshes* or *muríds*, as their war-cry cited above (p. 15) sufficiently shows, the head of the Ṣafawí House, even after he had ceased to be a Shaykh and had become a Sháh, continued to be regarded as the *pír* or *murshid*. Chardin, Raphaël du Mans[3], and other reputable authorities have scoffed at the title "Great Sophi," by which the Ṣafawí Sháhs are commonly designated by contemporary European diplomatists and writers, on the ground that the Ṣúfís were generally poor and humble people and of doubtful orthodoxy, despised and rejected of men, and unlikely to lend their name to the Great King of Persia. But in the Persian histories of the Ṣafawís, even in the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab* compiled about the time when Raphaël du Mans wrote, and still more in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* and other earlier chronicles, the Ṣúfís, especially the Ṣúfís of Rúm (*i.e.* Turkey in Asia), are represented as the cream of the Ṣafawí army; we read of "self-sacrifice, courage, and whatever else is inseparable from Ṣúfí-hood[4]" and of unworthy and disloyal acts described as "un-Ṣúfí-like" (*ná-Ṣúfí*). What, then, more natural than that he who was regarded not only as the Sháh of Persia

The Ṣafawís originally a religious order.

The term "Great Sophi."

[1] See Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. ii, pp. 227–8 *ad calc.*

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 259, and pp. 71–3 *infra*.

[3] *L'Estat de la Perse en 1660*, ed. Schefer, pp. 16–17.

[4] See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, the Persian words on the illustration facing p. 415.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

but as the Shaykh of these devoted *darwíshes* or Ṣúfís, whose courage amazed contemporary Venetian travellers, should be called in Europe "the Great Ṣúfí" or "Sophi"? At any rate no more probable origin has been suggested for this term, which can scarcely be regarded as a corrupt pronunciation of Ṣafawí.

It would appear that an idea prevailed in Europe (based, perhaps, on vague recollections of the Magi or Wise Men from the East) that Sophi was derived from σοφός, an opinion which Don Juan of Persia[1] is at pains to refute; for, having described how Sháh Ismaʻíl immediately after he had conquered Tabríz adopted the title of "*gran Sophi de Persia*," he adds: "*no Sophi por sabio, como algunos mal entendieron, pensando que venia de Sòpos vocablo Gricgo, sino de Sophi, que es vocablo Persiano, y quiere dezir, lana, ō algodon*" ("Not Sophi in the sense of wise, as some have erroneously supposed, thinking it to come from the Greek word σοφός, but from Sophi, which is a Persian word meaning wool or cotton[2]").

The rapid rise to power of Ismaʻíl is one of the most remarkable events in Persian history, especially in view of his forlorn and threatened childhood. His father, Shaykh Ḥaydar, was killed in A.D. 1490 when he was only about three years of age[3], and he and his two brothers, of whom the elder, Sulṭán 'Alí, also fell in battle about A.D. 1495, were in constant danger from the Turkmán rulers of the "White Sheep" dynasty, and had many hair-breadth escapes in which they owed their lives to the devoted loyalty of their faithful Ṣúfís. Only seven of these accompanied Ismaʻíl when, at the age of thirteen, he set out from Láhiján for Ardabíl to win a kingdom or perish in the attempt, but at every

[1] Ed. Valladolid, 1604, f. 50ª.

[2] Krusinski agrees with this view. See p. 68 of the English version (London, 1728).

[3] He was born on Rajab 5, 892 (June 27, 1487).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

stage he received reinforcements, so that at Ṭárum his army numbered fifteen hundred men, and by the time he reached Arzinján on his way to attack Farrukh-Yasár, king of Shírwán, it had increased to seven thousand. Within a year he had taken Tabríz, been crowned king of Persia, and, despite the attempts of his counsellors to dissuade him, imposed the Shí'a doctrine on his subjects. He was warned that two-thirds of the people of Tabríz were Sunnís, and that the introduction into the prayers and professions of Faith of the distinctively Shí'a clauses, and more especially the cursing of the first three Caliphs, Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán, might lead to trouble. "God and the Immaculate Imáms are with me," he replied, "and I fear no one. By God's help, if the people utter one word of protest, I will draw the sword and leave not one of them alive[1]." He was as good as his word, and when the above-mentioned anathema was uttered all men were commanded, on pain of death, to exclaim, "May it (*i.e.* the curse) be more, not less!" (*Bísh bád, kam ma-bád!*).

Sháh Isma'íl enforces the Shí'a doctrine at Tabríz.

Ruthless and bloodthirsty as he showed himself, Sháh Isma'íl, as depicted by contemporary Venetian travellers, had many attractive characteristics. At the age of thirteen he was, according to Caterino Zeno, "of noble presence and a truly royal bearing, ... nor did the virtues of his mind disaccord with the beauty of his person, as he had an elevated genius, and such a lofty idea of things as seemed incredible at such a tender age." Angiolello describes him as "very much beloved...for his beauty and pleasing manners"; and, when grown to man's estate, as "fair, handsome, and very pleasing; not very tall, but of a light and well-framed figure; rather stout than slight, with broad shoulders. His hair is reddish; he only wears moustachios, and uses his left hand instead of his right. He is as brave as a game-cock, and stronger than

Character of Sháh Isma'íl.

[1] The original text is quoted on p. 53 *infra*, *ad calc.*

130681

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

any of his lords; in the archery contests, out of the ten apples that are knocked down, he knocks down seven." The anonymous merchant, after describing Isma'íl's doings in Tabríz, adds "from the time of Nero to the present, I doubt whether so bloodthirsty a tyrant has ever existed," yet adds a little further on that at Caesarea "he caused proclamation to be made that everyone who brought provisions for sale should be liberally paid, and forbade his men, under pain of death, to take even as much as a handful of straw without paying for it, as it was a friendly city." He further describes him as "amiable as a girl, left-handed by nature, as lively as a fawn, and stronger than any of his lords," and says that "this Sophi is loved and reverenced by his people as a god, and especially by his soldiers, many of whom enter into battle without armour, expecting their master Ismael to watch over them in the fight."

Parallel between Ṣafawí and 'Abbásid propaganda.

The closest historical parallel to the Ṣafawí movement is, I think, afforded by the propaganda in favour of the 'Abbásids carried on by Abú Muslim in Persia with so great a success in the first half of the eighth century of our era. Both were consciously religious and only unconsciously, though none the less truly, racial; the chief difference was that the later movement had to confront in the person of the Ottoman Sulṭán Salím a far more energetic and formidable antagonist than the earlier in the Umayyad Caliph Marwán, and hence its more limited success; for while the 'Abbásid cause triumphed throughout almost the whole of the Eastern lands of Islám, the Ṣafawí triumph was limited to Persia, though without doubt at one time it threatened Turkey as well. Fear is the great incentive to cruelty, and it was chiefly fear which caused Sulṭán Salím to massacre in cold blood some forty thousand of his Shí'a subjects. Fear, however, was not the only motive of this ferocity; with it were mingled anger

Why the Turco-Persian quarrel became so embittered at this time.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and disappointment. For Sulṭán Salím was what is now called a Pan-Islamist, and his ambition was to be not merely the Sovereign of the greatest and most powerful Muhammadan State, but the supreme head of the whole Muslim world. His conquest of Egypt and the Holy Cities of Mecca and Madína in A.D. 1517, and his assumption of the title of Caliph, which, whether by threats or promises, or a combination of the two, he induced the last titular 'Abbásid Caliph to surrender to him, might well have given him this position but for Sháh Isma'íl and the barrier of heterodoxy which he had erected between the Turks, Egyptians and other Sunnís to the West and their fellow-believers to the East in Transoxiana, Afghánistán, Balúchistán and India. The Persians not only refused to recognise Sulṭán Salím as Caliph, but repudiated the whole theory of the Caliphate. The Turkish victory over the Persians at Cháldirán in August, 1514, failed of its results owing to the refusal of the Ottoman troops to push home their advantage, and thus robbed the succeeding Egyptian campaign of its full measure of success, and left a lasting soreness which served greatly to weaken the political power of Islám and to impose a check on Turkish ambitions whereby, as we have seen, Europe greatly profited. Between A.D. 1508, when it was taken by the Persians, and A.D. 1638, when it was finally recovered by the Turks, Baghdád, once the metropolis of Islám, changed hands many times as the tide of these bitter and interminable wars ebbed and flowed, until the increasing weakness and effeminacy of the later Ṣafawí kings left Turkey in undisputed possession of Mesopotamia.

ART AND LITERATURE.

Remarkable lack of great poets under the Ṣafawís.

One of the most curious and, at first sight, inexplicable phenomena of the Ṣafawí period is the extraordinary dearth of notable poets in Persia during the two centuries of its duration. Architecture,

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

miniature-painting and other arts flourished exceedingly; the public buildings with which Sháh 'Abbás adorned his realms, and especially his capital Iṣfahán, have not ceased to command the admiration of all who beheld them from his time until the present day; and Bihzád and the other artists who flourished at the Tímúrid court of Herát found worthy successors in Riḍá-yi-'Abbásí and his colleagues. Yet, though poets innumerable are mentioned in the *Tuḥfa-i-Sámí*[1] and other contemporary biographies and histories, there is hardly one (if we exclude Jámí, Hátifí, Hiláli and other poets of Khurásán, who were really the survivors of the school of Herát) worthy to be placed in the first class. During the seventy stormy years of Timúr's life there were at least eight or ten poets besides the great Ḥáfiẓ, who outshone them all, whose names no writer on Persian literature could ignore; while during the two hundred and twenty years of Ṣafawí rule there was in Persia, so far as I have been able to ascertain, hardly one of conspicuous merit or originality. I say "in Persia" advisedly, for a brilliant group of poets from Persia, of whom 'Urfí of Shíráz (d. A.D. 1590) and Ṣá'ib of Iṣfahán (d. A.D. 1670) are perhaps the most notable, adorned the court of the "Great Moghuls" in India, and these were in many cases not settlers or the sons of emigrants, but men who went from Persia to India to make their fortunes and returned home when their fortunes were made. This shows that it was not so much lack of talent as lack of patronage which makes the list of distinctively Ṣafawí poets so meagre. The phenomenon is noticed by Riḍá-qulí Khán in the preface to his great anthology of Persian poets entitled *Majma'u-l-Fuṣaḥá*[2], composed in the middle of the last century, as well

[1] This biography of contemporary poets by Prince Sám Mírzá, the son of Sháh Isma'íl, is another work which urgently needs publication.

[2] Lithographed at Ṭihrán in two large volumes in 1295/1878.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

as by European scholars like the late Dr Ethé, who have written on Persian poetry; with this difference, that the European writers commonly speak of Jámí as the last great Persian poet, and consider that during the four centuries which have elapsed since his death Persia has produced no poet of eminence, while Riḍá-qulí Khán, rightly as I think, places certain modern poets of the Qájár period, notably such men as Qá'ání, Furúghí and Yaghmá, in the first rank.

That no great poet should have arisen in Persia in days otherwise so spacious and so splendid as those of the Ṣafawís seemed to me so remarkable that I wrote to my learned and scholarly friend Mírzá Muḥammad Khán of Qazwín, to whose industry and acumen students of Persian owe so much, to ask him, first, whether he accepted this statement as a fact, and secondly, if he did, how he explained it. In reply, in a letter dated May 24, 1911, he wrote as follows:

Reasons for this dearth of poets.

"There is at any rate no doubt that during the Ṣafawí period literature and poetry in Persia had sunk to a very low ebb, and that not one single poet of the first rank can be reckoned as representing this epoch. The chief reason for this, as you yourself have observed, seems to have been that these kings, by reason of their political aims and strong antagonism to the Ottoman Empire, devoted the greater part of their energies to the propagation of the Shí'a doctrine and the encouragement of divines learned in its principles and laws. Now although these divines strove greatly to effect the religious unification of Persia (which resulted in its political unification), and laid the foundations of this present-day Persia, whose inhabitants are, speaking generally, of one faith, one tongue, and one race, yet, on the other hand, from the point of view of literature, poetry, Ṣúfíism and mysticism, and, to use their own expression, everything connected with the 'Accomplishments' (as opposed to the

Mírzá Muḥammad Khán's views on this subject.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

'Legalities')[1], they not merely fell far short in the promotion thereof, but sought by every means to injure and annoy the representatives of these 'Accomplishments,' who were generally not too firmly established in the Religious Law and its derivatives. In regard to the Ṣúfís particularly they employed every kind of severity and vexation, whether by exile, expulsion, slaughter or reprimand, slaying or burning many of them with their own hands or by their sentence. Now the close connection between poetry and Belles Lettres on the one hand, and Ṣúfíism and Mysticism on the other, at any rate in Persia, is obvious, so that the extinction of one necessarily involves the extinction and destruction of the other. Hence it was that under this dynasty learning, culture, poetry and mysticism completely deserted Persia, and the cloisters, monasteries, retreats and rest-houses [of the *darwíshes*] were so utterly destroyed that there is now throughout the whole of Persia no name or sign of such charitable foundations, though formerly, as, for instance, in the time of Ibn Baṭúṭa, such institutions were to be found in every town, hamlet and village, as abundantly appears from the perusal of his Travels, wherein he describes how in every place, small or great, where he halted, he alighted in such buildings, of which at the present day no name or sign exists. Anyone ignorant of the circumstances of the Ṣafawí period might well wonder whether this Persia and that are the same country, and the creed of its inhabitants the same Islám; and, if so, why practically, with rare exceptions, there exists now not a single monastery throughout the whole of Persia, while in those parts of Turkey, such as Mesopotamia, Kurdistán and Sulaymániyya, which did not remain under the Ṣafawí dominion, there are many such buildings just as there were in Ibn Baṭúṭa's days.

"At all events during the Ṣafawí period in place of great

[1] و بقولِ خودشان هرچه معلّق بکمالیّات بود (در مقابلِ شرعیّات)

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

poets and philosophers there arose theologians, great indeed, but harsh, dry, fanatical and formal, like the Majlisís, the *Muḥaqqiq-i-thání*, Shaykh Ḥurr-i-Ámulí and Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, etc."

Most professional poets in the East are primarily panegyrists, and if Riḍá-qulí Khán is correct in his assertion that the Ṣafawí kings, especially Ṭahmásp and 'Abbás the Great, expressed a wish that laudatory poems should be addressed to the Imáms rather than to themselves, another and a more creditable cause for the diminution of poets in their realms is indicated. More material benefits were to be looked for from the Great Moghuls[1] than from the Imáms, and hence the eyes and feet of the more mercenary poets turned rather to Dihlí than to Karbalá. But to religious poetry commemorating the virtues and sufferings of the Imáms a great impetus was given in Persia, and of these poets Muḥtasham of Káshán (d. A.D. 1588) was the most eminent. But, besides these more formal and classical elegies, it is probable that much of the simpler and often very touching verse, wherein the religious feelings of the Persians find expression during the Muḥarram mourning, dates from this period, when every means was employed to stimulate and develop these sentiments of devotion to the House of 'Alí and detestation of its oppressors. On the other hand the dramatisation of these moving scenes, which now form so remarkable a feature of the Muḥarram mourning (*Ta'ziya*), and are often described by European writers as "Miracle Plays," seems to have taken place at a much later period. That careful writer Olearius spent the month of Muḥarram, A.H. 1047 (May–June, 1637) at Ardabíl, the sanctuary of the Ṣafawí family,

Panegyrics on themselves little esteemed by the Ṣafawí kings.

[1] The liberality of Humáyún towards poets and men of letters is especially noticed under the year of his death (962/1555) in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*. This and the succeeding topics will be more fully discussed in a subsequent chapter.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and gives a very full description of all that he saw, the mournings, wailings, lamentations and cuttings culminating on the *'Ashúrá*, the tenth day of the month or *Kúsh-i-Qatl*, but he makes no mention of any dramatic representations, so that it is pretty certain that none existed at that time. To elucidate this point I addressed enquiries to two well-informed and intelligent Persian friends, Sayyid Taqí-záda and Mírzá Ḥusayn Dánish. The former expressed the opinion that while the solemn recitations known as *Rauḍa-khwání* (*i.e.* the reading from the pulpit of the *Rauḍatu'sh-Shuhadá*, or "Garden of the Martyrs," and other similar books) dates from Ṣafawí times, the *Ta'ziya-gardání, shabíh*, or "Passion Play" was of much later date, and perhaps owes something to European influences. The latter also placed the origin of these "Passion Plays" (of which Sir Lewis Pelly's translations give a good idea to the English reader) about the end of the eighteenth or beginning of the nineteenth century, *i.e.* at the beginning of the Qájár period, and incidentally cited the following interesting verses by Shaykh Riḍá-yi-Kurd in illustration of the view that the Persian dislike of 'Umar is due not less to the fact that he conquered Persia and overthrew the Sásánian dynasty than to his usurpation of the rights of 'Alí and Fáṭima:

بشکست عُمَر پُشتِ هژبران اجمرا،
بر بادِ فنا داد رگ و ریشهٔ جمرا،
این عربده بر غصبِ خلافت ز علی نیست،
با آلِ عمر کینه قدیم است عجمرا،

"'Umar broke the back of the lions of the thicket:
He cast to the winds the thews and sinews of Jamshíd.
This quarrel is not about the usurpation of the Caliphate from 'Alí:
Persia has an ancient grudge against the House of 'Umar."

In conclusion we must not omit to notice another step taken by the Ṣafawí kings which added greatly to the

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

consolidation of Persia and the prevention of a continued outflow of men and money from the country, namely the exaltation and popularisation of Mashhad, Qum and other holy cities of Persia, whereby the tide of pilgrims was to a considerable extent confined within the limits of their Empire, in which, as we have seen, the most sacred shrines of Karbalá, Najaf and Mashhad 'Alí were long included before they finally fell under Turkish dominion[1].

POSTSCRIPT.

I am indebted to my friend Mr H. L. Rabino, of H.B.M.'s Consular Service, for the following valuable notes on the celebration of the Muḥarram mourning at Baghdád as early as the fourth Muhammadan (tenth Christian) century. I have only the text of the two passages (one in German and the other in Persian): the reference was probably given in the accompanying letter (December 23, 1922), which has unfortunately been mislaid. I have an impression that they are taken from one of Dorn's articles, probably published in the *Mélanges Asiatiques*. The whole quotation runs as follows:

"Die '*ta'sieh*' wurden in Baghdad i. J. 963 von der Buwaihiden *Mu'iss-ed-daula* eingeführt, wie uns Ahmed b. Abu'l-Feth in seinem *Werke* احسن القصص الخ (Inscr. Mus. As. No. 567[a]) berichtet."

بنای تعزیهٔ سیّد الشهداء در بغداد در سنه ۳۰۲ هجری'
در تاریخ ابن کثیر شامی آورده که معزّ الدّولة احمد بن بویه
در بغداد در دههٔ اوّل محرّم امر کرد تمامیٔ بازارهای بغدادرا
بسته مردم سیاه عزا پوشیدند و بتعزیهٔ سیّد الشهداء پرداختند'
چون این قاعده در بغداد رسم نبود لهذا علمای اهلِ سنّت آنرا
بدعتی بزرك دانستند و چون بر معزّ الدّولة دستی نداشتند چاره

[1] See Krusinski, *op. cit.*, pp. 159–161.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

جز تسلیم نتوانستند، بعد از آن هر ساله تا انقراض دولتِ دیالمه شیعیان در ده روزِ اوّل محرّم در جمیعِ بلاد رسم تعزیه بجا می آوردند و در بغداد تا اوایل سلطنت طغرل سلجوقی بر قرار بود،

"*Institution of the mourning for the Chief of Martyrs in Baghdad in A.H.* 352 [*A.D.* 963].

"It is related in the History of Ibn Kathír the Syrian that Mu'izzu'd-Dawla Aḥmad ibn Buwayh issued orders in Baghdád that during the first ten days of Muḥarram all the bazaars of Baghdád should be closed, and that the people should wear black for mourning and betake themselves to mourning for the Chief of Martyrs [the Imám Ḥusayn]. Since this procedure was not customary in Baghdád, the Sunní doctors regarded it as a great innovation; but since they had no control over Mu'izzu'd-Dawla, they could do nothing but submit. Thereafter every year until the collapse of the Daylamite [or Buwayhid] dynasty, this custom of mourning was observed by the Shí'ites in all countries during the first ten days of Muḥarram. In Baghdád it continued until the early days of the reign of Ṭughril the Saljúq."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

CHAPTER II.

THE CREATION OF THE ṢAFAWÍ POWER TO 930/1524. SHÁH ISMA'ÍL AND HIS ANCESTORS.

That Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, the saintly recluse of Ardabíl from whom the Ṣafawí kings of Persia derived their descent and their name, was really an important and influential person in his own day, is a fact susceptible of historical proof. He who wins a throne and founds a great dynasty destined to endure for more than two centuries is apt, if he be of lowly origin, to create, or allow to be created, some legend connecting his ancestors with famous kings, statesmen or warriors of old, or otherwise reflecting glory on a House which, till he made it powerful and illustrious, held but a humble place in men's esteem. But Sháh Isma'íl, sixth in descent from Shaykh Ṣafí (as we shall henceforth call him for brevity), who founded the Ṣafawí dynasty about the beginning of the sixteenth century of the Christian era, and raised Persia to a position of splendour which she had scarcely held since the overthrow of the ancient and noble House of Sásán by the Arabs in the seventh century, had no occasion to resort to these devices; for whether or no Shaykh Ṣafí was directly descended from the seventh Imám of the Shí'a, Músá Káẓim, and through him from 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib[1] and Fáṭima the Prophet's daughter (and his

Proofs of the fame, influence and greatness of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín.

[1] The full pedigree is given (with only slight variants) in the *Ṣafwatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*, *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, *Silsilatu'n-Nasab-i-Ṣafawiyya* and most other histories of this dynasty, and runs as follows: (1) Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín Abu'l-Fatḥ Isḥáq b. (2) Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl b. (3) Ṣáliḥ b. (4) Quṭbu'd-Dín Aḥmad b. (5) Ṣaláḥu'd-Dín Rashíd b. (6) Muḥammad Ḥáfiẓ b. (7) 'Awaḍ al-Khawáṣṣ b. (8) Fírúzsháh-*i-Zarrín-kuláh* b. (9) Muḥammad b. (10) Sharafsháh b. (11) Muḥammad b.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

claim is probably at least as good as that of any contemporary Sayyid), two facts prove that in his own time (the thirteenth century) he was highly accounted as a saint and spiritual guide.

The high esteem in which he was held by the Minister Rashídu'd-Dín Faḍlu'lláh.

The first and more important of these two facts is the concern shown by that great Minister Rashídu'd-Dín Faḍlu'lláh for his welfare, and the desire to win his favour and intercession. In the very rare collection of the Minister's letters known as the *Munsha'át-i-Rashídí*[1] there occur two documents affording proof of this. The first is a letter (No. 45 of the collection, ff. 145ᵇ–149ᵃ of the MS.) addressed to Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín himself, offering to his monastery (*Khánqáh*) a yearly gift of corn, wine, oil, cattle, sugar, honey and other food-stuffs for the proper entertainment of the notables of Ardabíl on the anniversary of the Prophet's birthday, on condition that prayers should be offered up at the conclusion of the feast for the writer and benefactor. The second (No. 49, ff. 161ᵃ–169ᵇ) is addressed by Rashíd to his son Mír Aḥmad, governor of Ardabíl, enjoining on him consideration for all its inhabitants, and especially "to act in such wise that His Holiness the Pole of the Heaven of Truth, the Swimmer in the Oceans of the Law, the Pacer of the Hippodrome of the Path, the Shaykh of Islám and of the Muslims, the Proof of such as attain the Goal, the Exemplar of the Bench of Purity, the Rose-tree of the Garden of Fidelity, *Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'l-Millat wa'd-Dín* (may

(12) Ḥasan b. (13) Muḥammad b. (14) Ibráhím b. (15) Ja'far b. (16) Muḥammad b. (17) Isma'íl b. (18) Muḥammad b. (19) Sayyid Aḥmad al-A'rábí b. (20) Abú Muḥammad Qásim b. (21) Abu'l-Qásim Ḥamza b. (22) AL-IMÁM MÚSÁ AL-KÁẒIM, the seventh Imám and fifth in direct descent from 'Alí and Fáṭima.

[1] See my article on the *Persian MSS. of the late Sir Albert Houtum-Schindler, K.C.I.E.* in the *J.R.A.S.* for Oct. 1917, pp. 693–4, and my *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion* (hereinafter sometimes denoted as "*Pers. Lit. iii*"), pp. 80–87.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

God Most High perpetuate the blessings of His Holy Exhalations!) may be well pleased with and grateful to thee[1]." These letters, and especially the second, which is filled with the most exaggerated praises of Shaykh Ṣafí, sufficiently prove the high repute which he enjoyed amongst his contemporaries[2].

The great monograph on his life entitled *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá.*

The second fact germane to our thesis is that comparatively soon after his death a most extensive monograph on his life, character, teachings, doctrines, virtues and miracles was compiled by one of his followers, the *darwísh* Tawakkul[3] ibn Isma'íl, commonly called Ibnu'l-Bazzáz, apparently under the inspiration and direction of Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín, who succeeded his father Shaykh Ṣafí as head of the Order and held this position for fifty-eight years (A.D. 1334–1392). This rare and important book has never been printed[4], but is the chief source of all later accounts of the head of the family and dynasty, in most of which it is frequently and explicitly cited. A much later recension of it was made in the reign of Sháh Ṭahmásp (A.D. 1524–1576) by a certain Abu'l-

و نوعی سازی که جناب قطب فلك حقیقت، و سبّاح بحار
شریعت، مسّاح مضمار طریقت، شیخ الاسلام و المسلمین، برهان
الواصلین، قدوهٔ صُفّهٔ صفا، کُلبن دوحهٔ وفا، شیخ صفیّ الملّة
و الدّین ادام الله تعالی برکات انفاسه الشریفة از تو راضی و شاکر
باشد،

[1] Shaykh Ṣafí died in 735/1334 at the age of 85. Rashídu'd-Dín was put to death in A.D. 1318 at the age of 70 or somewhat over.

[2] Or Túklí (تُوکُلِی) as it is written and pointed in a note in Mr Ellis's manuscript.

[3] Since this was written I have obtained through the kindness of one of my Persian correspondents a copy of an excellent lithographed edition published at Bombay in 1329/1911, of the very existence of which I was ignorant when this chapter was written.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Fatḥ al-Ḥusaynī. I have personal knowledge of only three manuscripts, Add. 11745 of the British Museum[1]; No. 87 of the Pote Collection in the library of King's College, Cambridge[2]; and a fine copy made at Ardabíl in 1030/1621, now belonging to Mr A. G. Ellis, who, with his customary generosity, placed it at my disposal for as long as I required it. This exhaustive work comprises an Introduction, twelve chapters, and a Conclusion, each of which is divided into numerous sections[3], and its contents are summarized by Rieu with his usual precision. It contains interesting matter, diluted by much that is wearisome save to a devoted disciple, and represents on a more extensive scale the type of hagiography familiar to all Persian students in such books as the *Manáqibu'l-'Árifín* of Aflákí, available in the English version of Redhouse[4] and the French of Huart[5]. The extracts from it included in most later histories of the family, notably the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab-i-Ṣafawiyya*[6], will suffice to satisfy the curiosity of most readers, though a careful perusal and analysis of the original work would undoubtedly yield results of value, most of the anecdotes and sayings being vouched for by Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín. But before further discussing Shaykh Ṣafí and his descendants something more must be said about his ancestors.

[1] See Rieu's *Pers. Cat.*, pp. 345–6.

[2] See my *Suppl. Hand-list*, p. 137, No. 837.

[3] Ch. viii comprises no less than 27 sections.

[4] Prefixed to his metrical translation of the First Book of the *Mesnevi* (*Mathnawí*) of Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, published in Trübner's Oriental Series in 1881. The *Manáqib*, or "Acts of the Adepts," occupies pp. 3–135.

[5] *Les Saints des Derviches Tourneurs* (*Études d'Hagiographie Musulmane*), vol. i (Paris, Leroux), 1918; vol. ii, 1922.

[6] See my account of this rare and interesting work in the *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, pp. 395–418. Both Dr Babinger and M. Minorsky have called my attention to the fact that another MS. of this work at St Petersburg was described by Khanikoff in the *Mélanges Asiatiques*, I, pp. 580–583.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The Ancestors of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín.

That the seventh Imám Músá Káẓim had, besides the son 'Alí Riḍá who succeeded him in the Imámate, another son named Ḥamza, from whom Shaykh Ṣafí claimed descent, is a fact vouched for by the historian al-Ya'qúbí[1], but the next dozen links in the chain (including five Muḥammads without further designation) are too vague to admit of identification. The earliest ancestor of the Ṣafawís who is invested with any definite attributes is Fírúzsháh-*i-Zarrín-kuláh* ("Golden-cap"), who is stated by the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab* to have been made governor of Ardabíl, henceforth the home and rallying-point of the family, by a son of Ibráhím-i-Adham, here represented as king of Persia. Ibráhím-i-Adham, however, though reputed of kingly race, renounced the world, became a notable saint, and died about A.D. 780 in Syria, and history knows nothing of any son of his who succeeded to a throne in Persia or elsewhere. Fírúzsháh died after a prosperous life at Rangín in Gílán, and was succeeded by his son 'Awaḍ, of whom nothing is recorded save that he lived and died at Isfaranján near Ardabíl. His son Muḥammad earned the title of Ḥáfiẓ because he knew the *Qur'án* by heart, an accomplishment for which he is said to have been indebted to the *Jinn*[2], who kidnapped him at the age of seven and educated him amongst themselves for a like number of years. The two succeeding heads of the family, Ṣaláḥu'd-Dín Rashíd and Quṭbu'd-Dín Aḥmad, seem to have lived quietly at Kalkhorán[3], devoting themselves to agriculture, until a fierce incursion of

The seventh Imám Músá Káẓim.

Fírúzsháh-*i-Zarrín-kuláh.*

'Awaḍ al-Khawáṣṣ.

Muḥammad Ḥáfiẓ.

Ṣaláḥu'd-Dín Rashíd.

Quṭbu'd-Dín Aḥmad.

[1] Ed. Houtsma, vol. ii, p. 500.

[2] For some account of the believing *Jinn*, see *Qur'án*, lxxii.

[3] This, as M. V. Minorsky has pointed out to me, and not "Gilkhwárán," is the proper pronunciation of this name.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the Georgians compelled the latter to flee to Ardabíl with his family, including his little son Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl, then only a month old. Even here they were not left unmolested: the Georgians pursued them and they had to take refuge in a cellar, where their lives were only saved by a devoted youth, who, ere he fell beneath the swords of his assailants, succeeded in concealing the entrance to the cellar by throwing down a large earthen jar over it. Quṭbu'd-Dín himself was severely wounded in the neck and hardly escaped with his life, and his grandson Shaykh Ṣafí, who was born during his life, used to relate that when his grandfather took him on his shoulder he used to put four baby fingers into the scar left by the wound. In due course Quṭbu'd-Dín was succeeded by his son

Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl.

Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl, farmer and saint, who adopted Khwája Kamálu'd-Dín 'Arabsháh as his spiritual director, and married a lady named Dawlatí; she in due course, in the year 650/1252–3, bore him the son

Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín.

who afterwards became famous as Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, with whom the family suddenly emerges from comparative obscurity into great fame. The author of the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*, not content with giving the year of his birth, further fixes the date as follows. At the time of his birth Shams-i-Tabríz had been dead five years, Shaykh Muḥyi'd-Dín ibnu'l-'Arabí twelve years, and Najmu'd-Dín Kubrá thirty-two years. He was five years old when Húlágú Khán the Mongol conquered Persia, twenty-two on the death of Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, and forty-one on the death of Sa'dí. The eminent saints contemporary with him included Amír 'Abdu'lláh-i-Shírází, Shaykh Najíbu'd-Dín Buzghúsh, 'Alá'u'd-Dawla-i-Samnání and Shaykh Maḥmúd-i-Shabistarí (author of the *Gulshan-i-Ráz* or "Rose-bed of Mystery"). He had three elder[1] and two younger brothers[2] and one

[1] Muḥammad, Ṣaláḥu'd-Dín Rashíd and Isma'íl.

[2] Ya'qúb and Fakhru'd-Dín Yúsuf.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

elder sister, being thus the fifth in a family of seven; and his father died when he was six years of age.

SHAYKH ṢAFIYYU'D-DÍN (A.D. 1252–1334).

Hitherto we have suffered from the exiguity of biographical details, but now we are rather embarrassed by their abundance. The *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*, it is true, probably contains all that can now be known about Shaykh Ṣafí, but it is a voluminous work, containing some 216,000 words, and written in a fairly simple and direct style without much "stuffing" (*ḥashw*) or rhetorical adornment, so that anything approaching a full analysis of its contents would in itself constitute a volume of considerable size. It is lamentably deficient in dates, and in general deals rather with the spiritual than the material aspects of the life of Shaykh Ṣafí and his director Shaykh Záhid-i-Gílání. Stated as briefly as possible, its contents are as follows:

Scope, size and contents of the *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*.

Introduction (in 2 sections). Shaykh Ṣafí's advent foretold by the Prophet and by former saints, such as Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí.

Chapter I (in 11 sections, two of which are further subdivided). Early life of Shaykh Ṣafí. His genealogy. Portents preceding his birth. His birth and childhood. His search for a spiritual director. He finally meets Shaykh Záhid of Gílán. His life as a disciple of this holy man. His succession to the supremacy of the Order. His spiritual affiliation up to the Prophet. Characteristics and miracles of Shaykh Záhid.

Chapter II (in 3 sections). Some of the miracles of Shaykh Ṣafí, whereby he delivered men from the perils of the sea and of deep waters, of mountains, mist and snow, and from foes, bondage and sickness.

Chapter III (in 3 sections). Some of the miracles wrought by the favourable or unfavourable regards of Shaykh Ṣafí.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Chapter IV (in 6 sections, two of which are further subdivided). Some of Shaykh Ṣafí's sayings, and his explanations of verses of the *Qur'án*, traditions of the Prophet, utterances of the Saints, and allegorical verses of the poets.

Chapter V (in 3 sections). Some of Shaykh Ṣafí's miracles connected with the *Jinn*, with animals, and with inanimate objects.

Chapter VI (undivided). Ecstacies and devotional dancing of Shaykh Ṣafí.

Chapter VII (in 5 sections). Various miracles of Shaykh Ṣafí, such as thought-reading, foretelling future events, converse with the dead, etc.

Chapter VIII (in 27 sections). Further examples of the virtues, powers, pious actions, effective prayers, intuitions and views of Shaykh Ṣafí, vouched for by his son Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín.

Chapter IX (in 2 sections). Last illness and death of Shaykh Ṣafí.

Chapter X (in 3 sections). Posthumous miracles of Shaykh Ṣafí.

Chapter XI (in 3 sections). The fame and greatness of Shaykh Ṣafí and his vicars (*Khulafá*) throughout the world.

Chapter XII (in 2 sections). Miracles wrought by Shaykh Ṣafí's disciples.

Conclusion.

Characteristics of Muslim hagiographies.

That so comparatively small a portion of this voluminous work should be biographical is disappointing but not surprising, for how can those who regard themselves as belonging to the Timeless and Placeless (*Lá Makán*) be expected to trouble themselves about dates or similar details? All these hagiographies, indeed, have a similar character, and deal chiefly with the pious sayings, devout practices and supernatural achievements (*karámát*) of those whose lives they record.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

That these *karámát*[1] have an interest of their own in connection with Psychical Research has been recognised by D. B. Macdonald in his excellent book on *The Religious Attitude and Life in Islam*[2] and by Cl. Huart in his *Saints des Derviches Tourneurs*[3]. The latter classifies the psychical phenomena recorded in his original, the *Manáqibu'l-'Árifín* (composed about 718/1318, only some thirty years earlier than the *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*, which was very probably modelled on it), as follows: dreams; knowledge of future events; second sight and divination of hidden objects; thought-transference; luminosity of bodies, human and inanimate; automatic opening of closed doors; ubiquity; anaesthesia and immunity against poisons; action on material objects at a distance; production of the precious metals; abnormal muscular, digestive and sexual powers and physical enlargements of the body; shifting features and instability of countenance; apparitions; psychotherapy; replies to difficult questions; conversions to Islám; sermons to animals; vengeance of the Saints; mental alienation; protracted seclusion and fasting; talismans; sudden disappearances. Examples of all, or nearly all, of these phenomena are to be found in the *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*, while a smaller but fairly representative selection is contained in the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*, but a detailed examination of them, though not without interest and value, would be out of place in this volume. It must be noted, however, that certain aspects of these Muslim saints, as recorded by their disciples and admirers, are to Western

Psychical phenomena.

[1] The supernatural achievements of thaumaturgists are divided by Jámí (*Nafaḥátu'l-Uns*, ed. Nassau Lees, pp. 22–31) into three classes: (i) the evidential miracles of the Prophets, called *mu'jizát*; (ii) the "gifts" (*karámát*) vouchsafed by God to his saints for their greater honour; and (iii) the "wonders" (*khawáriqu'l-'ádát*) wrought by ordinary men by means of Black or White Magic.

[2] University of Chicago Press, 1909.

[3] Paris, Leroux, 1918–1922.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

minds somewhat repellent; their curses are no less effective than their blessings, and their indulgences no less remarkable than their abstentions, while grim jests on the fate of such as have incurred their displeasure are not uncommon. Thus a certain prince named Siyámak, son of Shírwánsháh, when setting out for the Mongol camp (*urdú*), spoke in a disparaging manner of Shaykh Záhid's disciples, and threatened on his return to pull down or burn their monasteries. When this was reported to the Shaykh he merely remarked, playing on the prince's name, that *Siyámak* would become *Siyáh-marg* (meaning "the Black Death"); which saying was duly fulfilled, for, having in some way incurred the wrath of the Mongol sovereign, he was, after the barbarous fashion of these people, wrapped up in black felt and kicked or trampled to death[1]. To Shaykh Záhid, on the other hand, Gházán Khán[2] the Mongol Ílkhán showed the greatest respect, especially after the saint had exhibited his powers of mind-reading, which so impressed Gházán that he insisted on kissing his feet.

Repellent characteristics of Muslim Saints.

Externally the life of Shaykh Ṣafí, especially after he became the disciple of Shaykh Záhid and settled at Ardabíl, was not very eventful. As a child he was serious, unsociable and disinclined for play. At a comparatively early age he appears to have got a "concern" about religion, and to have seen visions and held converse with the Unseen World. Finding no adequate direction in Ardabíl, and hearing the fame of Shaykh

Shaykh Ṣafí's childhood.

[1] The last 'Abbásid Caliph, al-Musta'ṣim, is said to have been put to death by Húlágú Khán in this way, the Mongols having a dislike to shedding kingly blood. So Clavijo informs us that at the court of Tímúr "the custom is that when a great man is put to death he is hanged; but the meaner sort are beheaded." See Sir Clements Markham's translation of his *Narrative*, published by the Hakluyt Society in 1859, p. 150.

[2] He reigned A.D. 1295–1304. See my *Pers. Lit. iii*, pp. 40–46.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Najíbu'd-Dín Buzghúsh of Shíráz, he desired to go thither, but, having finally overcome his mother's opposition to the journey, arrived there only to find the saint dead[1]. While at Shíráz he made the acquaintance of many notable saints and *darwíshes*, and of the celebrated poet Sa'dí, of whom, however, he seems to have formed but a poor opinion. Indeed he appears to have treated the poet with scant civility, even refusing to accept an autograph copy of his poems. Finally Ẓahíru'd-Dín, the son and successor of Shaykh Buzghúsh, told Shaykh Ṣafí that no one could satisfy his spiritual needs except Shaykh Záhid of Gílán, whose personal appearance and dwelling-place on the shore of the Caspian Sea he described to him in detail. Four years elapsed, however, ere he was successful in tracking down the elusive saint, then sixty years of age, by whom he was cordially welcomed, and with whom he spent the next twenty-five years of his life.

He meets Sa'dí.

He becomes the disciple of Shaykh Záhid of Gilán.

Shaykh Záhid's full name, as given in the *Ṣafwatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*, is Táju'd-Dín Ibráhím ibn Rawshan Amír ibn Bábil ibn Shaykh Pindár (or Bundár) al-Kurdí as-Sanjání, and the mother of his grandfather Bábil is said to have been a *Jinniyya*. The title of *Záhid* ("the Ascetic" or "Abstemious") was given to him by his Director Sayyid Jamálu'd-Dín for reasons which are variously stated. He gave his daughter Bíbí Fáṭima in marriage to Shaykh Ṣafí, to whom she bore three sons, of whom the second, Ṣadru'd-Dín, ultimately succeeded his father as head of the Order. The author of the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab* was one of his descendants, who were collectively known as *Pír-záda* and apparently continued to enjoy high consideration during the whole Ṣafawí period.

Account of Shaykh Záhid.

From the data given by the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*, viz. that

[1] According to Jámí (*Nafaḥát*, p. 548) he died in Sha'bán 678 (Dec. 1279).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Shaykh Abdál Pír-záda presenting the captured horse of the Uzbek leader, Dín Muḥammad Khán, to Sháh 'Abbás the Great

From a MS. of the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab-i-Ṣafawiyya* (H. 12, f. 80[a]) in the Library of Professor E. G. Browne

To face p. 42

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Shaykh Záhid was 35 years older than Shaykh Ṣafí, that both died at the age of 85, and that the latter died in 735/1334, we may conclude that the former died about 700/1300; and this is corroborated by the further statement that his grandson Ṣadru'd-Dín was born in 704/1305, four years after his death. Shaykh Ṣafí now became head of the Order, and held this position for 35 years, when he died[1], and was in turn succeeded by his son Ṣadru'd-Dín. He

Shaykh Záhid dies and is succeeded by Shaykh Ṣafí.

produced some poetry both in the dialect of Gílán (in which also several of his conversations with Shaykh Záhid were conducted) and likewise in ordinary Persian. Though one of his quatrains[2] testifies to his love of 'Alí ("how much soever he in whose heart is a grain of love for 'Alí may sin, God will forgive him" are his words), I find no evidence that he held those strong Shí'a views which subsequently characterised his descendants. There is, indeed, a piece of evidence to the contrary in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, an important unpublished history of the first two Ṣafawí kings composed in the reign of Sháh Ṭahmásp and including the years A.H. 901–985 (A.D. 1495–1577)[3]. In a letter of remonstrance addressed to this ruler by the Uzbek 'Ubayd Khán in 936/1529–1530 the following sentence occurs[4]:

Shaykh Ṣafí's poetry.

No evidence that he was a Shí'a.

و پدر کلان شما جناب مرحوم شیخ صفی‌را همچنین شنیده ایم که مردی عزیز اهل سُنّت و جماعت بوده مارا حیرت عظیم دست میدهد که شما نه روش حضرت مرتضی علی‌را تابعید و نه روش پدر کلان‌را'

[1] On Monday, Muḥarram 12, 735 (Sept. 12, 1334).

[2] See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, p. 403.

[3] Mr A. G. Ellis most kindly placed at my disposal his MS. of this rare book, to which all subsequent references are made.

[4] F. 166ᵃ.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"We have thus heard concerning your ancestor, His sainted Holiness Shaykh Ṣafí, that he was a good man and an orthodox Sunní, and we are greatly astonished that you neither follow the conduct of Murtaḍá 'Alí nor that of your ancestor."

Influence of Shaykh Ṣafí in Asia Minor.

He did much, however, to extend and develop the Order of which he was the Superior, and his influence is illustrated by a statement of Mawláná Shamsu'd-Dín Barníqí of Ardabíl, quoted in the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*[1], that the number of those who came to visit him along one road only—that from Maráǵha and Tabríz—in the course of three months amounted to some thirteen thousand. Many if not most of these must have come from Asia Minor, so that even at this early date the Order was establishing and consolidating itself in regions where it was afterwards destined to cause the greatest anxiety to the Ottoman Sulṭáns[2].

Ṣadru'd-Dín succeeds his father in 735/1334.

Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín succeeded his father at the age of 31 in 735/1334 and controlled the affairs of the Order for 59 years until his death in 794/1392. He also composed verses in Persian, and is besides credited with many miracles, the most celebrated of which was his recovery and restoration to Ardabíl of the door of the principal mosque which had been carried off by the Georgians when they raided that city about 600/1203–4[3]. Amongst the most celebrated of his disciples was the poet Qásimu'l-Anwár, whose orthodoxy was somewhat suspect, and who was expelled from Herát by Sháh-rukh under circumstances which I have discussed elsewhere[4]. That Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín's influence and ac-

[1] See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, pp. 403–4.

[2] Compare Dr Franz Babinger's remarks in his admirable study *Schejch Bedr ed-Dīn der Sohn des Richters von Simāw* (Berlin and Leipzig, 1921), especially p. 15 of the *Sonderabdruck*.

[3] See pp. 36–7 *supra*, and *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, pp. 406–7.

[4] *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, pp. 473–486 and pp. 365–6. I must here note an error into which I fell concerning the

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

tivities also aroused the suspicions of neighbouring potentates is shown by the action of Malik-i-Ashraf, who lured him to Tabríz and kept him in confinement there for three months, when, warned by a dream, he released him, but subsequently attempted to recapture him and compelled him to flee into Gílán. Other holy and learned men suffered at the hands of this tyrant, and one of them, the Qáḍí Muḥyi'd-Dín of Barda'a, depicted in such vivid colours the odious oppression of Malik-i-Ashraf to Jání Beg Khán son of Uzbek, the ruler of the Dasht-i-Qipcháq, that the latter invaded Ádharbáyján, defeated Malik-i-Ashraf, and put him to death. According to the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*[1] he also had an interview with Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín, treated him with great respect, and confirmed to him the possession of certain estates whereof the revenues had formerly been allocated to the shrine at Ardabíl.

His influence arouses jealousy.

Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín, like his father Shaykh Ṣafí, performed the pilgrimage to Mecca at the end of his life, and is said to have brought back with him to Ardabíl the Prophet's standard. Shortly after his return he died, in 794/1392, and was succeeded by his son Khwája 'Alí, who controlled the affairs of the Order for thirty-six years until his death on Rajab 18, 830 (May 15, 1427). This happened in Palestine, where he is buried, his tomb being known as that of "Sayyid 'Alí 'Ajamí[2]." Like his father and grandfather he

Ṣadru'd-Dín is succeeded in 794/1392 by his son Khwája 'Alí.

verses of Qásim quoted on p. 474. These obviously refer not to Shaykh Ṣafí but to his son Ṣadru'd-Dín, who actually lived exactly ninety years (A.H. 704–794). The word نقد in l. 1 probably needs emendation to some word (like نجل) meaning "son"; in any case this is its meaning here. The translation should run: "The Ṣadr of Saintship, who is the son [or survivor or representative] of Shaykh Ṣafí," etc.

[1] See d'Ohsson's *Histoire des Mongols*, vol. iv, pp. 740–2.

[2] *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, pp. 405–6.

[3] See *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, p. 407. Dr Franz Babinger wrote to

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

was a worker of miracles and a poet, and over two hundred of his Persian verses are quoted in the *Silsilatu'n-Nasab.* In him strong Shí'a tendencies reveal themselves: instigated by the Ninth Imám Muḥammad Taqí in a dream he converts the people of Dizful, by a miraculous stoppage of their river, to a belief in and recognition of the supreme holiness of 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib; and he exhorts Tímúr, whose regard he had succeeded in winning by a display of his psychical powers, to "chastise, as they deserve, the Yazídí Kurds, the friends of Mu'áwiya, because of whom we wear the black garb of mourning for the Immaculate Imáms[1]." More celebrated is his intercession with Tímúr on behalf of a number of Turkish prisoners (*asírán-i-Rúm*) whose release he secured, and whose grateful descendants, known as "the Turkish Ṣúfís" (*Ṣúfiyán-i-Rúmlú*), became the most devoted adherents and supporters of the Ṣafawí family[2].

me in a private letter: "*Quds-i-Khalíl* ist vielmehr *al-Quds wa'l-Khalíl*, d.h. Jerusalem und Hebron, eine häufige Bezeichnung für Südpalästina." This is confirmed by the Rev. Canon J. E. Hanauer, to whom Dr Babinger wrote about this matter, and who kindly endeavoured to identify this tomb. His very interesting letter is too long to quote in full. "The Arab historian Mejd ed-Dín," he says, "who wrote about A.D. 1495, *i.e.* seventy years later [than Khwája 'Alí's death], gives a list of the most renowned Shaykhs buried at Hebron, but does not mention 'Alí 'Ajamí. We must therefore look for the shrine elsewhere. Four different places of note suggest themselves." These are (1) the *Ḥaram* of 'Alí ibn 'Alawí 2½ hours north of Jaffa; (2) the Walí of al-'Ajamí, just south of Jaffa; (3) a sacred oak-grove with the shrine of "the Imám 'Alí" near the Báb-el-Wad; and (4) another very holy shrine of al-'Ajamí, on the hill above the village of Bayt Maḥsír, amidst woods and thickets. Canon Hanauer is inclined to think that the last is most probably the tomb in question.

[1] *J.R.A.S.* for July, 1921, p. 408.

[2] See Sir John Malcolm's *History of Persia* (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 496–7 and footnotes. The ascription of this act of intercession to Shaykh Ṣadru'd-Dín and still more to his father Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín is an anachronism.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Shaykh Ibráhím, better known as Shaykh Sháh, succeeded his father in 830/1427 and died in 851/1447–8. Little is recorded of him save the names of his six sons, and he is even omitted entirely in the succession by the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*. He was succeeded by his youngest son Shaykh Junayd, with whom the militant character of the family first asserted itself. He visited Diyár Bakr and won the favour of Úzún Ḥasan, the celebrated ruler of the "White Sheep" Dynasty, who bestowed on him the hand of his sister Khadíja in marriage. This alliance, combined with the assembly round his standard of ten thousand Ṣúfí warriors (*ghuzát-i-Ṣúfiyya*), "who deemed the risking of their lives in the path of their perfect Director the least of the degrees of devotion[1]," aroused the alarm of Jahánsháh, the Turkmán ruler of Ádharbáyján and the two 'Iráqs, and other neighbouring princes, and Shaykh Junayd fell in battle against Shírwán-sháh[2]. His body, according to one account, was brought to Ardabíl and there buried, but according to others it was buried near the battle-field at a village variously called Quryál, Qarúyál or Qúriyán.

Shaykh Ḥaydar (the "Sechaidar" of Angiolello), like his father Junayd, whom he succeeded, found favour in the eyes of the now aged Úzún Ḥasan, his maternal uncle, who gave him in marriage his daughter Marta, Ḥalíma, Bakí Áqá or 'Álam-sháh Begum, whose mother, the celebrated Despina Khátún ("Despinacaton"), was the daughter of Kalo Ioannes, the last Christian Emperor of Trebizond, of the noble Greek family of the Comneni[3]. The anonymous Venetian merchant whose narrative is included in the *Italian travels in Persia in the*

Shaykh Sháh, A.H. 830–851 (A.D. 1427–1447)

Shaykh Junayd (A.D. 1447–1456)

Shaykh Ḥaydar (A.D. 1456–1488)

[1] These particulars are from the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*.

[2] In 860/1456 according to Babinger, *op. cit.*, p. 83.

[3] See *Pers. Lit. iii*, p. 407.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

fifteenth and sixteenth centuries[1] describes him as "a lord about the rank of a count, named Secaidar, of a religion or sect named Sophi, reverenced by his co-religionists as a saint and obeyed as a chief. There are," he continues, "numbers of them in different parts of Persia, as in Natolia (Anatolia) and Caramania (Qaramán), all of whom bore great respect to this Secaidar, who was a native of this city of Ardouil (Ardabíl or Ardawíl), where he had converted many to the Suffavean (Ṣafawí) doctrine. Indeed he was like the abbot of a nation of monks; he had six children, three boys[2] and three girls, by a daughter of Assambei (Ḥasan Bey, *i.e.* Úzún Ḥasan); he also bore an intense hatred to the Christians." He it was who, divinely instructed in a dream, bade his followers adopt in place of the Turkmán cap (*ṭáqiya-i-Turkmání*) the scarlet cap of twelve gores (*Táj-i-duwázda tark*)[3] from which they became universally known as "Red Heads" (*Qizil-básh* in Turkish; *Surkh-sar* in Persian). "They are accustomed," says the anonymous Venetian merchant cited above (p. 206 of the *Italian Travels*), "to wear a red caftan, and above that a high conical turban made with a dozen folds, representing the twelve sacraments of their sect, or the twelve descendants of 'Alí[4]."

Origin of the term *Qizil-básh*.

Shaykh Ḥaydar, like his father, fell in battle against the hosts of Shírwánsháh and his Turkmán allies at Ṭabarsarán near Darband. Twenty-two years later his death was

[1] Translated and edited by Charles Grey and published by the Hakluyt Society in 1873, pp. 139–207.

[2] These were Sulṭán 'Alí Mírzá (or Pádisháh), Isma'íl, and Ibráhím, according to the *Ta'rikh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, but they are differently given in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*.

[3] See the late Sir A. Houtum-Schindler's note on this in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1897, pp. 114–115. For a long note on *Qizil-básh*, see Babinger's *Schejch Bedr ed-Dīn*, pp. 84–5 of the *Sonderabdruck*.

[4] This, of course, is an error, for the Twelve Imáms include 'Alí, who was the first of them and was succeeded by eleven of his descendants.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

avenged and his body recovered and brought to Ardabíl by his redoutable son Sháh Isma'íl, who was at this time (Rajab 20, 893 : June 30, 1488)[1] only a year old.

Shaykh Haydar killed in battle in 893/1488.

SHÁH ISMA'ÍL

(Born 892/1487; *crowned* 905/1499–1500; *died* 930/1523–4.)

Nothing could appear more unpromising than the position of the three little sons of Shaykh Ḥaydar, who were for the moment entirely at the mercy of their father's enemies. Sulṭán Ya'qúb, the son of Úzún Ḥasan, however, shrank from killing them for the sake of their mother, who was his sister, and contented himself with exiling them to Iṣṭakhr in Fárs, where they were placed in the custody of the governor Manṣúr Beg Parnák. According to Angiolello[2], however, the three boys were confined on an island in the "Lake of Astumar" (identified by the translator with Lake Van) inhabited by Armenian Christians, where they remained for three years and became "very much beloved, especially Ismael, the second, for his beauty and pleasing manners," so that when Rustam, the grandson of Úzún Ḥasan, after the death of his uncle Ya'qúb, sent a message to demand their surrender, intending to put them to death, the Armenians not only made excuses for not giving them up but enabled them to escape by boat to the "country of Carabas" (Qará-bágh). In the Persian accounts, however, Rustam is credited with their release from Iṣṭakhr, because, being at war with his cousin Bay-sunqur, he thought to strengthen himself by an alliance with them and their numerous devoted followers. He accordingly invited the eldest brother Sulṭán 'Alí to Tabríz,

Isma'íl and his two brothers.

[1] According to the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl represented by **Add. 200** of the Cambridge University Library, however, Shaykh Ḥaydar was killed in 895/1490.

[2] Pp. 101–2 of the Hakluyt Society's translation by Charles Grey.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

received him with much honour, conferred on him all the paraphernalia of sovereignty and the title of *Pádisháh*, and despatched him to attack Baysunqur, whom he defeated and slew in a battle near Ahar. Having thus got rid of his rival, Rustam sought to rid himself of his ally, who, warned by one of his Turkmán disciples, fled to Ardabíl, but was overtaken by his enemies at the neighbouring village of Shamásí and killed in the ensuing skirmish in the year 900/1494–5[1]. His two brothers, however, reached Ardabíl in safety, and were concealed by their faithful followers during the house-to-house search instituted by the Turkmáns, until an opportunity presented itself of conveying them secretly into Gílán, first to Rasht, where they remained for a short period, estimated at anything from seven to thirty days, and then to Láhiján, the ruler of which place, Kár-kiyá Mírzá 'Alí, accorded them hospitality and protection for several years. It is related that on one occasion when their Turkmán foes came to look for them he caused them to be suspended in a cage in the woods so as to enable him to swear that they had no foothold on his territory.

Isma'íl's brother Sulṭán 'Alí is killed.

Isma'íl in hiding in Láhiján.

To the valour and devotion of Isma'íl's disciples, the "Ṣúfís of Láhiján," contemporary European writers testify as forcibly as the Persian historians. "This Sophi," says the anonymous Italian merchant[2], "is loved and reverenced by his people as a

Devotion of Isma'íl's followers.

[1] The following portion of this account, taken from the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl mentioned in n. 1 on p. 15 above, has been published with translation by Sir E. Denison Ross in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1896 (vol. xxviii), pp. 264–283.

[2] P. 206 of the Hakluyt Society's *Travels of Venetians in Persia* (London, 1873). See also p. 223 of the same volume, where Vincentio d'Alessandri speaks in similar terms of the devotion of his subjects to Ṭahmásp, the son and successor of Isma'íl. Most of this passage has been already quoted on p. 23 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

god, and especially by his soldiers, many of whom enter into battle without armour, expecting their master Ismael to watch over them in the fight....The name of God is forgotten throughout Persia and only that of Ismael remembered." "The Suffaveans fought like lions" is a phrase which repeatedly occurs in the pages of the Venetian travellers. Yet for all this, and the numbers and wide ramifications of the Order ("from the remotest West to the limits of Balkh and Bukhárá," says the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl, speaking of the days of his grandfather Junayd), it is doubtful if their astounding successes would have been possible in the first instance but for the bitter internecine feuds of the ruling "White Sheep" dynasty after the death of the great and wise Úzún Ḥasan in A.D. 1478, from which time onwards their history is a mere welter of fratricidal warfare.

Isma'íl was only thirteen years of age when he set out from the seclusion of Láhiján on his career of conquest.

Isma'íl at the age of thirteen sets out on his career of conquest.

He was accompanied at first by only seven devoted "Ṣúfís," but, as he advanced by way of Ṭárum and Khalkhál to Ardabíl, he was reinforced at every stage by brave and ardent disciples, many from Syria and Asia Minor[1]. Ordered to leave Ardabíl by the Turkmán Sulṭán 'Alí Beg Chákarlú, he retired for a while to Arjawán near Astárá on the Caspian Sea, where he amused himself with fishing, of which he was very fond; but in the spring of A.D. 1500 he was back at Ardabíl, having rallied round him a goodly army of the seven Turkish tribes who constituted the backbone of the

[1] Cf. *Pers. Lit. iii*, p. 417. So the rare history of Sháh Isma'íl (Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 27ᵃ):

در عرض راه ارباب جلادت و صوفیان پاك طینت از روی عقیدت در هر منزلی از منازل از طوائف روم و شام بموکب عالی می پیوستند،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Ṣafawí military power[1]. He now felt himself strong enough to embark on a holy war against the Georgian "infidels" and a war of revenge against Farrukh-Yasár, king of Shírwán, whom he defeated and killed near Gulistán. He decapitated and burned the corpse, built a tower of his enemies' heads, destroyed the tombs of the Shírwánsháhs, and exhumed and burned the remains of the last king, Khalíl, who had killed his grandfather Shaykh Junayd. The noble dynasty thus extinguished claimed descent from the great Sásánian king Anúsharwán (Núshírwán), and numbered amongst them the patron of the famous panegyrist Kháqání.

Isma'íl defeats and kills Farrukh-Yasár, king of Shírwán, 906/1500.

Having captured Baku (*Bádkúya*, *Bádkúba*) Isma'íl, advised in a dream by the Imáms, decided to raise the siege of Gulistán and march on Ádharbáyján. Alwand and his "White Sheep" Turkmáns endeavoured to arrest his advance, but were utterly defeated at the decisive battle of Shurúr with great slaughter. Alwand fled to Arzinján, while Isma'íl entered Tabríz in triumph and was there crowned King of Persia. Henceforth, therefore, we shall speak of him as Sháh Isma'íl, but by the Persian historians he is often entitled *Kháqán-i-Iskandar-shán* ("the Prince like unto Alexander in state"), as his son and successor Sháh Ṭahmásp is called *Sháh-i-Dín-panáh* ("the King who is the Refuge of Religion").

Battle of Shurúr. Isma'íl is crowned at Tabríz. 907/1501-2.

Already Sháh Isma'íl and his partisans had given ample proof of their strong Shí'a convictions. Their battle-cry on the day they slew Shírwánsháh was *Alláh! Alláh! wa 'Alí waliyyu'lláh* (God! God! and 'Alí is the Friend of God!")[2], while Alwand was offered peace if he would

[1] These were the Shámlú, Rúmlú, Ustájlú, Takallú, Dhu'l-Qadar, Afshár and Qájár. From the two last respectively there arose in later days Nádir Sháh and the present Royal House of Persia.

[2] Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 35[b].

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

embrace this doctrine and pronounce this formula[1]. But now Sháh Isma'íl resolved that, with his assumption of the kingly rank, the Shí'a faith should become not merely the State religion but the only tolerated creed. This decision caused anxiety even to some of the Shí'a divines of Tabríz, who, on the night preceding Isma'íl's coronation, represented to him that of the two or three hundred thousand inhabitants of that city at least two-thirds were Sunnís; that the Shí'a formula had not been publicly uttered from the pulpit since the time of the Imáms themselves; and that if the majority of the people refused to accept a Shí'a ruler, it would be difficult to deal with the situation which would then arise. To this Sháh Isma'íl replied, "I am committed to this action; God and the Immaculate Imáms are with me, and I fear no one; by God's help, if the people utter one word of protest, I will draw the sword and leave not one of them alive[2]." Nor did he content himself with glorifying 'Alí and his descendants, but ordained the public cursing of the first three Caliphs of the Sunnís, Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán, and that all who heard the cursing should respond

Energetic measures adopted by Sháh Isma'íl to propagate the Shí'a doctrine.

The cursing of the first three Caliphs instituted.

[1] **Add. 200** of the Cambridge University Library, f. 40.

[2] *Ibid.*, f. 44[b]. The text of this important passage, to which reference has been already made (p. 22 *supra*), runs as follows:

قربانت شویم دویست سیصد هزار خلق که در تبریزست چهار دانگ آن همه سُنّی اند و از زمان حضرات تا حال این خطبه‌را کسی بر ملا نخوانده و میترسیم که مردم بگویند که پادشاه شیعه نمیخواهیم و نعوذ بالله اگر رعیّت بر گردند چه تدارك درین باب توان کرد' پادشاه فرمودند که مرا باین کار باز داشته اند و خدای عالم با حضرات ائمّه معصومین همراه منند و من از هیچ کس باك ندارم بتوفیق الله تعالی اگر رعیّت حرفی بگویند شمشیر میکشم و یك کس‌را زنده نمیگذارم'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"May it be more, not less!" (*Bísh bád, kam ma-bád!*) or suffer death in case of refusal.

Immediately after his coronation, according to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*[1], he ordered all preachers (*Khuṭabá*) throughout his realms to introduce the distinctively Shí'a formulae "I bear witness that 'Alí is the Friend of God" and "hasten to the best of deeds" (*ḥayya ila khayri'l-'amal*) into the profession of Faith and the call to Prayer respectively; which formulae had been in abeyance since Ṭughril Beg the Saljúq had put to flight and slain al-Basásírí five hundred and twenty-eight years previously[2]. He also instituted the public cursing of Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán in the streets and markets, as above mentioned, threatening recalcitrants with decapitation. Owing to the dearth of Shí'a theological works the religious instruction of the people necessitated by the change of doctrine presented great difficulties, but finally the Qáḍí Naṣru'lláh Zaytúní produced from his library the first volume of the *Qawá'idu'l-Islám* ("Rules of Islám") of Shaykh Jamálu'd-Dín...ibn 'Alí ibnu'l-Muṭahhir al-Ḥillí[3], which served as a basis of instruction "until day by day the Sun of Truth of the Doctrine of the Twelve [Imáms]

Rigorous enforcement of Shí'a doctrine.

[1] F. 44 of Mr A. G. Ellis's manuscript.

[2] See Weil's *Geschichte der Chalifen*, vol. iii, pp. 92–102. Al-Basásírí was the Commander-in-chief of the troops of the Buwayhid al-Maliku'r-Raḥím. He espoused the cause of the Fáṭimid Caliph al-Mustanṣir and attempted to depose the 'Abbásid Caliph al-Qá'im. He was killed on Dhu'l-Qa'da 6, 451 (Dec. 14, 1059). Since Isma'íl was crowned in 907/1501–2, we must understand "previously" as referring not to this event, but to the composition of the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, or rather this portion of it, for it extends to the year 985/1577, while the date we require is 979/1571–2 (451 + 528 = 979).

[3] The name is defective in the MS., but most closely resembles this. Such a writer is mentioned towards the end of the fifth *Majlis* of the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín*, but he has no work bearing precisely this name. It is possible that the popular *Sharáyi'u'l-Islám* of another al-Ḥillí is intended. See Rieu's *Arabic Supplement*, p. 212.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

increased its altitude, and all parts and regions of the world became illuminated by the dawning effulgences of the Path of Verification."

Of the anger and alarm aroused by these proceedings in the neighbouring kingdoms, and especially in the Ottoman Empire, we shall have to speak presently, but first we may with advantage give from the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*[1] the list of potentates in Persia itself who at this time claimed sovereign power: (1) Sháh Isma'íl in Ádharbáyján; (2) Sulṭán Murád in most of 'Iráq; (3) Murád Beg Báyandarí in Yazd; (4) Ra'ís Muḥammad Karra (?كره) in Abarqúh; (5) Ḥusayn Kiyá-yi-Chaláwí in Samnán, Khwár and Fírúzkúh; (6) Bárík Parnák in 'Iráq-i-'Arab; (7) Qásim Beg ibn Jahángír Beg ibn 'Alí Beg in Diyár Bakr; (8) Qáḍí Muḥammad in conjunction with Mawláná Mas'úd in Káshán; (9) Sulṭán Ḥusayn Mírzá (the Tímúrid) in Khurásán; (10) Amír Dhu'n-Nún in Qandahár; (11) Badí'u'z-Zamán Mírzá (the Tímúrid) in Balkh; and (12) Abu'l-Fatḥ Beg Báyandarí in Kirmán.

Rival rulers in Persia at this time, 907/1501–2.

Many of these petty rulers (*Mulúku't-Ṭawá'if*) were quite insignificant, and several of them I cannot even identify.

None of them long stood in Sháh Isma'íl's victorious path. His old enemy Alwand of the "White Sheep" dynasty suffered a decisive defeat at his hands in the summer of A.D. 1503, and died a year or so later at Diyár Bakr or Baghdád[2]. His brother Murád was defeated and Shíráz occupied about the same time, and

Isma'íl disposes of his minor rivals.

stern punishment overtook the Sunní doctors of Kázarún, many of whom were put to death, while the tombs and foundations of their predecessors were destroyed[3]. The words *Raḥmatun li'l-'Ála-*

Sunní doctors put to death at Kázarún.

[1] F. 45 of Mr Ellis's MS.

[2] According to contemporary European accounts he was put to death in cold blood by Isma'íl. See p. 62 *infra*.

[3] Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 55.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

mín ("a Mercy to the Worlds") were found, not very appropriately from an impartial point of view, to give the date 909 (A.D. 1503–4) of this event; while the equivalent chronogram *Shaltáq-i-Sipáhí* ("Military Coercion") was observed by the poets and wits of Fárs to commemorate in like manner the appointment by Sháh Isma'íl of his captain Ilyás Beg Dhu'l-Qadar as governor of Shíráz. Káshán, always a stronghold of the Shí'a[1], received Isma'íl with enthusiasm, and he held a great reception at the beautiful suburb of Fín. Thence he passed to the holy city of Qum, intending, apparently, to winter there, but hearing that Ilyás Beg, one of his most trusted officers, "a Ṣúfí of pure disposition and right belief[2]," had been murdered by Ḥusayn Kiyá-yi-Chaláwí, he marched out on February 25, 1504, to avenge him. Three weeks later he was at Astarábád, where he was met by Muḥammad Muḥsin Mírzá, the son of the Tímúrid Sulṭán Ḥusayn Mírzá, and, having attacked and destroyed the fortresses of Gulkhandán and Fírúzkúh, he reduced the stronghold of Ustá by cutting off the water-supply, massacred the garrison (ten thousand souls, according to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*), and took captive the wretched Ḥusayn Kiyá, whom he confined in an iron cage, but who succeeded in inflicting on himself a wound which in a few days proved mortal[3]. Still more unfortunate was Ra'ís Muḥammad Karra of Abarqúh, who rebelled and took possession of the ancient city of Yazd. Him also Sháh Isma'íl confined in a cage, and smeared his body with honey so that the wasps tormented him until he was finally burned alive in the *maydán* of Iṣfahán.

Cruel treatment of captives.

[1] See the *Ráḥatu'ṣ-Ṣudúr*, ed. Muḥammad Iqbál ("E. J. W. Gibb Memorial," New Series, vol. ii, 1921), p. 30.

[2] آن صوفی صافی نهاد پاك اعتقاد

[3] According to Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library (f. 61) the body was conveyed to Iṣfahán and there blown to pieces in the *maydán* with gunpowder.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

About the same time an embassy came from the Ottoman Sulṭán Báyazíd II (A.D. 1481–1512) to offer "suitable gifts and presents" and congratulations on Sháh Isma'íl's conquest of 'Iráq and Fárs. They were dismissed with robes of honour and assurances of Isma'íl's friendly sentiments, but were compelled to witness several executions, including, perhaps, that of the philosopher and judge Mír Ḥusayn-i-Maybudí[1], whose chief offence seems to have been that he was a "fanatical Sunní." Persian kings were disposed to take this means of impressing foreign envoys with their "justice"; Clavijo relates a similar procedure on the part of Tímúr[2], and Sháh Isma'íl's son and successor Ṭahmásp sought to impress and intimidate Humáyún's ambassador Bayrám Beg by putting to death in his presence a number of heretics[3]. To the Turkish envoys it would naturally be particularly disagreeable to witness the execution of a learned Sunní doctor by those whom they regarded as detestable schismatics.

Turkish Embassy from Sulṭán Báyazíd II.

Of the increasingly strained relations between Turkey and Persia, culminating in the Battle of Cháldirán (August, 1514), we shall have to speak very shortly, but we must first conclude our brief survey of Sháh Isma'íl's career of conquest. To describe in detail his incessant military activities would be impossible in a work of the scope and character of this book, and only the barest summary is possible.

During the years A.H. 911–915 (A.D. 1506–1510) Sháh Isma'íl was for the most part busy in the West. He first entered Hamadán and visited the tomb of the Imám-záda Sahl 'Alí. A serious revolt

Isma'íl's conquest in the West, A.D. 1506–1510.

1 His commentary on the *Hidáya* is still the favourite text-book for beginners in philosophy. See also Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, vol. ii, p. 210, and Rieu, *B.M.P.C.*, p. 1077.

2 *Embassy to the Court of Timour, A.D. 1403–6*, published by the Hakluyt Society, 1859, pp. 149–150.

3 W. Erskine's *History of India*, etc. (London, 1854), vol. ii, p. 281.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

of the "Yazídí" Kurds[1] next demanded his attention. Their leader, Shír Ṣárim, was defeated and captured in a bloody battle wherein several important officers of Sháh Isma'íl lost their lives. To their relatives the Kurdish prisoners were surrendered to be put to death "with torments worse than which there may not be." War was next waged against the conjoined forces of Sulṭán Murád, the thirteenth[2] and last of the "White Sheep" dynasty, and 'Alá'u'd-Dawla Dhu'l-Qadar (the "Aliduli" of the Italian travellers of this period), who, refusing Isma'íl's proposal that he should "set his tongue in motion with the goodly word *'Alí is the Friend of God*, and curse the enemies of the Faith" (to wit, the first three Caliphs), appealed for help to the Ottoman Turks. Sháh Isma'íl, however, was not to be denied, and successively captured Diyár Bakr, Akhláṭ, Bitlís, Arjísh, and finally in 914/1508 Baghdád itself, whereby he obtained possession of the Holy Shrines of Karbalá and Najaf, so dear to Shí'a hearts, where he hastened to offer prayers and thanksgivings. At Ḥuwayza he showed that, ardent Shí'a as he was, he would not tolerate the exaggerated veneration of 'Alí characteristic of the *Ghulát*, represented there by certain Arabs called *Musha'shi'*, who venerated 'Alí as God, and, invoking his name, would cast themselves on sharp swords without

Baghdád taken in A.D. 1508.

Shí'a *Ghulát* punished at Ḥuwayza.

[1] "All the Curds," says the anonymous Italian merchant (p. 157), "are truer Mahometans than the other inhabitants of Persia, since the Persians have embraced the Suffavean doctrine, while the Curds would not be converted to it: and though they wear the red caftans, yet in their hearts they bear a deadly hatred to them."

[2] They are thus enumerated in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* (f. 109[b] of Mr Ellis's MS.): (1) Qará 'Uthmán; (2) 'Ali Beg; (3) Sulṭán Ḥamza; (4) Jahángír Mírzá (these four ruled over Diyár Bakr only); (5) Úzún Ḥasan; (6) Khalíl; (7) Ya'qúb; (8) Báysunghur; (9) Rustam; (10) Aḥmad Beg; (11) Muḥammadí Mírzá; (12) Alwand Mírzá; (13) Sulṭán Murád.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

sustaining injury, after the fashion of the modern *'Isáwiyya* of North Africa. Their leader, Mír Sulṭán Muḥsin, died about this time, and was succeeded by his son Sulṭán Fayyáḍ, who claimed for himself divine honours[1]. Sháh Isma'íl ruthlessly suppressed these heretics, and proceeded to Dizful and Shúshtar, receiving the submission of the Lur chieftain Sháh Rustam, who won his favour by "the utterance of prayer and praise in the Lurí tongue with extreme sweetness." Thence Sháh Isma'íl made his way eastwards to Fárs, encamped for a while at Dárábjird, and organised a great hunting expedition, of which the special object was a kind of mountain goat which yields the "animal antidote" (*pádzahr-i-ḥaywání*)[2]. He also put to death the Qáḍí Muḥammad-i-Káshí, who held the high ecclesiastical office of *Ṣadr*, and replaced him by the Sayyid-i-Sharíf of Astarábád, who was descended on his mother's side from the celebrated Jurjání. He further erected at Qaṣr-i-Zar a mausoleum in memory of his brother Sulṭán Aḥmad Mírzá, who had died there, and, under the title of *Najm-i-Thání* ("the Second Star"), appointed Amír Yár Aḥmad-i-Khúzání of Iṣfahán to succeed "the First Star," Amír Najmu'd-Dín Mas'úd of Rasht, who had recently died and been buried at Najaf. The poet Ummídí celebrated this appointment in a very ingenious and sonorous *qaṣída* beginning:

Submission of Luristán.

Doings in Fárs.

زهی جوهرت گوهرِ آسمانی، توئی عقلِ اوّل توئی نجمِ ثانی،
رواقِ حرم را تو رکنِ عراقی، عراقِ عجم را سُهیلِ یمانی،

[1] Add. 200, Camb. Univ. Lib., f. 83ᵃ:

و آن کافر مردود دعوی الوهیّت کرده قوم مشعشع حالا بالوهیّت فیّاض .. قایل اند،

[2] In this hunting expedition 56,700 head of game are said to have been killed.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

From Fárs Sháh Isma'íl marched into Shírwán (where Shaykh Sháh, the son of Farrukh-Yasár, had re-established himself), recovered the body of his father Shaykh Ḥaydar and conveyed it to Ardabíl for burial, as already related, and took Darband.

Attacks Shírwán.

So far Sháh Isma'íl had been chiefly occupied in putting down minor princes and pretenders and in consolidating his power in Persia, of which he had to the West and North-West greatly enlarged the territories, and had almost restored the ancient frontiers of Sásánian times. Hitherto he had hardly come into conflict with the two powerful enemies who were destined to give so much trouble to himself and his successors, to wit the Uzbeks of Central Asia and the Ottoman Turks. Of his relations with these formidable rivals we must now speak, but, before doing so, a few more words may be said of Sháh Isma'íl's character and appearance. As usual, a much more vivid picture of these is given by contemporary travellers than by his own countrymen, though his courage, energy, cruelty and restless activity are sufficiently apparent in the Persian chronicles of his reign. At the age of thirteen, when he began his career of conquest, he was, according to Caterino Zeno[1], "of noble presence and a truly royal bearing, as in his eyes there was something, I know not what, so great and commanding, which plainly showed that he would yet some day become a great ruler. Nor did the virtues of his mind disaccord with the beauty of his person, as he had an elevated genius, and such a lofty idea of things as seemed incredible at such a tender age....He had vigour of mind, quickness of perception, and a personal valour... never yet...equalled by any of his contemporaries." Angio-

Two powerful external enemies, the Uzbeks and Ottomans.

Sháh Isma'íl's appearance and character as depicted by contempotary European travellers.

[1] *Narrative of Italian Travels in Persia* (Hakluyt Society, London, 1873), pp. 46–8. See p. 22 *supra*, where part of this passage has been already cited.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

lello[1] speaks of "his beauty and pleasing manners" when he was a child, and relates[2] how, in his campaign against 'Alá'u'd-Dawla ("Alidoli"), "he supplied himself with provisions, paying for everything, and proclaiming abroad that everyone might bring supplies to the camp for sale, and that anyone taking anything without paying for it would be put to death." "This Sophi," he says a little further on[3], "is fair, handsome, and very pleasing; not very tall, but of a light and well-framed figure; rather stout than slight, with broad shoulders. His hair is reddish; he only wears moustachios, and uses his left hand instead of his right. He is as brave as a game-cock, and stronger than any of his lords; in the archery contests, out of the ten apples that are knocked down, he knocks down seven; while he is at his sport they play on various instruments and sing his praises." "He is almost worshipped," he remarks in another place[4], "more especially by his soldiers, many of whom fight without armour, being willing to die for their master. While I was in Tauris [Tabríz] I heard that the king is displeased with this adoration, and being called God." The anonymous merchant describes him[5] at the age of thirty-one as "Very handsome, of a magnanimous countenance, and about middle height; he is fair, stout, and with broad shoulders, his beard is shaved and he only wears a moustache, not appearing to be a very heavy man. He is as amiable as a girl, left-handed by nature, is as lively as a fawn, and stronger than any of his lords. In the archery trials at the apple he is so expert that of every ten he hits six." The same writer, on the other hand, after describing his massacre of Alwand's soldiers, of the male and female kinsmen of Sulṭán Ya'qúb, of three

[1] *Narrative of Italian Travels in Persia*, p. 102 and p. 22 *supra*.
[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 109 and 196, and p. 23 *supra*.
[3] *Ibid.*, p. 111. See pp. 22–3 *supra*.
[4] *Ibid.*, p. 115.
[5] *Ibid.*, p. 202. Part of this passage has been already quoted on p. 23 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

hundred courtezans of Tabríz, of "eight hundred avaricious Blasi[1]" who had been brought up under Alumut [*i.e.* Alwand], of "all the dogs in Tauris," and of his own mother [or step-mother], concludes, "From the time of Nero to the present, I doubt whether so bloodthirsty a tyrant has ever existed." He presented, in short, the strangest blend of antithetical qualities; and we are alternately attracted by his personal charm, his unquestionable valour, generosity and—within certain limits—justice, and repelled by actions, such as those recorded above, revealing a savagery remarkable even in that cruel and bloodthirsty age. His courage was shown not only on the field of battle but in the chase. Hearing after his conquest and occupation of Baghdád of a singularly fierce man-eating lion which had its lair in a thicket and terrified the inhabitants of the neighbourhood, he insisted, in spite of all remonstrances, in destroying it single-handed with the bow he knew so well how to use[2]. At the age of thirteen he had already slain a fierce bear in like manner in a cave near Arzinján[3]. When "immense treasures" fell into his hands on the capture of one of the Caspian ports, "he divided them amongst his men, keeping nothing for himself[4]." Yet the same traveller who reports this instance of generosity and political foresight (for in consequence of it "he was joined by numbers, even those who were not Suffaveans flocking to his standard in hopes of receiving gifts of this nature from the valiant Ismael") describes how the Sháh with his own hand cut off the head of the unfortunate young prince "Alumut[5]," captured by treachery, whom he himself had seen bound in chains in a tent; and tells of even darker deeds wrought at Tabríz on the occasion of the Sháh's

[1] I am at a loss to explain this word.
[2] *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* (Ellis MS.), f. 74[b].
[3] *Ibid.*, f. 26. [4] *Travels of a Merchant*, p. 188.
[5] *Ibid.*, pp. 197–8. The *Ḥabíbu's-Siyar* and other Persian histories, however, represent Alwand as dying a natural death. *Cf.* p. 55 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

second entry into that city in A.D. 1520[1]. Towards the Sunnís he showed himself ruthless, sparing neither eminent divines like the learned Farídu'd-Dín Aḥmad, a grandson of the celebrated scholar Sa'du'd-Dín-i-Taftázání, who for thirty years had held the office of Shaykhu'l-Islám in Herát[2], nor witty poets like Banná'í, who perished in the massacre of Qarshí in 918/1512. But perhaps the most conspicuous instance of a ferocity which pursued his foes even after their death was his treatment of the body of his old enemy Muḥammad Khán Shaybání, or Shaybak, the Uzbek, of which we shall have to speak very shortly.

Ruthless repression of Sunnís.

It has already been stated that the foreign relations of Sháh Isma'íl, after he had cleared Persia of the "White Sheep" and other rivals for the sceptre of that ancient kingdom, were chiefly with three Powers, the Tímúrids, who still kept a precarious hold on Herát and portions of Khurásán and Central Asia; the formidable Uzbeks of Transoxiana; and the Ottoman Turks. With the last two, rigid Sunnís in both cases, the relations of Persia were, and continued to be, uniformly hostile; with the Tímúrids, themselves menaced by the Uzbeks, comparatively friendly and at times even cordial. The aged Sulṭán Ḥusayn ibn Bayqará, whose brilliant and luxurious court at Herát was so famous a centre of literature and art[3], is reckoned amongst the rulers who, with less success than Sháh Isma'íl, endeavoured to replace the Sunní by the Shí'a doctrine in their dominions[4]; and Bábur, whether

Foreign relations of Persia at this period.

[1] *Travels of a Merchant*, p. 207.

[2] He was put to death in Ramaḍán, 916/December, 1510.

[3] See Dr F. R. Martin's *Miniature Paintings and Painters of Persia* etc., pp. 35–6.

[4] See *Lit. Hist. Pers. iii*, p. 456, and Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 45[b], which places this attempt in the year 873/1468–9.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

from conviction or policy, showed enough partiality towards the Shí'a faction to cause grave disaffection amongst his Central Asian Sunní subjects[1]. There existed, then, in this case no such essential cause of enmity as in the two others, while a common hatred of Shaybání Khán and his redoutable Uzbeks naturally tended to unite Bábur to Isma'íl.

Shaybání or Shaybak Khán and the Uzbeks.

It is beyond the scope of this work to enter into a detailed account of the decline of the Tímúrid and the rise of the Uzbek power, of which ample particulars may be found in Erskine's and other works[2]. Suffice it to say that Shaybání or Shaybak Khán, a direct descendant of Chingíz Khán[3], first became prominent about A.D. 1500, when he captured Samarqand and Bukhárá, and later Táshkand and Farghána. He invaded Khurásán in 911/1505–6, in the year of Sulṭán Ḥusayn's death, and in the course of the next year or two practically exterminated the Tímúrids, with the exception of Bábur and Badí'u'z-Zamán, of whom the latter sought refuge with Sháh Isma'íl. It was not until 916/1510–11, however, that he came into direct conflict with Sháh Isma'íl, whom he had provoked by a raid on Kirmán in the previous year and a most insulting letter in reply to Isma'íl's politely-worded remonstrance[4]. Sháh Isma'íl was not slow to respond to his taunts, and,

[1] See W. Erskine's *History of India*, vol. i (London, 1854), pp. 319–320.

[2] For example, the *History of the Moghuls of Central Asia* etc., by N. Elias and Sir E. Denison Ross (London, 1898), and, of course, the incomparable *Memoirs of Bábur*, in the tasteful new edition of Erskine and Leyden's translation annotated and revised by Sir Lucas King (Oxford, 1921).

[3] The *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* (f. 88b) gives his pedigree thus: Shaybak Khán b. Búdáq Sulṭán b. Abu'l-Khayr Khán b. Dawlat Shaykh b. Íltí-Oghlan b. Fúlád-Oghlan b. Aybu Khwája b. ... b. Bulgháy b. Shaybán b. Jújí b. Chingíz Khán.

[4] See Erskine's *History of India*, vol. i, pp. 297 *et seqq*. The text of this long letter is given in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* (Ellis MS., ff. 80b *et seqq*.).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the rest of his realms being for the moment tranquil, at once marched into Khurásán to meet him, visiting on his way the Shrine of the Imám 'Alí Riḍá at Mashhad, so sacred in Shí'a eyes. The decisive battle was fought on Dec. 1 or 2, 1510, at Ṭáhir-ábád near Merv, where, after a stubborn and protracted conflict, the Uzbeks were utterly defeated and Shaybání killed. When his body was found under a heap of slain, Sháh Isma'íl ordered the limbs to be cut off and distributed to different parts of his kingdom, and the head to be stuffed with straw and sent as a grim gift to the Ottoman Sulṭán Báyazíd II at Constantinople[1]. The bones of the skull he caused to be mounted in gold and made into a drinking-cup for his own use, and one hand he sent to Áqá Rustam Rúz-afzún, the ruler of Mázandarán, by a special messenger, Darwísh Muḥammad Yasá'úl, who cast the hand on to Rustam's skirt as he sat amidst his courtiers at Sárí, crying "Thou didst say, 'My hand on Shaybak Khán's skirt' (*dast-i-man-ast u dáman-i-Shaybak Khán*)[2]: lo, his hand is now on thy skirt!" So astounded were those present by this audacity that none lifted a hand to stay the messenger's departure, and Rustam received so great a shock that he soon afterwards sickened and died. Of the drinking-cup the following grim anecdote is told. One of Shaybání's trusted advisers, Khwája Kamálu'd-Dín Ságharchí, saved his life by professing the Shí'a faith, and was admitted into the service of Sháh Isma'íl. One day at a banquet the latter, pointing to the drinking-cup, asked him if he recognized the skull of his late master. "Yes, glory be to God," replied Kamálu'd-Dín; "and how favoured by fortune was

Death of Shaybání in battle, Dec. 1510.

Barbarous treatment of his remains.

[1] According to the history of Sháh Isma'íl contained in **Add. 200** of the Cambridge University Library (f. 141), Prince (afterwards Sulṭán) Salím was greatly offended at this, and had a violent quarrel with his father Báyazíd on the subject.

[2] *I.e.* "I seek protection from him."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

he! Nay, fortune still abides with him, so that even now he rests in the hands of so auspicious a being as thyself, who continually drinks the Wine of Delight!"

سبحان الله چه صاحب دولتی بوده که هنوز دولت درو باقیست
که با این حال بر روی دست چون تو صاحب اقبالیست که
دم بدم بادهٔ نشاط می نوشد'

Shaybání Khán was sixty-one years of age at the time of his death and had reigned eleven years. He was, as already stated, a fanatical Sunní and had grievously persecuted the Shí'a in his dominions: now it was the Sunnís who suffered in their turn at the hands of Sháh Isma'íl. The Uzbek power, in spite of this disaster, was far from being broken, and, though a formal peace was concluded between them and the Persians a few months afterwards, they had an ample revenge at the battle of Ghujduwán, where Bábur and his Persian allies suffered a disastrous defeat and many of their leaders, including *Najm-i-Thání*, were slain in November, 1512. During the whole of the sixteenth century they were a constant menace to Persia, and accounts of their raids into Khurásán occur with monotonous iteration in the pages of the Persian historians of this period.

We must now turn to the far more important relations of Persia with the Ottoman Turks at this period, on which more light is thrown by the State Papers so industriously compiled and edited by Firídún Bey in 982/1574 under the title of *Munsha'át-i-Salátín* ("Correspondence of the Kings")[1] than by

Firídún Bey's collection of Turkish State Papers.

[1] Printed at Constantinople in 1274/1858. Until lately I only possessed vol. i, which comprises 626 pp. and comes down to about 966/1558–9. For some account of this most important work, see von Hammer's *Gesch. d. Osmanisch. Reich.*, iv, p. 15; Flügel's *Vienna Catalogue*, i, pp. 282–3; *Z.D.M.G.*, vii, p. 460; *Notices et extraits*, v, pp. 668–688; Rieu's *Turkish Cat.*, pp. 80–83; and Ḥájji Khalífa (ed. Flügel), v, p. 488.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

most of the Persian or Turkish historians. These letters, which passed between successive Ottoman Sulṭáns and neighbouring rulers, as well as between them and their sons, ministers and governors, are sometimes in Turkish and sometimes in Persian or Arabic. Unfortunately many of them are undated. They have hitherto been so little used that no apology is needed for summarizing the contents or indicating the purport of such of them as concern the Ṣafawís down to the death of Sháh Isma'íl in 930/1523-4, that is, during the reigns of the Ottoman Sulṭáns Báyazíd II (886–918/1481–1512), Salím I (918–926/1512–1520), and the first four years of Sulaymán "the Magnificent" (926–930/1520–1524).

(1) *From Ya'qúb Pádisháh of the "White Sheep" dynasty to Sulṭán Báyazíd, announcing the defeat and death of Shaykh Ḥaydar (Sháh Isma'íl's father)*, (p. 309). This letter, in Persian, is undated, but must have been written soon after Shaykh Ḥaydar, who is called the "President of the people of error" (*Sar-i-ḥalqa-i-arbáb-i-ḍalál*), was killed on June 30, 1488. The writer assumes that the news of the destruction of "these misguided rebels, enemies of the Prophetic Dispensation and foes of Church and State" will be welcome to all good Muslims.

(2) *Sulṭán Báyazíd's answer to the above, also in Persian and undated* (p. 311). Congratulations are offered to Ya'qúb on the victory of "the Báyandarí[1] hosts of salvation" over the "misguided Ḥaydarí faction" (*gurúh-i-ḍálla-i-Ḥaydariyya*).

(3) *From Sháh Isma'íl to Sulṭán Báyazíd II, requesting that his disciples in Asia Minor may not be prevented from visiting him at Ardabíl* (p. 345). This letter, undated and in Persian, is important as proving how numerous were the partisans of the Ṣafawís in the Ottoman dominions.

[1] *Báyandarí* is an alternative name for the *Aq-Qoyúnlú*, or "White Sheep" dynasty.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(4) *Sulṭán Báyazíd's answer to the above, also in Persian and undated* (pp. 345–6). The Ottoman Sulṭán says that, having investigated the matter, he finds that the motive of many of these pilgrims is not the desire to fulfil a pious duty, but to escape from the obligation of military service.

(5) *From Sháh Isma'íl to Sulṭán Báyazíd on the same subject, also in Persian and undated* (pp. 346–7). He explains that he has been compelled to enter Ottoman territory to chastise his foes, but intends thereby no unfriendly or disrespectful act towards Báyazíd, and has strictly enjoined his soldiers to respect the persons and property of the inhabitants.

(6) *Sulṭán Báyazíd's answer to the above, also in Persian and undated* (p. 347). Báyazíd accepts Isma'íl's assurances, and has ordered his officials to co-operate with him in a friendly spirit.

(7) *From Alwand, the Áq-Qoyúnlú ruler of Persia, to Sulṭán Báyazíd, in Persian, except the Arabic prologue, and undated* (pp. 351–2). Alwand announces the arrival of Báyazíd's envoy Maḥmúd Áqá *Cháwish-báshi* with his master's letter, urging the Báyandarí or Áq-Qoyúnlú family to unite against their common enemy, the "rascally Red-heads" (*Awbásh-i-Qizil-básh*). Alwand promises to do his best, whether his relations help him or not, provided he can count on material and moral support from Báyazíd.

(8) *Báyazíd's answer to the above, also in Persian and undated* (pp. 352–3). He commends Alwand's resolve, and promises help against the "rebellious horde of the Qizil-báshes" (*ṭa'ifa-i-bághiya-i-Qizil-báshiyya*).

(9) *From Báyazíd to Ḥájji Rustam Beg the Kurd, in Persian, dated Rabí' i, 908/September 1502* (p. 353). He asks for correct information as to the doings of the Qizil-báshes and the result of their struggle with the Áq-Qoyúnlú or Báyandarí princes, to be communicated to his envoy Kaywán Cháwúsh.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(10) *Ḥájji Rustam's reply to the above, in Persian and undated* (pp. 353–4). The writer states that the "religion-rending Qizil-báshes" (*Qizil-básh-i-Madhhab-kharásh*), having defeated Alwand and Murád of the Áq-Qoyúnlú family, are now seeking an alliance with Egypt against the Ottoman Turks, and are advancing on Mar'ash and Diyár Bakr.

(11) *From Sulṭán Báyasíd to Sulṭán Ghúrí of Egypt, in Arabic, dated* 910/1504–5 (pp. 354–5). This letter contains an allusion to "the man who has appeared in the Eastern countries and defeated their ruler and overcome their peoples," which, as appears from the answer, refers to Sháh Isma'íl, or possibly Sháh-qulí.

(12) *Answer to the above, in Arabic, undated* (pp. 355–6). This letter contains a reference to "the victory of the misguided Qizil-báshí faction in the Eastern countries," described as a "public calamity which has appeared in those regions."

These are the only letters in Sulṭán Báyazíd's correspondence directly connected with the Ṣafawís, though there are others of interest to students of Persian history addressed to Sulṭán Abu'l-Ghází Ḥusayn (911/1506), the poet Jámí[1], the philosopher Jalálu'd-Dín Dawání, and the Shaykhu'l-Islám of Herát Farídu'd-Dín Aḥmad-i-Taftázání (913/1507), who was put to death by Sháh Isma'íl three years later for refusing to subscribe to the Shí'a doctrine. Before we consider the State Papers of Sulṭán Salím's reign, something more must be said of the beginnings of that bitter strife between Turkey and Persia which is one of the most prominent features of the whole Ṣafawí period, and has done so much to undermine the unity and weaken the power of Islám. And here we cannot do better than quote the opening paragraph of

Growth of the bitter hostility between Persia and Turkey.

[1] See *Lit. Hist. Pers.*, *iii*, pp. 422–3.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

old Richard Knolles's[1] account of the formidable Shí'a revolt in Anatolia promoted by the celebrated Sháh-qulí ("King's servant"), called by the Turks Shayṭán-qulí ("Devil's servant"), the son of Ḥasan Khalífa a disciple of Isma'íl's father Shaykh Ḥaydar.

"After so many troubles," says Knolles, "*Bajazet* gave himself unto a quiet course of life, spending most part of his time in study of Philosophy and conference with learned men; unto which peaceable kind of life he was of his own natural disposition more enclined than to Wars; albeit that the regard of his State and the earnest desire of his Men of War drew him oftentimes even against his Will into the Field. As for the Civil Government of his Kingdom he referred it wholly to his three principal Bassaes, *Alis*, *Achmetes* and *Jachia*[2], who at their pleasure disposed of all things. After that he had in this quiet and pleasing kind of life to his great contentment passed over five years, of a little neglected Spark suddainly arose such a Fire in *Asia* as was hardly after with much blood of his People and danger of that part of his Empire quenched; the reliques whereof yet trouble those superstitious People at this day. Which thing was brought to pass by the crafty device of *Chasan Chelife* and *Schach Culi* his Boy (whom some call *Teckel Scachoculu* and others *Techellis*)[3], two Hypocritical Persians; who flying into those countries and with the counterfeit shew of feigned Holiness having procured to themselves a great name amongst those rude People, with a number of windy headed Followers (filled with the novelty of their new

The Shí'a rising in Asia Minor.

[1] I quote the sixth edition of his *Turkish History*, with Sir Paul Rycaut's continuation, published in London in 1687. The passage in question occurs on p. 315 of vol. i.

[2] *I.e.* 'Alí, Aḥmad and Yaḥyá Pashas.

[3] These names stand for *Ḥasan Khalífa*, *Sháh-qulí*, and *Takallú* or *Tekellú*, *i.e.* of the *Tekké-íli*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Doctrine) raised first such a diversity of opinions about the true successors of their untrue Prophet, and afterwards such a Rebellion amongst the People, as that the one yet remaineth, and the other was not in a good while after without great bloodshed appeased."

There follows a lengthy account of this dangerous rebellion, in which the Turks suffered several severe reverses and lost many notable officers, including the Grand Vezír Khádim 'Alí Pasha, ere the rebels were dispersed, killed, or driven into Persia. Instead of rewarding or comforting the fugitives, however, Sháh Isma'íl put many of them to death at Tabríz, because, as Knolles says[1], they had plundered a caravan of rich merchants; but, according to the most modern Turkish historian[2], in order to clear himself of complicity in the eyes of Báyazíd. Knolles adds that "Techellis himself (*i.e.* Sháh-qulí), to the terror of others, was burnt alive"; but, according to the Turkish historian, he fell at the same time as 'Alí Pasha in the battle of Gyuk Cháy, between Síwás and Qayṣariyya, in which statement the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*[3] agrees. "Techellis thus put to flight," continues Knolles, "*Jonuses*[4] caused strait inquisition to be made through all the Cities of the lesser *Asia* for all such as had professed the *Persian* Religion; and them whom he found to have borne Arms in the late Rebellion he caused to be put to death with most exquisite torments and the rest to be burnt in their Foreheads with an hot Iron, thereby forever to be known; whom together with the Kinsfolks and Friends of them that were executed or

Massacre of Shí'a throughout the Turkish Empire.

[1] *Op. cit.*, p. 324.

[2] 'Abdu'r-Raḥman Sheref's *History of the Ottoman Empire* (Constantinople, 2nd edition, 1315/1897–8), vol. i, pp. 196–7. Cf. von Hammer's *Gesch. d. Osmanisch. Reich.*, vol. ii, pp. 359–360 and 393–4.

[3] Ff. 90–91 of Mr A. G. Ellis's MS.

[4] Yúnus Pasha, Grand Vezír to Sulṭán Selím, executed in 923/1517.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

fled with *Techellis* he caused to be transported into *Europe* and to be dispersed through *Macedonia*, *Epirus* and *Peleponnesus*, for fear lest if *Techellis*, now fled into the *Persian* Kingdom, should from thence return with new Forces, they should also again repair unto him and raise a new Rebellion. This was the beginning, course, and ending of one of the most dangerous Rebellions that ever troubled the Turkish Empire; wherein all, or at leastwise the greatest part, of their Dominions in *Asia* might have been easily surprised by the *Persian* King, if he would thoroughly have prosecuted the occasion and opportunity then offered." These events are placed by Knolles in A.D. 1508, but by the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* in 917/1511–12, the year before Báyazíd's death.

It is curious that little or nothing is said by the Persian historians about this massacre of the Shí'a in Turkey, which von Hammer describes as one of the most dreadful deeds ever perpetrated in the name of Religion, not excepting the cruelties of the Inquisition or the Massacre of St Bartholomew. That most of the Turkish historians ignore it is less astonishing, since it can hardly be a matter of pride for them. Knolles appears to be mistaken in placing it in the reign of Báyazíd II, for there can hardly have been two such massacres, and one certainly took place in 1514 after the accession of Salím, as witnessed by Nicolo Giustiniani in an account dated October 7 of that year[1]. The number of victims is placed by Sa'du'd-Dín, Soláq-záda and 'Alí Abu'l-Faḍl, the son of Idrís of Bitlís, at 40,000. The particulars given by the last-named writer, quoted by von Hammer in the original Persian verse transliterated into the Roman character, are as follows[2]:

[1] See von Hammer, *op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 403 *ad calc.* The passage runs: "Che il Signor havea mandá a far amazzar tutti della secta di Sofi."

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 638.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

فرستاد سلطانِ دانا رسوم، دبیرانِ دانا بهر مرز و بوم،
که اتباعِ این قوم را قسم قسم، در آرد بنوکِ قلم اسم اسم،
ز هفت و ز هفتاد ساله بنام، بیآرد بدیوانِ عالی مقام،
چو دفتر سپردند اهلِ حساب، عدد چل هزار آمد از شیخ و شاب،
پس آنگه بحکّام هر کشوری، رساندند فرمانبران دفتری،
بهر جاگه رفته قدم از قلم، نهد تیغ بُرّان قدم بر قدم،
شد اعدادِ این کُشته های دیار، فزون از حسابِ قلم چل هزار،

Von Hammer's translation, which can hardly be bettered, runs as follows :

"Der Sultan wohlbewandert, voll Verstand,
Schickt kund'ge Schreiber aus in jedes Land ;
Aufzeichnen sollen sie nach Stamm und Stammen
Die Jünger dieses Volks mit Nahm und Nahmen.
Von sieben Jahren bis auf siebzig Jahr
Bring' im Diwan die List' ein jeder dar.
Es waren Vierzigtausend grad enthalten
In den Verzeichnissen von Jung und Alten,
Die Bringer dieser Listen wurden dann
Gesandt an die Statthalter mit Ferman.
Wo immer hin die Feder war gekommen,
Ward Fuss für Fuss das Schwert zur Hand genommen.
Es wurden hingerichtet in dem Land
Mehr als die Zahl, die in den Listen stand."

Sulṭán Salím's Persian correspondence.

Turning now once more to the *Munsha'át* of Firídún Bey, we find the following letters belonging to the reign of Sulṭán Salím which bear on his relations with Persia.

(13) *From Sulṭán Salím to 'Ubayd Khán the Uzbek, in Persian, dated the end of Muḥarram*, A.H. 920 (*March* 27, 1514), *only five months before the Battle of Cháldirán* (pp. 374–7). In this long letter, sent by the hand of a certain Muḥammad Bey, Salím denounces "that vile, impure, sinful, slanderous, reprehensible and blood-thirsty

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Ṣúfí-cub" (to wit Sháh Isma'íl), "at whose hands the people of the Eastern lands are rendered desperate"

که اهالئ بلادِ شرق از دستِ صوفی بچهٔ نئیم ناپاك اثیم افّاك ذمیم سفّاك بجان آمده‌اند

and calls upon 'Ubayd Khán to do his part in avenging the death of his father Shaybak Khán.

(14) *Answer to the above, also in Persian, dated the end of Jumáda ii*, 920 (*August* 21, 1514), pp. 377–9. In this letter 'Ubayd Khán describes how he has already avenged his father and slain "the lesser dog, agent and lieutenant of the greater dog (*i.e.* Sháh Isma'íl), who in his quintessential folly had conferred on him the title of *Najm-i-Thání*[1]," and promises to aid the Turkish Sulṭán in extirpating the "inconsiderable remnant" (شرذمهٔ قلیله) of the "rascally infidels and heretical 'Red-heads'" (زنادقهٔ اوباش و ملاحدهٔ قزلباش).

(15) *From Sulṭán Salím to Sháh Isma'íl, in Persian, dated Ṣafar*, 920 (*April*, 1514), pp. 379–381. This letter, written in the most arrogant and offensive tone, calls on Isma'íl to repent of his heresies and evil practices, especially the cursing of "the two Shaykhs" (Abú Bakr and 'Umar), and threatens, should he continue obdurate, to invade and wrest from him "the lands which he has usurped by violence."

(16) *From Sulṭán Salím to Muḥammad Beg Áq-Qoyúnlú, in Persian, dated the end of Ṣafar*, 920 (*April* 25, 1514), pp. 381–2, congratulating him on the sound Sunní principles of himself and his family and subjects, and inviting his co-operation against the "heretical 'Red-heads'."

[1] This victory of the Uzbeks over the allied forces of Sháh Isma'íl and Bábur took place on Ramadán 17, 918 (Nov. 26, 1512). Amír Najmu'd-Dín Mas'úd ("the First *Najm*" or "Star") died in 915 (1509–1510) and was succeeded in his office and title by Amír Yár Aḥmad-i-Iṣfahání, called *Najm-i-Thání*, "the Second *Najm*" or "Star."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(17) *Reply to the above, in Persian, dated the end of Rabí' ii*, 920 (*June* 23, 1514), p. 382. From this it appears that Salím's letter was brought by an envoy named Aḥmad Ján, who took back the answer, and that the writer was in great fear that the correspondence might be discovered.

(18) *Sulṭán Salím's second letter to Sháh Isma'íl, in Persian and undated*, pp. 382–3. In this letter Salím lays claim to the Caliphate, accuses Sháh Isma'íl and his family of heresy and immorality, and calls on him to repent and suffer Persia to be annexed to the Ottoman dominions.

(19) *Sulṭán Salím's third letter to Isma'íl, in Turkish, dated the end of Jumáda i*, 920 (*July* 23, 1514) *and written from Arzinján*, taunting him with his apparent unwillingness to try the fortune of battle.

(20) *Sháh Isma'íl's reply to Sulṭán Salím's three letters, in Persian and undated* (pp. 384–5). This is apparently the letter to which Creasy refers in his *History of the Ottoman Turks* (ed. 1877, pp. 136–7), for the writer hints that Salím's secretary must have written under the influence of *bang* or opium, and sends a gold casket filled with a special preparation of one or both of these narcotics, sealed with the Royal Seal, by the hand of his messenger Sháh-qulí Ághá.

(21) *Sulṭán Salím's fourth letter to Isma'íl, in Turkish, dated the end of Jumáda ii*, 920 (*August* 21, 1514), again challenging him to battle.

Shortly after this last letter was written, namely early in the month of Rajab[1], 920 (August—September, 1514), a great battle was fought between the Turks and Persians at Cháldirán, situated some 20 parasangs from Tabríz, where 3000 of the former and 2000 of the latter were slain, but the Turkish artillery decided the day, and Sháh Isma'íl, notwithstanding the valour shown by him and his devoted followers, was forced

The Battle of Cháldirán, August, 1514.

[1] On the first of the month (Aug. 22, 1514) according to Firídún Bey (p. 402).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

to give way and to fall back beyond Tabríz, which was occupied by the Turks on Rajab 16, 920 (Sept. 6, 1514). Many men of note on both sides were slain; of the Turks Ḥasan Pasha, Begler-begi of Rumelia, who commanded the left wing of the Ottoman army, Ḥasan Bey, Governor of Morea, Uways Bey of Caesarea, Ayás Bey of Latakia, and many other high civil and military officials; of the Persians Amír Sayyid-i-Sharíf of Shíráz, a protagonist of the Shí'a doctrine, Amír 'Abdu'l-Báqí, a descendant of the noted saint Sháh Ni'matu'lláh of Kirmán, Sayyid Muḥammad Kamúna of Najaf, Khán Muḥammad Khan, and many others.

Sulṭán Salím's proceedings after the victory of Cháldirán.

Sulṭán Salím, greatly elated by his success, immediately despatched the usual bombastic proclamations of victory (*fatḥ-náma*) to his son Sulaymán, to the Khán of the Crimea, to the Kurdish chieftains, to Sulṭán Murád, the last of the Áq-Qoyúnlú or "White Sheep" dynasty, to Sháh Rustam of Luristán, to the Governor of Adrianople, and others. The texts of these documents are given by Firídún Bey (pp. 386-96), but they are followed (pp. 396-407) by a document of much greater historical value, namely a detailed journal of the movements of the Turkish army from the time they marched out of Adrianople on Muḥarram 3, 920 (March 20, 1514) until they returned to winter at Amásiya at the end of the same year (Nov.–Dec., 1514). They marched in 105 stages from Adrianople to Tabríz by way of Constantinople, Caesarea, Síwás, Arzinján, Cháldirán, Khúy and Marand; thence back to Amásiya in 58 stages, by way of Nakhjuwán, Jisr-i-Júbán, and Bayburt. They erected a pyramid of the skulls of their enemies on the field of battle, handed over to Ja'far Bey one of Sháh Isma'íl's wives who fell into their hands, and massacred Khálid Bey and 150 of his *Qizil-básh* companions at the village of Sáḥilán the day before they entered Tabríz, in which city, however, they seem to have behaved with

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

moderation, as even the Persian historian of Sháh Isma'íl testifies[1]. Sulṭán Salím remained there only about a week (Sept. 6–14, 1514), when he departed, taking with him the Tímúrid Prince Badí'u'z-Zamán, the fugitive son of the late Sulṭán Abu'l-Ghází Ḥusayn ibn Bayqará[2], and a number of skilled artisans whom he proposed to settle in his dominions. Within two or three weeks of his departure Sháh Isma'íl was back in Tabríz. According to Sir John Malcolm[3], "the effect of so great a reverse upon the sanguine mind of Isma'íl was deep and lasting, and though before of a cheerful disposition he was never afterwards seen to smile." But as a matter of fact the defeat, decisive as it was, had little permanent effect, since the discontent and nostalgia of the Janissaries compelled the Ottoman Sulṭán to withdraw from Persian territory, and, save for the extirpation of the little Dhu'l-Qadar dynasty[4] at Kamákh near Arzinján in the spring of A.D. 1515, his martial ardour was fully occupied, until his death in A.D. 1520, with the subjection of Egypt, Syria and Arabia.

Sháh Isma'íl, on his return to Tabríz after the battle of Cháldirán, sent a very polite and apologetic letter[5] by the hand of Núru'd-Dín 'Abdu'l-Wahháb to Sulṭán Salím, who, apparently, vouchsafed no reply, but some months later (end of Rajab, 921 = Sept. 9, 1515) wrote in Turkish a long letter to 'Ubayd Khán the Uzbek inciting him to persecute the Shí'a[6].

[1] Add. 200 of the Cambridge University Library, f. 151.

[2] He died at Constantinople four months later of the plague.

[3] *History of Persia*, vol. i, p. 504. I can find no confirmation of this in the Persian histories which I have consulted.

[4] According to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* it comprised only four rulers, Malik Aṣlán, Sulaymán, Náṣiru'd-Dín and 'Alá'u'd-Dawla, of whom the last, together with four of his sons and thirty of his followers, was decapitated by Sulṭán Salím's soldiers on June 13, 1515.

[5] Firídún Bey, vol. i, pp. 413–414.

[6] *Ibid.*, pp. 415–416.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The documents connected with Sulṭán Salím's reign fill another 84 pages of Firídún Bey's compilation[1], but, with one notable exception, contain only incidental abusive references to Sháh Isma'íl. The exception is formed by two poems, one in Persian and the other in Turkish, addressed to Sulṭán Salím by an unpatriotic Persian named Khwája Iṣfahání, probably identical with Khwája Mawláná-yi-Iṣfahání, a fanatical Sunní who attached himself to the Uzbek Shaybak Khán, and whose death is recorded in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* under the year 927/1521[2].

The following verses from the Persian poem will suffice to give an idea of its character.

A Persian congratulatory poem addressed to Sulṭán Salím.

ا الا ای قاصدِ فرخنده منظر'
نیازم بر سوی شاهِ مظفّر'
بگو ای پادشاهِ جمله عالم'
توئی امروز در مردی مسلم'
اساسِ دین تو در دنیا نهادی'
تو شرعِ مصطفی بر جا نهادی'
مجدّد گشت دین از همّتِ تو'
جهان در زیر بارِ منّتِ تو'
• اگر ملكِ شریعت مستقیم است'
همه از دولتِ سلطان سلیم است'
ز بیمت در تزلزل فارس و ترك'
چو افگندی ز سر تاج قزل بُرْك'
فگندی تاجش از سر ای مظفّر'
فگن اکنون بمردی از تنش سر'

[1] The last ends on p. 500.

[2] From a line in his Turkish poem it appears that his home was in Khurásán and Khwárazm (Khiva), which he had been compelled to leave since "Infidelity had completely destroyed the Home of Faith, and established itself in the Seat of Religion."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

قزل بُرْکست همچون مار افعی،
سرشرا تا نکوبی نیست نفعی
توئی امروز ز اوصافِ شریفه،
خدارا و محمّدرا خلیفه
روا داری که کبر و ملحدِ دد،
دهد دشنامِ اصحابِ محمّد،
تو اورا نشکنی از زور مردی،
سرشرا نَا بُریده باز گردی،
اگر گیرد امانی در سلامت،
بگیرم دامنترا در قیامت،
چنین دیدم ز اخبار پیمبر،
که ذو القرنَیْن بُد در روم قیصر،
بذو القرنَیْن از آن خودرا علم کرد،
که ملك فارسرا با روم ضم کرد،
دو قرنِ او شهی اندر جهان شد،
بشرق و غرب حکم او روان شد،
بیا از نصرِ دین کسرِ صنم کن،
بتختِ روم ملكِ فارس ضم کن،

"O messenger of auspicious aspect, carry my prayer to the victorious King.
Say, 'O King of all the World, thou art today accredited in valour.
Thou didst lay the foundations of Religion in the World; thou didst restore the Holy Law of Muṣṭafá [Muḥammad].
Religion hath been renovated by thy zeal, the World lies under the burden of thy favour.
If the realm of the Holy Law is firmly established, it is all through the fortune of Sulṭán Salím.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Persía and Turkey quake through fear of thee, since thou hast cast from his head the crown of the Red-cap[1].
O victorious one, thou hast cast his crown from his head: now manfully cast his head from his body!
The Red-head is like the viper; until thou crushest his head it availeth nothing.
Thou art today, through thy noble qualities, the Vicar (*Khalífa*) of God and of Muḥammad.
Dost thou hold it right that the guebre[2] and brute-heretic should revile the Companions of the Prophet?[3]
If thou dost not break him by the strength of thy manhood, and if thou turnest back without having cut off his head,
If he obtains amnesty in safety, I will seize thy skirt in the day of Resurrection.
Thus have I seen in the accounts of the Prophet, that *Dhu'l-Qarnayn* ("the Two-horned")[4] was Emperor in Rome.
For this cause did he style himself *Dhu'l-Qarnayn*, because he added the dominion of Persia to that of Rome[5].
His two horns were sovereignty throughout the World; his orders ran through East and West.
Come, break the Idol by the aid of the Faith, and add the Kingdom of Persia to the Throne of Rome[5]!'"

Sulṭán Salím died in 926/1520, having reigned, according to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, 8 years, 8 months and 8 days. He was succeeded by his son Sulaymán, called by his

[1] *Burk* is a Turkish word denoting a kind of tall fur cap, and *Qizil-burk* ("Red-cap") is, of course, equivalent to *Qizil-báṣh* (Persian *Surkh-sar*) "Red-head."

[2] The word *gabr* (anglicized by Thomas Moore as "guebre") properly denotes a Zoroastrian, but is constantly applied by writers of this period to any non-Muslim, infidel or heretic, like the corresponding *gyawur* ("giaour") of the Turks. See p. 95 *infra*.

[3] This, of course, refers to the cursing of Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán instituted by Sháh Isma'íl. See pp. 53–4 *supra*.

[4] This mysterious person is commonly (as here) identified with Alexander the Great. See *Qur'án* xviii, 82, 85, 93 and commentary thereon.

[5] The term *Rúm* was applied successively to the Roman, the Byzantine and the Ottoman Empires, and by the Persian historians of this period the Ottoman Sulṭán is constantly called *Qayṣar-i-Rúm*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

countrymen "the Law-giver" (*Qánúní*) and by Europeans "the Magnificent." The Persian poet Amíní composed a poem on his accession, of which each half-verse (*miṣrá'*) yields the date 926. The following verse is cited as a specimen by the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*:

Sulṭán Salím dies in 926/1520 and is succeeded by his son Sulaymán.

بداده زمان ملکتِ کامرانی ' بکاوسِ عهد و سلیمانِ ثانی '

"Fortune hath given the Kingdom of Desire to the Ká'ús of the Age, the Second Solomon."

Three years later (in 929/1523), when Sulṭán Sulaymán conquered Rhodes, another Persian Poet, Niyází, commemorated this victory in an equally ingenious *qaṣída* beginning:

در اوّل جلوسی بوی سرفرازی ' دوم فتحِ اردوس الا ای نیازی '

where the first half-verse gives the date of Sulaymán's accession (926/1520), and the second the date of the conquest of Rhodes[1].

Sháh Isma'íl died on Monday, Rajab 19, A.H. 930 (May 23, 1524) at the age of 38 after a reign of 24 years, and was buried with his fathers at Ardabíl. He left four sons, Ṭahmásp, born on Dhu'l-Ḥijja 26, A.H. 919 (Feb. 22, 1514), who succeeded him; Alqáṣ, born in 922/1516, and Sám and Bahrám, both born in the following year; besides five daughters[2]. In his reign the sword was more active than the pen. He not only eliminated all of his numerous rivals in Persia, but greatly enlarged her frontiers. "His kingdom," says the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*[3],

Death of Sháh Isma'íl in 930/1524.

[1] *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* (Mr Ellis's MS., f. 128). The first *miṣrá'* gives the correct date (926), but the second, as written in the MS. (with دویم), gives 940. I have emended this to دوم, which gives 930, though this is still one too much.

[2] Khánish Khánum, Parí-Khán Khánum, Mihínbánú Sulṭánum, Firangís Khánum and Zaynab Khánum.

[3] F. 131.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"included Ádharbáyján, Persian 'Iráq, Khurásán, Fárs, Kirmán and Khúzistán, while Diyár Bakr, Balkh and Merv were at times under his control. In the battle-field he was a lion wielding a dagger, and in the banquet-hall a cloud raining pearls. Such was his bounty that pure gold and worthless salt were alike in his sight, while by reason of his lofty spirit the produce of ocean and mine did not suffice for the donations of a single day, and his treasury was generally empty. He had a passion for the chase, and alone used to slay lions. He had issued orders that whoever should bring news of a lion should receive from his officers a horse and saddle; and he who should bring news of a leopard an unsaddled horse. He would go forth alone and kill lions and leopards. During his reign he fought five [great] battles, the first with Farrukh-Yasár king of Shírwán at the place called Jabání, the second with Alwand at Shurúr, the third with Sulṭán Murád at Alma Qúlághí near Hamadán, the fourth with Shaybak Khán in the neighbourhood of Merv, and the fifth with Sulṭán Salím at Cháldirán[1]." The date of his death (930) is given by the word *Ẓill*, "Shadow" (of God), and by the words *Khusraw-i-Dín*, "Prince of the Faith," as expressed in the two following chronograms:

Extent of his realms.

His valour and bounty.

His love of the chase.

His five great battles.

شاه گردون پناه اسمعیل' آنکه چون مهر در نقاب شده'
از جهان رفت و ظل شدش تاریخ' سایه تاریخِ آفتاب شده'

رباعی

شاهی که چو خورشید جهان گشت مبین'
بزدود غبار ظلم از روی زمین'

[1] These battles were fought in 906/1500, 907/1501, 908/1503, 916/1510, and 920/1514 respectively. In all except the last Sháh Isma'íl was victorious.

130681

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

تاریخِ وفاتِ آن شهِ شیر کمین،
از خسروِ دین طلب که شد خسروِ دین،

As regards literature, there was, as elsewhere explained, an extraordinary dearth of remarkable poets in Persia during the whole Ṣafawí period[1], while the great theo-

Notable men of letters contemporary with Sháh Isma'íl.

logians belong to a later time when the Shí'a faith, raised by Sháh Isma'íl to the position of the established national religion of Persia, had taken firm root. Most of the celebrated writers whose deaths are recorded in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* and other chronicles of Isma'íl's reign really belong to the brilliant circle who gathered round the Tímúrid Sulṭán Abu'l-Ghází Ḥusayn and his talented Minister Mír 'Alí Shír Nawá'í. Such were the poets Hátifí, nephew of the great Jámí, who died in 927/1521; Amír Ḥusayn Mu'ammá'í (d. 904/1498–9); Banná'í, who perished in the massacre wrought by Isma'íl's general *Najm-i-Thání*[2] at Qarshí in 918/1512; Hiláli, who was killed by the Uzbeks at Herát in 935/1528–9 for his alleged Shí'a proclivities; the philosopher Jalálu'd-Dín Dawání (d. 908/1502–3); the historian Mírkhwánd (d. 903/1497–8 at the age of 66); and the versatile Ḥusayn Wá'iẓ-i-Káshifí, commentator, ethicist and narrator, best known as the author of the *Anwár-i-Suhayli*[3]. The poet Qásimí celebrated the achievements of Sháh Isma'íl in a *Sháh-náma*, hitherto unpublished and but rarely met with even in manuscript[4], completed ten years after the death of that monarch, who appears to have been less susceptible than most Persian potentates to the flattery of courtiers and venal verse-makers[5].

[1] See pp. 24–29 *supra*.

[2] See p. 74 *ad calc.*

[3] Accounts of the more notable of these writers will be found in the preceding volume of this history, *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*.

[4] See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 660–661.

[5] See p. 28 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

CHAPTER III.

CULMINATION AND DECLINE OF THE ṢAFAWÍ POWER, FROM SHÁH ṬAHMÁSP (A.D. 1524–1576) TO SHÁH ḤUSAYN (A.D. 1694–1722).

Ṭahmásp, the eldest of Isma'íl's sons, was only ten years of age when he succeeded his father. He reigned over Persia for fifty-two years and a half, and died on May 14, 1576. In the contemporary chronicles he is usually denoted as *Sháh-i-Dín-panáh* ("the King who is the Refuge of Religion"). The date of his accession is commemorated in the following verse:

Accession of Sháh Ṭahmásp (May 23, 1524).

طهماسب شاهِ عالم کز نصرتِ الٰهی'
جا بعدِ شاه غازی بر تختِ زر گرفتی
جای پدر گرفتی کردی جهان مسخّر'
تأریخِ سلطنت شد جای پدر گرفتی'[1]

"O Ṭahmásp, King of the World, who, by the Divine Assistance, didst take thy place on the throne of gold after the Victorious King!
Thou didst take the place of thy father; thou didst subdue the world:
'Thou didst take the place of thy father' (*já-yi-pidar giriftí*)[1] was the date of thine accession."

Of the numerous records of his long reign two, on which in what follows I shall chiefly draw, are worthy of special note; his own autobiography[2] from his accession on Monday, Rajab 19, 930 (May 23, 1524), to his shameful surrender of the Turkish Prince

Two chief Persian authorities on this reign.

[1] 3+1+10+2+4+200+20+200+80+400+10 = 930 A.H. = 1523–4 A.D.

[2] Printed by the late Dr Paul Horn in vol. xliv of the *Z.D.M.G.* (for 1890), pp. 563–649; and lithographed in vol. ii of the *Maṭla'u'sh-Shams* of Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán *I'timádu's-Sulṭana*, pp. 165–213.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Báyazíd, who had sought refuge at his court, in 969/1561–2; and the excellent *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* of Ḥasan Beg Rúmlú, concluded in 985/1577–8 only a year after Ṭahmásp's death. The autobiography, possibly suggested by Bábur's incomparable Memoirs, is far inferior to that most instructive and amusing work, and is not greatly superior to the overestimated Diaries of the late Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh; but it throws some valuable light on the mentality of Ṭahmásp, and on those inner conditions which it is so difficult to deduce from the arid pages of the official chronicles, containing for the most part a mere record of interminable wars and massacres, and leaving us quite in the dark as to the social and intellectual state of the people. That

Character of Ṭahmásp.

Ṭahmásp was a bigot is indicated both by Sir John Malcolm[1] and Erskine[2], though the former historian takes the more favourable view of his character, describing him as "of a kind and generous disposition," and adding that he "appears to have possessed prudence and spirit, and, if he was not distinguished by great qualities, he was free from any remarkable vices." Anthony Jenkinson, who carried a letter of recommendation from Queen Elizabeth[3], had a not very gratifying audience with him at Qazwín in November, 1562[4]. The Venetian Ambassador Vincentio d'Alessandri, who was accredited to his Court in 1571, describes him[5], "in the sixty-

His personal appearance.

fourth year of his age, and the fifty-first of his reign," as "of middling stature, well formed in

1 *History of Persia*, vol. i, pp. 511–513.

2 *A History of India under... Baber and Humáyún* (London, 1854), vol. ii, pp. 285 *etc.*

3 For the text of this curious letter, see the Hakluyt Society's *Early Voyages and Travels to Russia and Persia* (No. lxxii, London. 1886), pp. 112–114.

4 *Ibid.*, pp. 144–147.

5 *Travels of Venetians in Persia* (Hakluyt Society, 1873), pp. 215 *et seqq.*

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

person and features, although dark, of thick lips and a grizzly beard," and says that he was "more of a melancholy disposition than anything else, which is also known by many signs, but principally by his not having come out of his palace for the space of eleven years, nor having once gone to the chase nor any other kind of amusement, to the great dissatisfaction of his people." He further describes him as boastful, but unwarlike and "a man of very little courage"; as caring little for law and justice, but much for women and money; as mean and avaricious, "buying and selling with the cunning of a small merchant." "Notwithstanding the things mentioned above," he concludes, "which make one think he ought to be hated, the reverence and love of the people for the King are incredible, as they worship him not as a king but as a god, on account of his descent from the line of 'Alí, the great object of their veneration," and he cites the most extraordinary instances of this devotion and even deification, which is not confined to the common people but extends to members of the Royal Family and courtiers, and to the inhabitants of the remotest parts of his realms. One magnanimous act of the king's reign, which led to a great alleviation of the burden of taxation imposed on his people, the Venetian Ambassador ascribes to the influence of a dream, "in which the Angels took him by the throat and asked him whether it was becoming to a king, surnamed the Just and descended from 'Alí, to get such immense profits by the ruin of so many poor people; and then ordered him to free the people from them." This story is likely enough, for Ṭahmásp in his Memoirs records numerous dreams to which he evidently attached great importance. Thus in a dream 'Alí promises him victory over the Uzbeks about A.D. 1528[1], and a year or two later at Herát advises

Ṭahmásp much influenced by dreams.

[1] P. 584 of Horn's *Denkwürdigkeiten* cited above p. 84, n. 2.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

him as to another campaign[1], whereon he remarks, "the belief of this weak servant Ṭahmásp aṣ-Ṣafawí al-Músawí al-Ḥusayní[2] is that whoever sees His Holiness the Commander of the Faithful (*i.e.* 'Alí), on whom be the blessings of God, in a dream, that which he says will come to pass." Again in his twentieth year two consecutive dreams, in the second of which he sought and obtained from the Imám 'Alí Riḍá confirmation of the first, led him to repent of wine-drinking and other excesses, and to close all the taverns and houses of ill-repute in his domains, on which occasion he composed the following quatrain[3]:

یکچند پی زمرّدِ سوده شدیم، یکچند بیاقوتِ تر آلوده شدیم،
آلودگئی بود بهر رنگ که بود، شُستیم بآبِ توبه آسوده شدیم،

His conversion or repentance.

"For a while we pursued the crushed emerald[4];
For a while we were defiled by the liquid ruby[5];
Defilement it was, under whatever colour:
We washed in the Water of Repentance, and were at peace."

This "repentance" or conversion of Sháh Ṭahmásp is recorded in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* under the year 939/1532–3.

About the same time the army of the Ottoman Sulṭán Sulaymán, profiting as usual by Persia's preoccupation with one of the constantly recurring Uzbek invasions of her north-eastern province, marched into Ádharbáyján, where it was overtaken by a premature but violent snow-storm (it was in the month of

Premature snow causes disaster to Turkish army.

[1] Horn, *loc. cit.*, p. 592.

[2] These three epithets refer to his ancestors Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, the Imám Músá al-Káẓim and the Imám Ḥusayn.

[3] Horn, *loc. cit.*, p. 600, also cited in the *Átashkada* (Bombay lith., 1277/1860–1, p. 17).

[4] *I.e. Bang* or *Ḥashísh* (Cannabis Indica), as explicitly stated in the *Átashkada*.

[5] *I.e.* wine.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

October), in which numbers of the Turkish troops perished. This disaster to the arms of his hereditary foe Sháh Ṭahmásp[1] ascribes to "the help of God and the aid of the Immaculate Imáms." It has been commemorated in the following forcible quatrain, given in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* and the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*:

رفتم سوی سلطانیّه آن طرفه چمن'
دیدم دو هزار مرده بی گور و کفن'
گفتم که بکُشت این همه عثمانی‌را'
بادِ سحر از میانه بر خاست که من'

"I went to Sulṭániyya, that rare pasture-ground:
I saw two thousand dead without grave or shroud.
'Who,' said I, 'killed all these Ottomans?'
The morning breeze arose from the midst saying 'I!'"

Other dreams are meticulously recorded by Sháh Ṭahmásp in his Memoirs: at Ardabíl he sees and converses with the vision of his ancestor Shaykh Ṣafiyyu 'd-Dín[2]; on another occasion he receives encouragement from the spirit of Shaykh Shihábu'd-Dín[3]; other allegorical dreams are recorded under the years 957/1550 and 961/1554[4].

Other visions.

In his domestic relations Sháh Ṭahmásp was unhappy, though not perhaps more so than most contemporary Asiatic sovereigns, notably the Ottoman Sulṭáns. He had three younger brothers, Sám (notable as a poet and biographer of poets)[5], Bahrám and

Unhappy domestic relations.

[1] Horn, *loc. cit.*, p. 602. See also the Turkish journal of this campaign given by Firídún Bey (vol. i, pp. 588–9), where mention of this severe cold is made. Sulṭániyya was reached by the Turkish army on 5 Rabí' ii, 941 (October 14, 1534).

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 607. [3] *Ibid.*, p. 623. [4] *Ibid.*, pp. 635–6.

[5] He was the author of a valuable but unpublished Biography of contemporary poets entitled *Tuḥfa-i-Sámí*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Alqáṣ, of whom the first and third rebelled against him. Sám Mírzá was cast into prison in 969/1561–2 and was ultimately put to death there in 984/1576–7 by Ṭahmásp's successor. The case of Alqáṣ was much worse, for he was a traitor as well as a rebel, and not only took refuge with Sulṭán Sulaymán at Constantinople, but incited him to attack Persia and took an active part in the ensuing war against his own country. At Hamadán, in 955/1548, he plundered the house of his sister-in-law, the wife of Bahrám Mírzá, and later advanced as far as Yazdikhwást, where he made a massacre of the inhabitants, but in the following year he was defeated and fell into the hands of his brother Bahrám, who handed him over to Ṭahmásp. The King imprisoned him in the Castle of Alamút, according to his own Memoirs[1], or, according to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawaríkh*, in the Castle of Qahqaha, where he perished a week later. "In short," says Ṭahmásp in recording the event, "after some days I saw that he did not feel safe from me, but was constantly preoccupied, so I despatched him to a fortress with Ibráhím Khán and Ḥasan Beg the centurion, who took him to the Castle of Alamút and there imprisoned him. After six days, those who had custody of him being off their guard, two or three persons there, in order to avenge their father whom Alqáṣ had killed, cast him down from the castle. After his death the land had peace." It can scarcely be doubted that Ṭahmásp approved, if he did not actually arrange, this deed of violence. Bahrám Mírzá died the same year at the age of 33.

Betrayal of the Ottoman Prince Báyazíd (A.D. 1560–62).

Much worse was the case of the unfortunate Prince Báyazíd, son of the Ottoman Sulṭán Sulaymán, who, deprived of his government of Kútáhiya and driven from his native land by the intrigues of his father's Russian wife Khurram[2] (whose

[1] Horn, *loc. cit.*, p. 631.

[2] See Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. iii, pp. 10–11.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

one object was to secure the succession of her son Salím, afterwards known as "the Sot") took refuge at Ṭahmásp's court in 967/1559–60. An Ottoman mission headed by 'Alí Páshá was sent to Qazwín to demand the surrender of Báyazíd and his children. They arrived there, as we learn from Anthony Jenkinson's narrative[1], four days earlier than himself, to wit on October 30, 1562, and Ṭahmásp, moved partly by fear of the Turkish power, partly by bribes, disregarded his solemn promises to the contrary and caused or suffered the unfortunate Prince and his four little sons to be put to death, and, as Anthony Jenkinson says, "sent his head for a present, not a little desired, and acceptable to the unnatural father." Ṭahmásp seems to have overcome any scruples he may have felt in breaking his solemn promises to the guest he thus betrayed by handing him over not directly to his father, but to the emissaries of his brother Salím. The case is bad enough even as stated by the Sháh himself in his Memoirs, which conclude with a pretty full account of this episode[2], ending thus:

Ṭahmásp's own account of this betrayal.

"At this date 'Alí Áqá came from his Majesty the Sulṭán[3], and of [my] Nobles and Court everyone who had sent a present received its equivalent, save in the case of my own gift and offering, which on this occasion also had not proved acceptable; and there was a letter full of hints and complaints. I said, 'Here have I arrested and detained Prince Báyazíd with his four sons for the sake of His Majesty the Sulṭán and Prince Salím; but since I have given my word not to

[1] *Early Voyages, etc.* (Hakluyt Society, 1886, vol. i), p. 141 and footnote, in which the substance of Knolles's contemporary account is given. See also Creasy's *History of the Ottoman Turks* (London, 1877), pp. 186–7.

[2] Horn's text, *loc. cit.*, pp. 642–9.

[3] Here, as elsewhere, called *Khwándgár*, apparently a corruption of *Khudáwandgár* ("the Lord"), itself in turn corrupted by the Turks into *Khúnkár* ("the Shedder of Blood").

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

surrender Báyazíd to the Sulṭán, I have determined that when the Sulṭán's commands arrive and likewise the emissaries of Prince Salím, I will surrender [Báyazíd] to the latter, so that I may not break my promise.' So when the Sulṭán's messengers arrived, I said, 'Your Excellency and Ḥasan Áqá are welcome, and I will act according to the commands of His Majesty and in no wise transgress his orders, but faithfully accomplish whatever service he may indicate. But in return for so material a service I desire from His Majesty the Sulṭán and Prince Salím such reward and recompense as may be worthy of them; and, moreover, I hope of the Sulṭán in a friendly way that no hurt may befall Prince Báyazíd and his sons'."

Needless to say this pious wish in no wise influenced the tragic course of events, but the Sháh's compliance with the Sulṭán's imperious demands led to a temporary amelioration of the relations between Persia and Turkey which is reflected both in Anthony Jenkinson's narrative and in the concluding State Papers contained in the first volume of Firídún Bey's *Munsha'át*, in which for the first time Ṭahmásp is addressed by Sulaymán with decent civility, though there is no explicit reference to this event.

The Emperor Humáyún in Persia.

More creditable and better known is the reception of Humáyún, the son of Bábur and Emperor of Dihlí, at the Court of Ṭahmásp in A.D. 1544 when he was driven out of his own dominions. Of the hospitality which he received Sir John Malcolm[1] speaks with enthusiasm; but Erskine[2], giving less weight to the official accounts than to the "plain unvarnished tale" of Humáyún's servant Jawhar[3], takes the view (which he

[1] *History of Persia* (London, 1815), vol. i, pp. 508–9.

[2] *History of India under ... Baber and Humáyún* (London, 1854), vol. ii, pp. 280 *et seqq.*

[3] Translated by Major Charles Stewart and printed in London in 1832 for the Oriental Translation Fund.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

supports by numerous illustrations) that in reality "Humáyún had much to suffer and many humiliations to endure"; and that in particular great pressure was brought to bear on him to compel him to adopt the Shí'a faith, which might have gone even further but for the moderating influence of the Sháh's sister Sulṭánum Khánum, the Minister Qáḍí-i-Jahán and the physician Núru'd-Dín. One of the pictures in the celebrated palace of *Chahil Sutún*[1] at Iṣfahán represents an entertainment given by Ṭahmásp to Humáyún.

Foreign relations of Persia in Ṭahmásp's reign.

The foreign relations of Persia during the reign of Ṭahmásp were chiefly, as in the reign of his father Isma'íl, with three states—Turkey, the Uzbeks of Transoxiana, and the so-called "Great Moghuls" of Dihlí. During the greater part of his reign (until 974/1566–7) the great Sulṭán Sulaymán occupied the Ottoman throne; afterwards Salím II ("the Sot"), and, for the last two years of his life (982–4/1574–6) Murád III. Of the Uzbek rulers 'Ubayd Khán, until his death in 946/1539–40, and afterwards Díṉ Muḥammad Sulṭán were his most formidable foes, who ceased not to trouble his eastern, as did the Ottoman Turks his western borders. Of the "Great Moghuls" Bábur (died 937/1530–1), Humáyún (died 962/1555) and Akbar were his contemporaries. Anthony Jenkinson, as we have seen, came to him with credentials from Queen Elizabeth in A.D. 1561, and some thirteen years later, towards the end of his reign, the arrival of a Portuguese mission from Don Sebastian is recorded in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* under the year 982/1574–5, but it met with a bad reception.

Between the Ottoman Turks on the one hand and the Uzbeks on the other, Persia enjoyed little peace at this period, and these campaigns on the N.E. and N.W. frontiers

[1] See Lord Curzon's *Persia*, vol. ii, p. 35. A copy of the picture in question by Texier is reproduced in Sir Percy Sykes's *History of Persia* (2nd ed., London, 1921), vol. ii, p. 164.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

succeeded one another with varying fortune but with monotonous reiteration. Sulṭán Sulaymán's chief campaigns were in 940-942/1534-6, when Baghdád was taken from the Persians and Ádharbáyján invaded[1]; 950/1543-4; 953-955/1546-8, when the Sháh's brother Alqáṣ allied himself with the Turks; 959/1552, when the Persians recovered Arjísh; and 961/1554, when Sulaymán burned Nakhjuwán and attacked Ádharbáyján for the fourth time. The Turkish military power was at this time at its zenith, and was formidable not only to the Persians but to the great European Powers, who, indeed, were thankful for such diversion of its activities as the Persians from time to time effected, so that Busbecq, Ferdinand's ambassador at the Court of Sulaymán, declares that "only the Persian stands between us and ruin[2]." Creasy[3] speaks of the "pre-eminence of the Turks of that age in the numerical force and efficiency of their artillery"; and adds that "the same remark applies to their skill in fortification, and in all the branches of military engineering." Inferior as were the Persian to the Ottoman troops alike in discipline and equipment, it was much to their credit that they were able to offer as stout a resistance as they did, especially as the continual object of Turkish diplomacy at this time was to incite the Uzbeks, Turkmáns, and other Sunní peoples, to combine with them in attacking "the rascally Red-heads" (*Qizil-básh-i-Awbásh*). Of this policy the State Papers of Sulaymán's, as of his father Salím's, reign afford ample evidence; for instance the letter addressed to a Turkmán

Wars with the Ottoman Turks.

[1] A complete diary of this campaign against the "arch-heretic Qizil-básh King Ṭahmásp" will be found in vol. i of Firídún Bey's *Munsha'át*, pp. 584-598. The Ottoman army left Constantinople on June 10, 1534, occupied Baghdád in December of the same year, and returned to Constantinople on Jan. 7, 1536.

[2] See p. 11 *supra*.

[3] *History of the Ottoman Turks* (London, 1877), p. 202.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

chief about the end of 960/1553 (given on pp. 612–613 of Firídún Bey's *Munsha'át*) and transmitted to him, apparently, by four of his representatives, Muḥammad, Mír Abú Turáb, Mír Ṭútí and Sunduk, who, after performing the Pilgrimage, had visited the Sulṭán's Court at Constantinople on their homeward journey, and had delighted him with accounts of their achievements against the Persians.

Wars with the Uzbeks.

The wars with the Uzbeks were equally continuous, especially until the death of the redoutable 'Ubayd Khán, the son of Shaybak Khán, a direct descendant of Chingíz, in 946/1539–40, at the age of fifty-three, after a reign of thirty years. He is said by the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* to have suffered defeat in only one of the seven campaigns he fought against the Persians. Ṭús, Mashhad, and especially Herát suffered terribly during these wars, which were nearly always accompanied by severe religious persecutions. The poet Hiláli fell a victim to the Sunní fanaticism of the Uzbeks at Herát in 935/1528–9, as the poet Banná'í had fallen a victim to Shí'a intolerance at Qarshí in 918/1512–13; and under the year 942/1535–6 the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* gives the following graphic account of the persecution of the Shí'a which took place on the capture of Herát by 'Ubayd Khán on Rajab 20, 942 (January 14, 1536):

Religious persecutions.

هر روز بحکمِ آن خان بی ایمان پنج شش کس بواسطهٔ تشیّع باقوالِ جُهّال در چهار سوق هراة کشته می شدند و روستائیان بی دیانت و شهریان با خیانت با هر کس که عداوتی داشتند اورا گرفته نزد قاضی می بردند که این مرد در زمانِ قزلباش لعن ابو بکر و عثمان کرده‌است' بسخن آن دو گواه جاهل قاضی بقتلِ آن مظلوم حکم می کرد و اورا کشان کشان بچهار سوق هراة می بردند و بقتلش می آوردند و از شومی ایشان امواجِ محن

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

و افواجِ فتن بدرجهٔ اعلی رسید و سلب و نهب در اطراف خراسان واقع گردید،

"Every day by order of that unbelieving Khán ('Ubayd) five or six individuals were slain for Shí'a proclivities on the information of ignorant persons in the market-place[1] of Herát. Godless villagers and treacherous townsmen would seize anyone against whom they cherished a grudge and drag him before the judge, asserting that in the time of the 'Red-heads' (*i.e.* the Shí'a Persians) he used to curse Abú Bakr and 'Uthmán[2]; and on the word of these two ignorant witnesses the judge would pronounce sentence of death on the victim, whom they would then drag to the market-place of Herát and put to death. Through their sinister acts the waves of sorrow and the hosts of mischief attained their culmination, while plunder and looting took place throughout the confines of Khurásán."

With the Georgians also the Persians were constantly at war during this period, to wit in 947/1540–1, 950/1543–4, 958/1551, 961/1554, 963/1556, 968/1560–1, and 976/1568–9. These wars were also waged with great ferocity, and it is worth noting that contemporary Persian historians constantly speak of the Christian inhabitants of Georgia as "guebres" (*gabrán*, a term properly applicable only to the Zoroastrians), as in the following verse describing the first of these campaigns:

Wars with the Georgians.

دران سنگلاخ آن ددان کرده جای، وطنگاهِ گبرانِ مردم ربای،

"In that stony wilderness those beasts had established themselves, the native land of man-stealing *guebres*."

In this campaign, as the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* informs us, such of the Georgians as consented to embrace Islám were spared, but those who refused were put to the sword; and similarly, in speaking of the campaign of 958/1551 the same history says:

[1] *Chahár-súq* (from which is derived the modern Turkish *chárshi*) is the point of intersection of two main *bázárs*; a sort of Oriental Oxford Circus, affording the greatest publicity.

[2] The omission of 'Umar, unless due to a scribe's error, is remarkable.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

غازیانِ ظفر شعار پست و بلندِ دیارِ کُفّار فجّاررا احاطه فرمودند و هر کوه و کمر که گریزگاه آن گمراه بود از لکدکوب دلآوران با هامون یکسان شد و یك متنفّس از آن مشرکین از دائرهٔ قهر و کینِ و الله محیطٌ بالکافرین جان بسلامت بیرون نبرد و اهل و عیال و اموال بأرثِ شرعی از مقتولان بقاتلان انتقال نمود'

"The victorious champions encompassed the lands of the sinful unbelievers, lowlands and highlands, and every mountain and ridge whither that misguided one [their ruler] had fled was levelled with the plain by the trampling of the [Persian] warriors. Not one who drew breath of those polytheists saved his soul alive from the circle of wrath and vengeance of '*and God encompasseth the unbelievers*[1],' and, by lawful heritage, the wives, families and property of the slain passed to their slayers."

Minor wars and disturbances.

Besides these greater wars, there were minor operations against the more or less independent rulers of Gílán, and the last representatives of the ancient but expiring dynasty of the Shírwánsháhs, who boasted descent from the great Núshírwán. Although the last of this line, Sháhrukh ibn Sulṭán Farrukh ibn Shaykh-sháh ibn Farrukh-Yasár, was put to death by Ṭahmásp in 946/1539–40, nine years later we read of a scion of the house named Burhán in conflict with Isma'íl Mírzá. In Gílán, Khán Aḥmad, the eleventh ruler of a petty dynasty which had ruled for two hundred and five years, was defeated and interned in the Castle of Qahqaha in 975/1567–8. In 981/1573–4 Tabríz was terrorized by a gang of roughs who were not reduced to order and obedience until a hundred and fifty of them had been put to death. Barbarous punishments were frequent. Muẓaffar Sulṭán, governor of Rasht, was for an act of treason paraded through the streets of Tabríz, decor-

Barbarous punishments.

[1] *Qur'án*, ii, 18.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ated for the occasion, amidst the mockery of the rabble, and burned to death in an iron cage, suspended under which in a particularly cruel and humiliating fashion Amír Sa'du'd-Dín 'Ináyatu'lláh Khúzání simultaneously suffered the same fate. Khwája Kalán Ghúriyání, a fanatical Sunní who had gone out to welcome 'Ubayd Khán the Uzbek and was accused of speaking slightingly of the Sháh, was skinned in the market-place of Herát and the stuffed skin exhibited on a pole. Ruknu'd-Dín Mas'úd of Kázarún, a most learned man and skilful physician, incurred the Sháh's displeasure and was burned to death. Muḥammad Ṣáliḥ, a liberal patron of poets, in whose honour Ḥayratí composed a panegyric, had his mouth sewn up because he was alleged to have spoken disrespectfully of the King, and was then placed in a large jar which was afterwards thrown to the ground from the top of a minaret.

Tahmásp's foibles satirized.

According to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, Sháh Ṭahmásp was in his youth much interested in calligraphy and painting; he also liked riding on Egyptian asses, which consequently became fashionable, and were adorned with golden trappings and gold-embroidered saddle-cloths. Alluding to these idiosyncrasies a ribald poet with the extraordinary *nom de guerre* of *Búqu'l-'Ishq* ("the Trumpet of Love") lampooned him in this verse:

بی تکلّف خوش ترقّی کرده‌اند ' کاتب و نقّاش و قزوینی و خر '

"The scribe, the painter, the Qazwíní and the ass
Obtained easy promotion without trouble."

He made a great ostentation of piety, "regarding most things as unclean, and often spitting out his half-eaten food into the water or the fire," in view of which it is satisfactory to know that "he would not eat in company." He was also punctilious about such matters as cutting his nails, and would spend the day after this operation in the bath.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Ṭahmásp died on Tuesday, Ṣafar 15, 984 (May 14, 1576) at the age of sixty-four after a reign of fifty-three years and a half, the longest reign, according to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, of any Muhammadan sovereign except the Fáṭimid Caliph al-Mustanṣir bi'lláh[1]. Eleven of his sons are enumerated in the history just cited, of whom nine at least survived him. The eldest, Muḥammad Khudá-banda, who was about forty-five years of age, though he succeeded to the throne a year later, renounced it on his father's death on account of his partial blindness, this infirmity, whether natural or deliberately inflicted, being regarded in the East, and especially in Persia, as an absolute disqualification for the exercise of regal functions[2]. His younger brother Ḥaydar, taking advantage of the absence from the capital of his brothers, of whom Isma'íl was imprisoned in the Castle of Qahqaha, while the others were for the most part resident in distant provinces, endeavoured to seize the throne, but was murdered in the women's apartments, where he had taken refuge, by the partisans of his brother Isma'íl, who was proclaimed king in the principal mosque of Qazwín nine days after his father's death.

Troubles succeeding the death of Ṭahmásp.

Isma'íl's reign was short but sanguinary, and in his drastic methods of dealing with possible competitors for the Crown he rivalled the most ruthless of the Ottoman Sulṭáns. He first put to death his two brothers Sulaymán and Muṣṭafá; then, after providing an elaborate funeral for his father at Mashhad and a gorgeous coronation for himself at Qazwín, in which his remaining brothers occupied their due positions, he resumed his fratricidal activities. On Sunday the sixth of Dhu'l-Ḥijja, A.H. 984 (Feb. 24, 1577), he put to death the six following princes: Sulṭán Ibráhím Mírzá, poet, artist, musician and calligrapher;

Short and sanguinary reign of Isma'íl II.

[1] He reigned sixty lunar years, A.H. 427–487 (A.D. 1035–1094).

[2] See Chardin's *Voyages* (Paris, 1811), vol. v, pp. 241–244.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

his nephew Muḥammad Ḥusayn Mírzá, a lad of eighteen, who had already been deprived of his eyesight; Sulṭán Maḥmúd Mírzá; his son Muḥammad Báqir Mírzá, a child of two; Imám-qulí Mírzá, and Sulṭán Aḥmad Mírzá. He next turned his attention to those princes who were resident in outlying provinces, such as Badí'u'z-Zamán Mírzá and his little son Bahrám Mírzá in Khurásán, Sulṭán 'Alí Mírzá in Ganja, and Sulṭán Ḥasan Mírzá in Ṭihrán, all of whom he destroyed. Only by a most wonderful chance, accounted by his biographer Iskandar Munshí[1] as a miraculous intervention of Providence, did the little Prince 'Abbás Mírzá, destined to become the greatest of Persia's modern rulers, escape his uncle's malevolence. The blood-thirsty Isma'íl had actually sent 'Alí-qulí Khán Shámlú to Herát, of which 'Abbás Mírzá, though only six years of age[2], was the nominal governor, to put the young prince to death, but the emissary, whether actuated by pity or superstition, delayed the accomplishment of his cruel task till the sacred month of Ramaḍán should be over, and ere this respite had come to an end a courier arrived bringing the joyful news of Isma'íl's death, the manner of which was as discreditable as his life. On the night of Sunday, Ramaḍán 13, A.H. 985 (Nov. 24, 1577), being at the time the worse for drink, he had gone out in search of adventures into the streets and *bázárs* of the city accompanied by one of his favourites, a confectioner's son named Ḥasan Beg, and other disreputable companions, and towards dawn had gone to rest in Ḥasan Beg's house, where he was found dead later in the day. Some suggested that he had been poisoned, or first drugged and afterwards strangled, while others maintained that he had merely taken an overdose of the opium

Narrow escape of Prince 'Abbás.

Discreditable end of Isma'íl II.

[1] Author of the well-known monograph on Sháh 'Abbás the Great entitled *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí.*

[2] He was born at Herát on Ramaḍán 1, 978 (Jan. 27, 1571).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

wherewith he was wont to assuage the pain of a colic to which he was subject. But his death was so welcome to all that no great trouble seems to have been taken to arrive at the manner of it, and it does not even appear that any punishment was inflicted on Ḥasan Beg, who, indeed, is said to have been also half paralysed when found[1].

Reign of Muḥammad Khudá-banda (A.D. 1577–87).

Muḥammad Khudá-banda, in spite of his blindness, was now placed on the throne which he had refused on the death of his father Sháh Ṭahmásp. He was at this time about forty-six years of age[2] and was resident at Shíráz, having been replaced in his former government of Herát by his little son Prince 'Abbás Mírzá, whose narrow escape from death has just been described. The new king at once set out for Qazwín, and amongst those who welcomed him at Qum was Ḥasan Beg Rúmlú, the author of the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, which important but unpublished history was concluded in this very year and contains the most authoritative account of the events above narrated. That this account is in places confused and must be supplemented by later histories like the *Khuld-i-Barín* and *Ta'rikh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* arises from the fact that the author, for his own personal safety, had to walk with great caution amidst the rapidly-changing circumstances of these perilous times.

At Qazwín, Muḥammad Khudá-banda received the homage of Sulaymán Páshá, a great-grandson of Abú Sa'íd the Tímúrid, who greeted him with the following verses:

شاها درِ تو قبلهٔ شاهانِ عالم است،
گردون ترا مسخّر و گیتی مسلّم است،
یکتا شدست رشتهٔ شاهی بعهدِ تو،
الحمد لله ارچه که یکتاست محکم است،

[1] Cf. Sir John Malcolm's *History of Persia* (London, 1815), vol. i, pp. 516–517.

[2] According to the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* he was born in 938/1531–2.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"O King, thy gate is the *qibla* of the Kings of the world,
Heaven is subjugated and earth surrendered to thee:
In thy reign the thread of royalty hath become single[1],
But, Praise be to God, though single it is strong."

Parí-Khán Khánum put to death.

The able, ambitious and beautiful Princess Parí-Khán Khánum, Ṭahmásp Sháh's favourite daughter[2] by a Circassian wife, who had played a prominent part in the troubles succeeding his death, and aspired to rule in fact if not in name, was put to death at Muḥammad Khudá-banda's command by Khalíl Khán Afshár, together with her mother's brother Shamkhál Khán, and Sháh Shujá', the infant son of the late King Isma'íl. In consequence of these pitiless slaughters the representatives of the Ṣafawí Royal Family were now reduced to Sháh Muḥammad Khudá-banda himself and his four sons, Ḥamza, 'Abbás, Abú Ṭálib and Ṭahmásp. The first, who is sometimes reckoned amongst the Ṣafawí kings (since he seems for a while to have exercised regal functions during his half-blind father's life-time), was murdered by a young barber named Khudá-verdí[3] on the 22nd of Dhu'l-Ḥijja, 994 (Dec. 4, 1586). Abú Ṭálib was thereupon nominated *Walí-'ahd*, or Crown Prince, instead of his elder brother 'Abbás, who was still in Khurásán, but who speedily appeared on the scene with his guardian and tutor Murshid-qulí Khán Ustájlú,

[1] I suppose this alludes to the practical extermination of the rest of the Royal Family by Isma'íl II.

[2] Sir John Malcolm (*op. cit.*, vol. i, pp. 514 and 517) appears to confuse her with her mother, since he calls her "the favourite *Sultána* of the deceased monarch" (Ṭahmásp), and "the sister of Shamkhál." In the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* she is enumerated as the second of Ṭahmásp's eight daughters, but according to other Persian historians she was one of the five daughters of Sháh Isma'íl and the sister of Ṭahmásp. See p. 81 *supra*, n. 2 *ad calc.* By "Don Juan of Persia" she is called the Infanta.

[3] Called by "Don Juan of Persia" (f. 104[a]) "Cudy de Lac" (*i.e. Dallák*), "que es como si dixeramos en Español, Cudi el barbero del Rey."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

inflicted condign punishment on those who had prompted the murder of his elder brother Ḥamza, and rendered his two younger brothers harmless by depriving them of their eyesight and imprisoning them in the Castle of Alamút[1]. His father abdicated in his favour after a reign of ten years in Dhu'l-Qa'da, 995 (October, 1587), and Sháh 'Abbás ascended the throne to which he was destined to add so great a glory. He and his three brothers were all the sons of one mother, a lady of the Mar'ashí Sayyids of Mázandarán, who seems to have resembled her sister-in-law Parí-Khán Khánum in her masterful character as well as in her tragic fate, for she, together with her aged mother and many of her kinsfolk and countrymen, was murdered by some of the Qizil-básh nobles who objected to her autocratic methods and dominating influence over her irresolute and peace-loving husband, being of opinion that—

Accession of Sháh 'Abbás the Great (A.D. 1587–1629).

فروغی نماند درآن خاندان ' که بانگِ خروس آید از ماکیان '

"No luck remains in that household where the hen crows like a cock[2]."

Muḥammad Khudá-banda was born in 938/1531–2, was forty-six years of age when his father Sháh Ṭahmásp died in 984/1576–7, reigned ten years after the death of his brother Isma'íl, survived his abdication eight or nine years, and died in 1004/1595–6. His character is thus described by Riḍá-qulí Khán in his Supplement to the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*: "He had some knowledge of all the current sciences, and was incomparable in understanding and judgement, virtue and discernment, bounty and generosity, and expression and eloquence. Being a 'servant of God' (*Khudá-banda*) he showed an excessive

Character of Muḥammad Khudá-banda.

[1] "Don Juan of Persia," f. 107b.

[2] Supplement to the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

clemency in matters of administration, war, anger and punishment, and, so far as possible, would not consent to the death of any one. Though he struck the first blow at Khudá-verdí the barber[1], this was only according to the enactment of the Holy Law. In consequence of his weak eyesight he seldom gave public audience, and, while he tarried in the women's apartments, the Sayyida [his wife] gave effect to his commands, and, in order more effectively to control affairs, herself sealed the documents...In short, he was a king with the qualities of a religious mendicant, or a religious mendicant endowed with regal pomp (*Pádisháhí darwísh-khiṣál, yá darwíshí pádisháh-jalál*)."

His reign, though short, was troubled not only by the domestic tragedies indicated above, but by the Turks, Uzbeks, Crimean Tartars, Georgians and other external foes, who, encouraged by the spectacle of those internecine struggles which succeeded the death of Ṭahmásp, sought to profit by the distractions of Persia.

Sháh 'Abbás I, commonly and justly called "the Great," was only sixteen or seventeen years of age when he ascended the throne in 996/1588[2], and died in Jumádá 1, 1038/Jan. 1629 at the age of 60 after a reign of 43 lunar years, in which, by general agreement, Persia reached the highest degree of power, prosperity and splendour ever attained by her in modern times. His position at first was, however, fraught with dangers and difficulties. Not only was his kingdom threatened, as usual, by the Ottoman Turks on the west and the Uzbeks on the east, but many of the provinces were in revolt and the country was distracted by the rivalries and ambitions of the great Qizil-básh

Sháh 'Abbás the Great (A.D. 1588 to 1629).

Dangers threatening Persia on his accession.

[1] The murderer of his son Ḥamza. See p. 101 *supra* and n. 3 *ad calc.*

[2] He was born, according to the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, on Ramaḍán 1, 978 (Jan. 27, 1571), or 979 (Jan. 17, 1572). The words ظلّ الله form the chronogram of his coronation.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

nobles of different tribes, in the hands of two of whom, Murshid-qulí Khán and 'Alí-qulí Khán, the young King seemed at first to be a mere puppet. When the former accompanied him to Qazwín to place him on the throne, the latter was left in Khurásán to bear the brunt of the Uzbek attack, to which, after a defence of nine months, he fell a victim. 'Abbás, suspecting Murshid-qulí Khán of deliberately withholding help from his rival, caused him to be murdered one night in camp at Sháhrúd, thus freeing himself from an irksome tutelage, and becoming a sovereign ruler in fact as well as in name. Realizing that he could not possibly wage successful war simultaneously with the Turks and the Uzbeks, he determined, with far-sighted prudence, to make peace, even on unfavourable terms, with the former in order to check the encroachments of the latter and to devise some mechanism to control the disorderly rivalries of the Qizil-básh nobles, whereby his authority and the efficiency of his military force were paralysed. The terms of the treaty with Turkey included the surrender of the towns and districts in Ádharbáyján and Georgia con-

Conclusion of Peace with Turkey.

quered by the Ottoman troops during a war which had lasted more than twelve years (985–998/1577–1590), such as Tabríz, Ganja, Qárs, Nakhjuwán, Shakí, Shamákhí and Tiflis, as well as part of Luristán; the abandonment of the cursing of the first three Caliphs, Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán; and the sending as a hostage to Constantinople of Sháh 'Abbás's nephew Ḥaydar Mírzá, who departed with the Turkish general Farhád Páshá for the Ottoman capital, where he died two years later.

Sháh 'Abbás next proceeded to subdue Shíráz, Kirmán, Gílán and Khurram-ábád in Luristán, and to inflict condign

Uzbek invasion.

punishment on Ya'qúb Khán Dhu'l-Qadar and other rebels. Meanwhile 'Abdu'l-Mú'min Khán and his Uzbeks were again ravaging Khurásán, and the

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Sháh, advancing to attack them, was stricken down by fever at Ṭihrán. While he lay sick and unable to move, the holy city of Mashhad was taken and sacked by the savage Uzbeks and many of its inhabitants slain. Sabzawár[1] suffered a similar fate in 1002/1593–4; but three or four years later[2] 'Abdu'lláh Khán, the Uzbek sovereign, died, and his son, the above-mentioned 'Abdu'l-Mú'min Khán, was killed by his own people. It was at this juncture (April, 1598) that Sháh 'Abbás was at length able to attack the Uzbeks in force and drive them out of Khurásán, which now at length enjoyed a period of peace and tranquillity. On his return from this victorious campaign to Qazwín in the autumn of the same year, he found awaiting him there

The Sherley brothers.

those celebrated English soldiers of fortune Sir Anthony and Sir Robert Sherley, whose romantic adventures are fully described in several excellent monographs[3]. These, who were accompanied by some dozen English attendants, including at least one cannon-founder, aided him greatly in the reconstruction of his army and especially in providing it with

Improvement of Persian artillery.

artillery, the lack of which had hitherto so severely handicapped the Persians in their wars with the Turks, so that, as it is quaintly phrased in *Purchas's Pilgrims*, "the mighty Ottoman, terror of the Christian world, quaketh of a Sherley fever, and gives hopes of approaching fates. The prevailing Persian hath learned Sherleian arts of war; and he which before knew not the

[1] The author of the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* says that he himself saw amongst those slain at Sabzawár women with children at the breast.

[2] In 1006/1597–8, according to the *'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*.

[3] *e.g.* "The Sherley Brothers, an historical Memoir of the Lives of Sir Thomas Sherley, Sir Anthony Sherley, and Sir Robert Sherley, Knights, by one of the same House" (Evelyn Philip Shirley; Roxburgh Club: Chiswick, 1848); "The Three Brothers, or the Travels and Adventures of Sir A., Sir R. and Sir T. Sherley in Persia, Russia, Turkey, Spain, etc., with Portraits" (Anon., London, 1825).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

use of ordnance, hath now five hundred pieces of brass and sixty thousand musqueteers; so that they, which at hand with the sword were before dreadful to the Turks, now also, in remoter blows and sulphurean arts, are grown terrible." The discipline of the Persian army had also been improved by the elimination of the more ambitious and disobedient Qizil-básh nobles; the creation of a composite tribal force known as *Sháh-seven* ("King-lovers"), united not by tribal allegiance but by personal devotion to the King; and the formation of a regular infantry comparable in some degree to the Turkish Janissaries.

Formation of the *Sháh-seven* tribe.

A year or two later circumstances were favourable for the long-projected attempt to recover the provinces wrested from Persia by the Turks during the interregnum which succeeded the death of Ṭahmásp. The reign of the feeble Muḥammad III was approaching its end, and Turkey was weakened by a prolonged war with Austria and by the so-called Jalálí[1] revolt in Asia Minor when Sháh 'Abbás opened his campaign in 1010/1601–2. Tabríz was retaken "with cannon, an engine of long-time by the Persians scorned as not beseeming valiant men," in 1012/1603–4, and two years later the celebrated Turkish general Chighála-záda Sinán Páshá ("Cicala") was defeated near Salmás and compelled to retreat to Ván and Diyár Bakr, where he died of chagrin. Baghdád and Shírwán were recaptured by the Persians about the same time, but the former changed hands more than once during the reign of Sháh 'Abbás, and the occasion of its recapture from the Turks in A.D. 1625 gave rise to an

Successful war against the Ottoman Turks.

[1] An account of the heretic Jalál is given by Munajjim-báshí (*Ṣaḥá'ifu'l-Akhbár*, Turkish version, ed. Constantinople, A.H. 1285, vol. iii, p. 471). He and many of his followers were killed near Síwás in 925/1519, but evidently the sect which he founded retained its vitality for the better part of a century afterwards.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

interchange of verses between Ḥáfiẓ Páshá and Sulṭán Murád IV which has attained a certain celebrity in Turkish literary history[1].

Wearisome accounts of these wars in Persian histories of the period.

No coherent and critical account of these wars between the Persians on the one hand and the Turks, Uzbeks and Georgians on the other has yet, so far as I know, been written, but the materials are ample, should any historian acquainted with Persian and Turkish desire to undertake the task. The enormous preponderance of the military element in such contemporary chronicles as the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* makes them very dull and arduous reading to anyone not specially interested in military matters; even from the point of view of military history they are vitiated by overwhelming masses of trivial details and the absence of any breadth of view or clearness of outline. Many matters on which we should most desire information are completely ignored, and it is only here and there incidentally that we find passages throwing light on the religious and social conditions of the time. Of the recapture of the Island of Hurmuz in the Persian Gulf from the Portuguese in March, 1622, by a combined Anglo-Persian force we have naturally very detailed contemporary English accounts.

Character and institutions of Sháh 'Abbás.

Allusion has already been made in the introductory chapter[2] to the splendour and prosperity of Iṣfahán under Sháh 'Abbás, and to the number of foreigners, diplomatists, merchants and missionaries, which his tolerant attitude towards non-Muslims brought thither. These and other similar matters are very fully discussed in the first volume of the great monograph on his reign entitled *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, half of which consists of an Introduction (*Muqaddama*) comprising

[1] See E. J. W. Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. iii, pp. 248–251, and, for the originals, vol. vi, pp. 190–191.

[2] Pp. 24–5 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

twelve Discourses (*Maqála*). The first of these, dealing with his ancestors and predecessors, is much the longest, and in my manuscript occupies about two hundred pages; the others, though much shorter, often occupying only a page or two, are more original, and deal with such matters as the religious devotion of Sháh 'Abbás; his wise judgement and wide knowledge; his worthiness to be regarded as a *Ṣáḥib-Qirán*, or "Lord of a fortunate Conjunction"; his miraculous preservation on several occasions from imminent peril; his wise administration and care for public security; his inflexible severity; his pious foundations and charitable bequests; his wars and victories; his birth and childhood; and an account of the most eminent nobles, divines, ministers, physicians, calligraphers, painters, illuminators, poets and minstrels of his reign. Speaking of his

His inflexible severity.

severity (*Maqála* vi) the author, Iskandar Munshí, says that no one dared to delay one moment in the execution of any order given him by the King: "for instance, should he command a father to kill his son, the sentence would be carried out immediately, even as the decree of destiny; or should the father, moved by parental tenderness, make any delay, the command would be reversed; and should the son then temporize, another would slay both. By such awful severity the execution of his commands attained the supreme degree of efficiency, and none dared hesitate for an instant in the fulfilment of the sentence inevitable as fate." He also

Attendance at executions made compulsory.

compelled his officers, on pain of death, to be present at all executions; held each provincial governor and local magistrate responsible for the security of the roads in his district; and punished falsehood with such severity that it was generally believed that if anyone ventured to lie to him, he was informed of it from the Spirit World. Yet at other times he would be very friendly and unassuming in his intercourse with his

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

courtiers and attendants, careful of their rights and just claims, and ready to overlook accidental and involuntary shortcomings. Though not averse from the banquet and the wine-bout, he was greatly concerned to be correctly informed as to the circumstances of the neighbouring kings and countries, and devoted much attention to the development of his Intelligence Department. He was also something of a linguist, and not only appreciated but occasionally composed poetry.

Shāh 'Abbās mingles affability with severity.

Amongst the towns and districts which benefited most from his munificence were, besides his capital Iṣfahán, Mashhad and its holy shrine of the eighth Imám 'Alí Riḍá, which, as we have seen, he rescued from the savage and fanatical Uzbeks and raised to a position of the greatest glory and honour; Ardabíl, the original home of his family; Qazwín, the earlier capital of the Ṣafawís; Káshán, near which he constructed the celebrated dam known as the Band-i-Quhrúd[1]; Astarábád; Tabríz; Hamadán; and the province of Mázandarán, one of his favourite resorts, which he adorned with several splendid palaces and the great causeway extending from Astarábád to Ashraf, of which full particulars are given in Lord Curzon's great work on Persia[2]. As regards his conquests, his armies reached Merv, Nisá, Abíward, Andakhúd and even Balkh in the north-east, and Nakhjuwán, Erivan, Ganja, Tiflís, Darband and Bákú in the north-west.

Towns specially favoured by him.

His conquests.

No useful purpose would be served by enumerating here all the notable persons in each class mentioned by Iskandar Munshí, who wrote, as he repeatedly mentions in the course of his work, in 1025/1616, but the most important are, amongst the divines and

Notable personages of his reign.

[1] See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 185–6.

[2] Vol. i, pp. 376–8, *etc.*

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

men of learning, Mír Muḥammad Dámád and Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín 'Ámilí; amongst the calligraphists, Mawláná Isḥáq Siyáwushání, Muḥammad Ḥusayn-i-Tabrízí, Mír Mu'izz-i-Káshí, Mír Ṣadru'd-Dín Muḥammad, and others; amongst the artists and miniature painters, Muẓaffar 'Alí, Zaynu'l-'Ábidín, Ṣádiq Beg, 'Abdu'l-Jabbár, and others; amongst the poets, Ḍamírí, Muḥtasham, Walí, Waḥshí, Khwája Ḥusayn, Mír Ḥaydar Mu'amma'í, the brothers Ṭayfúr and Dá'í, Wálih and Malik of Qum, Ḥátim of Káshán, Ṣabrí Rúzbihání, Ḥisábí, the Qáḍí Núr-i-Iṣfahání, Ḥálatí, Halákí, Maẓharí of Cashmere, and the Qazwínís Furúghí, Tabkhí, Sulṭánu'l-Fuqará, Ká'ká and Sharmí; and amongst the singers and minstrels[1], Ḥáfiẓ Aḥmad-i-Qazwíní, Ḥáfiẓ Jalájil-i-Bákharzí, Ḥáfiẓ Muẓaffar-i-Qumí, Ḥáfiẓ Háshim-i-Qazwíní, Mírzá Muḥammad Kamáncha'í, Ustád Muḥammad Mú'min, Ustád Shahsuwár-i-Chahár-tárí, Ustád Shams-i-Shaypúrghú'í-i-Warámíní, Ustád Ma'ṣum Kamáncha'í, Ustád Sulṭán Muḥammad Ṭanbúra'í, Mírzá Ḥusayn Ṭanbúra'í, Ustád Sulṭán Muḥammad-i-Changí, and the *Qiṣṣa-khwáns* (story-tellers) and *Sháhnáma-khwáns* (reciters of the 'Epic of Kings'), Ḥaydar, Muḥammad Khursand and Fatḥí, of whom the two last were brothers and natives of Iṣfahán. It is because the fame of the singers, minstrels and musicians who constitute this last class is in its nature so ephemeral that I have enumerated them in full, as indicating what forms of musical talent were popular at the court of Sháh 'Abbás.

Calligraphists.

Artists.

Poets.

Musicians, etc.

That Sháh 'Abbás deserved the title of "the Great" there can be no question, and many of his severities have been palliated, if not excused, even by European historians like

[1] Of these titles, *Ḥáfiẓ* denotes a *Qurán*-reciter or rhapsodist; *Kamáncha'í* a violinist; *Chahár-tárí* a player on the four-stringed lute; *Shaypúrghú'í* a trumpeter; *Ṭanbúra'í* a drummer; and *Changí* a harper.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Sir John Malcolm[1]; but his cruel murder of his eldest son Ṣafí Mírzá and his blinding of another, Khudábanda Mírzá, and the tragical circumstances connected therewith[2], form a dark page in the records of his otherwise glorious reign, which ended with his death in the early part of A.D. 1629. He was succeeded by his grandson Sám Mírzá, who, on his accession, took the name of his unfortunate father, and mounted the throne of Persia under the title of Sháh Ṣafí I.

The chief blot on his reign.

There is a well-known tradition of the Muhammadans[3] that Solomon died standing, supported by the staff on which he leaned, and that his death remained unknown to the *Jinn*, who laboured at his command in the construction of the Temple, for a year, until the wood-worm ate through the staff and the body fell to the ground. This legend may well serve as a parable of the century of Ṣafawí rule which followed the death of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, who, by his strength and wisdom, gave to Persia a period of peace and outward prosperity which for nearly a hundred years protected his successors from the results of their incompetence.

The successors of Sháh 'Abbás the Great.

Four of his house succeeded him ere the catastrophe of the Afghán invasion in A.D. 1722 effected its downfall, to wit, his grandson Sháh Ṣafí above mentioned (A.D. 1629–1642); his great-grandson Sháh 'Abbás II (A.D. 1642–1666); his great-great-grandson Ṣafí, subsequently recrowned under the name of Sulaymán (A.D. 1666–1694); and his great-great-great-grandson Sháh Ḥusayn (A.D. 1694–1722). Of Sháh Ṣafí, Krusinski[4] says that "'tis certain there has not been in Persia a more cruel and bloody reign than his" and describes it as "one continued series

Sháh Ṣafí (A.D. 1629–1642), a blood-thirsty tyrant.

1 *History of Persia* (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 555–6.

2 *Ibid.*, pp. 560–5.

3 See the commentaries on *Qur'án* xxxiv, 13.

4 P. 44 of the English translation (London, 1728).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

of cruelties"; while Hanway[1] observes that "he interfered so little in the affairs of the government that the Persians would have scarcely perceived they had a king, had it not been for the frequent instances of barbarity which stained his reign with blood"; and that "by his own folly he lost Kandahar and Babylon [Baghdád], two of the most important places on his frontiers." Than Sháh 'Abbás II, on the other hand, according to Krusinski[2], "next to Ismael I and Schah-Abas the Great, Persia never had a better king of the family of the Sophies." Although, like his father and predecessor, he was "too much subject to wine, and committed some acts of cruelty, yet, abateing a few excursions, of which he might justly be reproached, he shewed himself, during the whole course of his reign, truly worthy of the crown he wore." "The farther he advanced into his reign," continues the Jesuit, "the more he was beloved by his subjects and the more feared by his neighbours. He loved justice, and had no mercy of the governors and other public officers who, abusing their authority, oppressed the people, of which several instances may be seen in Tavernier. He had a great and noble soul, was very kind to strangers, and openly protected the Christians, whom he would not have in the least molested for their religion, saying, 'That none but God was master of their consciences; that, for his own part, he was only governor of externals; and that all his subjects being equally members of the State, of what religion soever they were, he owed justice to them all alike.'" This reign, however, was the last flicker of greatness in the Ṣafawí dynasty, for Sulaymán (to quote Krusinski[3] once more), "degenerated very much from the virtues of his father Schah-Abas II, and made his reign remarkable only by a thousand instances of cruelty,

'Abbás II (A.D. 1642–1666), a good king, save in his cups.

Sulaymán (A.D. 1666–1694), a cruel and debauched king.

[1] *Revolutions of Persia* (London, 1753), vol. i, p. 20.
[2] *Op. cit.*, p. 49. [3] *Op. cit.*, pp. 57–8.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

SHÁH 'ÁBBAS THE SECOND

1920 . 9 . 17 –013 [2] (Brit. Mus.)

To face p. 112

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the bare mention of which is shocking. When he was in wine or in wrath nobody about him was sure of life or estate. He caused hands, feet, nose and ears to be cut off, eyes to be plucked out, and lives to be sacrificed upon the least whim that took him; and the man that was most in his favour at the beginning of a debauch was generally made a sacrifice at the end of it. This is the character given us of him by Sir John Chardin, who was in part a witness of what he relates as to this matter. Persons thought their lives in such danger whenever they approached him that a great lord of his Court said, when he came from his presence, that he always felt if his head was left standing upon his shoulders. It was under this prince that Persia began to decay. He thought so little like a king that when it was represented to him what danger he was in from the Turks, who, when they had made peace with the Christians, would come and attack his finest provinces if he did not put himself in a position to repel them, he answered very indifferently that he did not care, provided they left him Iṣfahán."

Sháh Ḥusayn, the last Ṣafawí king (for his nominal successors Ṭahmásp II and 'Abbás III were mere puppets in the hands of Nádir Sháh), was very unlike his predecessors, for his clemency was so excessive as "rendered him incapable of any severity, though never so moderate and necessary[1]," while having one day accidentally wounded a duck with his pistol "he himself was as much terrified as if he had really committed murder, and made the same exclamation as is customary in Persia upon the shedding of human blood, by saying *Kanlu oldum*[2], *i.e.* 'I am polluted with blood'; and that very instant he caused two hundred *tomons* to be given to the poor as an atonement for what he thought a

Sháh Ḥusayn (A.D. 1694; deposed 1722; killed 1729), a "meek zealot."

[1] Krusinski, *op. cit.*, pp. 105–108.

[2] Turkish: قانلو اولدم'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

great sin." He was something of a scholar and theologian, much under the influence of the *Mullás*, and so careful of his religious duties and so much attached to the reading of the *Qur'án* as to earn for himself the nick-name of *Mullá* or "Parson Ḥusayn[1]." Though at first a vehement prohibitionist, he was later induced by his grandmother, instigated by wine-loving courtiers and power-seeking eunuchs, to taste the forbidden liquor, which gradually obtained such a hold on him that "he would not by any means hear the mention of business, but left it all to the discretions of his ministers and eunuchs, who governed the kingdom just as they pleased, and took the greater license because they were very sensible they had nothing to fear from a prince who was so weak as to refer the very petitions he received to them without so much as reading them[2]."

In such a work as this, which is concerned primarily with Persian literature and only secondarily with Persian history, and that only in broad outlines, save in the case of periods which witnessed some definite change in the national outlook, it is unnecessary to enter into a more detailed account of the later Ṣafawí period; the more so because several excellent accounts of the decline and fall of this remarkable dynasty, and of the state of Persia at that time, are readily accessible to the English reader. Of these the following may be especially commended.

Best contemporary accounts of this period.

(1) Olearius (A.D. 1636–1638).

Adam Olearius, Secretary to the Embassy sent by Frederick Duke of Holstein to Russia and Persia, was in the latter country from November, 1636 until February, 1638. His *Voyages and Travels*, originally written in Latin, were translated into French and thence, by John Davies, into English. I have used the English version published in 1669. Olearius, or Oelschläger, to give him his original

[1] Krusinski, *op. cit.*, p. 71. [2] *Ibid.*, p. 76.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

name, was a careful observer, and seems to have had a very fair knowledge both of Persian and Turkish, and his work is one of the best accounts of Persia in the seventeenth century.

(2) Raphaël du Mans (A.D. 1644–1696).

Le Père Raphaël du Mans, Superior of the Capuchin Mission at Iṣfahán, was born in A.D. 1613, went to Persia in 1644, and died there in 1696. His *Estat de la Perse en 1660* in the learned edition of M. Schefer (Paris, 1890) gives a valuable if not very lively account of Persian institutions at a somewhat later date than Olearius.

(3) Chardin (A.D. 1664–1677).

The Chevalier Chardin was born in A.D. 1643, was twice in Persia for about six years each time (A.D. 1664–70 and 1671–77), and settled in London in 1681, where he died in 1713. Of the numerous editions of his *Voyages en Perse* I have used that of the learned Langlès (Paris, 1811) in ten volumes, of which the last contains (pp. 151–244) an admirable *Notice chronologique de la Perse, depuis les temps les plus reculés jusqu'à ce jour* by the editor, carried down to the time of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh Qájár.

(4) Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín (A.D. 1692–1779).

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, who traced his descent from the celebrated Shaykh Záhid-i-Gílání, the spiritual director of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, the ancestor of the Ṣafawí kings, was born in A.D. 1692 at Iṣfahán, where he spent the greater part of his time until he left Persia for India, never to return, in A.D. 1734. He wrote his *Memoirs* (published in the original Persian with an English translation by F. C. Belfour in 1830–1) in 1741, and died at Benares at a ripe old age in 1779. Though he was himself involved in the disaster which overtook Iṣfahán in 1722, he gives a much less vivid and moving picture of the sufferings of its inhabitants during the siege by the Afgháns than that drawn by Krusinski and other European observers. His portraits of contemporary statesmen, theo-

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

logians and poets, on the other hand, lend a special value to his book

(5) Krusinski (A.D. 1700–1727).

Father Krusinski, Procurator of the Jesuits at Iṣfahán for some eighteen or twenty years previous to A.D. 1722, compiled an admirable *History of the Revolution of Persia* from the beginning of the Ṣafawí dynasty down to A.D. 1727 in which the circumstances of the Afghán invasion and its consequences are narrated in the utmost detail.

(6) Hanway (A.D. 1743–1750).

Jonas Hanway, who was in Persia in A.D. 1743–4, wrote and published in 1753 in two volumes *An historical account of the British Trade over the Caspian Sea, with a Journal of Travels*, which he supplemented by two further volumes on the *Revolution of Persia*, the first containing *The Reign of Shah Sultan Hussein, with the Invasion of the Afghans, and the reigns of Sultan Mir Maghmud and his successor Ashreff*, and the second *The History of the celebrated usurper Nadir Kouli, from his birth in* 1687 *till his death in* 1747, *to which are added some particulars of the unfortunate reign of his successor Adil Shah.* For the earlier part of his history Hanway is much indebted to Krusinski, but for the later period (A.D. 1727–1750), including the whole account of Nádir Sháh, he is an independent and most valuable authority, while his narrative is throughout lively and agreeable to read.

The later Ṣafawí period not calculated to inspire Persian historians.

These are only a few of the many writers and travellers whose works throw light on this period. I have mentioned them because they are the ones I have chiefly used, but a long and serviceable account of a much larger number will be found in Schefer's Introduction to his edition of le Père Raphaël du Mans mentioned above. The European writers are here, for reasons well set forth by Sir John Malcolm[1], more instructive and illuminating than the Persian historians, for

[1] *History of Persia* (London, 1815), vol. i, pp. 568–570.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

whom, as he says, "we can hardly imagine an era more unfavourable. A period of nearly a century elapsed without the occurrence of any one political event of magnitude; and yet the extraordinary calm was productive of no advantage to Persia. The princes, nobles, and high officers of that kingdom were, it is true, exempt from the dangers of foreign or internal war; but their property and their lives were the sport of a succession of weak, cruel and debauched monarchs. The lower orders were exposed to fewer evils than the higher, but they became every day more unwarlike; and what they gained by that tranquillity which the State enjoyed lost almost all its value when they ceased to be able to defend it. This period was distinguished by no glorious achievements. No characters arose on which the historian could dwell with delight. The nation may be said to have existed on the reputation which it had before acquired till all it possessed was gone, and till it became, from the slow but certain progress of a gradual and vicious decay, incapable of one effort to avert that dreadful misery and ruin in which it was involved by the invasion of a few Afghan tribes, whose conquest of Persia affixed so indelible a disgrace upon that country that we cannot be surprised that its historians have shrunk from the painful and degrading narration."

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín[1] takes precisely the same view. "Many ages having now elapsed," says he, "since civilization, tranquillity, and the accomplishment of all worldly blessings had attained a state of perfection in the beautiful provinces of Îrân, these were become a fit object for the affliction of the malignant eye[2]. The indolent King and princes, and the army that sought nothing but repose and for near a

[1] P. 106 of Belfour's text=p. 116 of his translation.

[2] The Evil Eye is called by the Arabs *'Aynu'l-Kamál*, "the Eye of Perfection," because anything perfect of its kind is especially exposed to its attacks.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

hundred years had not drawn the sword from the scabbard, would not even think of quelling this disturbance[1], until Maḥmúd[2] with a large army marched into the provinces of Kirmán and Yazd, and, having committed much plunder and devastation, proceeded on his route to Iṣfahán. This happened in the early part of the year 1134/1721."

Jonas Hanway[3] speaks in a similar strain. "Persia never enjoyed," says he, "a more perfect tranquillity than in the beginning of the present [*i.e.* the eighteenth] century. The treaties she had concluded with her neighbours were perfectly observed and secured her against any foreign invasions; whilst the effeminacy and luxury of her inhabitants, the ordinary consequences of a long peace, left no room to apprehend any danger from the ambition of her own subjects. This monarchy, which had suffered so many revolutions in past ages, seemed to be settled on a solid foundation when the news of its subversion surprised the whole world. The authors of this amazing catastrophe were a people hardly known even to their own sovereigns, and have now acquired a reputation only by the fame of those nations which they brought under their subjection. These people...are comprised under the general denomination of Afghans[4]."

Defects of the policy of Sháh 'Abbás.

The policy of Sháh 'Abbás the Great has been described above as wise and far-sighted, but this statement needs some qualification; for, while it greatly strengthened the power of the Crown, it undoubtedly conduced in the end to the weakening of the nation

[1] The seizure of Qandahár by the revolted Afgháns led by Mír Ways.

[2] The son and successor of Mír Ways.

[3] *Revolutions of Persia*, vol. i, p. 22.

[4] The Afgháns are, however, mentioned by the Arabian historian Ibnu'l-Athír in several places, the earliest mention being under the year 366/976–7. They were very troublesome in S.E. Persia in the middle of the fourteenth century. See my Abridged Translation of the *Ta'ríkh-i-Guzída* (E. J. W. Gibb Series, xiv, 2), pp. 161 *et seqq*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and the degeneration of its rulers. Previous kings had been embarrassed chiefly by ambitious relatives, powerful tribal chiefs, and turbulent townsmen; and for all these things Sháh 'Abbás set himself to provide remedies. Instead of allowing his sons to hold high administrative posts and take a prominent part in wars, he either blinded them or put them to death, or immured them in the *ḥaram*, where, as Krusinski well explains[1], they lead a life of hardship and privation rather than of luxury and pleasure, while receiving a very imperfect education, and falling under the influence of the palace eunuchs, who ended by becoming the dominant power in the State. To his destruction of the great nobles and tribal chiefs, and his creation of the *Sháh-sevens* as a counterpoise to the seven tribes to whom his predecessors owed their power, allusion has already been made[2]. A more extraordinary example of his application of the maxim *Divide et impera* was his deliberate creation in all the large towns of two artificially antagonized parties, named, according to Krusinski[3], *Pelenk* and *Felenk*, who indulged at intervals in the most sanguinary faction-fights, they being, as Krusinski puts it, "so opposite, and so much enemies one to the other, that people in different States, in arms against one another, do not push their aversion and enmity farther." He adds (p. 92) that "though they fought without arms, because they were not supposed to make use of anything else but stones and sticks, it was with so much fury and bloodshed that the King was obliged to employ his guards to separate them with drawn swords; and hard it was to accomplish it, even with a method so effectual, insomuch that at Ispahan in 1714 they were under a necessity, before

[1] *Op. cit.*, pp. 65–70.

[2] See p. 106 *supra*.

[3] *Op. cit.*, p. 91. Hanway (vol. iii, p. 32 *ad calc.*, and p. 33) calls them *Peleuk* and *Feleuk*. At a later period they were known as *Ḥaydarí* and *Ni'matí*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

they could separate the combatants, to put about three hundred to the sword on the spot."

Besides the eunuchs, there grew up and attained its full development under "Mullá Ḥusayn," the last unhappy though well-meaning occupant of the Ṣafawí throne at Iṣfahán, another dominant class whose influence hardly made for either spiritual unity or national efficiency, namely the great ecclesiastics who culminated in the redoutable Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, the persecutor of Ṣúfís and heretics, of whom we shall have to speak at some length in a future chapter. His admirers[1] call attention to the fact that his death, which took place in 1111/1699–1700[2], was followed in a short time by the troubles which culminated in the supreme disaster of 1722, and suggest that the disappearance of so saintly a personage left Persia exposed to perils which more critical minds may be inclined to ascribe in part to the narrow intolerance so largely fostered by him and his congeners.

Domination of the *Mullás*, typified by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí.

[1] *e.g.* the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, p. 216 of the lithographed edition of 1306/1888–9.

[2] The chronogram is غم وحزن.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

CHAPTER IV.

AN OUTLINE OF THE HISTORY OF PERSIA DURING THE LAST TWO CENTURIES (A.D. 1722-1922).

Only after much hesitation and several tentative experiments have I decided to endeavour to compress into one chapter two centuries of Persian history. Were this book primarily intended as a political history of Persia, such an attempt would be out of the question; for this long period witnessed the Afghán invasion and its devastations; the rise, meteoric career, and sudden eclipse of that amazing conqueror Nádir Sháh; the emergence in a world of chaos and misery of Karím Khán-i-Zand, generally accounted the best ruler whom Persia ever possessed, and of his gallant but unfortunate successor Luṭf-'Alí Khán; the establishment of the still reigning Qájár dynasty, and within that period the occurrence, amidst many other important events, of two remarkable phenomena (the rise and growth of the Bábí religious movement since 1844, and the political Revolution of 1906) which profoundly affected the intellectual life and literary development of Persia, each one of which might well form the subject of a lengthy monograph rather than a chapter. This book, however, is written not from the political but from the literary point of view, and the historical part of it is only ancillary, and might have been omitted entirely if a knowledge of even the general outlines of Oriental history formed part of the mental equipment of most educated Europeans. From this point of view much fuller treatment is required for periods of transition, or of great intellectual activity, than for periods of unproductive strife not so much of rival ideas and beliefs as of conflicting ambitions. To the latter category belongs the greater part

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

of the two centuries which must now engage our attention. During this period the literary language (which, indeed, had become fixed at any rate in the fourteenth century, so that the odes of Ḥáfiẓ, save for their incomparable beauty, might have been written but yesterday) underwent no noticeable change; few fresh forms of literary expression were developed until the middle of the nineteenth century; and few fresh ideas arose to modify the Shí'a frenzy of Ṣafawí times until the rise of the Bábí doctrine in A.D. 1844, of which, however, the literary effects were less considerable than those of the Revolution of 1906. Moreover excellent and detailed accounts of the Afghán invasion, of Nádir Sháh, and of the earlier Qájár period already exist in English, several of which have been mentioned at the end of the preceding chapter[1]; these could hardly be bettered, and would only be marred by such abridgment as would be necessary to fit them into the framework of this book. Hence I have deemed it best to limit myself in this chapter to a brief outline of the more salient events of these last two centuries.

THE AFGHÁN INVASION (A.D. 1722–1730).

Character of the Afgháns.

Unlike the Arabs, Mongols, Tartars and Turks, who were instrumental in effecting previous subjections of Persia by foreign arms, the Afgháns are, apparently, an Íránian and therefore a kindred race, though differing materially in character from the Persians. The Persian language is widely spoken in their wild and mountainous country, while in their own peculiar idiom, the Pushtô, James Darmesteter saw the principal survivor of the language of the Avesta, the scripture of the Zoroastrians. They are a much fiercer, hardier, and more warlike people than the Persians, less refined and ingenious, and

[1] See pp. 114–118 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

fanatical Sunnís, a fact sufficient in itself to explain the intense antagonism which existed between the two nations, and enabled the Afgháns to give to their invasion of Persia the colour of a religious war.

Beginning of the trouble at Qandahár.

In A.D. 1707 Qandahár, a constant bone of contention between the Ṣafawí kings of Persia and the "Great Moghuls" of India, was in the possession of the former, and was governed in a very autocratic manner by a Georgian noble named Gurgín Khán. Mír Ways, an Afghán chief whose influence with his fellow-countrymen made him an object of suspicion, was by his orders banished to Iṣfahán as a state prisoner. There, however, he seems to have enjoyed a considerable amount of liberty and to have been freely admitted to the court of Sháh Ḥusayn. Endowed with considerable perspicacity and a great talent for intrigue, he soon formed a pretty clear idea of the factions whose rivalries were preparing the ruin of the country, and with equal caution and cunning set himself to fan the suspicions to which every great Persian general or provincial governor was exposed. This was the easier in the case of one who, being by birth a Christian and a Georgian of noble family, might, without gross improbability, be suspected of thinking more of the restoration of his own and his country's fortunes than of the maintenance of the Persian Empire, though there seems in fact no reason to suspect him of any disloyalty.

Mír Ways at Mecca.

Having sown this seed of suspicion and completely ingratiated himself with the Persian Court, Mír Ways sought and obtained permission to perform the pilgrimage to Mecca. While there he took another important step for the furtherance of his designs. He sought from the leading ecclesiastical authorities a *fatwá*, or legal opinion, as to whether the orthodox Sunní subjects of a heretical (*i.e.* Shí'a) Muslim ruler were bound to obey him, or were justified, if occasion

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

arose, in resisting him, if necessary by force of arms. The decision, which supported the latter alternative and so accorded with his designs, he carried back with him to Iṣfahán and subsequently to Qandahár, whither he was permitted to return, with strong recommendations to Gurgín Khán, in 1709. There he soon organized a conspiracy against the latter, and, taking advantage of the temporary absence of a large part of the Persian garrison on some expedition in the neighbourhood, he and his followers fell on the remainder when they were off their guard, killed the greater number of them, including Gurgín Khán, and took possession of the city. It was at this juncture that the *fatwá* obtained at Mecca proved so useful to Mír Ways, for by it he was able to overcome the scruples of the more faint-hearted of his followers, who were at first inclined to shrink from a definite repudiation of Persian suzerainty, but who now united with the more hot-headed of their countrymen in electing Mír Ways "Prince of Qandahár and General of the national troops[1]."

Success of the rebels.

Several half-hearted attempts to subdue the rebellious city having failed, the Persian Government despatched Khusraw Khán, nephew of the late Gurgín Khán, with an army of 30,000 men to effect its subjugation, but in spite of an initial success, which led the Afgháns to offer to surrender on terms, his uncompromising attitude impelled them to make a fresh desperate effort, resulting in the complete defeat of the Persian army (of whom only some 700 escaped) and the death of their general. Two years later, in A.D. 1713, another Persian army commanded by Rustam Khán was also defeated by the rebels, who thus secured possession of the whole province of Qandahár.

Mír Ways, having thus in five or six years laid the foundations of the Afghán power, died in A.D. 1715, and was

[1] Krusinski, p. 187.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

succeeded by his brother Mír 'Abdu'lláh, whose disposition to accept, under certain conditions, Persian suzerainty led to his murder by his nephew Mír Maḥmúd, son of Mír Ways, who was forthwith proclaimed king. The weakness of the Persian government thus becoming apparent, others were led to follow the example of the Afgháns of Qandahár. Amongst these were the Abdálí Afgháns of Herát, the Uzbeks of Transoxiana, the Kurds, the Lazgís and the Arabs of Baḥrayn, and though the Persian General Ṣafí-qulí Khán with 30,000 troops succeeded in defeating an Uzbek army of 12,000 he was immediately afterwards defeated by the Abdálí Afgháns.

Mír Ways succeeded by his son Mír Maḥmúd.

Other revolts against Persia.

In A.D. 1720 Mír Maḥmúd assumed the aggressive, crossed the deserts of Sístán, and attacked and occupied Kirmán, whence, however, he was expelled four months later by the Persian General Luṭf-'Alí Khán, who, after this victory, proceeded to Shíráz and began to organize "the best-appointed army that had been seen in Persia for many years" with a view to crushing the Afgháns and retaking Qandahár. Unfortunately before he had accomplished this his position was undermined by one of those Court intrigues which were so rapidly destroying the Persian Empire, and he was deprived of his command and brought as a prisoner to Iṣfahán, while the army which he had collected and disciplined with such care rapidly melted away, and the spirits of the Afgháns were proportionately revived. The capture and sack of Shamákhí by the Lazgís and the appearance of strange portents in the sky combined still further to discourage the Persians, while the ordering of public mourning and repentance by Sháh Ḥusayn tended only to accentuate the general depression.

Kirmán taken by Afgháns.

The fatal year 1722 began with the second siege and

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

capture of Kirmán by Mír Maḥmúd. The most remarkable incident connected with this was that he was joined by a number of "guebres" (*gabr*)[1], the small remnant of the Persians who still profess the ancient religion of Zoroaster, and who exist in any number only in the cities of Kirmán and Yazd and the intervening region of Rafsinján with its chief town Bahrámábád. Why these people should have attached themselves to foreign Muslims to make war on their Muslim compatriots it is hard to understand, unless the fanaticism of the Shí'a divines was responsible for driving them into this extraordinary course. Still more remarkable, if true, is Hanway's statement that they provided Mír Maḥmúd with one of his best generals, who, though he bore the Muhammadan name of Naṣru'lláh, was, according to the same authority[2], "a worshipper of fire, since there were two priests hired by the Sultan who kept the sacred flame near his tomb."

Zoroastrians join Afgháns.

From Kirmán Mír Maḥmúd marched by way of Yazd, which he attempted but failed to take by storm, to Iṣfahán, having scornfully refused an offer of 15,000 *túmáns*[3] to induce him to turn back, and finally pitched his camp at Gulnábád, distant some three leagues from the Ṣafawí capital. After much dispute and diversity of opinions, the Persian army marched out of Iṣfahán to engage the Afgháns on March 7th and on the following day, largely through the treachery of the Wálí of 'Arabistán, suffered a disastrous defeat.

Afgháns advance on Iṣfahán.

The battle of Gulnábád, fought between the Persians and the Afgháns on Sunday, March 8, 1722, decided the fate of the Ṣafawí dynasty as surely as did the battle of Qádisiyya in A.D. 635 that of the Sásánians, or the conflict between the Caliph's troops and

Battle of Gulnábád, March 8, 1722.

[1] Hanway's *Revolution of Persia*, vol. i, p. 99. [2] *Ibid.*, p. 186.

[3] At that time, according to Hanway (*loc. cit.*, p. 100), equivalent to £37,500.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the Mongols outside Baghdád in A.D. 1258 that of the 'Abbásids. Between these three battles, moreover, there was a remarkable point of similarity in the splendour and apparent strength of the defenders and the squalor and seeming weakness of their assailants. The similarity in this respect between the battles of Qádisiyya and Baghdád has been noticed in a well-known passage of the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*[1], to which the following account of the battle of Gulnábád by Hanway[2] forms a remarkable parallel:

A curious parallel.

"The sun had just appeared on the horizon when the armies began to observe each other with that curiosity so natural on these dreadful occasions. The Persian army just come out of the capital, being composed of whatever was most brilliant at court, seemed as if it had been formed rather to make a show than to fight. The riches and variety of their arms and vestments, the beauty of their horses, the gold and precious stones with which some of their harnesses were covered, and the richness of their tents contributed to render the Persian camp very pompous and magnificent.

"On the other side there was a much smaller body of soldiers, disfigured with fatigue and the scorching heat of the sun. Their clothes were so ragged and torn in so long a march that they were scarce sufficient to cover them from the weather, and, their horses being adorned with only leather and brass, there was nothing glittering about them but their spears and sabres."

These three great and decisive battles resembled one another in several respects. In each case a great historic dynasty, the extent of whose inward decay was masked by its external splendour, and apparent, because hitherto unchallenged, strength and supremacy, collapsed before the fierce onslaught of a hardy and warlike folk, hitherto hardly known, or accounted as little better than barbarians; and in each case the more or less prolonged process of degene-

The Arab, Mongol and Afghán invasion of Persia compared and contrasted.

[1] See vol. ii of my *Lit. Hist.*, p. 462, for the translation, and pp. 97–8 of Ahlwardt's edition for the text of this passage.

[2] *Revolutions of Persia* (London, 1753), vol. i, pp. 104–5.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ration which rendered the final catastrophe not only possible but inevitable is fairly obvious to subsequent historians, even if its extent and significance were not realized until the fatal touchstone was applied. The results, however, differed widely according to the character and abilities of the assailants. The Arab invaders of the seventh century established an Empire which endured for six centuries and effected a profound and permanent change in the lands and peoples whom they brought under their sway. The Mongol conquests were even more extensive, reaching as they did from China and Thibet to Germany and Russia, but the cohesion and duration of the vast Empire which they created were far inferior. The Afghán conquest, with which we are now concerned, was little more than an extensive and destructive raid, resulting in some seventy-five years of anarchy (A.D. 1722–1795), illuminated by the meteoric career of that Napoleon of Persia, Nádir Sháh, and ending in the establishment of the actually reigning dynasty of the Qájárs. The actual domination of the Afgháns over Persia only endured for eight or nine years[1].

Seven months elapsed after the battle of Gulnábád before the final pitiful surrender, with every circumstance of humiliation, of the unhappy Sháh Ḥusayn. In that battle the Persians are said to have lost all their artillery, baggage and treasure, as well as some 15,000 out of a total of 50,000 men. On March 19 Mír Maḥmúd occupied the Sháh's beloved palace and pleasure-grounds of Faraḥábád, situated only three miles from Iṣfahán, which henceforth served as his headquarters. Two days later the Afgháns, having occupied the Armenian suburb of Julfá, where they levied a tribute of money and young girls, attempted to take Iṣfahán by

Prince Ṭahmásp escapes from Iṣfahán to Qazwín.

[1] Maḥmúd the Afghán laid siege to Kirmán in January, 1722, and captured Iṣfahán in October of the same year. His cousin Ashraf, who succeeded him, was killed by Balúchís in 1730.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

storm, but, having twice failed (on March 19 and 21), sat down to blockade the city. Three months later Prince Ṭahmásp Mírzá, who had been nominated to succeed his father, effected his escape from the beleaguered city to Qazwín, where he attempted, with but small success, to raise an army for the relief of the capital.

Famine in Iṣfahán.

Soon after this, famine began to press heavily on the people, who clamoured to be led against the besiegers, but their desperate sortie failed owing to the renewed treachery of Wálí of 'Arabistán, who was throughout these dark days the evil genius of the unhappy king. The Persian court, indeed, seemed to have been stricken with a kind of folly which was equally ready to repose confidence in traitors and to mistrust and degrade or dismiss brave and patriotic officers like Luṭf-'Alí Khán. For three or four months before the end the sufferings of the people from famine were terrible: they were finally reduced to eating dogs, cats, and even the corpses of their dead, and perished in great numbers. The pitiful details may be found in the pages of Krusinski, Hanway, and the contemporary accounts written by certain agents of the Dutch East India Company then resident at Iṣfahán, of which the original texts have been included by H. Dunlop in his fine work on Persia (*Perzie*, Haarlem, 1912, pp. 242–257).

Surrender of Iṣfahán to Afgháns, Oct. 21, 1722.

At the end of September, 1722, Sháh Ḥusayn offered to surrender himself and his capital to the Afghán invader, but Mír Maḥmúd, in order still further to reduce by famine the numbers and spirit of the besieged, dragged out the negotiations for another three or four weeks, so that it was not until October 21 that Sháh Ḥusayn repaired on foot to Faraḥábád, once his favourite residence, now the headquarters of his ruthless foe, to surrender the crown which Mír Maḥmúd assumed six days later. When news of his father's abdication reached

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Ṭahmásp Mírzá at Qazwín he caused himself to be proclaimed king, but was driven out of that city on December 20 by the Afghán general Amánu'lláh Khán, who on his way thither received the submission of Qum and Káshán.

Ṭahmásp was now reduced to the miserable expedient of invoking the help of Russia and Turkey, who had already fixed covetous eyes on the apparently moribund Persian kingdom and had occupied Gílán and Tiflís respectively. On September 23, 1723, a treaty was signed whereby, in return for the expulsion of the Afgháns and the restoration of his authority, Ṭahmásp undertook to cede to Russia the Caspian provinces of Gílán, Mázandarán and Gurgán, and the towns of Bákú, Darband and their dependencies. Soon afterwards the Turks took Erivan, Nakhjuwán, Khúy and Hamadán, but were repulsed from Tabríz. On July 8, 1724, an agreement for the partition of Persia was signed between Russia and Turkey at Constantinople[1].

Ṭahmásp seeks help from Russia and Turkey.

Meanwhile Mír Maḥmúd was continuing his cruelties at Iṣfahán. In A.D. 1723 he put to death in cold blood some three hundred of the nobles and chief citizens, and followed up this bloody deed with the murder of about two hundred children of their families. He also killed some three thousand of the deposed Sháh's body-guard, together with many other persons whose sentiments he mistrusted or whose influence he feared. In the following year (A.D. 1724) the Afghán general Zabardast Khán succeeded, where his predecessor Naṣru'lláh[2] had failed and fallen, in taking Shíráz; and towards the end of the year Mír Maḥmúd prepared to attack Yazd, which had hitherto remained unsubdued. The Muslim inhabitants of that town, fearing that the numerous Zoroastrians dwelling

Cruelties committed by Afgháns.

[1] For the contents of the six articles, see Hanway's *Revolutions of Persia*, i, pp. 200–1.

[2] See p. 126 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

in it might follow the example of their co-religionists of Kirmán and join the Afgháns, killed a great number of them.

Mír Maḥmúd murders the Ṣafawí princes (Feb. 7, 1725), and is himself slain by his cousin Ashraf (April 22, 1725).

About this time Mír Maḥmúd, alarmed at the increasing insubordination of his cousin Ashraf, and, we may hope, tormented by an uneasy conscience on account of his cruelties, betook himself to a severe course of self-discipline and mortification, which did but increase his melancholy and distemper, so that on February 7, 1725, he murdered all the surviving members of the royal family with the exception of the deposed Sháh Ḥusayn and two of his younger children. Thereafter his disorder rapidly increased, until he himself was murdered on April 22 by his cousin Ashraf, who was thereupon proclaimed king. Mír Maḥmúd was at the time of his death only twenty-seven years of age, and is described as "middle-sized and clumsy; his neck was so short that his head seemed to grow to his shoulders; he had a broad face and flat nose, and his beard was thin and of a red colour; his looks were wild and his countenance austere and disagreeable; his eyes, which were blue and a little squinting, were generally downcast, like a man absorbed in deep thought."

Death of Peter the Great, and Turkish invasion of Persia.

The death of Peter the Great about this period made Russia slightly less dangerous as a neighbour, but the Turks continued to press forwards and on August 3, 1725, succeeded at last in capturing Tabríz. They even advanced to within three days' march of Iṣfahán, but turned back before reaching it. They subsequently (A.D. 1726) took Qazwín and Maráǵha, but were defeated by Ashraf near Kirmánsháh. Negotiations for peace were meanwhile in progress at Constantinople, whither Ashraf had sent an ambassador named 'Abdu'l-'Azíz Khán, whose arrogant proposal that his master should be Caliph of the East and the Ottoman

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Sulṭán Caliph of the West caused great umbrage to the Porte. The war, however, was very unpopular with the Turkish soldiers and people, who failed to see why they should fight fellow-Sunnís in order to restore a heretical Shí'a dynasty, though the *'ulamá* were induced to give a *fatwá* in favour of this course, on the ground that a divided Caliphate was incompatible with the dignity or safety of Islám. Finally, however, a treaty of peace was concluded and signed at Hamadán in September, 1727[1].

Negotiations between Turks and Afgháns.

This danger had hardly been averted when a far greater one, destined in a short time to prove fatal to the Afgháns, presented itself in the person of Nádir-qulí, subsequently known to fame as Nádir Sháh, one of the most remarkable and ruthless military geniuses ever produced by Persia. Hitherto, though he was now about forty years of age, little had been heard of him; but this year, issuing forth from his stronghold, that wonderful natural fastness named after him Kalát-i-Nádirí[2], he defeated an Afghán force and took possession of Níshápúr in the name of Sháh Ṭahmásp II, at that time precariously established at Farahábád in Mázandarán, and supported with a certain condescending arrogance by the Qájár chief Fatḥ-'Alí Khán. After this success Nádir paid a visit to the fugitive Sháh, and, after insinuating himself into his favour, contrived the assassination of the Qájár, against whom he had succeeded in arousing the Sháh's suspicions. On May 15 of the following year (1728) the Sháh, accompanied by Nádir (or Ṭahmásp-qulí, "the slave of Ṭahmásp," to give him the name which

Rise of Nádir.

Assassination of Fatḥ-'Alí Khán Qájár.

[1] For its provisions, contained in nine articles, see Hanway, *op. cit.*, i, pp. 254–5.

[2] This fortress, which is jealously guarded, Lord Curzon attempted but failed to penetrate. See his *Persia*, vol. i, pp. 125–140, especially the bird's-eye view on p. 134.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

he temporarily assumed about this time), made a solemn entry into Níshápúr, amidst the rejoicings of the inhabitants, and shortly afterwards occupied Mashhad and Herát. He also despatched an ambassador to Constantinople, whence in return a certain Sulaymán Efendi was sent as envoy to Persia.

Níshápúr recovered by Persians.

Meanwhile Ashraf, having taken Yazd and Kirmán, marched into Khurásán with an army of thirty thousand men to give battle to Ṭahmásp, but he was completely defeated by Nádir on October 2 at Dámghán. Another decisive battle was fought in the following year at Múrchakhúr near Iṣfahán. The Afgháns were again defeated and evacuated Iṣfahán to the number of twelve thousand men, but, before quitting the city he had ruined, Ashraf murdered the unfortunate ex-Sháh Ḥusayn, and carried off most of the ladies of the royal family and the King's treasure. When Ṭahmásp II entered Iṣfahán on December 9 he found only his old mother, who had escaped deportation by disguising herself as a servant, and was moved to tears at the desolation and desecration which met his eyes at every turn. Nádir, having finally induced Ṭahmásp to empower him to levy taxes on his own authority, marched southwards in pursuit of the retiring Afgháns, whom he overtook and again defeated near Persepolis. Ashraf fled from Shíráz towards his own country, but cold, hunger and the unrelenting hostility of the inhabitants of the regions which he had to traverse dissipated his forces and compelled him to abandon his captives and his treasure, and he was finally killed by a party of Balúch tribesmen. Thus ended the disastrous period of Afghán dominion in Persia in A.D. 1730, having lasted eight years.

Defeat of Ashraf at Dámghán.

Iṣfahán evacuated and Sháh Ḥusayn murdered by Afgháns.

Defeat of Afgháns near Persepolis and death of Ashraf (A.D. 1730).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

THE CAREER OF NÁDIR

UNTIL HIS ASSASSINATION IN A.D. 1747.

Although it was not until A.D. 1736 that Nádir deemed it expedient to take the title of King, he became from A.D. 1730 onwards the *de facto* ruler of Persia. Of his humble origin and early struggles it is unnecessary to speak here; they will be found narrated as fully as the circumstances permit in the pages of Hanway, Malcolm and other historians of Persia. Sháh Ṭahmásp was from the first but a *roi fainéant*, and his only serious attempt to achieve anything by himself, when he took the field against the Turks in A.D. 1731, resulted in a disastrous failure, for he lost both Tabríz and Hamadán, and in January, 1732, concluded a most unfavourable peace, whereby he ceded Georgia and Armenia to Turkey on condition that she should aid him to expel the Russians from Gílán, Shírwán and Darband. Nádir, greatly incensed, came to Iṣfahán in August, 1732, and, having by a stratagem seized and imprisoned Ṭahmásp, proclaimed his infant son (then only six months old) as king under the title of Sháh 'Abbás III, and at once sent a threatening letter to Aḥmad Páshá of Baghdád, which he followed up by a declaration of war in October.

Incapacity of Ṭahmásp.

'Abbas III proclaimed King.

In April of the following year (1733) Nádir appeared before Baghdád, having already retaken Kirmánsháh, with an army of 80,000 men, but suffered a defeat on July 18, and retired to Hamadán to recruit and recuperate his troops. Returning to the attack in the autumn he defeated the Turks on October 26 in a great battle wherein the gallant and noble-minded Ṭopál 'Osmán ('Uthmán) was slain. Having crushed a revolt in favour of the deposed Sháh Ṭahmásp in Fárs, he invaded Georgia in 1734, took Tiflís, Ganja and Shamákhí,

Further successes of Nádir.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and obtained from Russia the retrocession of Gílán, Shírwán, Darband, Bákú and Rasht. In the following year (1735) he again defeated the Turks near Erivan, and captured that city and Erzeroum.

Nádir proclaimed King.

On the following *Nawrúz*, or Persian New Year's day (March 21, 1736), Nádir announced to the assembled army and deputies of the nation the death of the infant Sháh 'Abbás III and invited them to decide within three days whether they would restore his father, the deposed Sháh Ṭahmásp, or elect a new king. His own desire, which coincided with that of most of his officers and soldiers, was evident, and, the unwilling minority being overawed, the crown of Persia was unanimously offered to him. He agreed to accept it on three conditions, namely: (1) that it should be made hereditary in his family; (2) that there should be no talk of a restoration of the Ṣafawís, and that no one should aid, comfort, or harbour any member of that family who might aspire to the throne; and (3) that the cursing of the first three Caliphs, the mourning for the death of the Imám Ḥusayn, and other distinctive practices of the Shí'a should be abandoned. This last condition was the most distasteful to the Persians, and the chief ecclesiastical authority, being asked his opinion, had the courage to denounce it as "derogatory to the welfare of the true believers"—a courage which cost him his life, for he was immediately strangled by Nádir's orders. Not content with this, Nádir, on his arrival at Qazwín, confiscated the religious endowments (*awqáf*) for the expenses of his army, to whom, he said, Persia owed more than to her hierarchy. Towards the end of the year he concluded a favourable treaty with Turkey, by which Persia recovered all her lost provinces; and in December he set out at the head of 100,000 men against Afghánistán and India, leaving his son Riḍá-qulí as regent.

The next two years (A.D. 1737–9) witnessed Nádir Sháh's

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

greatest military achievement, the invasion of India, capture of Lahore and Delhi, and return home with the enormous spoils in money and kind which he exacted from the unfortunate Indians, and which Hanway[1] estimates at £87,500,000. Having taken Qandahár, Kábul and Peshawur in 1738, he crossed the Indus early in the following year, captured Lahore, and in February, 1739, utterly defeated the Indian army of Muḥammad Sháh, two hundred thousand strong, on the plains of Karnál. Delhi was peaceably occupied, but a few days later a riot occurred in which some of Nádir's soldiers were killed, and he avenged their blood by a general massacre of the inhabitants which lasted from 8 a.m. until 3 p.m., and in which 110,000 persons perished. He never dreamed of holding India, and, having extorted the enormous indemnity mentioned above and left the unhappy Muḥammad Sháh in possession of his throne, with a threat that he would return again if necessary, he began his homeward march in May, turning aside to chastise the predatory Uzbeks of Khiva and Bukhárá, which latter town he captured on November 28, 1739.

Nádir's Indian campaign (A.D. 1737–1739).

During the absence of Nádir Sháh his son Riḍá-qulí had put to death the unfortunate Ṭahmásp and most of his family at Sabzawár, and began to show signs of desiring to retain the powers with which he had been temporarily invested by his father. Being suspected of instigating an unsuccessful attempt on Nádir's life, he was deprived of his eyesight, but with this cruel act the wonderful good fortune which had hitherto accompanied Nádir began to desert him. His increasing cruelty, tyranny, avarice and extortion, but most of all, perhaps, his attempt to impose on

Nádir's son Riḍá-qulí rebels and is blinded.

Nádir's views on religion.

[1] *Revolutions of Persia*, ii, p. 188. The loss to India he puts at one hundred and twenty million pounds and the number of those slain at 200,000 (*Ibid.*, p. 197).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

his Persian subjects the Sunní doctrine, made him daily more detested. His innovations included the production of Persian translations of the *Qur'án* and the Gospels. The latter, on which several Christians were employed, he caused to be read aloud to him at Ṭihrán, while he commented on it with derision, and hinted that when he found leisure he might (perhaps after the model of Akbar) produce a new religion of his own which should supplant alike Judaism, Christianity and Islám[1]. His military projects, moreover, began to miscarry; his campaign against the Lazgís in A.D. 1741–2 did not prosper, and in the war with Turkey in which he became involved in 1743 he was unsuccessful in his attempt to take Mosul (Mawṣil). Revolts which broke out in Fárs and Shírwán were only suppressed with difficulty after much bloodshed. However he put down a rebellion of the Qájárs at Astarábád in A.D. 1744, defeated the Turks in a great battle near Erivan in August, 1745, and concluded a satisfactory peace with them in 1746. In the following year Nádir Sháh visited Kirmán, which suffered much from his cruelties and exactions, and thence proceeded to Mashhad, where he arrived at the end of May, 1747. Here he conceived the abominable plan of killing all his Persian officers and soldiers (the bulk of his army being Turkmáns and Uzbeks and consequently Sunnís), but this project was made known by a Georgian slave to some of the Persian officers, who thereupon decided, in the picturesque Persian phrase, "to breakfast off him ere he should sup off them." A certain Ṣáliḥ Beg, aided by four trusty men, undertook the task[2], and, entering his tent

[1] See Sir John Malcolm's *History of Persia* (ed. 1815), vol. ii, p. 104.

[2] According to the *Ta'ríkh-i-ba'd Nádiriyya* (ed. Oskar Mann, Leyden, 1891, pp. 15 *et seqq.*), which gives a very full account of the matter, the four chief conspirators, Muḥammad Khán Qájár, Músá Beg Afshár, Qoja Beg Günduzlú and Muḥammad Ṣáliḥ Khán, were accompanied by seventy young volunteers, but only four had the courage to enter

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

by night, rid their country of one who, though he first appeared as its deliverer from the Afghán yoke, now bade fair to crush it beneath a yoke yet more intolerable. At the time of his death Nádir Sháh was sixty-one years of age and had reigned eleven years and three months (A.D. 1736–47). He was succeeded by his nephew 'Alí-qulí Khán, who assumed the crown under the title of 'Ádil Sháh, but was defeated and slain by his brother Ibráhím in the following year. He in turn was killed a year later (A.D. 1749) by the partisans of Nádir's grandson Sháhrukh, the son of the unfortunate Riḍá-qulí and a Ṣafawí princess, the daughter of Sháh Husayn, who now succeeded to the throne. Youth, beauty and a character at once amiable and humane[1] did not, however, secure him against misfortune, and he was shortly after his accession deposed and blinded by a certain Sayyid Muḥammad, a grandson on the mother's side of the Ṣafawí Sháh Sulaymán II. He in turn soon fell a victim to the universal violence and lawlessness which now prevailed in Persia, and Sháhrukh was restored to the throne, but again deposed and again restored to exercise a nominal rule at Mashhad over the province of Khurásán, which Aḥmad Khán Abdálí (afterwards famous as Aḥmad Sháh Durrání, the founder of the modern kingdom of Afghánistán) desired, before leaving Persia, to erect into a buffer state between that country and his own. The remainder of the blind Sháhrukh's long reign was uneventful, and he survived until A.D. 1796, having reigned nearly fifty years.

Assassination of Nádir (June 20, 1747).

Chaos succeeding Nádir's death.

Nádir's tent. The assassination took place on Sunday, 11 Jumáda ii, 1160 (June 20, 1747).

[1] Malcolm's *History*, vol. ii, p. 111

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

THE ZAND DYNASTY (A.D. 1750–1794).

"The history of Persia," says Sir John Malcolm[1], "from the death of Nádir Sháh till the elevation of Áqá Muḥammad Khán, the founder of the reigning family, presents to our attention no one striking feature except the life of Karím Khán-i-Zand. The happy reign of this excellent prince, as contrasted with those who preceded and followed him, affords to the historian of Persia that description of mixed pleasure and repose which a traveller enjoys who arrives at a beautiful and fertile valley in the midst of an arduous journey over barren and rugged wastes. It is pleasing to recount the actions of a chief who, though born in an inferior rank, obtained power without crime, and who exercised it with a moderation that was, in the times in which he lived, as singular as his humanity and justice."

Virtues of Karím Khán-i-Zand.

Karím Khán, however, who fixed his capital at Shíráz, which he did so much to beautify and where he is still gratefully remembered, never ruled over the whole of Persia and never assumed the title of Sháh, but remained content with that of *Wakíl*, or Regent. Originally he and a Bakhtiyárí chief named 'Alí Mardán Khán were the joint regents of "a real or pretended grandson of Sháh Ḥusayn[2]" in whose name they seized Iṣfahán, where they placed him on the throne. Before long they fell out; 'Alí Mardán Khán was killed; and Karím Khán became the *de facto* ruler of Southern Persia. His rivals were the Afghán chief Ázád in Ádharbáyján and the North-west, and in the Caspian provinces Muḥammad Ḥasan the Qájár, son of that Fatḥ-'Alí Khán who was murdered by Nádir at the outset of his career, and father

Karím Khán's two rivals.

[1] *Op. cit.*, vol. ii, p. 115.
[2] R. G. Watson's *History of Persia*, p. 44.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

of Aqá Muḥammad Khán, the actual founder of the Qájár dynasty.

Ázád was the first to be eliminated from this triangular contest. He defeated Karím Khán and compelled him to evacuate not only Iṣfahán but Shíráz, but, rashly pursuing him through the narrow defile of Kamárij, fell into an ambush, lost most of his followers, and finally, having sought refuge first with the Páshá of Baghdád and then with Heraclius, Prince of Georgia, "threw himself upon the generosity of Karím Khán, who received him with kindness, promoted him to the first rank among his nobles, and treated him with so generous a confidence that he soon converted this dangerous rival into an attached friend[1]."

Elimination of Ázád the Afghán.

In A.D. 1757, about four years after the battle of Kamárij, Karím Khán had to face a fierce onslaught by his other rival, Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán the Qájár, who, after a striking initial success, was finally driven back into Mázandarán, where he was eventually defeated and killed in A.D. 1760 by Karím Khán's general Shaykh 'Alí Khán. From this time until his death in the spring of 1779 Karím Khán practically ruled over the whole of Persia except Khurásán, where the blind and harmless Sháhrukh exercised a nominal sovereignty. The chief military exploit of his reign was the capture of Baṣra from the Turks in 1776, effected by his brother Ṣádiq, who continued to administer it until Karím's death, when he relinquished it to the Turks in order to take part in the fratricidal struggle for the Persian crown[2].

Karím Khán defeats his Qájár rival.

Baṣra taken by Persians.

[1] Sir John Malcolm's *History of Persia*, vol. ii, p. 125. The two preceding pages contain a graphic account of the battle of Kamárij, as narrated to the author on the spot by persons who had themselves taken part in it.

[2] See 'Alí Riḍá's *Ta'rikh-i-Zandiyya* (ed. Ernst Beer, Leyden, 1888), p. 8.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Mírza 'Aqíl

Karím Khán i Zand

Ibráhím Khán

Mírzá Mahdí

Mírzá Ja'far *Wazír*

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Death of Karím Khán and flight of Áqá Muḥammad Khán (March 2, 1779)

"The most important, if we consider its ultimate consequences, of all the events which occurred at the death of Karím Khán, was the flight of Áqá Muḥammad Khán Qájár, who had been for many years a prisoner at large in the city of Shíráz[1]." As a child he had suffered castration by the cruel command of Nádir's nephew 'Ádil Sháh[2], on account of which the title of Ághá or Áqá, generally given to eunuchs, was added to his name. After the defeat and death of his father Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán the Qájár in A.D. 1757, he fell into the hands of Karím Khán, who interned him in Shíráz, but otherwise treated him kindly and even generously, so far as was compatible with his safe custody. He was even allowed to gratify his passion for the chase in the country round Shíráz on condition of re-entering the city before the gates were closed at night-fall. Returning to the city on the evening of Ṣafar 12, 1193 (March 1, 1779), and learning through his sister, who was an inmate of the Palace, that Karím Khán lay at the point of death, he suffered a favourite hawk to escape, and made its pursuit an excuse for spending the night in the plain. Next morning, two hours after dawn[3], having learned that Karím Khán had breathed his last, he took advantage of the prevailing confusion to make his escape northwards, and travelled so swiftly that he reached Iṣfahán on the third day[4], and thence made his way into Mázandarán, which thenceforth became the base of those operations by which, fifteen years later, he accomplished the final overthrow of the Zand dynasty and won for his own house that supremacy over Persia which they hold to this day.

It is unnecessary to describe here the fratricidal wars

[1] Sir John Malcolm, *op. cit.*, ii, p. 157.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 263.
[3] *Ta'rikh-i-Zandiyya*, p. 6, l. 1.
[4] Sir John Malcolm's *History*, ii, p. 158 *ad calc.*

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

which during the next ten years (A.D. 1779–89) sapped the power of the Zand dynasty while Áqá Muḥammad Khán, with incredible self-control and political sagacity, was uniting and consolidating the Qájár power. Within the year which witnessed Karím Khán's death four of his house had successively mounted his throne, to wit, his son Abu'l-Fatḥ, his nephew 'Alí Murád, his son Muḥammad 'Alí, and his brother Ṣádiq. The last-named, together with all his sons except Ja'far, was put to death in March, 1782, by 'Alí Murád, who thus regained the throne, but died at Múrchakhúr near Iṣfahán in January, 1785, and was succeeded by Ja'far, the date of whose accession is commemorated in the following ingenious chronogram by Ḥájji Sulaymán of Káshán called Ṣabáḥí[1]:

Successors of Karím Khán.

بضبطِ سالِ جلوسِ مبارکِ میمون'
که هست مبداء تاریخِ عشرتِ دوران'
نوشت کلکِ صباحی زقصرِ سلطانی'
علی مرادٌ برون شد نشست جعفر خان'

"To record the year of the blessed and auspicious accession
Which is the initial date of the mirth of the age,
The pen of Ṣabáḥí wrote: 'From the Royal Palace
'Alí Murád went forth, and Ja'far Khán sat' [in his place]."

The letters composing the words *Qaṣr-i-Sulṭání* yield the number 550; from this we subtract (355) equivalent to *'Alí Murád*, which gives us 195; to this we add the number equivalent to *Ja'far Khán* (1004), which finally gives us the correct date A.H. 1199 (A.D. 1785).

Ja'far Khán was murdered on 25 Rabí ii, 1203 (January 23, 1789), and was succeeded by his son, the gallant and unfortunate Luṭf-'Alí Khán, of whose personality Sir Harford Jones Brydges has given so attractive an account. "The reader, I hope," he

Luṭf-'Alí Khán, the last of the Zand dynasty.

[1] *Ta'ríkh-i-Zandiyya*, pp. 24–25.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

KARÍM KHÁN-I-ZAND

Or. 4938 (Brit. Mus.), No. 1

To face p. 142

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

says[1], "will pardon me if I treat the reign and misfortunes of the noble Luṭf-'Alí more in detail than usual. I received great kindness and attention from him when he filled the throne; and under a miserable tent I had the honour of sitting on the same horse-cloth with him when a fugitive! His virtues endeared him to his subjects; and the bravery, constancy, courage and ability which he manifested under his misfortunes are the theme of poems and ballads which it is not improbable will last as long as the Persian language itself. He was manly, amiable, affable under prosperity and, under calamities as great and as severe as human nature can suffer, he was dignified and cool and determined. That so noble a being, that a prince the hope and pride of his country, should have been betrayed by a wretch[2] in whom he placed, or rather misplaced, his confidence—that his end should have been marked by indignities exercised on his person at which human nature shudders—that his little son should have suffered loss of virility—that his daughters should have been forced into marriage with the scum of the earth—that the princess his wife should have been dishonoured—are dispensations of Providence, which, though we must not arraign, we may permit ourselves to wonder at."

It is fortunate that we possess such disinterested appreciations of poor Luṭf-'Alí Khán, the last chivalrous figure amongst the kings of Persia, for such of his compatriots as described his career necessarily wrote after the triumph of his implacable rival and deadly foe Áqá Muḥammad Khán, and therefore, whatever their true sentiments may have been,

Courage, chivalry and misfortunes of Luṭf-'Alí Khán.

[1] *The Dynasty of the Kajars, etc.* (London, 1833), pp. cxx–cxxi. Sir H. J. Brydges "visited Shíráz for the first time in 1786."

[2] To wit, the notorious Ḥájji Ibráhím—"the scoundrel," as Sir H. J. Brydges calls him (*Account of...H.M.'s Mission, etc.* vol. i, pp. 95–96), "whose mad ambition and black heart brought ruin on his confiding King, and misery the most severe on his fellow-citizens."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

dared not venture to praise the fallen prince, lest they should incur the displeasure of the cruel Qájár. Short-lived as the Zand dynasty was, it began and ended nobly, for its first representative was one of the best and its last one of the bravest of all the long line of Persian monarchs.

THE REIGNING QÁJÁR DYNASTY (A.D. 1796 ONWARDS).

The full and detailed accounts of the reigning Qájár dynasty already available to the English reader render any attempt to summarize their history in this place quite unnecessary[1]. Áqá Muḥammad Khán was not actually crowned until A.D. 1796, and was assassinated in the following year, so that he wore the crown of Persia for not more than fifteen months[2], but his reign practically began on the death of Karím Khán in A.D. 1779, though "he used to observe that he had no title even to the name of king till he was obeyed through the whole of the ancient limits of the Empire of Persia[3]," so that it was only after he had finally subdued Georgia that he consented to assume the title of Sháh. His appearance and character are admirably summarized by Sir John Malcolm in the following words[4]:

Áqá Muḥammad Khán (assassinated June 17, 1797).

[1] Sir Harford Jones Brydges' *Dynasty of the Kajars translated from the Original Persian Manuscript* (London, 1833) opens with a valuable Introduction (*Preliminary matter*) filling pp. xiii—cxci. The text of the original, entitled *Ma'áthir-i-Sulṭániyya*, was printed at Tabríz in Rajab, 1241 (March, 1826) and comes down to that year, but Brydges' translation ends with the year 1226/1811–12, and, in the latter part especially, differs very greatly from the printed text. Sir John Malcolm's *History* ends with the year 1230/1814; R. G. Watson's excellent monograph with A.D. 1857–8. The latest *History of Persia*, by Sir Percy Molesworth Sykes (2nd edition, London, 1921), is continued down to the actual year of publication.

[2] Like Nádir, he was crowned by acclamation in the Plain of Múqán in the spring of 1796, and met his death on June 17, 1797.

[3] Malcolm's *History*, ii, p. 287.

[4] *Ibid.*, pp. 300–302.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ÁQÁ MUḤAMMAD KHÁN QÁJÁR seated, with his minister ḤÁJJI IBRÁHÍM standing before him

Add. 24903 (Brit. Mus.)

To face p. 144

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"Áqá Muḥammad Khán was murdered in the sixty-third year of his age. He had been ruler of a great part of Persia for upwards of twenty years, but had only for a short period enjoyed the undisputed sovereignty of that country. The person of that monarch was so slender that at a distance he appeared like a youth of fourteen or fifteen. His beardless and shrivelled face resembled that of an aged and wrinkled woman; and the expression of his countenance, at no times pleasant, was horrible when clouded, as it very often was, with indignation. He was sensible of this, and could not bear that anyone should look at him. This prince had suffered, in the early part of his life, the most cruel adversity; and his future conduct seems to have taken its strongest bias from the keen recollection of his misery and his wrongs. The first passion of his mind was the love of power; the second, avarice; and the third, revenge. In all these he indulged to excess, and they administered to each other: but the two latter, strong as they were, gave way to the first whenever they came in collision. His knowledge of the character and feelings of others was wonderful; and it is to this knowledge, and his talent of concealing from all the secret purposes of his soul, that we must refer his extraordinary success in subduing his enemies. Against these he never employed force till art had failed; and, even in war, his policy effected more than his sword. His ablest and most confidential minister[1], when asked if Áqá Muḥammad Khán was personally brave, replied, 'No doubt; but still I can hardly recollect an occasion when he had an opportunity of displaying courage. The monarch's head,' he emphatically added, 'never left work for his hand.'"

Áqá Muḥammad Khán was succeeded by his nephew the uxorious and philoprogenitive[2] Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh. He was

[1] The infamous traitor Ḥájji Ibráhím, who personally communicated to Sir John Malcolm the opinion here recorded.

[2] According to the *Násikhu't-Tawárikh*, the issue of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh during the 47 years of his mature lifetime amounted to two thousand children and grandchildren, and would, adds the historian, during the twenty-one years intervening between his death and the date of writing, probably amount to about ten thousand souls. He enumerates 57 sons and 46 daughters who survived him, 296 grandsons and 292 granddaughters, and 158 wives who had borne children to him. R. G. Watson (*History of Persia*, p. 269) puts the number of his children at 159. In any case the number was so large as to justify the well-known Persian

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

avaricious and vain, being inordinately proud of his handsome face and long beard, but not by nature cruel (at any rate compared to his late uncle), and it is related that, though obliged by custom to witness the execution of malefactors, he would always avert his face so as not to behold the unhappy wretch's death-agony. He was something of a poet, and composed numerous odes under the pen-name of Kháqán. Politically the chief features of his reign were the Anglo-French rivalry typified by the missions of Malcolm and Harford Jones Brydges on the one hand, and Jaubert and General Gardanne on the other (A.D. 1800–1808); the growing menace of Russia, resulting in the successive disastrous treaties of Gulistán (A.D. 1813) and Turkmán-cháy (A.D. 1826); and the war with Turkey in A.D. 1821, concluded in 1823 by the Treaty of Erzeroum. Other notable events of this reign were the disgrace and death of the traitor Ḥájji Ibráhím and the almost complete extirpation of his family about A.D. 1800[1]; the massacre of Grebaiodoff and the Russian Mission at Ṭihrán on February 11, 1829[2]; and the premature death, at the age of forty-six, of the Sháh's favourite son 'Abbás Mírzá, the Crown Prince, "the noblest of the Kajar race," as Watson calls him[3], in A.D. 1833. His heart-broken father only survived him about a year, and died at the age of sixty-eight on October 23, 1834, leaving fifty-seven sons and forty-six daughters to mourn his loss.

Reign of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh (A.D. 1797–1834).

Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh was succeeded by his grandson Muḥammad, the son of 'Abbás Mírzá, who, ere he was crowned on January 31, 1835, was confronted with two rival claimants to the throne, his uncle the Ẓillu's-Sulṭán and his brother the Farmán-farmá. These,

Muḥammad Sháh (A.D. 1835–1848).

saying *Shutur u shupush u shahzáda hama já paydá'st* ("Camels, lice and princes are to be found everywhere").

[1] See R. G. Watson's *History of Persia*, pp. 128–129.

[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 247–256.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 269.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

however, were overcome without much difficulty by Persian troops commanded by Sir Henry Lindsay Bethune, and though the new Sháh had every reason to be grateful to England and Russia for assuring his succession, the fact that these two powerful neighbours had for the first time intervened in this fashion was an ominous portent and a dangerous precedent in the history of Persia. The same year witnessed the fall and execution (on June 26, 1835) of the celebrated *Qá'im-maqám* Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim[1], hitherto the all-powerful minister of the King, still regarded by his countrymen as one of the finest prose stylists of modern times. He was succeeded as Prime Minister by the notorious Ḥájji Mírzá Ághásí, concerning whom many ridiculous anecdotes are still current in Persia[2]. Of the protracted but fruitless siege of Herát by the Persians in 1838 and the manifestations of Anglo-Russian rivalry for which it afforded occasion it is unnecessary to speak; nor of the withdrawal of Sir J. McNeill, the British Minister (A.D. 1838–1841), from the Persian Court; nor of the Turco-Persian boundary disputes of 1842 and the Turkish massacre of Persians at Karbalá in the early part of 1843. From our point of view none of these events, fully discussed by R. G. Watson and other historians of Persia, are equal in interest to the Isma'ílí revolt of 1840 or thereabouts, and the rise of the Bábí religion in 1844.

Of the origin and doctrines of the Isma'ílí heresy or "Sect of the Seven" (*Sab'iyya*), some account will be found in the

[1] His father, Mírzá 'Ísá of Faráhán, bore the same title. Notices of both occur in vol. ii of the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, pp. 87 and 425. Some account of his literary achievements will be given when we come to consider the prose-writers of the Qájár period in the penultimate chapter of Part iii of this volume.

[2] See Gobineau's *Les Religions et les Philosophies dans l'Asie Centrale* (2nd ed., Paris, 1866), pp. 160–166; and my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 116–117. A sketch of his character is also given by R. G. Watson, *History of Persia*, pp. 288–289.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

first volume[1] of this work, while their destruction by Húlágú Khán the Mongol in the middle of the thirteenth century of our era is briefly described in the second[2]. But, though their power in Persia was shattered, they still continued to exist, and, from time to time, to reappear on the pages of Persian history. In the volume of the *Násikhu't-Tawárikh* dealing with the reigning Qájár dynasty several references to them occur. The first, under the year 1232/1817, refers to the death of the then head of the sect Sháh Khalílu'lláh, the son of Sayyid Abu'l-Ḥasan Khán, at Yazd. Under the Zand dynasty Abu'l-Ḥasan had been governor of Kirmán, whence on his dismissal he retired to the Maḥallát of Qum. There he received tribute from his numerous followers in India and Central Asia, who, it is recorded, if unable to bring their offerings in person, used to throw them into the sea, believing that they would thus be conveyed into the hands of their Imám; but, when possible, used to visit him in his abode and deem it an honour to render him personal service, even of the most menial kind. His son, Sháh Khalílu'lláh, transferred his abode to Yazd, but after residing there two years he was killed in the course of a quarrel which had arisen between some of his followers and the Muslim citizens of Yazd, instigated by a certain Mullá Ḥusayn. The Sháh punished the perpetrators of this outrage, gave one of his daughters in marriage to Áqá Khán, the son and successor of the late Imám of the Isma'ílís, and made him governor of Qum and the surrounding districts (*Maḥallát*).

The Isma'ílís in modern times.

Sháh Khalílu-'llah killed at Yazd in 1232/1817.

We next hear of this Áqá Khán in 1255/1839 or 1256/1840[3], when, apparently in consequence of the arrogant

[1] *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, i, pp. 391–415, *etc.*

[2] *Ibid.*, ii, pp. 190–211; 453–460.

[3] R. G. Watson in his *History of Persia* gives a fairly full account of the insurrection (pp. 331–334).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

behaviour of Ḥájji 'Abdu'l-Muḥammad-i-Maḥallátí, instigated by the minister Ḥájji Mírzá Áqásí, he rebelled against Muḥammad Sháh and occupied the citadel of Bam, but was obliged to surrender to Fírúz Mírzá, then governor of Kirmán, who pardoned him and sent him to Ṭihrán. Here he was well received by Ḥájji Mírzá Áqásí and was presently allowed to return to his former government in the district of Qum. Having sent his family and possessions to Karbalá by way of Baghdád, so as to leave himself free and unencumbered, he began to buy swift and strong horses and to recruit brave and devoted soldiers, and when his preparations were completed he set out across the deserts and open country towards Kirmán, pretending that he was proceeding to Mecca by way of Bandar-i-'Abbás, and that the government of Kirmán had been conferred upon him. Prince Bahman Mírzá *Baha'u'd-Dawla*, being apprised of his intentions, pursued and overtook him as he was making for Shahr-i-Bábak and Sírján, and a skirmish took place between the two parties in which eight of the Prince's soldiers and sixteen of the Áqá Khán's men were killed. After a second and fiercer battle the Áqá Khán was defeated and fled to Lár, whence he ultimately escaped to India, where his descendant, the present Áqá Khán[1], lives a wealthy and spacious life at Bombay when not engaged in his frequent and extensive travels.

Revolt of the Áqá Khán in A.D. 1839 or 1840.

He is defeated by Bahman Mirzá, and flees by way of Lár to India.

The rise of the Bábí sect or religion, which began in the later years of Muḥammad Sháh's reign, was an event of the most far-reaching significance and importance, and forms

[1] Sulṭán Muḥammad Sháh, G.C.I.E., etc., born in 1875. See *Who's Who*, *s.v.* "Aga Khan," and the conclusion of Stanislas Guyard's entertaining article *Un Grand Maître des Assassins au temps de Saladin* in the *Journal Asiatique* for 1877.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the subject of an extensive literature[1], not only in Persian and Arabic, but in English, French, German, Russian and other European languages. Since it would be impossible to give an adequate account of its eventful history and extensive developments in this volume, and since ample materials for its study are already available even in English (indeed, thanks to the success attained by its missionaries in America, especially in English), no attempt at recapitulation will be made here. Sayyid 'Alí Muḥammad the Báb has himself (in the Persian *Bayán*) fixed the date of his "Manifestation" (*Ẓuhúr*) as May 23, 1844 (5 Jumáda i, 1260), just a thousand years after the disappearance or "Occultation" (*Ghaybat*) of the Twelfth Imám, or Imám Mahdí, to whom he claimed to be the "Gate" (*Báb*). Neither the idea nor the expression was new: the Imám Mahdí had four successive "Gates" (*Abwáb*) by means of whom, during the "Lesser Occultation" (*Ghaybat-i-Ṣughra*), he maintained communication with his followers; and the "Perfect Shí'a" (*Shí'a-i-Kámil*) of the Shaykhí School, in which the Báb pursued his theological studies, connoted much the same idea of an Intermediary (*Wásiṭa*), or Channel of Grace, between the Concealed Imám and his faithful people. Later the Báb "went higher" (*bálá-tar raft*), to use the expression of his followers, and claimed to be first the "Supreme Point" (*Nuqṭa-i-A'lá*), or "Point of Explanation" (*Nuqṭa-i-Bayán*), then the *Qá'im* ("He who is to arise" of the House of the Prophet), then the Inaugurator of a new Dispensation, and lastly an actual Divine Manifestation or Incarnation. Some of his followers went even further, calling themselves Gods and him a

The Bábí movement.

[1] For a bibliography of the literature to 1889 see my *Traveller's Narrative written to illustrate the Episode of the Báb* (Cambridge, 1891), vol. ii, pp. 173–211; and for the subsequent literature, my *Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion* (Cambridge, 1918), pp. 175–243.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"Creator of Gods" (*Khudá-áfarín*) while one of them went so far as to write of Bahá'u'lláh[1]:

خلق گویند خدائی و من اندر غضب آیم،
پرده بر داشته میسند بخود ننگِ خدائی،

"Men say Thou art God, and I am moved to anger:
Raise the veil, and submit no longer to the shame of Godhead!"

Although the Bábí movement led to much bloodshed, this took place almost entirely after the death of Muḥammad Sháh, which happened on September 5, 1848, though already the Báb was a prisoner in the fortress of Mákú in the extreme N.W. of Persia, while in Khurásán, Mázandarán and elsewhere armed bands of his followers roamed the country proclaiming the Advent of the expected Mahdí and the inauguration of the Reign of the Saints, and threatening those sanguinary encounters between themselves and their opponents which were at once precipitated by the King's death and the ensuing dislocation and confusion.

Dark indeed were the horizons at the beginning of the new reign. The *Walí-'ahd*, or Crown Prince, Náṣiru'd-Dín, was absent at Tabríz, the seat of his government, at the time of his father's death, and until he could reach Ṭihrán his mother, the *Mahd-i-'Ulyá*, assumed control of affairs. Ḥájji Mírzá Áqásí, whose unpopularity was extreme, not only ceased to act as Prime Minister, but had to flee for his life, and took refuge in the Shrine of Sháh 'Abdu'l-'Aẓím[2]. Disturbances broke out in the capital itself, and more serious revolts in Burújird, Kirmánsháh, Kurdistán, Shíráz, Kirmán, Yazd and Khurásán. The young Sháh, then only seventeen years of age[3], finally

Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh (A.D. 1848–1896).

[1] Cited in the *Hasht Bihisht*, f. 244[a] of my MS. The verse is ascribed to Nabíl of Zarand, who killed himself at 'Akká on Bahá'u'lláh's death on May 28, 1892.

[2] See R. G. Watson's *History of Persia*, pp. 357–8.

[3] He was born on July 17, 1831.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

reached the capital on October 20, 1848, was crowned the same night, and immediately appointed as his Prime Minister Mírzá Taqí Khán, better known as the *Amír-i-Nizám*, who, notwithstanding his lowly origin (his father was originally cook to the *Qá'im-maqám*)[1], was one of the greatest men and most honest, capable and intelligent ministers produced by Persia in modern times. "The race of modern Persians," exclaims Watson[2] enthusiastically, "cannot be said to be altogether effete, since so recently it has been able to produce a man such as was the *Amír-i-Nizám*"; and the Hon. Robert Curzon, in his *Armenia and Erzeroum*, has described him as "beyond all comparison the most interesting personage amongst the commissioners of Turkey, Persia, Russia and Great Britain who were then assembled at Erzeroum." In the brief period of three years during which he held the high office of Prime Minister he did much for Persia, but the bright promise of his career was too soon darkened by the envy and malice of his rivals. The tragic circumstances of his violent and cruel death in his exile at the beautiful palace of Fín near Káshán are too well known to need repetition[3], but the admirable fidelity of his wife, the Sháh's only sister, cannot be passed over in silence. "No princess educated in a Christian court," says Watson[4], "and accustomed to the contemplation of the brightest example of conjugal virtues that the history of the world has recorded could have shown more tenderness and devotion than did the sister of the Sháh of Persia towards her unfortunate husband." Her untiring vigilance was, however, finally tricked and out-

Mírzá Taqí Khán *Amír-i-Nizám.*

Tragic death of Mírzá Taqí Khán, Jan. 9, 1852.

[1] Some account of the two celebrated men, father and son, who bore this title will be found in the account of modern prose-writers of note in Part iii of this volume. See p. 147 *supra*, *ad calc.*

[2] See Watson's *History*, p. 264.

[3] *Ibid.*, pp. 398–406.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 403.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

witted by the infamous Ḥájji 'Alí Khán *Ḥájibu'd-Dawla*, who owed so much to the minister whose life he succeeded in bringing to an end on January 9, 1852.

Bábí risings of 1849–1850

The Bábís, however, had no cause to love Mírzá Taqí Khán, whose death they had already striven to compass, and whose ultimate fate was regarded by them as a signal instance of Divine retribution, since, apart from other measures which he had taken against them, he was responsible for the execution of the Báb himself at Tabríz on July 9, 1850. The Báb indeed, helpless prisoner that he was, had kindled a flame which proved inextinguishable, and which especially illumines with a lurid glow the first four years of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh's reign. The story of the almost incredible martial achievements of the Bábís at Shaykh Ṭabarsí in Mázandarán, at Zanján, Yazd, Nayríz and elsewhere during the years 1849–1850 will never be more graphically told than

Gobineau.

by the Comte de Gobineau, who in his incomparable book *Les Religions et les Philosophies dans l'Asie Centrale* combines wit, sympathy and insight in an extraordinary degree. I personally owe more to this book than to any other book about Persia, since to it, not less than to an equally fortunate and fortuitous meeting in Iṣfahán, I am indebted for that unravelling of Bábí doctrine and history which first won for me a reputation in Oriental scholarship. Gobineau was for some time a "prophet without honour in his own country," but, while France long neglected him, Germany produced a "Gobineau-Vereiningung[1]" and several important works[2] on his life and writings. The militant

[1] Founded in 1894.

[2] I possess two by Ludwig Schemann, *Eine Biographie* and *Quellen und Untersuchungen* (Strassburg, 1913 and 1914). The monthly review *Europe* for October, 1923 (No. 7), has published a very important *Numéro consacré au Comte de Gobineau*, which contains (pp. 116–126) an excellent article by M. Vladimir Minorsky entitled *Gobineau et la Perse*, followed (pp. 127–141) by a list of his published and unpublished

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

phase of Bábíism culminated in the attempted assassination of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh by three members of the sect on August 15, 1852, and the frightful persecution which followed, wherein twenty-eight more or less prominent Bábís, including the beautiful and talented poetess Qurratu'l-'Ayn, suffered death with horrible tortures[1]. Most of the leading Bábís who survived emigrated or were exiled to Baghdád, and thenceforth, though the sect continued to increase in Persia, the centre of its activity, whether at Baghdád, Adrianople, Cyprus or Acre, lay beyond the frontiers of Persia.

Attempt on the Sháh's life by three Bábís, Aug. 15, 1852.

It is unnecessary here to discuss the causes and course of the short Anglo-Persian War of 1856–7, brought about by the seizure of Herát by the Persians. It began with the occupation by the British of the island of Khárak in the Persian Gulf on December 4, 1856, and was officially terminated by the Treaty of Peace signed at Paris on March 4, 1857, by Lord Cowley and Farrukh Khán, though, owing to the slowness of communications at that time, hostilities actually continued for another month. They did not end a moment too soon for Great Britain, for almost before the ratifications were exchanged the Indian Mutiny broke out. The need then experienced for better communications between England and India led in 1864 to the introduction into Persia of the telegraph, to which further extension was given in 1870 and 1872, and this, as pointed out by Sir Percy Molesworth Sykes (whose *History of Persia*[2] is almost the only book which gives a continuous

The Anglo-Persian War of 1856–7.

Introduction of the telegraph.

works, a biography, and an account of *Le mouvement Gobiniste en Allemagne et en France.*

[1] See my *Traveller's Narrative*, vol. ii, pp. 326–334, and *Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion*, pp. 265–271.

[2] I refer to the second and enlarged edition, published in 1921, in which (on p. 526 of vol. ii) March of that year is mentioned as the current date at the time of writing.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and coherent narrative of events from 1857 to 1921), had far-reaching reactions[1], and was one of the factors in the modernization of Persia. Others were the extension of the Press (first introduced into Tabríz by 'Abbás Mírzá about A.D. 1816) and consequent wider diffusion of literature; the slow growth of journalism since 1851[2] down to its enormous expansion during the Revolution of 1906–1911 and again after the Russian collapse; the foundation of the *Dáru'l-Funún*, or Polytechnic College, at Ṭihrán in 1851, and the introduction of European science and instruction; and, in a lesser degree, the Sháh's three journeys to Europe in 1873, 1878 and 1889, though it is doubtful whether he or his attendants derived more advantage from what they saw in the course of their peregrinations than Persian literature did from his accounts of his experiences.

Other modernizing influences.

Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh was only a little over seventeen years of age when he was crowned on the 24th of Dhu'l-Qa'da, 1264 (20 October, 1848), and would have entered upon the fiftieth year of his reign on the same date of the Muhammadan year A.H. 1313, corresponding to May 5, 1896. Four days earlier, however, when all the preparations for the celebration of his Jubilee were completed, he was shot dead by Mírzá Riḍá of Kirmán, a disciple of that turbulent spirit Sayyid Jamálu 'd-Dín al-Afghán, in the Shrine of Sháh 'Abdu'l-'Aẓím a few miles south of Ṭihrán. Of the events which led up to this catastrophe and their significance I have treated fully in my *History of the Persian Revolution of 1905–1909*, and will not attempt to epitomize here matters which are fully discussed there, and which it would be a waste of space to

Assassination of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh on the eve of his Jubilee, May 1, 1896.

[1] *Op. cit.*, ii, p. 369.

[2] See p. 10 of my *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*, where the whole subject is fully discussed.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

recapitulate. The seeds of the Revolution were sown, and even began to germinate, about the time of the Sháh's third and last visit to Europe, fruitful in ill-advised concessions, which (especially the Tobacco concession of 1890) were a potent factor in stimulating the political discontents which found their first open expression in the Tobacco-riots of 1891 and culminated in the Revolution of 1905. If we ignore the external relations of Persia with foreign Powers, especially England and Russia, which form the principal topic of such political histories as that of Sir Percy Molesworth Sykes, we may say, broadly speaking, that of the long reign of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh the first four years (A.D. 1848–52) were notable for the religious fermentation caused by the Bábís, and the last six years (A.D. 1890–6) for the political fermentation which brought about the Revolution in the following reign; while the intervening period was, outwardly at any rate, one of comparative peace and tranquillity. It was my good fortune to visit Persia in 1887–8 towards the end of this period, and, while enjoying the remarkable security which then prevailed in the country, to see almost the last of what may fairly be called mediaeval Persia. To this security I hardly did justice in the narrative of my travels[1] which I wrote soon after my return, for I hardly realized then how few and short were the periods, either before or after my visit, when a young foreigner, without any official position or protection, could traverse the country from North-West to South-East and from North to South, attended only by his Persian servant and his muleteers, not only without danger, but practically without the occurrence of a single disagreeable incident. And if this

Germs of the Revolution.

Momentous years at the beginning and end of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh's reign.

Persia in 1887-8.

[1] *A Year amongst the Persians* (London: A. & C. Black, 1893). This book has long been out of print and is now very scarce.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

remarkable security, which compared favourably with that of many European countries, had originally been brought about by frightful exemplary punishments of robbers and ill-doers, these were no longer in evidence, and during the whole of my time in Persia I not only never witnessed an execution or a bastinado, but never heard of a specific case of either in any place where I stayed, though the ghastly pillars of mortar with protruding human bones outside the gates of Shíráz still bore witness to the stern rule of the Sháh's uncle Farhád Mírzá, *Mu'tamadu'd-Dawla*, whom I met only in the capacity of a courtly and learned bibliophile. Yet withal the atmosphere was, as I have said, mediaeval: politics and progress were hardly mentioned, and the talk turned mostly on mysticism, metaphysics and religion; the most burning political questions were those connected with the successors of the Prophet Muḥammad in the seventh century of our era; only a languid interest in external affairs was aroused by the occasional appearance of the official journals *Írán* and *Iṭṭilá'*, or the more exciting *Akhtar* published in Constantinople; while at Kirmán one post a week maintained communication with the outer world. How remote does all this seem from the turmoil of 1891, the raging storms of 1905–11, the deadly paralysis of the Russian terror which began on Christmas Day in the year last mentioned, and then the Great War, when Persia became the cockpit of three foreign armies and the field of endless intrigues. The downfall of Russian Imperialism freed her from the nightmare of a century, and seemed to her to avenge the desecration of the holy shrine of Mashhad in April, 1912, while the collapse of the Anglo-Persian Agreement and consequent withdrawal of British troops and advisers has left her for the time being to her own devices, to make or mar her future as she can and will.

Stormy later years (1891 onwards).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Since Náṣiru'd-Dín fell a victim to the assassin's pistol the throne of Persia has been occupied by his son Muẓaffaru'd-Dín (1896–1907), who granted the Constitution; his grandson Muḥammad 'Alí, who endeavoured to destroy it, who was deposed by the victorious Nationalists on July 16, 1909, and who is still living in retirement in the neighbourhood of Constantinople; and his great-grandson Sulṭán Aḥmad Sháh the reigning monarch. It would be premature to discuss the reign and character of the last, while the very dissimilar characters of his father and grandfather I have endeavoured to depict in my *History of the Persian Revolution*. But since the death of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh twenty-seven years ago it may truly be said that the centre of interest has shifted from the king to the people of Persia, nor, so far as we can foresee the future, is it likely that we shall see another Isma'íl, another Nádir, or (which God forbid!) another Áqá Muḥammad Khán.

Násiru'd-Dín Sháh's successors.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

PART II.

PERSIAN VERSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

CHAPTER V.

SOME GENERAL CONSIDERATIONS ON THE LATER AND ESPECIALLY THE RELIGIOUS POETRY OF THE PERSIANS.

Four hundred years ago the Persian language (or at any rate the written language, for no doubt fresh colloquialisms and slang may have arisen during this period) was to all intents and purposes the same as it is to-day, while such new literary forms as exist go no further back, as a rule, than the middle of the nineteenth century, that is to say than the accession of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, whose reign (A.D. 1848–1896) might not inappropriately be called the Persian Victorian[1] Era. In the three previous volumes of this book each historical chapter has been immediately followed by a chapter dealing with the literature of that period; but in this volume, for the reason just given, it appeared unnecessary to break the sequence of events in this way, and to be preferable to devote the first part of the volume to a brief historical sketch of the whole period, and the second and third parts to a consideration of the literature in verse and prose, arranged according to categories.

Remarkable stability of the Persian literary language.

How to arrange these categories is a problem which has cost me a good deal of thought. Nearly all those who have written on Persian literature have paid an amount of attention which I regard as excessive and disproportionate to poetry and *belles-lettres*, and have almost entirely ignored the plainer but more positive fields of history, biography, theology, philosophy and the ancient sciences. If we understand literature in the

Excessive attention devoted to Persian poetry.

[1] Náṣiru'd-Dín, indeed, approximately means "Victor" or "Defender of the Faith"

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

narrower sense as denoting those writings only, whether poetry or prose, which have artistic form, there is, no doubt, some justification for this view; but not if we take it in the wider sense of the manifestation in writing of a nation's mind and intellectual activities. Still, in deference to the prevalent view, we may begin this general survey of the recent literature of Persia with some consideration of its poetry.

Here we have to distinguish some half-dozen categories of verse, namely (1) the classical poetry; (2) occasional or topical verse; (3) religious and devotional verse, from the formal *marthiyas*, or threnodies, of great poets like Muḥtasham of Káshán to the simple popular poems on the sufferings of the Imáms recited at the *Ta'ziyas*, or mournings, of the month of Muḥarram; (4) the scanty but sometimes very spirited verses composed by the Bábís since about 1850, which should be regarded as a special subdivision of the class last mentioned; (5) the ballads or *taṣnífs* sung by professional minstrels, of which it is hard to trace the origin or antiquity; (6) the quite modern political verse which has arisen since the Revolution of 1906, and which I have already discussed in some detail in another work[1]. In this chapter I shall deal chiefly with the religious verse, leaving the consideration of the secular poetry to the two succeeding chapters.

Categories of Persian verse.

(1) *The Classical Poetry.*

Alike in form and matter the classical poetry of Persia has been stereotyped for at least five or six centuries, so that, except for such references to events or persons as may indicate the date of composition, it is hardly possible, after reading a *qaṣída* (elegy), *ghazal* (ode), or *rubá'í* (quatrain), to guess whether it was composed by a contemporary of Jámí (d. A.H. 1492)

Later poetry of the classical type.

[1] *The Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* (Cambridge, 1914).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

or by some quite recent poet, such as Qá'ání. Of the extremely conventional character of this poetry I have spoken in a previous volume[1], and of Ibn Khaldún's doctrine "that the Art of composing in verse or prose is concerned only with words, not with ideas." Hence, even in the most recent poetry of this type, we very seldom find any allusion to such modern inventions as tea-drinking, tobacco-smoking, railways, telegraphs or newspapers[2]; indeed several of the greatest modern poets, such as Qá'ání, Dáwarí and the like, have chiefly shown their originality by reviving certain forms of verse like the *musammaṭ*[3] which had fallen into disuse since the eleventh or twelfth century.

Perhaps the statement with which the above paragraph opens is too sweeping and requires some qualification, for in some of the later Persian poets Indian and Turkish critics do profess to discover a certain originality (*táza-gú'í*) marking an epoch in the development of the art, and the rise of a new school. The Persians themselves are not addicted to literary criticism; perhaps because, just as people only discuss their health when they are beginning to lose it, so those only indulge in meticulous literary criticism who are no longer able, or have never been able, to produce good literature. According to Gibb[4], Jámí and Mír 'Alí Shír Nawá'í, 'Urfí of Shíráz (d. 999/1590–1) and the Indian Faydí (Feyẓí, d. 1004/1595–6), and lastly Ṣá'ib of Iṣfahán (d. 1080/1669–70) were successively the chief foreign influences on the development of Ottoman Turkish poetry, and a great deal has been written about them by the Turkish critics. The best and fullest

Literary criticism neglected by the Persians.

[1] *Lit. Hist. of Persia, ii*, pp. 83–9.

[2] Cf. Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. iv, p. 4. Such allusions will, however, be found in the poem by Na'ím quoted in the latter part of this chapter, though in general it follows the orthodox *qaṣída* form.

[3] *Lit. Hist. of Persia, ii*, pp. 41–2.

[4] *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. iii, pp. 247–48.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

critical estimate of the leading Persian poets from the earliest times down to the latter part of the seventeenth century is, however, so far as I can judge, a work written (most unfortunately) in the Urdú or Hindustání language, the *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam* ("Poetry of the Persians") of that eminent scholar Shiblí Nu'mání. The third volume of this work, composed in 1324–5/1906–7, deals with seven Persian poets of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries of our era, namely Fighání (d. 925/1519), Faydí (d. 1004/1595–6), 'Urfí (d. 999/1590–1), Naẓírí (d. 1021/1612–3), Ṭálib-i-Ámulí (d. 1036/1626–7), Ṣá'ib (d. 1080/1669–1670), and Abú Ṭálib Kalím (d. 1061/1651). All these were Persians, attracted to India by the liberal patronage of the Moghul Court, except Faydí, whom Shiblí regards as the only Indian poet except Amír Khusraw who could produce Persian verse which might pass for that of a born Persian. 'Urfí and Ṣá'ib were the most notable of these seven, but even they enjoy a greater repute in India and Turkey than in their own country[1]. The explanation of this fact offered by some Persians of my acquaintance is that they are easily understood and therefore popular with foreigners, who often find the more subtle poetry admired in Persia beyond their powers of comprehension. I must confess with shame that in this case my taste agrees with the foreigners, and that I find Ṣá'ib especially attractive, both on account of his simplicity of style and his skill in the figures entitled *ḥusn-i-ta'líl* or "poetical aetiology," and *irsálu'l-mathal* or "proverbial commission[2]." Nearly forty years ago (in 1885) I read through the Persian portion of that volume of the great trilingual anthology entitled *Kharábát*[3] which deals with the lyrical

[1] Riḍá-qulí Khán explicitly says of both of them that their style is not approved by modern Persians.

[2] See Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i, pp. 113–14.

[3] Compiled by Ẓiyá (Ḍiyá) Pasha, and published in three volumes at Constantinople in 1291–2/1874–5.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

verse of the Arabs, Turks and Persians, both odes and isolated verses, and copied into a note-book which now lies before me those which pleased me most, irrespective of authorship; and, though many of the 443 fragments and isolated verses which I selected are anonymous, more than one-tenth of the total (45) are by Ṣá'ib.

Attraction of India to Persian poets under the earlier Moghul Emperors.

India, at all events, thanks to the generous patronage of Humáyún, Akbar, and their successors down to that gloomy zealot Awrangzíb, and of their great nobles, such as Bayram Khán-Khánán and his son 'Abdu'r-Raḥím, who succeeded to the title after his father's assassination about A.D. 1561, continued during the greater part of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries to attract a great number of the most talented Persian poets, who found there an appreciation which was withheld from them in their own country. Badá'úní[1] enumerates about one hundred and seventy, most of whom were of Persian descent though some of them were born in India. Shiblí[2] gives a list of fifty-one who came to India from Persia in Akbar's time and were received at court, and a long list is also given by Sprenger[3]. Shiblí quotes numerous verses showing how widely diffused amongst Persian poets was the desire to try their fortune in India[4].

Thus Ṣá'ib says:

همچو عزمِ سفرِ هند که در هر دل هست،
رقصِ سودای تو در هیچ سری نیست که نیست.

"There is no head wherein desire for thee danceth not,
Even as the determination to visit India is in every heart."

1 *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh* (Calcutta, 1869), vol. iii, pp. 170–390.
2 *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 5.
3 *Catalogue of the Library of the King of Oude*, vol. i, pp. 55–65.
4 *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 10.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

And Abú Ṭálib Kalím says:

اسیرِ هندم و زین رفتنِ بیجا پشیمانم'
کجا خواهد رساندن پَرْفشانی مُرْغِ بسمل‌را'
بایران میرود نالان کلیم از شوقِ همراهان'
بپای دیگران همچون جرس طی کرده منزل‌را'
زشوقِ هند زان سان چشمِ حسرت بر قفا دارم'
که رو هم گر براه آرم نمی بینم مقابل‌را'

"I am the captive of India, and I regret this misplaced journey:
Whither can the feather-flutterings of the dying bird[1] convey it?
Kalím goes lamenting to Persia [dragged thither] by the eagerness of his fellow-travellers,
Like the camel-bell which traverses the stage on the feet of others.
Through longing for India I turn my regretful eyes backwards in such fashion
That, even if I set my face to the road, I do not see what confronts me."

So also 'Alí-qulí Salím says:

نیست در ایران زمین سامانِ تحصیلِ کمال'
تا نیامد سوی هندستان حنا رنگین نشد'

"There exist not in Persia the means of acquiring perfection:
Henna does not develop its colour until it comes to India."

The Persian dervish-poet Rasmí, commemorating the Khán-Khánán's liberal patronage of poets, says[2]:

ز یُمْنِ مدح تو آن نکته سنج شیرازی'
رسید صیت کمالش بروم ز خاور'
بطرزِ تازه ز مدح تو آشنا گردید'
چو روی خوب که یابد ز ماشطه زیور'

[1] When a Muslim kills a bird for food by cutting its throat, he must pronounce the formula *Bismi'lláh* ("In the Name of God") over it. Such a bird, in its dying struggles on the ground, is called *Murgh-i-Bismil*, or *Nim-bismil*.

[2] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 13.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ز فیضِ نامِ تو فیضی گرفت چون خسرو،
بتیغِ هندی اقلیم سبعه‌را یکسر،
ز ریزه چینیِ خوانت نظیری شاعر،
رسیده است بجائی که شاعران دگر،
کنند بهر مدیحش قصیدهٔ انشا،
که خونِ رشك چکد از دلِ سخن پرور،
سوادِ شعرِ شکیبی چو کحلِ صفاهان،
بتحفه سوی خراسان برند اهلِ نظر،
ز مدحتِ تو حیاتی حیاتِ دیگر یافت،
بلی مقوّی طبع عرض بود جوهر،
حدیثِ نوعی و کفوی بیان چه سازم من،
چو زنده اند بمدحِ تو تا دمِ محشر،
ز نعمتِ تو به نوعی رسید آن مایه،
که یافت میر معزّی ز نعمتِ سنجر،

"Through auspicious praise of thee the fame of the perfection of that subtle singer of Shíráz[1] reached from the East to Rúm[2].
In praising thee he became conversant with a new style, like the fair face which gains adornment from the tire-woman.
By the grace (*fayḍ*) of thy name Fayḍí, like [his predecessor] Khusraw[3], annexed the Seven Climes from end to end with the Indian sword.
By gathering crumbs from thy table Naẓírí the poet hath attained a rank such that other poets
Compose such elegies in his praise that blood drips in envy from the heart of the singer.
Men of discernment carry as a gift to Khurásán, like the collyrium of Iṣfahán, copies of Shakíbí's verses.
By praising thee Ḥayátí found fresh life (*ḥayát*): yea, the substance must needs strengthen the nature of the accident.

[1] *I.e.* 'Urfí, as Shiblí notes.
[2] *I.e.* Turkey. See above, p. 80, n. 5.
[3] Cf. p. 164 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

How can I tell the tale of Naw'í and Kufwí, since by their praise of thee they will live until the Resurrection Dawn?
Such measure of thy favour accrued to Naw'í as Amír Mu'izzí received from the favour of Sanjar."

These poets of the sixteenth and seventeenth centuries produced what the late Professor Ethé has happily termed the "Indian summer" of Persian poetry, and they had of course a host of Indian imitators and successors so long as Persian continued to be the polite language of India. These last, who were at best skilful manipulators of a foreign idiom, I do not propose to notice; and even of the genuine Persian poets, whether sojourners in India or residents in their own country, only a limited number of the most eminent can be discussed in these pages. The eighteenth century of our era, especially the troubled period intervening between the fall of the Ṣafawí and the rise of the Qájár dynasties (A.D. 1722–1795), was the poorest in literary achievement; after that there is a notable revival, and several poets of the nineteenth century, Qá'ání, Yaghmá, Furúghí and Wiṣál and his family, can challenge comparison with any save the very greatest of their predecessors.

The eighteenth century a barren period.

(2) *Occasional or Topical Verse.*

Some of the most interesting pieces of poetry are those composed, not necessarily by professional poets, for some special purpose or some particular occasion. These are not so often to be found in the regular *díwáns* of verse as in the pages of contemporary histories. The following from the unpublished *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh* may serve as specimens.

Examples of occasional or topical verse.

In the year 961/1553–4 died three Indian kings, Maḥmúd III of Gujerát, Islám Sháh son of Shír Sháh the Afghán of Dihlí, and Niẓámu'l-Mulk of the Deccan. This coincidence, with the date, is commemorated in the following verses:

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

سه خسرورا قِران آمد بیك سال،
که هند از عدلشان دار آلامان بود،
یکی محمود شاهنشاهِ گجرات،
که همچون دولتِ خود نو جوان بود،
دُوُم اسلام شه سلطانِ دهلی،
که در هندوستان صاحب قران بود،
سیم آمد نظام الملك بحری،
که در ملكِ دکن خسرو نشان بود،
ز من تاریخ فوتِ آن سه خسرو،
چه میپرسی زوالِ خسروان بود،

"In one year the [fatal] conjunction came to three princes by whose justice India was the Abode of Security.
One was Maḥmúd[1], the monarch of Gujerát, who was youthful as his own fortune.
The second was Islám Sháh[2], King of Dihlí, who was in India the lord of a fortunate conjunction.
The third was the Niẓámu'l-Mulk[3]-i-Baḥrí, who ruled in royal state in the kingdom of the Deccan.
Why dost thou ask of me the date of the death of these three Kings? It was 'the decline of the kings' (زوال خسروان = 961)."

The following verses by Mawláná Qásim commemorate the death of Humáyún in the succeeding year (962/1554–5):

همایون پادشاهِ ملكِ معنی، ندارد کس چو او شاهنشهی یاد،
ز بامِ قصرِ خود افتاد ناگاه، وزو عمرِ گرامی رفت بر باد،
پی تاریخِ او قاسم رقم زد، همایون پادشاه از بام افتاد،

"Humáyún, king of the realm of the Ideal, none can recall a monarch like him:

[1] See S. Lane-Poole's *Mohammadan Dynasties*, p. 313.
[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 300 and 303.
[3] *Ibid.*, p. 320. I doubt if *Baḥrí* is a correct reading: it should perhaps be *Burhán*, the proper name of the second of the Niẓám Sháhs of Aḥmadnagar, who reigned from 914 to 961 A.H. (1508–1553 A.D.).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Suddenly he fell from the roof of his palace; precious life departed from him on the winds.

Qásim[1] thus ciphered the date of his death: 'King Humáyún fell from the roof'."

The next piece, denouncing the people of Qazwín, is by the poet Ḥayratí, who died from a fall at Káshán in 961/1553–4:

وقتِ آن آمد که آساید سپهرِ بی مدار'
چون زمین در سایه‌ات ای سایهٔ پروردگار'
پادشاها مدّتِ نُه ماه شد کین نا توان'
مانده در قزوین خراب و خسته و مجروح و زار'
یافتم رسمِ تسنُّن در وضیع و در شریف'
دیدم آثارِ تخرّج در صغار و در کبار'
در مقابر پای شُسته از فقیر و از غنی'
در مساجد دست بسته از یمین و از یسار'
در زمانِ چون تو شاهی دست بستن در نماز'
هست کاری دهت بسته ای شهِ عالی تبار'
قاضیِ این ملك نسلِ خالد بن الولید'
مفتیِ این شهر فرزندِ سعیدِ نابکار'
کشته گردیده ز تیغِ شاهِ غازی هر دورا'
هم برادر هم پدر هم یار هم خویش و تبار'
خود بفرما ای شهِ دانا که اکنون این گروه'
داعیِ خصمند یا مولای شاهِ کامکار'
قتل عامی گر نباشد قتل خاصی میتوان'
خاصه از بهر رضای حضرت پروردگار'

[1] My text has *gáht*, which I have ventured to emend to *Qásim*. For the particulars of Humáyún's death, see Erskine's *History of India under the first two sovereigns of the House of Taimúr, Baber and Humáyún* (London, 1854), vol. ii, pp. 527–8. The chronogram is unusually natural, simple and appropriate.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

نهستند اینها رعایائی که باشد قتلشان،
موجب تخفیفِ مال و مانع خرجِ دیار،
بلکه هریك مبلغی از مالِ دیوان میخورند،
سر بسر صاحب سیورغالند هم ادرار دار،

"The time has come when the pivotless sphere, like the earth, should
rest under thy shadow, O Shadow of God!
O King! It is a period of nine months that this helpless one hath
remained in Qazwín ruined, weary, wounded and wretched.
I found the practices of the Sunnís in humble and noble alike: I saw
the signs of schism in small and great:
Poor and rich with washed feet at the Tombs: hands clasped in the
mosques to right and to left.
In the time of a King like thee to clasp the hands in prayer is an
underhand action, O King of lofty lineage!
The Judge of this Kingdom is of the race of Khálid ibnu'l-Walíd;
the Muftí of this city is the son of the worthless Sa'íd.
By the sword of the victorious King the brother, father, friend,
kinsman and family of both have been slain together.
Say thyself, O wise King, whether now this group are the propa-
gandists of the enemy, or the clients of the victorious King.
If there cannot be a public massacre one might [at least contrive]
a private massacre for the special satisfaction of the Divine
Majesty.
These are not subjects whose slaughter would cause a reduction of
the revenue or would check the spending power of the country;
Nay, rather each one of them consumes a quantity of the wealth of
the exchequer, for they are all fief-holders and pensioners."

The worst of these "occasional verses" is that we seldom know enough of the circumstances under which they were composed to enable us fully to understand all the allusions contained in them. What, for example, had the people of Qazwín done to the author of the above verses to arouse in him such bitter anger? Who were the Qáḍí and the Muftí whom he particularly denounces? How did their relatives come to be slain by the King, and of what enemy were they the propagandists? The fact that we do not know at

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

what date the verses were composed, and whether in the reign of Sháh Ṭahmásp or of his father and predecessor Sháh Isma'íl, makes it harder to discover the answers to these questions, but it is interesting to learn how prevalent were the Sunní doctrines in Qazwín at the time when they were written. Of course in the case of the modern topical verses which abounded in the newspapers of the Revolutionary Period (A.D. 1906–1911 especially) the allusions can be much more easily understood.

(3) *Religious and Devotional Verse.*

Religious poetry of Muḥtasham and his imitators.

Of the numerous poets of the Ṣafawí period who devoted their talents to the celebration of the virtues and sufferings of the Imáms, Muḥtasham of Káshán (died 996/1588) is the most eminent. In his youth he wrote erotic verse, but in later life he seems to have consecrated his genius almost entirely to the service of religion. Riḍá-qulí Khán in his *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (vol. ii, pp. 36–8) gives specimens of both styles, of which we are here concerned only with the second. The author of the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*[1] in his account of the chief poets of Sháh Ṭahmásp's reign states that though in earlier life that king enjoyed and cultivated the society of poets, in his later years his increasing austerity and deference to the views of the theologians led him to regard them with disfavour as latitudinarians (*wasí'u'l-mashrab*), so that when Muḥtasham, hoping for a suitable reward, sent him two eloquent panegyrics, one in his praise and the other in praise of the Princess Parí-Khán Khánum, he received nothing, the Sháh remarking that poetry written in praise of kings and princes was sure to consist largely of lies and exaggerations, according to the

Indifference of the Ṣafawí kings to panegyric.

[1] Ff. 138a–139b of my MS. marked H. 13. Unfortunately this very important history has never been published.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

well-known Arabic saying, "The best poetry is that which contains most falsehoods," but that, since it was impossible to exaggerate the virtues of the Prophet and the Imáms, the poet could safely exert his talents to the full, and in addition would have the satisfaction of looking for a heavenly instead of an earthly reward. Thereupon Muḥtasham composed his celebrated *haft-band*, or poem of seven-verse strophes, in praise of the Imáms, and this time was duly and amply rewarded, whereupon many other poets followed his example, so that in a comparatively short time some fifty or sixty such *haft-bands* were produced. This poem is cited in most of the anthologies which include Muḥtasham, but most fully in the *Kharábát*[1] of Ḍiyá (Ẓiyá) Pasha (vol. ii, pp. 197–200). In this fullest form it comprises twelve strophes each consisting of seven verses, and each concluding with an additional verse in a different rhyme, thus comprising in all ninety-six verses. The language is extraordinarily simple and direct, devoid of those rhetorical artifices and verbal conceits which many Europeans find so irritating, and shows true pathos and religious feeling. I wish that space were available to quote the whole poem, the prototype of so many others of a similar character, but I must content myself with citing three of the twelve strophes (the fourth, fifth and sixth).

Muḥtasham's celebrated *Haft-band.*

بر خوانِ غم چو عالمیان‌را صلا زدند،
اوّل صلا بسلسلهٔ انبیا زدند،
نوبت باولیا چو رسید آسمان طپید،
ز آن ضربتی که بر سرِ شیرِ خدا زدند،
پس آتشی ز اخگرِ الماس ریزها،
افروختند و بر حسن مجتبیٰ زدند،

[1] This excellent anthology of Arabic, Persian and Turkish poetry was printed in three volumes in Constantinople in A.H. 1291–2 (A.D. 1874–5). See p. 164, n. 3 *supra.*

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

و آنگه سرادقیکه مَلَك محرمش نبود'
کندند از مدینه و در کربلا زدند'
وز تیشهٔ ستیزه در آن دشت کوفیان'
بس نخلها ز گلشنِ آل عبا زدند'
بس ضربتی کزان جگرِ مصطفی درید'
بر حلق تشنهٔ خلف مرتضیٰ زدند'
اهلِ حرم دریده گریبان کشاده موی'
فریاد بر درِ حرمِ کبریا زدند'
روح الامین نهاده بزانو سرِ حجاب'
تاریك شد ز دیدن او چشم آفتاب'
چون خونِ حلقِ تشنهٔ او بر زمین رسید'
جوش از زمین بذروهٔ عرشِ برین رسید'
نزدیك شد که خانهٔ ایمان شود خراب'
از بس شکستها که بارکانِ دین رسید'
نخلِ بلندِ او چو خسان بر زمین زدند'
طوفان بر آسمان ز غبارِ زمین رسید'
باد آن غباررا بمزارِ نبی رساند'
گرد از مدینه بر فلك هفتمین رسید'
یکباره جامه در خُمِ گردون بنیل زد'
چون این خبر بعیسی گردون نشین رسید'
پر شد فلك ز غلغله چون نوبتِ خروش'
از انبیا بحضرتِ روح الامین رسید'
کرد این خیال وهمِ غلط کار کین غبار'
تا دامنِ جلالِ جهان آفرین رسید'
هست از ملال گرچه بری ذاتِ ذو الجلال'
او در دلست و هیچ دلی نیست بیملال'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ترسم جزای قاتلِ او چون رقم زنند،
یکباره بر جریدهٔ رحمت قلم زنند،
ترسم کزین گناه شفیعانِ روزِ حشر،
دارند شرم کز کُنَهِ خلق دم زنند،
دستِ عتابِ حق بدر آید ز آستین،
چون اهلِ بیت دست بر اهلِ ستم زنند،
آه از دمیکه با کفنِ خونچکان ز خاك،
آل علی چو شعلهٔ آتش عَلَم زنند،
فریاد از آن زمانکه جوانانِ اهلِ بیت،
گلگون کفن بعرصهٔ محشر نهم زنند،
جمعی که زد نهم صفّشان شور کربلا،
در حشر صف زنان صفِ محشر بهم زنند،
از صاحبِ حرم چه توقّع کنند باز،
آن نا کسان که تیغ بصیدِ حرم زنند،
پس بر سنان کنند سریرا که جبرئیل،
شوید غبارِ گیسویش از آبِ سلسبیل،

"When they summoned mankind to the table of sorrow, they first issued the summons to the hierarchy of the Prophets.
When it came to the turn of the Saints, Heaven trembled at the blow which they smote on the head of the Lion of God[1].
Then they kindled a fire from sparks of diamond-dust and cast it on Ḥasan[2] the Chosen one.
Then they tore up from Madína and pitched at Karbalá those pavilions to which even the angels were denied entrance.

1 *I.e.* 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib, the Prophet's cousin and son-in-law and the first of the Twelve Imáms.
2 'Alí's eldest son, the second Imám, said to have been poisoned at the instigation of Mu'áwiya.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Many tall palm-trees from the grove of the 'Family of the Cloak[1]'
did the people of Kúfa fell in that plain with the axe of malice.
Many a blow whereby the heart of Muṣṭafá [Muḥammad] was rent
did they inflict on the thirsty throat of Murtaḍá 'Alí's successor[2],
While his women, with collars torn and hair unloosed, raised their
laments to the Sanctuary of the Divine Majesty,
And the Trusted Spirit [Gabriel] laid his head in shame on his knees,
and the eye of the sun was darkened at the sight.

When the blood of his thirsty throat fell on the ground, turmoil arose
from the earth to the summit of God's high Throne.
The Temple of Faith came nigh to ruin through the many fractures
inflicted on the Pillars of Religion.
They cast to the ground his tall palm-tree[3] even as the thorn-bush;
a deluge arose from the dust of the earth to heaven.
The breeze carried that dust to the Prophet's Tomb: dust arose from
Madína to the seventh heaven.
When tidings of this reached Jesus dwelling in the heavenly sphere,
he forthwith plunged his garments in indigo[4] in the vat of heaven.
Heaven was filled with murmuring when the turn to cry out passed
from the Prophets to the presence of the Trusted Spirit.
Mistaken imagination fancied that this dust[5] had [even] reached
the skirts of the Creator's glory,
For although the Essence of the All-glorious is exempt from vexation,
He dwells in the heart, and no heart remains unvexed.

I am afraid that when they record the punishment of his murderer,
they may forthwith strike the pen through the Book of Mercy.
I am afraid that the Intercessors on the Resurrection Day may be
ashamed, by reason of this sin, to speak of the sins of mankind.
When the People of the House shall lay hands on the People of
Tyranny, the hand of God's reproach shall come forth from its
sleeve.
Alas for the moment when the House of 'Alí, with blood dripping
from their winding-sheets, shall raise their standards from the
dust like a flame of fire!

[1] The Prophet, his daughter Fáṭima and her husband 'Alí and their sons Ḥasan and Ḥusayn once sheltered under one cloak, whence these five most holy beings are often collectively called by this title.

[2] *I.e.* his younger son Ḥusayn, the third Imám and "Martyr of Karbalá."

[3] *I.e.* stature, as in the fifth verse.

[4] The colour of mourning in Persia.

[5] *I.e.* sorrow and vexation.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Alas for that time when the youths of that Holy House shall dash
together their crimson shrouds on the Resurrection Plain!
That company, whose ranks were broken by the strife of Karbalá,
at the Resurrection in serried ranks will break the ranks of the
uprisen.
What hopes from the Lord of the Sanctuary[1] can those worthless
ones entertain who wounded with their swords the quarry[2] of
the Sanctuary?
Then [finally] they raise on a spear-point that Head[3] from whose
locks Gabriel washes the dust with the water of Salsabíl[4]."

Genuine feeling manifested in this class of poetry.

Whether or no this be accounted good poetry (and of course it loses much of its beauty in a bald prose translation encumbered with notes on expressions familiar to every Persian though strange to a foreigner and a non-Muslim) it at least reveals something of that deep emotion which the memory of the unforgettable tragedy of Karbalá never fails to arouse in the breast of even the least devout and serious-minded Persian. It has, like the poetry of Náṣir-i-Khusraw, who lived nearly five centuries before Muḥtasham, the great merit of sincerity, and consequently has a claim to be regarded as genuine poetry which we seek in vain in the elaborately artificial and rhetorical compositions of many Persian poets who enjoy in their own country a far higher reputation.

Qá'ání's elegy on the death of the Imám Ḥusayn.

One other *marthiya*, or elegy on the death of the Imám Ḥusayn, I cannot refrain from quoting, both on account of the originality of its form and the generally irreligious character of its author, the poet Qá'ání (died A.D. 1853), one of the greatest and the least moral of the modern poets of Persia.

[1] God or His Prophet.

[2] No game or wild animal or bird may be slain within a certain radius of Mecca.

[3] *I.e.* the head of the Imám Ḥusayn.

[4] One of the rivers of Paradise.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The text is taken from a lithographed collection of such poems published, without title or indication of place or date, in Persia, containing 220 unnumbered pages, and comprising the work of six poets, namely Wiṣál, Wiqár, Muḥtasham, Qá'áni, Ṣabáḥí and Bídil.

بارد چه؟ خون! که؟ دیده، چسان؟ روز و شب، چرا؟
از غم، کدام غم؟ غمِ سلطانِ کربلا،
نامش چه بود؟ حسین، ز نژادِ که؟ از علی،
مامش که بود؟ فاطمه، جدّش که؟ مصطفی،
چون شد؟ شهید شد، بکجا؟ دشتِ ماریه،
کی؟ عاشرِ محرّم، پنهان؟ نه بر ملا،
شب کشته شد؟ نه روز، چه هنگام؟ وقتِ ظهر،
شد از گلو بُریده سرش؟ نی نی از قفا،
سیراب کُشته شد؟ نه، کس آبش نداد؟ داد،
که؟ شِمْر، از چه چشمه؟ ز سرچشمهٔ فنا،
مظلوم شد شهید؟ بلی، جُرْم دانست؟ نه،
کارش چه بُد؟ هدایه، و یارش که بُد؟ خدا،
این ظلمرا که کرد؟ یزید، این یزید کیست؟
ز اولادِ هند، از چه کس؟ از نطفهٔ زنا،
خود کرد این عمل؟ نه فرستاد نامهٔ،
نزدِ که؟ نزدِ زادهٔ مرجانهٔ دغا،
ابن زیاد زادهٔ مرجانه بُد؟ نعم
از گفتهٔ یزید تخلّف نکرد؟ لا،
این نابکار کُشْت حسین‌را بدستِ خویش؟
نه او روانه کرد سپه سوی کربلا،
میرِ سپه که بُد؟ عُمَرِ سعد، او بُرید،
خلقِ عزیزِ فاطمه؟ نه شمرِ بی حیا،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

خنجر بُرید حنجر اورا نکرد شرم؟
کرد' از چه پس برید؟ نپذیرفت ازو قضا'
بهرِ چه؟ بهر آنکه شود خلق‌را شفیع'
شرطِ شفاعتش چه بود؟ نوحه و بکا'
کس کُشته شد هم از پسرانش؟ بلی دو تن
دیگر که؟ بُه نرادر' و دیگر که؟ اقربا'
دیگر پسر نداشت؟ چرا داشت' آن که بود؟
سجّاد' چون بُد او؟ بغم و رنج مبتلا'
ماند او بکربلای پدر؟ نی بشام رفت'
با عزّ و احتشام؟ نه با ذلّت و عنا'
تنها؟ نه با زنانِ حرم' نامشان چه بود'
زینب سکینه فاطمه کلثومِ بی نوا'
بر تن لباس داشت؟ بلی گردِ رهگذار'
بر سر عمامه داشت؟ بلی چوبِ اشقیا'
بیمار بُد؟ بلی! چه دوا داشت؟ اشك چشم'
بعد از دوا غذاش چه بُد؟ خون دل غذا'
کس بود همرهش؟ بلی اطفالِ بی پدر'
دیگر که بود؟ تب که نمی گشت ازو جدا'
از زینتِ زنان چه بجا مانده بود؟ دو چیز'
طوقِ ستم بگردن و خلخالِ غم بپا'
گبر این ستم کند؟ نه' مجوس و یهود؟ نه'
هندو؟ نه' بُت پرست؟ نه' فریاد ازین جفا'
قآانی است قابلِ این شعرها؟ بلی'
خواهد چه؟ رحمت' از که؟ ز حق' کی؟ صفِ جزا'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"What rains down? Blood! Who? The Eye! How? Day and Night! Why?
From grief! What grief? The grief of the Monarch of Karbalá!
What was his name? Ḥusayn! Of whose race? 'Alí's!
Who was his mother? Fáṭima! Who was his grandsire? Muṣṭafá!
How was it with him? He fell a martyr! Where? In the Plain of Máriya!
When? On the tenth of Muḥarram! Secretly? No, in public!
Was he slain by night? No, by day! At what time? At noontide!
Was his head severed from the throat? No, from the nape of the neck!
Was he slain unthirsting? No! Did none give him to drink? They did!
Who? Shimr! From what source? From the source of Death!
Was he an innocent martyr? Yes! Had he committed any fault? No!
What was his work? Guidance! Who was his friend? God!
Who wrought this wrong? Yazíd! Who is this Yazíd?
One of the children of Hind! By whom? By bastard origin![1]
Did he himself do this deed? No, he sent a letter!
To whom? To the false son of Marjána!
Was Ibn Ziyád the son of Marjána? Yes!
Did he not withstand the words of Yazíd? No!
Did this wretch slay Ḥusayn with his own hand?
No, he despatched an army to Karbalá!
Who was the chief of the army? 'Umar ibn Sa'd!
Did he cut down Fáṭima's dear folk? No, shameless Shimr!
Was not the dagger ashamed to cut his throat?
It was! Why then did it do so? Destiny would not excuse it!
Wherefore? In order that he might become an intercessor for mankind!
What is the condition of his intercession? Lamentation and weeping!
Were any of his sons also slain? Yes, two!
Who else? Nine brothers! Who else? Kinsmen!
Had he no other son? Yes, he had! Who was that?

Yazíd was the son of Mu'áwiya, the rival of 'Alí and the founder of the Umayyad dynasty, who was the son of Abú Sufyán and Hind "the liver-eater" (*Ákilatu'l-akbád*). The term "bastard origin" should refer to Ibn Ziyád, not to Yazíd. See the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*, ed. Ahlwardt, pp. 133–5.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

'The Worshipper' (*Sajjád*)[1]! How fared he? Overwhelmed with grief and sorrow!
Did he remain at his father's Karbalá? No, he went to Syria!
In glory and honour? No, in abasement and distress!
Alone? No, with the women of the household! What were their names?
Zaynab, Sakína, Fáṭima, and poor portionless Kulthúm!
Had he garments on his body? Yea, the dust of the road!
Had he a turban on his head? Yea, the staves of the wicked ones!
Was he sick? Yes! What medicine had he? The tears of his eyes!
What was his food after medicine? His food was heart's blood!
Did any bear him company? Yes, the fatherless children!
Who else was there? The fever which never left him!
What was left of the women's ornaments? Two things,
The collar of tyranny on their necks, and the anklet of grief on their feet!
Would a pagan (*gabr*) practise such cruelty? No! A Magian or a Jew? No!
A Hindoo? No! An idolater? No! Alas for this harshness!
Is Qá'ání capable of such verses? Yes!
What seeks he? Mercy! From whom? From God! When? In the ranks of recompense!"

More popular religious poetry.

Besides these *maráthí* (singular *marthiya*), or threnodies of the classical type, the contemplation of the sufferings and misfortunes of the Imáms has inspired a copious literature, both in verse and prose, of a more popular kind. The mourning proper to the month of Muḥarram finds expression not only in the actual dramatic representations of this cycle of tragedies, of which there are at least forty (a few of which, however, are connected with prophets and holy men antecedent to Islám), but in recitations of these melancholy events known as *Rawḍa* [*Rawẓa*]-*Khwánt*. These latter are said to derive this name from one of the earliest and best-known books of this kind, the *Rawḍatu* [*Rawẓatu*]*'sh-Shuhadá* ("Garden

[1] 'Alí ibn Ḥusayn, commonly called *Zaynu'l-'Ábidín* ("the Ornament of the Worshippers"), who, on the death of his father at Karbalá, succeeded him as the Fourth Imám.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

of the Martyrs") of Ḥusayn Wá'iẓ-i-Káshifí[1], so that these functions are called "*Rawẓa*-readings," whether the readings be taken from this or from some similar work, such as the *Ṭúfánu'l-Bukáʼ* ("Deluge of Weeping") or the *Asrárú'sh-Shahádat* ("Mysteries of Martyrdom"). Such entertainments are commonly given in the month of Muḥarram by rich notables, nobles, statesmen or merchants, who provide an adequate number of professional rhapsodists or reciters of this class, called *Rawẓa-Khwáns*, and a more or less sumptuous supper to follow. I possess a copy of a curious little poem entitled *Kitábu's-Sufra fí dhammi-'r-Riyá* ("the Book of the Table, censuring hypocrisy")[2] in which the ostentation of the host and the greed of the guests is satirized with some pungency. The following lines describe how the word is passed round as to whose entertainment is likely to prove most satisfactory to the guests:

A satire on the Muḥarram mournings.

کنون بشنو از من یکی داستان،
که رنگین‌ترست از دُلِ بوستان،
کسانیکه گیرند عزای حسین،
بمجلس نشینند با شور و شین،
برای جگرگوشهٔ فاطمه،
سیه پوش گردند یکسر همه،
نمایند بر پا عزا خانه‌ها،
بگیرند عزای شهِ کربلا،
بهر گوشه بزمی مهیّا کنند،
یکی مجلس نغز بر پا کنند،

[1] He died in 910/1504–5. See my *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, pp. 441 and 503–4.

[2] The author's name is given as Turkí of Shíráz, and the little book (48 pp.) was lithographed at Bombay in 1309/1891–2.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

مفرّش نمایند صحن و اُطاق،
منقّش نمایند طاق و رواق،
همه گسترانند فرش لطیف،
بچینند اسبابهای ظریف،
کروهی ز مردان اشکم پرست،
ز جام طمع جمله بیخویش و مست،
بایشان طمع کرده ز آنسان اثر،
که مانندهٔ سکّه بر روی زر،
بپیشانیِ خویش بنهاده داغ،
نمایند ازین گونه مجلس سُراغ،
یکی زآن میان گوید ای همرهان،
پسندیده یاران کار آگهان،
من و حاجی عبّاس رفتیم دوش،
سوی بزمِ آن شخص سبزی فروش،
نبود اندر آن مجلسِ مختصر،
بجز چاهی و قهوه چیزی دگر،
ندیدیم آنجا کس از مردمان،
بجز بانی و یك دو تن روضه خوان،
نشستن در آن بزم نبود روا،
که بی قند و چاهی ندارد صفا،
خداوند از آن بنده خورسند نیست،
که در مجلسش شربت قند نیست،
و لیکن بروزیِ‌دهِ انس و جان،
فلان جاست بزمی چو بزمِ شهان،
عجب مجلسِ خوب و راحت فزاست،
یقین دانم آن مجلس بهرپاست،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

در آن بزم چاهی بود آق پر'
همش قندِ یزدی بجای شکر'
ز نی پیچ قلیانهای بلور'
که یابد دل از قلقلِ وی سرور'
رود عطرِ تنباکویش چند میل'
درخشد بسر آتشش چو سهیل'
نخواهد در آنجا شود آب صرف'
بجز شربتِ قند و لیمو و برف'
نموده‌است بانی عالی جناب'
ز هر کشوری ذاکری انتخاب'
یك از ذاکران میرزا کاشی است'
که گویند او روضه خوان باشی است'
دگر زآن کسان ذاکر رشتی است'
که آوازی آوازرا کشتی است'
ز کرمان و از یزد و کرمانشهان'
ز شیراز و از شوشتر و اصفهان'
همه موسقی دان و خوش صوت و نغز'
بود دیگران قشر و ایشان چو مغز'
حقیقت عجب مجلس بیریاست'
بجان شما رفتن آنجا بجاست'
چو یاران کنند این سخن استماع'
بدان بزم یکسر کنند اجتماع'

"Now hear from me a story which is more brightly coloured than a garden flower,
Of those who make mourning for Ḥusayn and sit in assemblies in frenzied excitement.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

All wear black for Fáṭima's darling[1],
Establish houses of mourning and make lament for the King of Karbalá[2].
In every corner they prepare a feast and arrange a pleasant assembly;
They carpet court-yard and chamber, they bedeck with inscriptions arch and alcove;
They spread fair carpets, they set out graceful furnishings;
A host of gluttonous men, all beside themselves and intoxicated with the cup of greed,
On whom greed has produced such an effect that, like the stamp on the gold[3],
It has set its mark on their foreheads, make enquiry about such assemblies.
One of them says, 'O comrades, well-approved friends, versed in affairs,
'I and Ḥájji 'Abbás went yesterday to the entertainment of that green-grocer fellow.
'In that modest entertainment there was nothing but tea and coffee,
'And we saw no one there except the host and one or two *rawẓa-khwáns*[4].
'To sit in such an assembly is not meet, for without sugar and tea it has no charm.
'God is not pleased with that servant in whose entertainment is neither sherbet nor sugar.
'But, by Him who gives men and *jinn* their daily bread, in such-and-such a place is an entertainment worthy of kings,
'A wonderfully pleasant and comfortable entertainment, which, I am sure, is devoid of hypocrisy.
'There is white tea and sugar-loaf of Yazd in place of sugar,
'And crystal *qalyáns* with flexible tubes, at the gargle of which the heart rejoices.
'The fragrance of their tobacco spreads for miles, and the fire gleams on their heads like [the star] Canopus.
'No water will be drunk there, but draughts of lemon, sugar and snow.

[1] *I.e.* her son the Imám Ḥusayn. *Jigar-gúsha* (lit. "corner of the liver") is an expression very similar to the Irish cuiṛle mo ċroiḋe.

[2] Again Ḥusayn, "the martyr of Karbalá."

[3] *I.e.* its trace is ineffaceably stamped upon them.

[4] The professional reciters or rhapsodists employed on these occasions.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

'One of the reciters is Mírzá Káshí, who, they say, is the chief of *rawẓa-khwáns.*

'Another of them is the rhapsodist of Rasht, who is like a boat in the ocean of song.

'From Kirmán, Yazd and Kirmánsháh, from Shíráz, Shushtar and Iṣfahán,

'All are skilled musicians of melodious and charming voices: they are like the kernel and others like the shell.

'In truth it is a wonderful entertainment, devoid of hypocrisy: by your life it is right to attend it!'

When the friends hear this speech with one accord they assemble at that banquet."

European testimony to the true pathos of the Muḥarram mournings.

On the whole, however, the emotion evoked by these Muḥarram mournings, whether dramatic representations or recitations, is deep and genuine, and even foreigners and non-Muslims confess themselves affected by them. "If the success of a drama," says Sir Lewis Pelly in the Preface to his translation of thirty-seven scenes from the *Ta'ziyas*[1], "is to be measured by the effects which it produces upon the people for whom it is composed, or upon the audiences before whom it is represented, no play has ever surpassed the tragedy known in the Mussulman world as that of Hasan and Husain. Mr Matthew Arnold, in his 'Essays on Criticism,' elegantly sketches the story and effects of this 'Persian Passion Play,' while Macaulay's Essay on Lord Clive has encircled the 'Mystery' with a halo of immortality." Even the critical and sceptical Gibbon says[2]: "In a distant age and climate the tragic scene of the death of Hosein will awaken the sympathy of the coldest reader." *Sayyidu'sh-Shuhadá* ("the Chief of the Martyrs") the Persians call their favourite hero, who is, indeed, in their eyes more even than this, since his intercession will be accepted by God for his sinful followers even when the intercession of the

[1] *The Miracle Play of Hasan and Husain* (2 vols., London, 1879).

[2] Professor J. B. Bury's edition of the *Decline and Fall* in seven volumes (London, 1898), vol. v, p. 391.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Prophet has failed. "Go thou," says the latter to him on the Resurrection Day, "and deliver from the flames every one who has in his life-time shed but a single tear for thee, every one who has in any way helped thee, every one who has performed a pilgrimage to thy shrine, or mourned for thee, and every one who has written tragic verse for thee Bear each and all with thee to Paradise[1]." To the Persian Shí'a, therefore, Ḥusayn occupies the same position that Jesus Christ does to the devout Christian, notwithstanding the fact that the doctrine of the Atonement is utterly foreign to the original spirit of Islám.

Persian doctrine of the Atonement.

To us no Persian verse could well appear more exaggerated in its deification of a human being than this[2]:

مرد گویند خدائی و من اندر غضب آیم،
پرده بر داشته مپسند بخود ننگِ خدائی،

"Men say Thou art God, and I am moved to anger: raise the veil,
and submit no longer to the shame of Godhead!"

But I am not sure whether the following verse, ascribed to the Bábí poet Nabíl[3], would not more greatly shock the Persian Shí'a:

شهدای طلعتِ نارِ من بدوید سوی دیارِ من،
سر و جان کنید نثارِ من که منم شهنشهِ کربلا،

"O witnesses of my aspect of fire, haste ye towards my home;
Make head and life my offering, for I am the Monarch of Karbalá!"

[1] Sir Lewis Pelly's *Miracle Play*, vol. ii, p. 347.

[2] By an Azalí controversialist it is said to have been written of Bahá'u'lláh by one of his followers, but I have been told that it, or a very similar verse, was really composed in honour of Ḥusayn.

[3] *Nabíl* is a Bábí substitute for *Muḥammad*, the numerical values of both names being equivalent to 92. The poet Nabíl at one time after the Báb's death advanced a claim on his own behalf, and the verse here cited appears to have been composed at this period. Later he became one of the most devoted adherents of Bahá'u'lláh, on whose death in 1892 he drowned himself at 'Akká.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

It would be an interesting study, but beyond the capacity of this volume, to trace the growth of the Ḥusayn-Legend from its comparatively meagre historical basis, as given by Ṭabarí and the earlier Arab historians, to the elaborate romance into which it has finally developed in the *ta'ziyas* and *rawẓa-khwáns*. But the romantic element appears early, even in the narrative of Abú Mikhnaf Lúṭ ibn Yaḥyá, who flourished in the first half of the second century of the *hijra* (*circâ* A.D. 750)[1], and it has even been suggested that Ḥusayn has been indued with the attributes of some far more ancient prototype like Adonis. At any rate no one at the present day can see anything more like the performances of the priests of Baal than the ghastly ceremonies of the *'Áshúrá* or *Rúz-i-Qatl* which take place on the tenth of Muḥarram (the anniversary of Ḥusayn's death at Karbalá) wherever there is a considerable Persian colony, but especially, of course, in Persia itself.

Growth of the Ḥusayn-Legend.

Sanguinary celebration of the *'Áshúrá* or *Rúz-i-Qatl*.

Certain episodes in the Ḥusayn-Legend would almost seem to indicate an unconscious sense of solidarity with the Christians on the part of the Shí'a Persians arising from their participation in the doctrine of the Atonement. The best-known example of this is the conversion and martyrdom of the "Firangí ambassador" at the Court of Yazíd[2], a very favourite scene in the *ta'ziyas*, and considered especially appropriate when European visitors are included in the audience. Another instance occurs in the *Asráru'sh-Shahádat*, or "Mysteries of Martyrdom," of Isma'íl Khán "Sarbáz[3]," when Ibn Sa'd invites certain Christians to aid

[1] See Wüstenfeld's *Die Geschichtschreiber der Araber*, No. 19 (pp. 5–6), and his translation of this work under the title of *Der Tod des Ḥusein ben 'Alí und die Rache: ein historischer Roman aus dem Arabischen* (Göttingen, 1883).

[2] See Pelly's *Miracle Play*, vol. ii, pp. 222–240.

[3] Lithographed with crude illustrations at Ṭihrán in 1274/1857–58.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

him in killing the Imám Ḥusayn, but when the eyes of their leader fell upon him—

کربلارا دید عرشِ کبریا،

عرشرا تر دید از خونِ خُدا،

نقش بست اندر دل از کلکِ خیال،

کین خدا باشد بدین فرّ و جلال،

گر خُدا نبود یقین عیسی بود،

آفتابِ عرشِ دینِ ما بود،

"He saw Karbalá as the Throne of Divine Majesty, he saw that Throne wet with God's blood[1];
By the pen of imagination an impression grew in his heart, 'Surely this is God in such glory and splendour!
'If he be not God, then surely he is Jesus, the Sun of the Throne of our Faith.'"

Thereupon, being convinced of the truth of Islám and the sanctity of Ḥusayn—

خواست اذنِ جنگ با صد شور و شین،

رفت و جان بنمود قربانِ حسین،

"With a hundred frenzied enthusiasms he sought permission to engage in the battle, and departed to offer his life as a sacrifice for Ḥusayn."

Since, however, we also find stories of the conversion of an Indian king (presumably a pagan) and even of a lion, the object may be to emphasize the cruelty and hard-heartedness of the professing Muslims who compassed the death of Ḥusayn and his fellow-martyrs by depicting the sympathy evoked by their sufferings even in the hearts of unbelievers and savage animals.

The librettos giving the words actually spoken by the

[1] This expression in the mouth of a professing Muslim is extraordinary.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

actors in the *ta'ziyas* are not often met with, though lithographed copies exist, of which, by the kindness of my friend the late George Grahame, formerly Consul in different parts of Persia, I possess half a dozen. As an example of their style I shall here cite a passage from the "Martyrdom of Ḥurr ibn Yazíd ar-Riyáḥí[1]," wherein an Arab from Kúfa brings to the Imám Ḥusayn the news of the execution of his cousin Muslim ibn 'Aqíl.

Libretto of the "Passion-plays."

آمدن مرد عرب از کوفه و خبر آوردن از شهادت مسلم بن عقیل'

(عرب) منکه بینی که بصد شور و نوا میآیم'
هدهدم نزدِ سلیمان ز سبا میآیم'
آیم از کوفه و دارم خبر از مسلمِ زار'
چون نسیمِ سحری روح فزا میآیم'
بر سرم شوق لقای پسرِ فاطمه است'
که بدردِ دلِ مجروح دوا میآیم'

(عبّاس) این دربرا که بود خاکِ سرایش کافور'
سُرْمهٔ چشمِ ملك باشد و خدّامش حور'
هست این در بخدا قبلهٔ اربابِ وفا'
دردمندانِ بلارا بود این دار شفا'

(عرب) سلام من بتو ای مقتدای عالمیان'
ز کوفه میرسم ای پیشوای اهلِ جنان'
خدایرا کجا میروی تو ای سرور'
بیان نما تو بحقّ خدای جنّ و بشر'

(امام) علیكِ من بتو ای قاصدِ نکو منظر'
روم بکوفه من ایندم بحالتِ مضطر'

[1] This constitutes a separate scene in Sir L. Pelly's *Miracle Plays*, vol. i, pp. 171–189.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

نوشته‌اند بمن نامه‌های اشتیاق،
فلك كشيده عنانم بسوی مُلْكِ عراق،
بمن بگو تو ز مسلم اگر خبر داری،
كسی بكوفه باو كرد از وفا یاری،
(عرب) مپرس از حالتِ مسلم فدایت،
بیا آقا بموسم دست و پایت،
مرَو در كوفه ای سلطانِ ابرار،
كه میترسم شوی محزون و بی یار،
مرَو در كوفه ای سَرْوَر امان است
بكن رحمی علی اكبر جوان است،
مرَو در كوفه زینب خوار گردد،
اسیرِ كوچه و بازار گردد،
(امام) عرب از حالتِ مسلم بیان كن
(عرب) برای مسلمِ محزون فغان كن،
(امام) بگو در كوفه چون شد حالِ مسلم،
(عرب) بدان بر گشته شد اقبالِ مسلم،
(امام) مگر كوفی تنش در خون كشیدند،
(عرب) سرِ پاكش ز ملكِ تن بُریدند،
(امام) مگر كردند جسمش پاره پاره،
(عرب) زدند جسم شریفش بر قناره،
(امام) دگر بر گو چه كردند قوم اشرار،
(عرب) كشیدندش میانِ شهر و بازار،
(امام) بگو از حالتِ طفلانِ مسلم،
(عرب) شدند اندر جنان مهمانِ مسلم،
(امام) كه بر آن كودكان ظلم و جفا كرد،
(عرب) سرِ ایشان ز تن حارث جدا كرد،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(امام) فغان از دیدهٔ گریان مسلم،
(عرب) بود این جامهٔ طفلانِ مسلم،
ایوای که مسلمِ وفا دار،
کشته شده از جفای اشرار،

"How the Arab comes from Kúfa bringing news of the martyrdom of Muslim ibn 'Aqíl.

(*Arab*) 'I whom thou seest coming with an hundred passionate strains
Am the hoopoe coming from Sheba into the presence of Solomon.
I come from Kúfa, having tidings of poor Muslim,
I come enlarging the spirit like the morning breeze.
In my head is a longing to meet the son of Fáṭima[1],
I come as the remedy for the pain of a wounded heart.'

('*Abbás*) 'To this gate, of whose pavilion the dust is camphor
And collyrium for the angels' eyes, and its servants the Ḥúrís[2].
By God, this gate is the *qibla*[3] of all faithful folk,
And a house of healing to those stricken with sorrow!'

(*Arab*) 'My salutation to thee, O exemplar of mankind;
I come from Kúfa, O leader of the people of Paradise!
For God's sake whither goest thou, O my lord?
Explain to me [I conjure thee] by the God of *Jinn* and men!'

(*The Imám*) 'And on thee [be my salutation], O messenger of comely face!
Even now I am going to Kúfa in an agitated condition.
They have written to me letters of longing:
Heaven draws my reins towards the land of 'Iráq.
Tell me, therefore, if thou hast news of Muslim:
Has any one in Kúfa loyally aided him?'

[1] *I.e.* the Imám Ḥusayn, son of 'Alí and Fáṭima the Prophet's daughter.

[2] The *Ḥúru'l-'Ayn*, or black-eyed damsels of Paradise.

[3] The point to which the worshipper turns in prayer in order to face Mecca-wards.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(*Arab*) 'May I be thy sacrifice! Ask not of Muslim's case!
Come, master, let me kiss thy hands and feet!
Go not to Kúfa, O King of the righteous!
For I fear that thou may'st become sorrowful and friendless.
Go not to Kúfa, O Lord! It were a pity!
Be merciful! 'Alí Akbar[1] is so young!
Go not to Kúfa! Zaynab[2] will be humiliated,
And will be led captive through the streets and markets!'

(*Together*)

(*Imám*) 'O Arab, make known Muslim's condition!'
(*Arab*) 'Lament for grief-stricken Muslim!'
(*Imám*) 'Tell me, how fared it with Muslim in Kúfa?'
(*Arab*) 'Know that Muslim's fortune failed.'
(*Imám*) 'Did the Kúfans drag his body through blood?'
(*Arab*) 'They severed his innocent head from the kingdom of his body.'
(*Imám*) 'Did they cut his body in pieces?'
(*Arab*) 'They stuck his noble body on the headsman's hook.'
(*Imám*) 'Tell me, what further did these wicked people do?'
(*Arab*) 'They dragged him through the city and market.'
(*Imám*) 'Tell me, how fares it with Muslim's children?'
(*Arab*) 'They have become the guests of Muslim in Paradise.'
(*Imám*) 'Who wrought cruelty and wrong on those children?'
(*Arab*) 'Ḥárith severed their heads from their bodies.'
(*Imám*) 'Alas for Muslim's weeping eyes!'
(*Arab*) 'These are the garments of Muslim's children.'
(*Both*)[3] 'Alas that faithful Muslim has been slain by the cruelty of wicked men!'"

It has only been possible here to touch the fringe of this vast literature of what is commonly and not inappropriately termed the Persian Passion Play, and I have had to content myself with a few specimens of the main types in which it is manifested, namely the classical threnody or elegy (*marthiya*) of Muḥtasham and his imitators; the more

[1] The eldest son of the Imám Ḥusayn. His death forms the subject of Scene xvii of Pelly's *Miracle Play* (vol. i, pp. 287–303).

[2] The daughter of 'Alí and sister of Ḥasan and Ḥusayn.

[3] It is not clear from the text whether this verse is uttered by one or both of the speakers.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

popular presentations of these legends in verse, prose, or mixed verse and prose, contained in innumerable and obscure lithographed books, of which I have chosen the *Asráru'sh-Shahádat* as a type, not because it enjoys any supreme excellence, but simply because it is one of those of which I happen to possess a copy; and lastly the actual librettos of the dramatized *ta'ziyas*, to be seen at their best at the Royal *Takya* of Ṭihrán during the first ten days of the month of Muḥarram. Manuscript note-books for the use of *rawẓa-khwáns* on such occasions are commonly met with in collections of Persian books, and the full description of one such (Add. 423) will be found in my *Catalogue of the Persian MSS. in the Cambridge University Library*[1]. Most of these pieces are anonymous, but amongst the poets named are Muqbil, Mukhliṣ, Mawzún, Nasím, Shaffí and Lawḥí, of none of whom can I find any biographical notice.

(4) *Bábí Poetry.*

Immense influence of the Ḥusayn-Legend on Persian mentality.

One of my young Persian friends who, like so many of the rising generation, deplores the influence of the *mullás* and *rawẓa-khwáns* and the religious atmosphere created by them, especially in connection with the Muḥarram celebrations, admitted to me that at least the work has been done so thoroughly that even the most ignorant women and illiterate peasants are perfectly familiar with all the details of these legends of martyrdom, however little they may know of the authentic history of the events portrayed or the persons represented. Even the greatest *mujtahids*, like Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, however little they might approve the exaggerations and even blasphemies which characterized the Passion Plays in their final popular developments, were at great pains to supply their compatriots with popular and easily

[1] No. LXVI, pp. 122–142. On this last page are given references to descriptions of other similar collections.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

intelligible religious treatises in Persian, so that a knowledge of these matters might not be confined to Arabic scholars or professed theologians.

The Persian passion for martyrdom.

One effect of the *ta'ziyas* has been to create amongst the Persians a widely diffused enthusiasm for martyrdom, of which sufficient account is not taken by those who, misled by the one-sided portrait, or rather caricature, presented by Morier in his famous *Hajji Baba*, deem them an essentially timid and even cowardly folk. The English missionaries in Persia, who in sympathy for and understanding of the people amongst whom they work seem to me greatly superior to those whose labours lie in other fields, know better, and no one has done fuller justice to the courage and steadfastness of the Bábí and Bahá'í martyrs than the Reverend Napier Malcolm in his valuable book *Five Years in a Persian Town* (Yazd). Another told me an interesting story from his own experience in Iṣfahán. One of the chief *mujtahids* of that city had condemned some Bábís to death as apostates, and my informant, who was on friendly terms with this ecclesiastic, ventured to intercede for them. The *mujtahid* was at first inclined to take his intervention very ill, but finally the missionary said to him, "Do you suppose that the extraordinary progress made by this sect is due to the superiority of their doctrines? Is it not simply due to the indomitable courage of those whom you and your colleagues condemn to die for their faith? But for the cruel persecutions to which the Bábís have from the first been subjected, and which they have endured with such unflinching courage, would they now be more numerous or important than a hundred obscure heresies in Persia of which no one takes any notice and which are devoid of all significance? It is you and such as you who have made the Bábís so numerous and so formidable, for in place of each one whom you kill a

The prestige of the Bábís and Bahá'ís is chiefly due to the courage of their numerous martyrs.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

hundred converts arise." The *mujtahid* reflected for a while and then replied, "You are right, and I will spare the lives of these people[1]."

Many of these martyrs died with verses of poetry on their lips. Sulaymán Khán, with wicks flaming in his mangled body, sang:

یك دست جامِ باده و یك دست زلف یار،
رقصی چنین میانهٔ میدانم آرزوست،

"In one hand the wine-cup, in the other the tresses of the Friend,
Such a dance in the midst of the market-place is my desire."

One of the "Seven Martyrs" exclaimed, when the headsman's sword, missing its stroke, dashed his turban to the ground:

ای خوش آن عاشقِ سرمست که در پای حبیب،
سر و دستار نداند که کدام اندازد،

"Happy that intoxicated lover who at the feet of the Friend
Knows not whether it be head or turban which he casts."

Characteristics of Arabian and Persian courage.

Of the ancient Arabs Wilfrid Blunt well says[2]: "Their courage was of a different quality, perhaps, from that admired among ourselves. It was the valour of a nervous, excitable people who required encouragement from onlookers and from their own voices to do their best...," and the same holds good to some extent of the Persians. Poetry is called "Lawful Magic" (*Sihr-i-Ḥalál*) because, in the words of the author of the *Chahár Maqála*[3], it is "that art whereby the poet... can make a little thing appear great and a great thing small, or cause good to appear in the garb of evil and evil in the form of good...in such a way that by his suggestion

[1] A good instance of that sense of justice (*inṣáf*) which my talented friend and former pupil Mr W. A. Smart of the Consular Service regards as one of the most admirable attributes of the Persians.

[2] *The Seven Golden Odes of Pagan Arabia* (London, 1903), p. xii.

[3] E. J. W. Gibb Memorial Series, vol. xi, 1 (Text), p. 26; vol xi, 2 (Translation), p. 27.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

men's temperaments become affected with depression or exaltation; whereby he conduces to the accomplishment of great things in the order of the world."

The Karbalá legend is a potent factor in producing in these martyrs the psychological state which makes them not only endure with fortitude but glory in their sufferings. In one of the two celebrated poems ascribed to the Báb[1] heroine Qurratu'l-'Ayn[1], who was one of the victims of the great persecution of August, 1852, occurs the verse[2]:

من و عشقِ آن مهِ خوبرو که چو شد صلای بلا برو
بنشاط و قهقهه شد فرو که أنا الشّهید بکربلا،

"For me the love of that fair-faced Moon who, when the call of affliction came to him,
Went down with exultation and laughter, crying, 'I am the Martyr at Karbalá!'"

In its original and primitive form Bábíism was Shí'ism of the most exaggerated type, and the Báb himself the 'Gate' to the unseen Imám or Mahdí. Gradually he came to regard himself as actually the Imám; then he became the 'Point' (*Nuqṭa*), an actual Manifestation of the Supreme Being, and his chief disciples became re-incarnations, or rather "returns" or "recurrences" of the Imáms, and the whole tragedy of Karbalá was re-enacted "in a new horizon" at Shaykh Ṭabarsí in Mázandarán. The nineteen chapters constituting the first "Unity" (*Wáḥid*) of the Persian *Bayán* (the most intelligible and systematic of the Báb's writings) are entirely devoted to the thesis that all the protagonists of the Islamic Cycle have returned[3] in this cycle to the life of the world,

Primitive Bábíism essentially Shí'ite in its *Welt-anschauung*.

[1] Both are given in full, with versified translations, in my *Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion*, pp. 347–51.

[2] Compare the initial verse of the poem cited on p. 173 *supra*.

[3] Concerning this typical doctrine of "Return" (*Raj'at*) see my *Materials etc.*, pp. 330, 335 and 338, and my translation of the *New History*, pp. 334 *et seqq*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and Ḥájji Mírzá Jání, the earliest Bábí historian and himself a victim of the persecution of 1852, gives a long comparison between Karbalá and Shaykh Ṭabarsí, greatly in favour of the latter[1].

Mírzá Na'ím, the Bahá'í poet of Si-dih.

In the eleventh and last section of my *Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion* (pp. 341–58) I published a selection of Bábí and Bahá'í poems, and here I will only add to these a *qaṣída* comprising 133 verses composed in the spring of 1885 by Mírzá Na'ím[2] of Si-dih near Iṣfahán, an ardent Bahá'í, whose son, as I lately heard from a friend in the British Legation at Ṭihrán, is still resident there. Mírzá Na'ím sent me an autograph copy of this poem in the summer of 1902 through my late friend George Grahame, and in the concluding colophon he states that he was born at Si-dih in 1272/1855–6 and came to Ṭihrán in 1304/1886–7. The poem is so long that I originally intended only to give extracts from it, but, finding that this could not be done without injury to the sequence of ideas, I have decided to print it in full as a typical Bahá'í utterance having the authority of an autograph.

هو الله تعالی شانه

مرا بود دل و چشمی ز گردشِ گردون

یکی چو دجلهٔ آب و یکی چو لجّهٔ خون

چرا ننالم سخت و چرا نگریَم زار

که از مضیقِ جهان ره نمیبرم بیرون

درونِ دایره مقصودِ خود نمی یابم

مرا نه پای برون باشد و نه جای درون

[1] *Nuqṭatu'l-Káf* (Gibb Series, vol. xv), pp. 204–5.

[2] He is referred to in my *Year amongst the Persians* (p. 519), where he is wrongly described as a native of Ábáda.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

مرا چه فایده از جاه اگر شوم قارن،
مرا چه عایده از مال اگر شوم قارون،
چو می نهم چه ثمر میدهد ضیاع و عَقار،
چو بگذرم چه اثر میکند بنات و بنون،
مرا چه فخر که نوشم عُقار یا جُلّاب،
مرا چه فضل که پوشم حریر یا اکسون،
چو ملك و مال نماند چه محتشم چه فقیر،
چو روزگار نپاید چه شاد و چه محزون،
بعقل نازم و هر جانور از آن مملو،
بروح بالم و هر جایکه از آن مشحون،
مرا از این چه که گویم چه کرد اسکندر،
مرا بدین چه که دانم که بود ناپلیون،
مرا چه کار که مه شد هلال و بدر از آنك،
بقدرِ تابش خور بر وی هست چهره نمون،
چه فایده است کسوف و خسوف‌را دانم،
که خور ز ماه و مه از ظلّ ارض نیلی گون،
چه لازم است که گویم ثوابت و سیّار،
همه شموس و کُراتند در خمِ گردون،
مرا از این چه که دانم کُرات گردِ شموس،
معلّقند و روان وز دو جذبه اند زبون،
مرا چه کار که باد آن هوا که موج زند،
خفیفِ خشك بفوق و ثقیلِ تر سوی دون،
چه گویم آنکه قمر بر زمین زمین بر شمس،
هم او بشمسِ دگر میچمد به پیرامون،
چه گویم این رملِ سالم است یا محذوف،
چه گویم این رجز مطوی است یا مخبون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

ز صرف و نحو و حروف و قرائت و تجوید'
ز وقفِ کوفیّین و ز وصلِ بصریّون'
ز اشتقاق و بدیع و معانی و انشآء'
بیان و خط و عروض و قریضِ شعر و فنون'
رجال و فقه و اصول و جدال و استنباط'
حدیث و حجّت و تفسیر و سُنّت و قانون'
ز رسم و هیأت و جبر و مناظر و تاریخ'
حساب و هندسه جغرافی از جمیع شؤون'
سیاستِ مدن و شرع و زرع و کان و لغات'
حقوقِ ملّت و خرج و خراج و قرض و قشون'
طب و علائم و تشریح و نبض و قارورہ'
خواصّ جملهٔ ادویه مفرد و معجون'
طلسم و دعوت و تعبیر و کیمیا و حِیَل'
نجوم و طالع و اعداد و رمل و جفر و فسون'
علومِ فلسفه و منطق از قدیم و جدید'
تحاشیاتِ حواشی تَسَفْسُطَاتِ متون'
بدین علوم هلا نقدِ عمر خویش مده'
کزین معامله گشتند عالمی مغبون'
از این علوم سوی علمِ دینِ حق بگرای'
که غیر معرفتِ حق همه فریب و فسون'
فسونِ فلسفه مشنو که سربسر سفه است'
فنونِ دهری و کلبی تمام جهل و جنون'
چرا ظنونِ طبیعی شمردهٔ تو علوم'
چرا علومِ الهی گرفتهٔ تو ظنون'
مقالِ این حکما چیست جملگی مشکوک'
کلام این جهلا چیست سر بسر مظنون'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

علومشان پی دفع حیا و صدق و صفا،
فنونشان پی فسق و فساد و مکر و مجون،
همه اباحهٔ ارض است و اشتراك حظوظ،
همه اشاعهٔ فسق است و امتلاء بطون،
خیالشان همه کوتاه و چشمشان همه تنگ،
فنونشان همه وهم و شؤونشان همه دون،
نبود سدِّ شریعت اگر بر این یاجوج،
نبود هیچ کس از عِرض و مال و جان مأمون،
بحقِّ حق سخنِ این گروه ظاهربین،
بجسمِ ملّت و ملك است بدترین طاعون
شوی ز علمِ الهی سلالهٔ کونَیْن،
شوی ز حکمتِ کلبی نبیرهٔ میمون،
هر آنچه گفت نبی این زمان ببین مشهود،
هرآنچه گفت حکیم این زمان ببین مطعون،
علومشان همه از انبیا ولی ناقص،
فنونشان همه از اولیا ولی ملحون،
و لیکن از درِ انصاف در جهان انسان،
بعلم و دانش ممتاز باشد از ما دون،
بعلم و حکمت ره میبرد بذاتِ قدیم،
بعقل و فکر برد ره بحضرت بیچون،
تعلّم است که فرموده افضل الاعمال،
تفکّر است کز او ساعتی به از سبعون،
مُقرِّ ذاتِ قدیمش حکیمهای بزرگ،
چو سوقراط چو بقراط ارسطو و زینون،
چو بو علی و چو اقلیدس و چو بطلمیوس،
چو طالس و چو فلاطون چو هرمس و شیلون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

یقدّسون له بالعشی و الاشراق‘
یسبّحون اذا یُصْبِحُون اذا یُمْسُون‘
جهان سری که حکیم اندرو بجای خرد‘
زمان تنی که علوم اندر او بجای عیون‘
ولی تو سُست عنان توسن فنون سرکش‘
ولی تو خام ضعیف اَبْرَشِ علوم حرون‘
نخوانده سطری ریب آوری بربّ قدیم‘
زهی مزاج که قبض آورد ز انتیمون‘
ز مهد تا بلحد علم جو وَ لَوْ بِالصّین‘
ز علم حق که بر آنست اعتماد و رکون
حقایقِ حکمش‌را حکیمها مبهوت‘
جوامع کلمش‌را ادیبها مرهون
طبایع اند چو اجسام در ظهور و بروز
حقایق اند چو ارواح در خفا و کمون
ز تنگ ظرفی درین فضایح نا محدود‘
بود عوالم بیحد بیکدگر مدفون‘
امور عادیه‌را عام دید و خاصّه خاص‘
بقَدْرِ خود و هُوَ أَعْلَمُ بِمَا یَصِفُون‘
بکُنْهِ پست‌ترین صنع حادثش نرسد‘
چه جای ذاتِ قدیمش هزار افلاطون‘
بحکمِ حقّ متحرّك بود سپهر و نجوم‘
بلی ز جان متأثّر بود عیون و جفون‘
ز امر نیست پس از کیست جنبشِ اجرام‘
ز آب نیست پس ازچیست گردش طاحون‘
یکی بچشمِ تأمّل ز روی عقل ببین‘
درین سراچه که رُبْعی از آن بود مسکون‘

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

بهر یکی ز جماد و نبات و از حیوان،
هزار عالم نا دیده ظاهر و مکنون،
ورای عقلِ تو عقلِ دگر بود غالب،
درونِ جانِ تو جانِ دگر بود مکمون،
ببین بدانه که آن دانه با ازل همدوش،
ببین به بیضه که آن بیضه با ابد مقرون،
نهان و ظاهر از این صد جهان طیور و فروخ،
قدیم و حادث از آن صد چمن ثمار و غصون،
کجا بکوی حقیقت گذر توانی کرد،
تو کز سرای طبیعت نمیروی بیرون،
چنانکه بینی فیضِ حیات از این عالم،
بطفل از مددِ مام میرسد ببطون،
ز ما ورای طبیعت اگر مدد نرسد،
بدین جهان بخدا این جهان شود وارون،
ز ما ورای طبیعت در این مضیق جهان،
عوالمی است خدارا ز حدّ و عد افزون،
گروهی از عقلا بر خلافِ عادتِ کلّ،
بطوع و طبع ببین غوطه میزنند بخون،
خلافِ طبع گروهی بدرد و غم خوشنود،
خلافِ طبع فریقی ز جور کین ممنون،
بمیلِ طبع ببین جمعی از جهان بیزار،
بطیبِ نفس نگر قومی از وطن سُرگون،
ببین بشوق و شعف فرقهٔ همه مقتول،
ببین بذوق و طرب زمرهٔ همه مسجون،
بطوع سلسلهٔ در عذاب رنگارنگ،
بطبع طائفهٔ در بلای گوناگون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

جمیع مست و غزلخوان ولی نه از باده'
تمام محو و پریشان ولی نه از افیون'
چگونه داد خبر دانیال از امروز'
چگونه کرد اثر قولِ اشعیا اکنون'
چگونه گشت وفا وعدهٔ جمیع کتب'
بطبق مصحف و تورات و صحف و انگلیون'
گهی بدارِ سلام و گهی باورشلیم'
گهی بکرمل و گاهی ادوم و گه صیّون'
معیّن آمده ارض مقدّس مسعود'
مؤرّخ آمده یوم مبارکِ میمون'
وَ کَیْفَ جَآء لنَا ٱلْحَق کَما أشآرَ لَنَا'
نَبِیُّنَا ٱلْعَرَبِیّ وَ ٱلأَئِمَّةُ ٱلْهَادوُن'
چسان بوعده جمالِ قدم نمود جمال'
از آن جمالِ مبارک زمانه یافت شگون'
چگونه گشت عیان حق بوادیٔ وَ ٱلتّین'
چگونه گشت پدید او بکوهِ وَ ٱلزَّیْتُون'
چگونه بی سپه او قاهر است و کلّ مقهور'
چگونه یکتنه او غالب است و خلق زبون'
سروده بی سببِ علم خوشترین آیات'
نهاده بی مددِ غیر بهترین قانون'
چرا ندیده باو صد هزار جان قربان'
چرا ندیده باو صد هزار دل مفتون'
ز جنبشِ قلمش جنبشِ قلوب و صدور'
ز رامشِ نظرش رامش ظهور و بطون'
عمائمِ علما مشعلش نکرد خموش'
کتائبِ امرا رایتش نکرد نگون'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

نبمن رود سخنش در جهان چو در تن جان،
نبمن جهد اثرش در روان چو در رگ خون،
خصومت خصما آب سوده در هاون،
رقابتِ رقبا باد بوده بر هامون،
ثبوتِ حکمش در قلب با روان همدم،
دوامِ امرش در دهر با قرون مقرون،
چدوله آتشی افروخته است در دلها،
که هیچ آب نیارد نشاندن این کانون،
گرفته حکمش روی زمین و زیرِ زمین،
گذشته صیتش از چین و هند و از ژاپون،
بیک نظر بگشوده دو صد بلاد و بلوک،
بیک قلم بستانده صد قلاع و حصون،
چگونه کرد بها محفلی بدعوتِ دین،
که تا بحشر نگردند منهی از ناهون،
بی بنای شریعت ز کس نخواست مدد،
بلی نداشت بپا آسمان خدا بستون،
بفضل و رحمتش اقرار کی نمائی کی،
بعلم و قدرتش انکار چون نمائی چون،
تو خود که نظم بیک خانواده نتوانی،
مکن معارضه با ناظم جمیع قرون،
تو خود که مصلحتِ کارِ خود نمیدانی،
مکن لجاج بسلطانِ ملکِ کُنْ فَیَکُون،
تو با پدر بستیزی بیک پشیز ضرر،
دهند در رهِ او مال و جان وزو ممنون،
هزار حیف که دارم درین قوافی تنگ،
هزار نکته که نتوان نمودنش موزون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

سخن ز دست شد و دردِ دل تمام نشد،
روم دو باره کنون بر سرِ همان مضمون،
مرا دلیست در این روزگار بو قلمون،
فریب خوردهٔ بازیچه‌های گوناگون،
زمانه جلوه کند رنگ رنگ چون طاوس،
سپهر عشوه دهد گونه گون چو بو قلمون،
بس است تابشت ای مهر شد دلم بریان،
بس است گردشت ای چرخ شد تنم مطحون،
مرا سریست چه سازد باین همه سودا،
مرا دلیست چه سازد باینهمه افسون،
بجز بجانان جان‌را کجاست تاب و شکیب،
بجز بدلبر دل‌را کجاست صبر و سکون،
سهی بخویش بگویم که الکمالُ وبال،
گهی بخویش بخندم که الجنونُ فنون،
دود خیالم گاهی بدشت چون ماشین،
پرد هوایم گاهی بچرخ چون بالون،
ز تن گسسته‌ام و جان نمیرود از تن،
ز جان گذشته‌ام و دل نمیشود مأمون،
دلم گرفت ز ویران سرای فضل و هنر،
خوشا ممالکِ عشق و خوشا دیار جنون،
ز پای بُخْتی بختم عقالِ عقل گسیخت،
کجاست لیلی من ای خدا شدم مجنون،
بجز ارادهٔ رحمانی از در قدرت،
که میتواند از این ورطه‌ام برد بیرون،
هلا ارادهٔ حق مَنْ أَرَادَهُ ٱللّٰه است،
که شد ارادهٔ حق با اراده‌اش مقرون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

یگانه عهد بها آنکه از ارادهٔ حق،
إذَا أرَادَ لِشئٍ یقول کُنْ فَیَکُون،
شهی که مارا حق سوی اوست راه نما،
مهی که مارا سوی حق اوست راه نمون،
خجسته گوهرِ بحرِ وصال سرّ الله،
که اوست در صدفِ علمِ حق دُرّ مکنون،
بنزدِ فضلش فضل است فاقد الافضال،
بنزد جودش معن است مانع الماعون،
عدوی اوست بخود خصم و یار ازو بیزار،
مطیع اوست ز خود امن و خلق ازو مأمون،
بوصفِ طلعتِ مَنْ طَافَ حَوْلَهُ ٱلأَسْمآ،
سرودمی سخن ار بودمی از او مأذون،
بمدحِ ذاتش میگفتم آنچه گفته خدای،
نه شعرِ الشّعرآء یتّبعهم الغاوون،
تو ای خلیفهٔ رحمان و ای سفینهٔ نوح،
غمین مشو که حقیقت زنقض شد موهون،
بعهدِ حضرتِ آدم بجور و کین قابیل،
بدونِ جُرْم و گنه ریخت از برادر خون،
بعهدِ نوح چو کنعان شکست عهدِ پدر،
بذلِّ نفی نسب شد غریقِ بحر الهون،
بعهدِ حضرتِ یعقوب یوسفِ صدّیق،
ز کیدِ اخوان در قید بندگی مسجون،
بعهدِ حضرتِ موسی ز سبط اسرائیل،
یکی چو حضرت هارون و دیگری قارون،
بعهدِ حضرت روح الله از حواریّین،
یك از جفا چو یهودا یك از صفا شمعون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

بعهدِ حضرت ختمی مآب از اُمّت،
یکی بصدق ابو ذر یکی ابو شعیون،
بعهدِ حضرتِ اعلی دو تن وحید شدند،
یکی شجاعِ امین و یکی جبانِ خئون،
بعهدِ طلعتِ ابهی هم اینچنین باید،
یکیست ثابتِ عهد و یکیست ناقض دون،
بلعن لب نکشایم ولی خدا گوید،
هر آنکه میشکند عهدِ من بود ملعون،
ز حق بعمد مر این فرقه چشم میپوشند،
که حق ز باطل پیداست در جمیعِ شؤون،
قسم بروی تو ای مقتدای کلِّ اُمَم،
قسم بموی تو ای پیشوای کلِّ قرون،
قسم باصلِ تو یعنی بحضرتِ مطلق،
قسم بحقِّ تو یعنی حقیقت بیچون،
قسم بوجهِ تو یعنی بوجهه المشرق،
قسم بسرِّ تو یعنی بسرّه المخزون،
بخاك پای تو یعنی بکیمیای مراد،
بگردِ راهِ تو یعنی بتوتیای عیون،
بموطأ قدمِ تو بموطن وَٱلتّین،
بسجده گاه خلایق بزیب وَٱلزّیتون،
که بی ثنای توام مطمئن نگردد دل،
سرِ فراغ ببالین نمی نهد مدیون،
ولی نعیم کجا مدحِ تو تواند کرد،
نیازموده نهاده است پای در جیحون،
مطیعِ امرِ تو از کیدِ نفس باد ایمن،
اسیرِ بندِ تو از شیدِ دهر باد مصون،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"HE IS GOD, EXALTED IS HIS STATE!

"Through the revolution of the Sphere I have a heart and an eye,
the one like the Tigris in flood, the other like a gulf of blood.
Why should I not mourn heavily, and why should I not weep bitterly,
since I cannot make my way out of the narrows of the world?
Within the circle I find not my object; I have neither foot to fare
forth nor place within.
What profiteth me if I be as Qâren[1] in rank? What gain to me if I
be as Qárún[2] in wealth?
What fruit do farms and estates yield, since I must lay them aside?
What effect have daughters and sons, since I must pass away?
What pride have I in drinking wine or rose-water? What virtue have
I in wearing silk or black brocade[3]?
Since dominion and wealth remain not, what difference between
wealthy and poor? Since time endureth not, what difference
between the glad and the sorrowful?
I take pride in my understanding while every animal is full of it;
I glory in spirit when every place overflows with it.
What is it to me that I should say what Alexander did? What is it
to me that I should know who Napoleon was?
What affair is it of mine that the moon becomes crescent or full
because it shows its face in proportion to the shining of the sun
upon it?
What advantage is it that I should know about the eclipses of the
sun and moon, or that the sun is darkened[4] through the moon,
and the moon through the shadow of the earth?
What need is there for me to say that the fixed stars and planets are
all suns and spheres in the vault of heaven?

[1] One of the seven great noble houses of ancient Persia. See Nöldeke's *Sasaniden*, especially pp. 437 *et seqq*. These seven families constituted the *Bar-bítán* of the Pahlawí inscriptions, the *Ahlu'l-Buyútát* of the Arab historians.

[2] See *Qur'án*, xxviii, 76 and commentary thereon in Sale's translation and elsewhere. He is identified with Korah of the Old Testament, and amongst the Muslims is proverbial for wealth as is Croesus with us.

[3] A short note on *aksún*, "a black brocade worn by the rich for ostentation," will be found on p. 108 of my translation of the *Chahár Maqála* (Gibb Series, xi, 2).

[4] Literally, made the colour of indigo.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

What do I gain by knowing that these spheres are poised and revolving round suns, and are subject to two attractions?
What affair is it of mine that the wind, that undulating air, is light and dry above, and dense and moist below?
What have I to say to this, that the moon marches round the earth, the earth round the sun, and the sun in turn round another sun?
What should I say as to this *ramal*-metre being 'sound' or 'apocopated,' or this *rajaz*-metre *maṭwí* or *makhbún*[1]?
Or of accidence, syntax, the letters, the correct and solemn intonation [of the Qur'án], or of the pauses of the Kúfans or the junctions of the Baṣra school[2]?
Or of etymology, rhetoric, eloquence, style, expression, calligraphy, prosody or the varieties of poetical criticism?
Or of biography[3], jurisprudence, principles [of Law], controversy, deduction, tradition, proof, exegesis, the Code and the Law?
Or of drawing, geometry, algebra, observations, chronology, arithmetic, mathematics and geography in all their aspects?
Or of Politics, the Religious Law, agriculture, mining, philology, National Rights, expenditure, taxation, loans and armies?
Or of medicine, symptoms, anatomy, the pulse and the stools, the properties of all the drugs, whether simple or compound?
Or of talismans, incantations, interpretation of dreams, alchemy, mechanics, astrology, ascendants, [magic] numbers, geomancy, cyphers and spells?
Or of the philosophical sciences, and logic, ancient and modern, or of cautionary glosses and the sophistries of texts?
O waste not the coin of your life on such sciences, for a whole world of men have suffered disappointment through such transactions!
Turn from these sciences to knowledge of the Religion of the Truth[4], for, save knowledge of the Truth[4], all is deceit and vanity.

[1] The full explanation of these terms will be found in Blochmann's *Persian Prosody*, or in any book treating of the metrical systems of the Arabs and Persians.

[2] The two great rival philological schools of early Islám.

[3] *'Ilmu'r-Rijál* ("the science of notable men") means particularly the biography and authority of the transmitters of religious traditions.

[4] Or God, which is the usual meaning of *Ḥaqq* amongst the Persians. Gibb (*Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i, p. 60, *ad calc.*) gives "the Fact" as a translation suggested by one of his Muslim friends.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Hearken not to the spells of Philosophy, which from end to end is folly[1]; the themes of the materialist and the cynic are all ignorance and madness.

Why dost thou consider the fancies of the naturalist as sciences? Why dost thou assume the Divine sciences to be mere fancies?

What is the talk of these philosophers? All doubtful! What is the speech of these ignorant men? All conjecture!

Their sciences are [designed] to dispose of modesty, sincerity and purity; their arts are for [the promotion of] sin, mischief, guile and wantonness!

Their whole [idea] is the socialization of the earth and the communizing[2] of property; their whole [aim] is the diffusion of sin and the filling of their bellies!

Their ideas are all short-sighted and their outlook narrow; their arts are all phantasy, and their conditions vile!

Had it not been for the barrier of the Holy Law against this Gog[3], no one would have been secure of honour, propeity, or life.

By God's Truth, the talk of this gang of materialists is the worst pestilence in the body of the Nation and the Kingdom!

By the Divine Knowledge thou wilt become the choicest product of the two worlds; by the cynic's philosophy thou wilt become the grandchild of an ape[4]!

Behold manifest today whatever the Prophet hath said, but whatever the philosopher hath said behold at this time discredited!

All their sciences are [derived] from the Prophets, but imperfectly; all their arts are from the Saints, but garbled.

But, regarded fairly, man in this world is distinguished by science and knowledge from all beside.

[1] There is a word-play here, of the kind called *tajnís-i-zá'id*, between *falsafah* (philosophy) and *safah* (folly).

[2] The early Bábís were often accused of holding communistic views like the ancient Persian heresiarch Mazdak. Such views are here explicitly repudiated.

[3] Alexander the Great is supposed to have built the Great Wall of China (hence called *Sadd-i-Sikandar*, "the Barrier of Alexander") to prevent the tribes of Gog and Magog (*Yájúj wa Májúj*) from overrunning the world.

[4] An evident allusion to the Darwinian theory.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

By knowledge and learning he finds his way to the Eternal Essence; by understanding and thought he attains to the Presence of the Why-less[1].

It is Study of which He says 'It is the most excellent of actions'; it is Thought whereof an hour 'is better than seventy [years].'

The great sages, such as Socrates, Hippocrates, Aristotle and Zeno, confess His Eternal Essence,

And so also Abú 'Alí [Avicenna], Euclid, Ptolemy, Thales, Plato, Hermes and Solon[2].

These sanctify Him at dusk and at dawn; these glorify Him in the morning and in the evening.

The world is a head wherein the sage is the intelligence; time is a body wherein the sciences are in place of the eyes.

But thou ridest with a slack rein, and the steed of the arts is restive; thou art weak and inexperienced, and the dappled charger of the sciences is vicious.

Not having read a line thou hast doubts as to the Eternal Lord: wonderful the constitution in which antimony produces constipation!

'Seek learning from the cradle to the grave, even in China[3],' from the knowledge of God, whereon trust and reliance may be placed.

Sages are dumbfounded at His wise aphorisms; men of letters are indebted to His pregnant sayings.

Natural laws are like bodies in manifestation and emergence; Divine Truths are like spirits in occultation and latency.

In this illimitable expanse for lack of space illimitable worlds are buried in one another.

Common people see ordinary things, and distinguished people special things, according to their own measure: and He 'knows best what they describe[4].'

A thousand Platos cannot fathom the essence of His humblest temporal work; how much less His own Eternal Essence?

The sphere and the stars move by the command of God: yea, the eyes and eyelids are affected by the soul.

[1] God is so called (*Bí-chún*) because none may question Him as to the reason of His actions.

[2] Doubtful. The original has *Shflún*, an evident error.

[3] A well-known tradition of the Prophet.

[4] Cf. *Qur'án*, xxiii, 98.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Through whom, if not by His command, is the movement of bodies?
By what, if not by the water, does the mill revolve?
For once in the way of wisdom look with the eye of reflection on
this abode whereof but one quarter is habitable[1]. 55
In each one of the mineral, vegetable and animal kingdoms are a
thousand unseen worlds, manifest and hidden.
Beyond thy intelligence is another over-ruling Intelligence; within
thy soul is another soul concealed.
Behold the grain, which stands shoulder to shoulder with past
Eternity: behold the egg, which is conjoined with Eternity to
come!
Hidden yet manifest in this latter are a hundred worlds of fowls and
chickens; eternal yet temporal in that former are a hundred
groves of fruit and branches.
How canst thou pass through the street of Truth, thou, who comest
not forth from the mansion of Nature? 60
Even as thou seest how the flow of life from this world reaches the
child's inward parts through its mother's aid,
So, if aid come not from the Supernatural to this world, by God,
this world will be ruined!
For within the narrow straits of this world God hath worlds from
the Supernatural beyond limit or computation.
Contrary to universal custom, behold a group of intelligent men
voluntarily and naturally plunging into blood[2];
Contrary to nature, a company content with pain and grief; contrary
to nature, a party gladly enduring the cruelty of spite. 65
Behold a community renouncing the world by natural inclination;
see a people contentedly suffering exile from their native land!
Behold a party all slain eagerly and joyfully; behold a throng all
imprisoned with alacrity and delight;
A whole series [of victims] voluntarily enduring various torments;
a whole class by natural inclination [involved] in afflictions of
every kind;
All intoxicated and singing songs[3], but not from wine; all self-
effaced and dissipated, but not from opium!

[1] *I.e.* the world, whereof but one quarter is supposed to be capable of sustaining human life.

[2] This and the following verses refer to the readiness with which the Bábís suffer martyrdom.

[3] Like Sulaymán Khán, for instance. See p. 196 *supra*, and my *Year amongst the Persians*, p. 102.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

How hath Daniel given news of today! How hath the word of Isaiah taken effect now[1]!

How hath the promise of all the Scriptures been fulfilled, precisely in conformity with the Qur'án, the Pentateuch, the Books of the Prophets and the Gospels!

Now in the Abode of Peace [Baghdád], now in Jerusalem, now in Mount Carmel, now in Edom, and now in Sion,

The Holy and Fortunate Land hath been determined, the Blessed and Auspicious Day hath been fixed.

'How came the Truth [God] to us? Even as our Arabian Prophet and our guides the Imáms indicated to us[2].

How according to promise did the Eternal Beauty[3] reveal His beauty, from whose Blessed Beauty the whole world augured well?

How did God become apparent in the Valley of 'the Fig'? How did He become visible in the Mount of 'the Olive[4]'?

How does He conquer without an army while all [others] are conquered? How does He triumph unaided while mankind are helpless [before Him]?

Without the aid of learning He intones the sweetest verses[5]; without the help of others He lays down the Best Law.

Why should we not see a hundred thousand souls His sacrifice? Why should we not see a hundred thousand hearts bewitched by Him?

By the movement of His Pen [men's] hearts and breasts are moved; by the calmness of His Glance cometh Peace without and within

[1] The fulfilment of these prophecies is especially discussed in a Bábí work entitled *Istidlálíyya* addressed to the Jews, and in English by Ibráhím Khayru'lláh in *Bahá'u'lláh, the Splendour of God*. To give only one instance, "a time and times and half a time" is explained as three years and a half of 360 days each = 1260. Now A.H. 1260 (A.D. 1844) was the year of the Báb's "Manifestation."

[2] This verse is entirely in Arabic.

[3] *I.e.* Bahá'u'lláh, who was most commonly entitled by his followers *Jamál-i-Mubárak*, "the Blessed Beauty," or "Perfection."

[4] The reference is to *Súra* xcv of the *Qur'án*, entitled "the Fig."

[5] Not, of course, verses of poetry (*abyát*), but the revealed "signs" (*áyát*) which constitute His credentials.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The turbans of the doctors[1] did not extinguish His Torch; the hosts of the captains did not overthrow His Standard.
Behold how His Word permeates the world as the soul the body; behold how His Influence throbs in the spirit like the blood in the veins!
The hostility of His foes does but [attempt to] crush water in a mortar; the enmity of His rivals is but as wind in the desert.
The duration of His command in the heart keeps company with the Spirit[2]; the continuance of His authority in the world is coeval with the ages.
What a fire hath He kindled in [men's] hearts, such that no water can quench this furnace!
His authority comprehendeth the terrestrial and the subterranean regions; His fame hath passed beyond China, India and Japan.
With one glance He hath conquered two hundred countries and districts; with one [stroke of His] Pen He hath taken a hundred castles and fortresses.
How by His summons to the Faith hath He established a Church against whom until the Resurrection no opponent shall prevail!
He sought help from none to found His Law; yea, God did not raise up the heavens on pillars[3].
When, when wilt thou admit His Grace and Mercy? How, how canst thou deny His Knowledge and Power?
Thou, who canst not order the affairs of a single household, do not contend with Him who orders all the ages!
Thou, who knowest not what is expedient in thine own affairs, do not obstinately strive with the Lord of the Kingdom of 'Be and it is[4]'!
Thou dost dispute with thy father about a farthing's damage; these[5] surrender life and wealth for His sake, and deem themselves favoured.
Alas a thousandfold that I have a thousand thoughts which I cannot harmonize with these restricted rhymes!
Words have escaped my control, yet [the tale of] my heart's pain is incomplete; now I return again to the same refrain.

[1] *I.e.* of Law and Religion. It is, I think, misleading to translate *'Ulamá* as "clergy."

[2] *I.e.* lasts as long as life endures.

[3] See *Qur'án*, xiii, 2 and xxxi, 9.

[4] *Ibid.*, ii, 111; iii, 42, *etc.*

[5] *I.e.* the followers of Bahá'u'lláh.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

In this chameleon-like[1] age I have a heart led astray by all kinds of trifles.
The time preens itself like a peacock in varied hues; the sphere displays its blandishments like a chameleon in divers colours.
Sufficient is thy burning, O Sun, for my heart is roasted! sufficient is thy turning, O Heaven, for my body is ground to powder!
I have a head, but what can it do with all this passion? I have a heart, but what can it do with all this trickery?
Where can the soul find endurance and steadfastness except in the Beloved? Where can the heart find patience and rest save in the Heart's Desire?
At one time I say to myself, 'Perfection is a disaster'[2]: at another I laugh to myself, 'Madness is of many kinds.'
At one time my fancy rushes through the plain like an engine; at another my desire soars in the air like a balloon.
I have broken away from the body, but life will not leave the body; I have abandoned life, yet the heart is not tranquil.
My heart is wearied of this ruined mansion of merit and talent: welcome the kingdoms of Love! welcome the realms of Madness[3]!
The hobble of understanding hath snapped on the leg of the dromedary of my luck[4]: O God, where is my Laylá, for I have become Majnún (mad)?
Save the Divine Will [exercised] through the channel of Omnipotence, who can drag me forth from this whirlpool?
Behold, the Will of God is 'He whom God willeth[5],' with whose will the Will of God is conjoined;

[1] *I.e.* ever changing, inconstant.

[2] Perfection exposes the owner to special risks, and the Evil Eye is called by the Arabs *'Aynu'l-Kamál* because it especially menaces whatever is perfect of its kind. Cf. p. 117, n. 2 *supra*.

[3] So Ḥáfiẓ: "If the understanding knew how happy the heart is under the locks of the Beloved, the intelligent would go mad for the sake of our chains." (Ed. Rosenzweig-Schwannau, vol. i, p. 28, ll. 7–8.)

[4] It is impossible to render the word-plays between *'aql* (understanding) and *'iqál* (hobble, tether, shackle fastened round a camel's knee to keep it from straying), and *bakhtí* (dromedary) and *bakht* (fortune). Even when treating of the most solemn themes few Persian poets can resist such echolalia.

[5] This is one of the titles given by the followers of Bahá'u'lláh to his

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The unique Servant of Bahá ('Abdu'l-Bahá), made such by the Will
of God, Who 'When He willeth aught, saith "Be!" and it is[1]';
A King to whom God shows us the way; a Moon who guides us
towards God;
'God's Secret,' the fortunate Pearl of the Ocean of Union, who is the
Pearl concealed in the shell of God's Knowledge; 110
Beside his excellence, excellence lacks its excellency; beside his
bounty Ma'n[2] is a withholder of benefits.
His enemy is a foe unto himself whom even his friends renounce; he
who obeys him is secure of himself and trusted by mankind.
In praise of the countenance of Him round whom the [Divine] Names
revolve I would sing psalms, were I granted permission by Him.
I continued to utter in praise of His Essence what God [Himself]
hath said, not the verse of 'the poets whom the erring follow'[3].
O Vice-gerent [Khalífa] of the All-merciful, O Ark of Noah, be not
grieved because the Truth hath been weakened by violation [of
the Covenant]. 115
In the Dispensation of Adam, Qábíl [Cain] cruelly and despitefully
shed his brother's blood without fault or sin [on his part].
In the Dispensation of Noah, when Canaan[4] broke his father's
Covenant, by the disgrace of a repudiated affiliation he was
drowned in the Sea of Shame.
In the Dispensation of Jacob, Joseph the faithful was imprisoned
in the bonds of servitude by the wiles of his brethren.
In the Dispensation of Moses from amongst the children of Israel
one was such as Aaron and another such as Qárún[5].
In the Dispensation of the Spirit of God [Jesus Christ] from amongst

son 'Abbás Efendí, also called *Sirru'lláh* ("God's Secret"), and after his father's death 'Abdu'l-Bahá.

[1] See the note on verse 92 above (p. 215, n. 4).

[2] Ma'n ibn Zá'ida is proverbial for his courage, virtue and generosity. For an account of him, see Zotenberg's *Chronique de Tabari* (1874), vol. iv, pp. 373 *et seqq*. This verse affords another instance of echolalia (*Ma'n, máni', md'ún*).

[3] *Qur'án*, xxvi, 224, on account of which the whole *Súra* is entitled the "Chapter of the Poets."

[4] According to Muhammadan tradition, he was a son or grandson of Noah, who, on account of his unbelief, was not saved in the Ark, but perished in the Flood. See *Qur'án*, xi, 42, and commentary thereon.

[5] See the note on verse 4 of this poem (p. 209, n. 2 *supra*).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the Disciples one in cruelty became like Judas [Iscariot] and one in sincerity like Simon [Peter].

In the Dispensation of His Holiness the Seal of the Prophets [Muḥammad] one of his people was in faithfulness Abú Dharr and another Abú Sha'yún[1].

In the Dispensation of His Holiness the Supreme [the Báb] two persons were [entitled] Waḥíd[2]; one was faithful and brave, the other a cowardly traitor.

In the Dispensation of the Most Splendid Countenance [Bahá'u'lláh] it must likewise needs be so, one faithful to the Covenant, the other a vile violator thereof[3].

I will not open my lips to curse, but God says, 'Whosoever breaketh my Covenant is accursed.'

This people wilfully shut their eyes to the Truth, for the Truth is apparent from the False in all circumstances.

I swear by Thy Face, O Exemplar of all peoples! I swear by Thy Hair, O Leader of all the ages!

I swear by Thy Substance, to wit the Majesty of the Absolute! I swear by Thy Truth, to wit the Reality of the Why-less[4]!

I swear by Thy Countenance, to wit His [God's] dawning Countenance! I swear by thy Secret, to wit His Treasured Secret!

By the earth at Thy Feet, to wit the Alchemy of Desire! By the dust on Thy Road, to wit the tutty of [our] eyes!

[1] I can find no mention of such a person, and suspect that the reading is corrupt.

[2] The title *Waḥíd* ("Unique") appears to have been taken by the early Bábís as numerically equivalent to *Yaḥyá*, but this equivalency can only be obtained by writing the letter *yá* (ی) in the latter name only twice instead of three times (یحی for یحیی). Thus misspelt, it, like وحید, would yield the number 28. At any rate, as we learn from Mírzá Jání's *Nuqṭatu'l-Káf* (Gibb Series, vol. xv, pp. 243, 250, 257, 259) the title was first given to Sayyid Yaḥyá of Dáráb, the leader of the Nayríz rebellion, and on his death was transferred to Mírzá Yaḥyá *Ṣubḥ-i-Azal*, the half-brother and rival of Bahá'u'lláh, who is therefore called "the Second Waḥíd" (وحید ثانی). It is, of course, to him that Na'ím applies the term "cowardly traitor."

[3] The allusion here is to Bahá'u'lláh's sons (half-brothers) 'Abbás Efendí 'Abdu'l-Bahá and Muḥammad 'Alí, between whom arose the same dispute about succession as arose in the previous generation between their father and his half-brother Ṣubḥ-i-Azal.

[4] See p. 212, n. 1 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

By the spot pressed by Thy foot in the Land of 'the Fig'! By the place of adoration of mankind adorned by 'the Olive'[1]! 130

[By all these I swear] that my heart cannot remain tranquil without praising Thee, for the debtor cannot lay his head tranquilly on the pillow.

Yet how can Na'ím utter Thy praises? [He is as one] unproved who steps into the Oxus.

May he who obeys Thy command be secure from the deceits of the Flesh! May he who is the captive of Thy thralls be protected from the delusions of the time!" 133

Some apology is needed for quoting and translating in full so long a poem by an author so modern, so little known outside the circle of his own coreligionists, and, as he himself admits (verse 94), so comparatively unskilful in the manipulation of rhyme and metre. On the other hand the Bábí and the subsequent and consequent Bahá'í movement constitutes one of the most important and typical manifestations of the Persian spirit in our own time; and this poem, wherein an ardent enthusiasm struggles with a somewhat uncouth terminology, does on the whole faithfully represent the Bahá'í *Weltanschauung*. The following brief analysis may help the reader better to understand the line of thought which it pursues.

Analysis of the above poem of Na'ím, and reasons for including it in this book.

Analysis of Na'ím's poem.

Dissatisfaction of the author with the ordinary pursuits of life, and recognition of the vanity of worldly wealth, pomp and learning (verses 1–25).

True religion celebrated as the only thing which can satisfy the human soul; and materialism, socialism and communism condemned (verses 26–37).

True wisdom and its seekers and expounders, including the ancient Greek philosophers, praised (verses 38–48).

[1] See p. 214, n. 4 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

The wonder of the Universe, which is permeated throughout by God's Spirit (verses 49–60).

Man's need of Divine Revelation, which is as the need of a little child for its mother's milk (verses 61–63).

Eagerness of the followers of the Báb and Bahá'u'lláh for suffering and martyrdom (verses 64–69).

Fulfilment of former prophecies in this Dispensation (verses 70–74).

Proofs of the truth of Bahá'u'lláh's claim (verses 75–94).

The poet resumes his theme with a new *maṭla'*, or initial verse (95), and first speaks of himself and his own condition (verses 95–105). He next passes to the praise of Bahá-'u'lláh's son 'Abbás Efendí, better known after his father's death (on May 28, 1892) as 'Abdu'l-Bahá (verses 106–114), and offers consolation for the antagonism of his half-brother and the *Náqiḍín*, or "Covenant-breakers," who supported him, by numerous analogies drawn from previous Dispensations (verses 115–125). The last eight verses (126–133) constitute the peroration. The understanding of the poem, of course, presupposes a fairly complete knowledge of the history, doctrines and spiritual outlook of the Bábís and Bahá'ís, and to render it intelligible I have had to annotate the translation to an extent which I regret. It is, so far as my knowledge goes, the most ambitious attempt to expound this doctrine and point of view in verse.

Little novelty or advance in later Ṣúfí poetry.

It might be expected that I should include in this section some account of the later mystical poetry of the Ṣúfís, but, though such poetry continues to be produced down to the present day, I have met with none which attains the level of Saná'í, 'Aṭṭár, Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, Maḥmúd Shabistarí, Jámí, and the other great mystics discussed in the previous volumes of this work. There was, perhaps, little new to be said, and little that could be better expressed than it had been already, while

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

under the Ṣafawís at any rate circumstances were particularly unfavourable to the expression of this class of ideas. The beautiful *Tarjí'-band* of Hátif of Iṣfahán, which will be given at the end of the next chapter, is the only masterpiece of Ṣúfí poetry produced in the eighteenth century with which I am acquainted.

(5) *The* Taṣnif *or Ballad.*

The *Taṣnif* or popular topical ballad.

This class of verse, ephemeral as our own topical and comic songs, leaves far fewer and slighter traces in literature than its actual importance would lead us to expect. A *taṣnif* about the *Ṣáḥib-Díwán* beginning:

دلگشارا ساخت زیر سُرسُرَك،
دلگشارا ساخت با چوب و فلك،
حیفِ دلگشا حیفِ دلگشا،

("He made [the garden of] Dil-gushá under 'the Slide';
He made Dil-gushá with the sticks and the stocks:
Alas for Dil-gushá! Alas for Dil-gushá!")

was the most popular ballad when I was in Shíráz in the spring of 1888[1], but it is probably now as little remembered as an almost contemporary ribald English satire on a certain well-known Member of Parliament who "upset the milk in bringing it home from Chelsea." I have no doubt that the *taṣnif* or ballad sung by the troubadour and wandering minstrel existed in Persia from very early—perhaps even from pre-Islamic—times. Bárbad and Sakísá may have sung such topical songs to Khusraw Parwíz the Sásánian thirteen hundred years ago, as Rúdagí almost certainly did four centuries later to the Sámánid prince who was his patron[2]; and a fragment of a

Probable antiquity of the *taṣnif*.

[1] See my *Year amongst the Persians*, p. 283.
[2] Cf. vol. i of my *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, pp. 14–18.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

typical *taṣníf* (called by the curious name of *ḥarára*) sung in Iṣfahán on the occasion of the capture and execution of the heretic and assassin Aḥmad ibn 'Aṭṭásh[1], is recorded in the history of the Saljúqs composed by Abú Bakr Najmu'd-Dín Muḥammad ar-Ráwandí early in the thirteenth century of our era, under the title of *Ráḥatu'ṣ-Ṣudúr wa Áyatu's-Surúr*.

The authorship of these *taṣnífs* is seldom known, and they are hardly ever committed to writing, though my friend the late George Grahame, when Consul at Shíráz in 1905, very kindly caused a small selection of two score of those most popular at the time in that city and in Ṭihrán, Iṣfahán, Rasht, Tabríz, and elsewhere, to be written down for me; and a selection, adapted as far as possible to the piano, was published in or about 1904 under the title of *Twelve Persian Folk-Songs collected and arranged for voice and pianoforte by Blair Fairchild: English version of the words by Alma Strettell* (Novello & Co., London and New York). In this excellent little book the songs are well set, well rendered into English, and intelligibly if not ideally transliterated, and the following sentence from the short prefatory note shows how sensible the compiler was to the indescribable charm of Persian minstrelsy:

An English rendering of twelve *taṣnífs*.

"But one needs the setting of the Orient to realize what these songs are: the warm, clear Persian night; the lamps and lanterns shining on the glowing colours of native dresses; the surrounding darkness where dusky shadows hover; the strange sounds of music; voices, sometimes so beautiful, rising and falling in persistent monotony—all this is untranslatable, but the impression left on one is so vivid and so full of enchantment that one longs to preserve it in some form."

Most of these *taṣnífs* are very simple love-songs, in which lines from Ḥáfiẓ and other popular poets are sometimes

[1] *Lit. Hist. of Persia*, vol. ii, pp. 313–16; and *Ráḥatu'ṣ-Ṣudúr* (E. J. W. Gibb Memorial, New Series, vol. ii), pp. 161 and 497–8 (note on *ḥarára*).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

incorporated; the topical, polemical and satirical class is much smaller, though in some ways more interesting as well as more ephemeral. A parody or parallel of such a *taṣnīf* may be produced to accord with fresh circumstances, as happens nearer home with the Irish an t-ean bean bocd and the Welsh *mochyn du*. An instance of such an adaptation is afforded by the second poem cited in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* (pp. 174–9). Of course in the *taṣnīf* the air is at least as important as the words, and a proper study of them would require a knowledge of Persian music, which, unhappily, I do not possess. Indeed I should think that few Europeans had mastered it both in practice and theory, or could even enumerate the twelve *maqāms* and their twenty-four derivatives (*shu'ba*)[1].

(6) *Modern political verse.*

Of this I have treated so fully in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* (Cambridge, 1914) that it is unnecessary to enlarge further on it in this place. It is a product of the Revolution of 1905 and the succeeding years, and in my opinion shows real originality, merit and humour. Should space permit, I may perhaps add a few further specimens when I come to speak of the modern journalism with which it is so closely associated, and which, indeed, alone rendered it possible. The most notable authors of this class of verse include 'Árif and Dakhaw of Qazwín, Ashraf of Gílán, and Bahár of Mashhad, all of whom, so far as I know, are still living, while the two first named are comparatively young men. Portraits of all of them, and some particulars of their lives, will be found in my book above mentioned.

[1] One of the clearest and most concise treatises on this subject which I have seen is contained in a manuscript from the library of the late Sir A. Houtum-Schindler (now in my possession) entitled *Bahjatu'r-Rawdj*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

CHAPTER VI.

POETS OF THE CLASSICAL TRADITION. PRE-QÁJÁR PERIOD (A.D. 1500–1800).

Almost any educated Persian can compose tolerable verses, and the great majority do so, while the number of those who habitually indulge in this pastime on a considerable scale and have produced *díwáns* of poetry has been at all times fairly large. Moreover this poetry is as a rule so conventional, and the language in which it is written so unchanged during the period under discussion, that if a hundred *ghazals*, or odes, by a hundred different poets who flourished during the last four centuries were selected, avoiding those which contained any reference to current events, and omitting the concluding verse of each, wherein the poet generally inserts his *takhallus*, or *nom de guerre*, it is extremely doubtful whether any critic could, from their style, arrange them even approximately in chronological order, or distinguish the work of a poet contemporary with Sháh Isma'íl the Ṣafawí from one who flourished in the reign of Násiru'd-Dín Sháh Qájár. Nor do the *tadhkiras*, or Memoirs of Poets, give us much help in making a selection, for when discussing contemporaries the author is very apt to make mention of his personal friends, and to ignore those whom he dislikes or of whom he disapproves. Thus influential or amiable rhymsters of mediocre ability are often included, while heretics, satirists and persons distasteful or indifferent to the author, though of greater talent, are often omitted. When Riḍá-qulí Khán "Hidáyat," author of that great modern anthology entitled

Widespread poetical talent in Persia.

Difficulty of discrimination between noteworthy and mediocre poets.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá ("the Concourse of the Eloquent")[1], comes to speak of his contemporaries, we constantly come across such expressions as

با منش ارتباطی خاص بود و مرا بجنابش اخلاص

"He had a special connection with me, and I a sincere regard for him[2]"; "I saw him in Shíráz[3]"; "I repeatedly called on him and he used to open the gates of conversation before my face[4]"; "I sometimes get a talk with him[5]"; "for a while he established himself in Fárs, where at that time the writer also was living; I used constantly to have the honour of conversing with him, for he used to open the gates of gladness before the faces of his friends[6]"; and so forth. How many of the 359 "contemporary poets" mentioned in this work[7] were included on such personal grounds rather than on account of any conspicuous merit? I once went through the list with my excellent old friend Hájji Mírzá Yaḥyá Dawlatábádí, a man of wide culture and possessing a most extensive knowledge of Persian poetry, of which he must know by heart many thousands of verses, and asked him which of them he considered really notable. Out of the whole 359 he indicated five (Ṣabá of Káshán, Furúghí of Bisṭám, Qá'ání of Shíráz, Mijmar of Iṣfahán, and Nashát of Iṣfahán) as of the first class; two (Wiṣál of Shíráz, and the author himself, Hidáyat) as of the second; and two (Surúsh of Iṣfahán and Wiqár of Shíráz) as of the third;

[1] Composed in 1284/1867–8 and lithographed in 2 vols. at Ṭihrán in 1295/1878.

[2] Vol. ii, p. 64, *s.v.* Ágah-i-Shírází.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 67, *s.v.* Ázád.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 68, *s.v.* Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim-i-Shírází.

[5] *Ibid.*, *s.v.* Ummíd of Kirmánsháh.

[6] *Ibid.*, p. 72, *s.v.* Ulfat of Káshán.

[7] They occupy pp. 58–679 of vol. ii, but were not all strictly contemporary, a few being as early as the first half of the eighteenth century.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

that is, he regarded about one out of every forty mentioned as having a claim to real distinction.

Criterion of selection.

In any case, therefore, a very rigorous selection must be made, the more so when it is a question of poets whose beauty does not depend solely on form, and can, therefore, be preserved in some degree in translation. In making this selection I have included such poets as enjoy any considerable fame in their own country, and any others whom I happen to have come across in the course of my reading (a mere fraction of the total number) who make any special appeal to myself. It is doubtful how far a foreigner is competent to criticize; he may say that he personally admires or dislikes a particular poet, but I doubt if he should go so far as to class him definitely on this ground as good or bad. The taste of even the Turks and Indians, who are more familiar with Persian poetry than we can easily become, differs very considerably from that of the Persians themselves, who must be reckoned the most competent judges of their own literature. In this connection I should like to direct the reader's attention to a very apposite passage in P. G. Hamerton's *Intellectual Life*[1]. Speaking of a Frenchman who had learned English entirely from books, without being able either to speak it, or to understand it when spoken, and "had attained what would certainly in the case of a dead language be considered a very high degree of scholarship indeed," he says: "His appreciation of our authors, especially of our poets, differed so widely from English criticism and English feeling that it was evident he did not understand them as we understand them. Two things especially proved this: he frequently mistook declamatory versification of the most mediocre quality for poetry of an elevated order; whilst, on the other hand, his ear failed to perceive the music of the musical poets, as

Divergence of foreign from native taste.

[1] New ed., London, Macmillan & Co., 1890, pp. 86–94.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Byron and Tennyson. How *could* he hear their music, he to whom our English sounds were all unknown?" Transform this Frenchman into an Indian or a Turk, and substitute "Persian" for "English" and "Qá'ání" for "Byron and Tennyson," and the above remarks admirably apply to most Turkish and Indian appreciations of Persian poetry.

Of the poets who died between A.D. 1500 and 1600 some ten or a dozen deserve at least a brief mention; of those between A.D. 1600 and 1700 about the same number; between A.D. 1700 and 1800 only one or two; between A.D. 1800 and 1885 about a score. Those who outlived the date last-mentioned may be conveniently grouped with the moderns, who will be discussed separately. The following are the poets of whom I propose to speak briefly, arranged in chronological order of their deaths (the dates of birth are seldom recorded) in the four periods indicated above.

I. Between A.D. 1500 and 1600 (A.H. 906–1009).

Several of the poets who really belong to this period have been already mentioned in my *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, namely, Mír 'Alí Shír Nawá'í, d. 906/1500–1 (pp. 505–6); Ḥusayn Wá'iẓ-i-Káshifí, d. 910/1504–5 (pp. 503–4); Banná'í, killed in the massacre at Qarshí in 918/1512–3 (p. 457); and Hiláli, killed by 'Ubaydu'lláh Khán the Uzbek as a Shí'a in 936/1529–30 (p. 459). Of the last-named only need anything further be said here.

1. Hátifí (d. 927/Dec. 1520 or Jan. 1521).

Hatifi (d. 927/1520).

Mawláná 'Abdu'lláh Hátifí of Kharjird in Khurásán derives his chief fame from the fact that he was the nephew of the great Jámí, who, according to the well-known story[1], tested his poetical talent before allowing him to write by bidding him compose

[1] See, besides the Persian *tadhkiras*, Sir Gore Ouseley's *Biographical Notices of Persian Poets* (London, 1846), pp. 143–5.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

a "parallel" to the following verses in Firdawsí's celebrated satire[1] on Sultán Maḥmúd of Ghazna:

درختی که تلخ است وی‌را سرشت،
گرش در نشانی بباغ بهشت،
ور از جوی خُلدش بهنگامِ آب،
به بیخ انگبین ریزی و شهدِ ناب،
سر انجام گوهر بکار آورد،
همان میوهٔ تلخ بار آورد،

"A tree whereof the nature is bitter, even if thou plantest it in the Garden of Paradise,
And if, at the time of watering, thou pourest on its roots nectar and fine honey from the River of Paradise[2],
It will in the end give effect to its nature, and bring forth that same bitter fruit."

Hátifí produced the following "parallel," which his uncle Jámí approved, except that he jocularly observed that the neophyte had "laid a great many eggs on the way[3]":

اگر بیضهٔ زاغِ ظلمت سرشت، نهی زیرِ طاؤسِ باغِ بهشت،
بهنگامِ آن بیضه پروردنش، ز انجیرِ جنّت دهی ارزنش،
دهی آبش از چشمهٔ سلسبیل، بدان بیضه دم در دمد جبرئیل،
شود عاقبت بیضهٔ زاغ زاغ، برد رنج بیهوده طاوس باغ،

"If thou should'st place an egg of the crow compounded of darkness under the Peacock of the Garden of Paradise,
And if at the time of nourishing that egg thou should'st give it grain from the Fig-tree of the Celestial Gardens,

[1] The satire is given at the end (pp. 63–6) of the Persian Introduction to Turner Macan's edition of the *Sháh-náma* (Calcutta, 1829). These verses occur on p. 66, ll. 5–7.

[2] Probably the celestial river of Salsabíl is intended.

[3] *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, vol. ii, p. 54. Hátifí's verses are given on the last page (436) of vol. iii of Ẓiyá Bey's *Kharábát*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

And should'st water it from the Fountain of Salsabíl, and Gabriel
should breathe his breath into that egg,
In the end the crow's egg will become a crow, and vain will be the
trouble of the Peacock of Paradise."

Hátifí was one of the innumerable poets who strove to compose a "Quintet" (*Khamsa*) rivalling that of Nizámí of Ganja. Two of his five subjects were the same, the romances of *Laylá and Majnún*[1] and of *Shírín and Khusraw*; the *Haft Manẓar* formed the parallel to the *Haft Paykar*; while the *Tímúr-náma*[2] formed the counterpart to the *Sikandar-náma*, except that, as Hátifí boasts[3], his poem was based on historical truth instead of on fables and legends. He also began, but did not complete, a similar historical poem on the achievements of Sháh Isma'íl the Ṣafawí, who paid him a surprise visit as he was returning from a campaign in Khurásán in 917/1511–12. This poem is in the style and metre of the *Sháh-náma* of Firdawsí, and is entitled *Sháh-náma-i-Ḥaẓrat-i-Sháh Isma'íl*[4].

Hátifí belongs essentially, like so many other representatives of Art and Letters in the early Ṣafawí period, to the circle of Herát formed under the liberal patronage of the later Tímúrids.

2. Bábá Fighání of Shíráz (d. 925/1519).

Fighání (d. 925/1519).

Fighání appears to be one of those poets who are much more highly esteemed in India than in their own country, for while Shiblí in his *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam* (vol. iii, pp. 27–30), like Wálih in his *Riyáḍu'sh-Shu'ará*[5], deems him the creator of a new style of poetry,

[1] Published at Calcutta by Sir W. Jones in 1788.

[2] Lithographed at Lucknow in Oct. 1869. It comprises about 4500 verses.

[3] Rieu's *British Museum Persian Catalogue*, p. 654.

[4] There is another similar and homonymous poem by Qásimí. See *B.M.P.C.*, pp. 660–1. The Library of King's College, Cambridge, possesses a MS. of this latter (*Pote Collection*, No. 238).

[5] See Rieu's *Pers. Cat.*, p. 651.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Riḍá-qulí Khán only accords him a brief mention in his *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín*[1] and entirely omits him in his larger *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, while the notices of him in the *Átash-kada* and the *Tuḥfa-i-Sámí* are very brief. He was of humble origin, the son of a cutler[2] or a vintner according to different accounts, and seems to have lived the life of a somewhat antinomian dervish. In Khurásán, whither he went from Shíráz, he was unappreciated, even by the great Jámí, with whom he forgathered; but at Tabríz he subsequently found a more appreciative patron in Sulṭán Ya'qúb the Prince of the "White Sheep" Turkmáns. He repented in later life and retired to the Holy City of Mashhad, so that perhaps this verse of his ceased to be applicable:

آلودهٔ شراب فغانی بخاك رفت ' آه ار ملائکش کفنِ تازه بو کنند '

"Stained with wine Fighání sank into the earth: alas if the Angels should sniff at his fresh shroud[3]!"

The longest extracts from his poems are given in the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín*, but these are all *qaṣídas* in praise of 'Alí, presumably composed towards the end of his life, and, though they may suffice to prove him a good Shí'a, they are hardly of a quality to establish his reputation as a great poet.

3. Ummídí (or Umídí) of Ṭihrán (d. 925/1519 or 930/1523–4).

Little is known of Umídí except that his proper name was Arjásp[4], that he was a pupil of the celebrated philosopher

[1] Lithographed at Ṭihrán, 1305/1887–8, p. 122.

[2] On this account he originally wrote verse under the "pen-name" of Sakkákí.

[3] Lest they should by the smell of the wine know him for the toper he was.

[4] One is tempted to conjecture from this name that he may have been a Zoroastrian, but I have found no further evidence to support this supposition.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Jalálu'd-Dín Dawání, that his skill was in the *qaṣída* rather than the *ghazal*, that he was on bad terms with his fellow-townsmen, on whom he wrote many satires, and that he was finally killed in Ṭihrán in a quarrel about a piece of land, at the instigation of Qiwámu'd-Dín Núr-bakhshí. Námí, one of his pupils, composed the following verses and chronogram on his death:

Umídí (d. 925/1519).

نادرِ عصر اُمیدی مظلوم، کو بنا حق شهید شد ناگاه،
شب بخوابِ من آمد و فرمود، کای ز حالِ درونِ من آگاه،
بهرِ تاریخ قتلِ من بنویس، آه از خونِ نا حقِ من آه،

"The much-wronged Umídí, wonder of the Age, who suddenly and contrary to right became a martyr,
Appeared to me at night in a dream and said, 'O thou who art aware of my inward state,
Write for the date of my murder[1]: "Alas for my blood unjustly shed, alas!"'"

Reference has already been made (p. 59 *supra*) to a *qaṣída* composed by him in praise of *Najm-i-Thání*, and probably his poetry consisted chiefly of panegyrics, though he also wrote a *Sáqí-náma* ("Book of the Cup-bearer") of the stereotyped form. Manuscripts of his poems are very rare, but there is one in the British Museum[2], comprising, however, only 17 leaves, and even these few poems were collected long after his death by command of Sháh Ṣafí. Mention is, however, made of him in most of the *tadhkiras*, and the *Átash-kada* cites 24 verses from his *Sáqí-náma*,

[1] This chronogram gives A.H. 925 (A.D. 1519), but 930/1523-4 is the date given by Sám Mírzá, and 929/1522-3 in the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, and, by implication, in the *Haft Iqlím*.

[2] Or. 3642, ff. 180–197. See Rieu's *Persian Supplement*, p. 269. The author of the *Haft Iqlím*, writing more than seventy years after the death of Umídí, his fellow-townsman and apparently kinsman, says that in his day the well-known verses of the poet consisted of 17 *qaṣídas*, 3 *ghazals*, a few fragments and quatrains, and the *Sáqí-náma*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and 70 verses from his other poems. Amongst these are the following, also given in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (vol. ii pp. 7–8):

رواقِ مدرسه گر سرنگون شود سهل است'

قصورِ میکدهٔ عشق‌را مباد قصور'

بنای مدرسه از جنسِ عالی و سافل'

خراب گشت و خرابات همچنان معمور'

"If the College hall should be turned upside down it matters little; but may no injury befall the halls of the Wine-houses of Love! The College buildings, high and low, were destroyed, while the taverns continued to flourish just the same."

تو ترکِ نیم مستی من مرغِ نیم بسمل'

کارِ تو از من آسان کامِ من از تو مشکل'

تو پا نهی بمیدان من دست شُویم از جان'

تو خوی چکانی از رخ من خون فشانم از دل'

دنبالِ آن مسافر از ضعف و نا توانی'

بر خیزم و نشینم چون گرد تا بمنزل'

کو بختِ آنکه گیرم مستش ز خانهٔ زین'

و آن ساعدِ بلورین در گردنم حمایل'

خنجر کشی و ساغر اهلِ وفا سراسر'

خون خورده در برابر جان داده در مقابل'

مدّاحیم چو شد طی بشنو حکایتِ ری'

ویرانه ایست در وی دیوانه ایست عامل'

دیوانهٔ که تدبیر در وی نکرده تأثیر'

دیوانهٔ که زنجیر اورا نکرده عاقل'

دیوانه ایست پُر فن دیرینه دشمنِ من'

از وی مباش ایمن وز من مباش غافل'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

بر داورِ سخندان این نکته ایست پنهان،
کاندیشهٔ پریشان نبود بنظم مایل،
طبعم ز هرکه بودی گوی سخن ربودی،
امّا اگر نبودی در خانه ام محصّل،

"Thou art a half-drunk Turk, I am a half-slain bird[1]; thy affair with me is easy, my desire of thee is difficult.
Thou settest thy foot in the field, I wash my hands of life; thou causest sweat to drip from thy cheek, I pour blood from my heart.
Behind that traveller in weakness and helplessness I rise up and subside like the dust until the halting-place [is reached].
When shall the luck be mine to lift him drunken from the saddle, while that crystal-clear arm embraces my neck like a sword-belt?
Thou bearest a dagger and a goblet: the faithful with one accord drink blood beside thee and give their lives before thee.
Now that my scroll of praise is rolled up, hearken to the tale of Ray: it is a ruin wherein a madman is governor:
A madman on whom counsel produced no effect; a madman whom chains did not render sensible.
He is a madman full of craft, my old enemy; be not secure of him, and be not heedless of me.
From the arbiter of eloquence this point is hidden, that a distracted mind is not disposed to verse.
My genius would snatch the ball[2] of verse from all and sundry, if only the bailiff were not in my house!"

4 and 5. The two Ahlís.

Ahlí of Turshíz (d. 934/1527), and Ahlí of Shíráz (d. 942/1535).

These two homonymous poets, the one of Turshíz in Khurásán (d. 934/1527–8) and the other of Shíráz (d. 942/1535–6), of both of whom the names are more familiar than the works, must, as Rieu has pointed out[3], be carefully distinguished. Both are ignored by Riḍá-qulí Khán, and both belong,

[1] See p. 166, n. 1 *supra*.
[2] This common simile is derived from the game of polo.
[3] *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 657–8. See also Ethé's *India Office Persian Catalogue*, col. 785, No. 1432, where a very valuable autograph MS., made in 920/1514, is described.]

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

the former actually, the latter spiritually, to the Herát school which gathered round Sulṭán Ḥusayn and Mír 'Alí Shír. This school, to which also belonged Ẓuhúrí (d. 1024/1615), likewise of Turshíz, seems never to have been popular in Persia, except, perhaps, in their own day in Khurásán, but enjoys a much more considerable reputation in India, where Ẓuhárí, whose very name is almost unknown in Persia, enjoys an extraordinary, and, as I think, quite undeserved fame, especially as a writer of extremely florid and bombastic prose. Ahlí of Shíráz excelled especially in elaborately ingenious word-plays (*tajnísát*) and other rhetorical devices.

6. Hilálí (killed in 935/1528–9).

Hilálí (d. 935/1528).

Hilálí, though born in Astarábád, the chief town of the Persian Province of Gurgán, was by race a Chaghatáy Turk, and was in his youth patronized by Mír 'Alí Shír Nawá'í. His most famous poem, entitled *Sháh u Darwísh*, or *Sháh u Gadá* ("the King and the Beggar"), has been harshly criticized by Bábur himself[1] and in later times by Sprenger[2], but warmly defended by Ethé, who translated it into German verse[3]. He composed another *mathnawí* poem entitled *Ṣifátu'l-'Áshiqín* ("the Attributes of Lovers") and a number of odes collected into a *Díwán*. Riḍá-qulí Khán says[4] that in Khurásán he was regarded as a Shí'a, but in 'Iráq as a Sunní. Unhappily for him 'Ubaydu'lláh Khán, the fanatical Uzbek, took the former view, and caused him to be put to death as a "*Ráfiḍí*." It is curious, in view of this, that he is not mentioned in the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín* amongst the Shí'a poets; and perhaps, as asserted in the *Haft Iqlím*, the

[1] See my *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, p. 459.
[2] Oude Catalogue, p. 427.
[3] *Morgenländische Studien*, Leipzig, 1870, pp. 197–282.
[4] *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, vol. ii, p. 55.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

envy of two of his rivals at the Uzbek Court, Baqá'í and Shamsu'd-Dín Kúhistání, rather than his religious views, may have caused his execution, which 'Ubaydu'lláh Khán is said to have subsequently regretted. The following verses, however, seem to indicate Shí'a propensities:

محمدِ عربی ابروی هر دو سرای،
کسی که خاك درش نیست خاك بر سرِ او،
شنیده ام که تکلّم نمود همچو مسیح،
بدین حدیث لبِ لعلِ روح پرورِ او،
که من مدینه، علمم علی درست مرا،
عجب خجسته حدیثیست من سگِ در او،

"Muḥammad the Arabian, the honour of both worlds: dust be upon the head of him who is not as dust at his Door!
I have heard that his life-sustaining ruby lip uttered, like the Messiah, this tradition:
'I am the City of Knowledge and 'Alí is my Door': a marvellously blessed tradition! I am the dog of his Door[1]!"

7. Lisání (d. 940/1533–4).

Lisání of Shíráz is the last of the twenty-two Persian Shí'a poets mentioned in the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín* and deserves mention rather on account of his devotion to that faith than by reason of his poetic talent; for, although he is said to have produced more than 100,000 verses, they are little known and seldom met with[2], and, though mentioned in the *Átash-kada* and the *Haft Iqlím*, he is ignored by Riḍá-qulí Khán. Most of his life was spent at Baghdád and Tabríz, in which latter

Lisání (d. 940/1533).

[1] *I.e.* the dog of 'Alí. *Kalb-'Alí* is not uncommon as a name amongst the Shí'a, and, as we have seen, the Ṣafawí kings gloried in the title "Dogs of the Threshold of 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib." These verses are taken from the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*.

[2] There is a copy of his *Díwán* (Or. 307) in the British Museum. See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 656–7.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

town he died just before it was taken by the Ottoman Sulṭán Sulaymán. "On account of his devotion to the Twelve Imáms," says the author of the *Majális*, "Lisání would never remove from his head the twelve-gored kingly crown[1] until, when Sulṭán Sulaymán the Turk was advancing to occupy Tabríz, it happened that news of his near approach reached Lisání when he was engaged in prayer in the great Mosque of Tabríz. On hearing this news, he raised his hands in prayer, saying, 'O God, this usurper is coming to Tabríz: I cannot remove this crown from my head, nor reconcile myself to witnessing his triumph, therefore suffer me to die, and bring me to the Court of Thy Mercy!' He then bowed his head in prayer, and in that attitude surrendered his soul to the Beloved." The following quatrain is characteristic:

گر بندِ لسانی گسلد از بندش' در خاك شود وجودِ حاجتمندش'
بالله که ز مشرقِ دلش سر نزند' جز مهرِ علی و یازده فرزندش'

"If the joints of Lisání break apart, and his needy body passes into the dust,
By God, from the horizon of his heart naught will appear save the love [or sun] of 'Alí and his eleven descendants!"

His poems, in the preservation of which he seems to have been very careless, were collected after his death by his pupil Sharíf of Tabríz, but so slovenly was the compilation that, according to the *Átash-kada*, it was known as *Sahwu'l-Lisán*, or "Lapsus Linguæ."

8. Fuḍúlí (Fuẓúlí) of Baghdád (d. 970/1562–3).

Fuḍúlí is reckoned amongst the Turkish rather than the Persian poets, and is fully discussed by Gibb in vol. iii of his monumental *History of Ottoman Poetry* (ch. iv, pp. 70–107). That he became an Ottoman subject was due to the fact that Baghdád,

Fuẓúlí (d. 970/1562).

[1] Concerning this distinctive head-dress, which gave to the Persian Shí'a their name of *Qizil-básh* ("Red-heads"), see p. 48 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

where he was probably born, and where he spent nearly all his life, was taken from the Persians by the Turks in 940/1535; but, as Gibb says[1], "he composed with equal ease and elegance in Turkish, Persian, and Arabic." He is described by the same scholar[2] as "the earliest of those four great poets who stand pre-eminent in the older literature of Turkey, men who in any age and in any nation would have taken their place amongst the Immortals." That his status in the Persian Parnassus is so much lower is due rather to the greater competition and higher standard of excellence prevailing there than to any lack of skill on his part in the use of the Persian language[3]. That he was of the Shí'a faith is clear from several of his verses, and from his *Ḥadíqatu's-Su'adá*[4], a Turkish martyrology modelled on the Persian *Rawḍatu'sh-Shuhadá* of Ḥusayn Wá'iẓ-i-Káshifí.

As I have referred to Gibb's great work on Ottoman Poetry, I may here express a doubt as to his claim[5] that the kind of poem entitled *Shahr-angíz* (or "City-thriller," as he renders it) is a Turkish invention, and that "there is no similar poem in Persian literature." Sám Mírzá in his *Tuḥfa-i-Sámí* (compiled in 957/1550) mentions at least two poets, Waḥídí of Qum and Ḥarfí of Iṣfahán, who composed such poems, the former on Tabríz, the latter on Gílán, and though these were probably written later than Masíḥí's Turkish *Shahr-angíz* on Adrianople, there is nothing to suggest that they were regarded as a novelty or innovation in Persia. Ḥarfí's poem, called *Shahr-áshúb* ("City-disturber") seems to have been bitterly satirical, for the

[1] *Loc. cit.*, p. 72.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 71.

[3] He has a complete Persian *Díwán*, of which a MS. (Add. 7785) exists in the British Museum, and which has been printed at Tabríz. See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, p. 659.

[4] See Rieu's *Turkish Catalogue*, pp. 39–40.

[5] Vol. ii, p. 232.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

unhappy poet was deprived of his tongue in consequence, as Sám Mírzá relates:

شهر آشوبی جهت آنجا (یعنی گیلان) و مردم آنجا گفته و اورا با مریدی متّهم ساخته زبانش‌را بُریدند امّا این جائزه اورا از برای اشعار دیگرش میبایست نه جهتِ هجو اهلِ گیلان'

9. Waḥshí of Báfq (d. 991/1583).

Though born at Báfq, a dependency of Kirmán, Waḥshí spent most of his life at Yazd. His poetry, especially his *Farhád u Shírín* and his *ghazals*, are highly praised in the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, the *Átash-kada*, and the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*[1]. He also wrote panegyrics on Sháh Ṭahmásp and his nobles, concerning which the author of the work last-named remarks that in this branch of the poetic art none of the poets of the middle period can compare with the ancients. He did not finish the *Farhád u Shírín*, which was completed long afterwards (in 1265/1848-9) by Wiṣál. He wrote two other *mathnawí* poems, the *Khuld-i-Barín* ("Supreme Abode of Bliss") and *Názir u Manẓúr*, besides *ghazals* (odes) and *qiṭ'as* (fragments), a large selection of which are given in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* and the *Átash-kada* (pp. 111–120)[2]. The following *murabba'*, or "foursome," given in both these anthologies, is rather pretty and unusual.

Waḥshí (d. 991/1583).

دوستان شرح پریشانی من گوش کنید'
داستانِ غمِ پنهانی من گوش کنید'
قصّهٔ بی سر و سامانی من گوش کنید'
گفتگوی من و حیرانی من گوش کنید'
شرح این قصّهٔ جانسوز نهفتن تا کی'
سوختم سوختم این راز نگفتن تا کی'

[1] Vol. ii, pp. 51–4.
[2] See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 663–4.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

روزگاری من و دل ساکنِ کوئی بودیم،
ساکنِ کوی بُتِ عربده جوئی بودیم
دین و دل باخته ویرانه روئی بودیم،
بسته سلسله سلسله موئی بودیم،
کس در آن سلسله غیر از من و دل بند نبود،
یک گرفتار ازین جمله که هستند نبود،
نرگسِ غمزه زنش این همه بیمار نداشت،
سنبلِ پر شکنش هیچ گرفتار نداشت،
این همه مشتری و گرمی بازار نداشت،
یوسفی بود ولی هیچ خریدار نداشت،
اوّل آن کس که خریدار شدم من بودم،
باعثِ گرمی بازار شدم من بودم،
عشقِ من شد سببِ خوبی و رعنائی او،
داد رسوائی من شهرتِ زیبائی او،
بسکه کردم همه جا شرحِ دلآرائی او،
شهر پر گشت ز غوغای تماشائی او،
این زمان عاشقِ سر گشته فراوان دارد،
کی سر و برگ منِ بیسر و سامان دارد،
چون چنین است پی کارِ دگر باشیم به،
مرغ خوش نغمه گلزار دگر باشیم به،
عندلیبِ گلِ رخسار دگر باشیم به،
چند روزی پی دلدار دگر باشیم به،
نو گلی گو که شوم بلبلِ دستان سازش،
سازم از تازه جوانانِ چمن ممتازش،
گرچه از خاطرِ وحشی هوسِ روی تو رفت،
وز دلش آرزوی قامتِ دلجوی تو رفت،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

شده دل آزردهٔ آزرده از کوی تو رفت'
با دل پر گله از ناخوشی روی تو رفت'
حاش لله که وفای تو فراموش کنم'
سخن مصلحت آمیز کسان گوش کنم'

"O friends, hearken to the account of my distraction! Hearken to the tale of my hidden sorrow! Hearken to the story of my disordered state! Hearken to my description of my bewilderment! How long shall I hide the account of this grievous story? I burn! I burn! How long shall I refrain from telling this secret?

For a while I and my heart dwelt in a certain street: the street of a certain quarrelsome beauty. We had staked Faith and heart on one of dissolute countenance; we were fettered in the chains of one with chain-like tresses. In that chain was none bound save me and my heart: of all that exist, not one was captive then.

Her bewitching narcissus-eyes had not then all these love-sick victims; her curling hyacinthine locks held then no prisoner; she had not then so brisk a business and so many customers; she was a Joseph [in beauty] but found no purchaser. I was the first to become a purchaser; it was I who caused the briskness of her market.

My love was the cause of her beauty and comeliness; my shame gave fame to her beauty; so widely did I everywhere describe her charms that the whole city was filled with the tumult of the spectators. Now she has many distracted lovers, how should she think or care for poor distracted me?

Since it is so, it is better that we should pursue some other aim, that we should become the sweet-voiced songsters of some other rose-bower, that we should become the nightingales of some other rose-cheeked beauty, that for a few days we should follow some other charmer. Where is some fresh young rose whose eloquent nightingale I may become, and whom I may [thus] distinguish amongst the youthful beauties of the garden?

Although the fancy for thy face hath passed away from Waḥshí's mind, and the desire for thy charming figure hath departed from his heart, and one vexed in heart hath departed in vexation from thy street, and with a heart full of complaints hath departed from the displeasure of thy countenance, God forbid that I should forget thy constancy, or should listen to man's counsels of expediency!"

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

10. Maḥmúd Qárí of Yazd (d. 993/1585).
11. Muḥtasham of Káshán (d. 996/1587–8).

Maḥmúd Qárí of Yazd (d. 993/1585) and Muḥtasham of Káshán (d. 996/1587–8).

Maḥmúd Qárí of Yazd, the poet of clothes, who died two years after Vaḥshí and three years before Muḥtasham, was mentioned in the preceding volume of this work[1] in connection with the two earlier parodists 'Ubayd-i-Zákání and Busḥaq (Abú Isḥáq) of Shíráz; while the far more notable Muḥtasham has been already discussed at some length in the preceding chapter[2] in connection with the religious poetry on which his fame chiefly rests. Of the erotic verse of his early youth and of his panegyrics on Sháh Ṭahmásp copious specimens are given in the *Átash-kada*, but these are neither so distinguished nor so characteristic as his elegies (*marásiḥ*) on the martyrdom of Ḥusayn and the other Imáms, from which the extracts given in the *Maj-ma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*[3] are chiefly taken.

12. 'Urfí of Shíráz (d. 999/1590–1) *and his circle.*

'Urfí of Shíráz (d. 999/1590–1).

Though less highly appreciated in his own country than in Turkey and India, 'Urfí is probably on the whole the most famous and popular poet of his century[4]. Though born and brought up in Shíráz, his short life was chiefly spent in India, where he died in 999/1590–1 at the early age of thirty-six, some say of dysentery, others of poison. He is one of the three poets of this century (A.D. 1500–1600) discussed by Shiblí Nu'mání in his *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*[5], the other two being his

[1] *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, pp. 257 and 351–3. Maḥmúd is not mentioned in the *Átash-kada*, the *Haft Iqlím*, or the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*; no particulars of his life are known to me, and the date of his death must be regarded as uncertain.

[2] Pp. 172–7 *supra*.

[3] Vol. ii, pp. 36–38.

[4] See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, p. 667.

[5] Vol. iii, pp. 82–133.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

fellow-townsman Bábá Fighání, already mentioned[1], and Fayḍí (Fayẓí), brother of Akbar's celebrated minister Abu'l-Faḍl (Abu'l-Faẓl), who, in Shiblí's opinion, was one of the two Indian poets who wrote Persian verse which would pass as the work of a genuine Persian[2]. 'Abdu'l-Qádir Badá'úní says[3] that 'Urfí and Thaná'í were the two most popular Persian poets in India in his time, and that manuscripts of their works were to be found in every bazaar and book-shop, while Fayḍí's poems, in spite of the large sums of money which he had expended in having them beautifully copied and illuminated, were little sought after. Gibb says[4] that, after Jámí, 'Urfí and Fayḍí were the chief Persian influences on Turkish poetry until they were superseded by Ṣá'ib, and that "the novelty in this style lay, apart from the introduction of a number of fresh terms into the conventional vocabulary of poetry, in the deposition of rhetoric from the chief seat, and the enthronement of loftiness of tone and stateliness of language in its stead[5]." Ziyá (Ḍiyá) Pasha, in that portion of his metrical Introduction to the *Kharábát* which discusses the Persian poets, after praising Jámí, proceeds to speak of 'Urfí and Fayḍí as follows:

Great popularity of 'Urfí and Fayḍí in Turkey and India.

فیضی ایله عُرْفی همعناندر ‘ سر جمله‌ٔ آخر الزّماندر ‘
فیضیده بلاغت و طراوت ‘ عُرْفیده عذوبت و حلاوت ‘
فیضیده مواعظ آتشیندر ‘ عُرْفیده قصیده‌لر متینندر ‘
امّا آرانورسه اولویّت ‘ فیضیده قالور ینه فضیلت ‘
فیضی معجم ایکن سراپا ‘ تفسیرینه نقطه قونماز اصلا ‘
بولدی او یگانه‌ٔ فضیلت ‘ شاگردی یدی ایله شهادت ‘

[1] Pp. 229–230 *supra*.
[2] The other was Amír Khusraw of Dihlí.
[3] *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*, vol. iii, p. 285 (Calcutta, 1869).
[4] *Hist. of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i, pp. 5, 127, 129.
[5] *Loc. cit.* p. 129.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"Fayḍí and 'Urfí run neck-and-neck; they are the leaders of the later time.
In Fayḍí is eloquence and freshness, in 'Urfí sweetness and fluency.
In Fayḍí are fiery exhortations, while 'Urfí is strong in elegies.
But if pre-eminence he sought, excellence still remains with Fayḍí.
Fayḍí is clear throughout: no dots need be added to his commentary.
But that paragon of excellence suffered martyrdom at his pupil's hands."

Fayḍí's miserable death in 1004/1595.

I can find no evidence in support of the last statement, which, indeed, is at variance with Badá'úní's exultant description[1] of his painful and unpleasant death[2], though perhaps the swollen face and blackened lips, which his bitter enemy describes with unconcealed *Schadenfreude*, may have aroused suspicions of poison. The same fanatical writer gives a series of most uncomplimentary chronograms composed by the orthodox to commemorate the death of an arch-heretic, such as:

فیضی بیدین چو مُرْد سالِ وفاتش فصیح،
گفت سگی از جهان رفته بحالِ قبیح،

"When infidel Fayḍí died, Faṣíḥ said as the date of his death, 'A dog departed from the world in a foul fashion.'"

The simplest of them all are "Fayḍí was a heretic" (بود فیضی ملحدی), "he died like a dog-worshipper" (چه سگ پرستی مرد), and "the rule of heresy broke" (قاعدهٔ الحاد شکست), all of which yield the required date A.H. 1004 (A.D. 1595). Badá'úní also says that, with a view to restoring his shattered religious reputation, he composed a commentary on the *Qur'án* consisting entirely of undotted letters, adding unkindly that he was drunk and in a state of legal uncleanness when he wrote it. The author of the *Majma'u'l-*

[1] *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*, vol. iii, pp. 299–310, especially p. 300.

[2] This took place on 10 Ṣafar, 1004 (October 15, 1595). See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, p. 450, where the chief sources are fully enumerated.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Fuṣaḥá[1] in alluding to this book (which he only knew by repute) says that the author "troubled himself to no purpose" (کُلفتی بیحاصل کشیده), and has no word of praise for his poems, on which the author of the *Átash-kada* has the tepid encomium that "they are not bad." The fullest and most appreciative account of him which I have met with is that given by Shiblí Nu'mání in his *Shi'ru'l-'Ájam*[2]. He composed a *Khamsa* ("Quintet") in imitation of Nizámí, the titles of these five poems being *Markaz-i-Adwár*, *Sulaymán u Bilqís*, *Nal u Daman* (the most celebrated), *Haft Kishwar*, and *Akbar-náma*, but some of them remained incomplete. He also wrote many *qaṣídas* and *ghazals*, and produced several translations from the Sanskrit. None of his verses quoted by Shiblí appear to me so affecting as the following on the death of his child:

ای روشنیٔ دیدهٔ روشن چگونهٔ،
من بی تو تیرهٔ روز تو بی من چگونهٔ،
ماتم سراست خانهٔ من در فراقِ تو،
تو زیرِ خاك ساخته مسکن چگونهٔ،
بر خار و خس که بستر و بالین خوابِ تست،
ای یاسمین عذارِ سمن‌تن چگونهٔ،

Fayḍí's verses on the death of his child.

"O brightness of my bright eyes, how art thou? Without thee my days are dark; without me how art thou?
My house is a house of mourning in thine absence; thou hast made thine abode beneath the dust: how art thou?
The couch and pillow of thy sleep is on thorns and brambles: O thou whose cheeks and body were as jasmine, how art thou?"

[1] Vol. ii, p. 26. This commentary was entitled, according to Shiblí Nu'mání (*loc. cit.*, p. 65), *Sawáṭi'u'l-Ilhám.*

[2] Vol. iii, pp. 31–81.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Faydí was a man of varied learning and a great lover of books. His library contained four thousand six hundred choice manuscripts, mostly autographs or copied during the authors' lifetimes[1]. He was generous and hospitable, and amongst those who enjoyed his hospitality was 'Urfí of Shíráz, to whom we now turn.

Faydí's library.

'Urfí, whose proper name was Jamálu'd-Dín Muḥammad and whose father was named Badru'd-Dín, was born and educated at Shíráz, but at an early age migrated to India, and, as already mentioned, attached himself to Faydí, with whom, however, he presently quarrelled. Badá'úní says[2] that one day he called on Faydí and found him caressing a puppy, whereupon he enquired what the name of "the young master" (*makhdúm-záda*) might be. "'Urfí," replied Faydí, to which 'Urfí promptly replied, "*Mubárak báshad!*" which means "May it be fortunate!" but may be taken as alluding to Faydí's father Shaykh Mubárak and as meaning, "It should be Mubárak!"

Account of 'Urfí.

'Urfí next won the favour of the Ḥakím Abu'l-Fatḥ of Gílán[3], by whom he was introduced to that great nobleman and patron of letters 'Abdu'r-Raḥím, who succeeded to the title of Khán-khánán borne by his father Bayram Khán on the assassination of the latter in 968/1560–1. In due course he was presented to the Emperor Akbar himself, whom he accompanied on his march to Cashmere in 997/1588–9.

In spite of his opportunities and undoubted talents, 'Urfí's intolerable conceit and arrogance prevented him from being popular, and made him many enemies. Riḍá-qulí Khán accords him but a brief notice[4], and observes that "the style of his poems is not admired by the people of this age." Criticism

Unamiable character of 'Urfí.

1 *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, iii, p. 50, and *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*, iii, p. 305.
2 *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*, iii, p. 285.
3 *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*, iii, p. 167. He died in 997/1588–9.
4 *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, vol. ii, pp. 24–5.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and disparagement are, indeed, courted by a poet who could write[1]:

نازشِ سعدی بمُشْتِ خاك شیراز از چه بود'
گر نمی دانست باشد مولد و مأوای من'

"Wherefore did Sa'dí glory in a handful of the earth of Shíráz
If he did not know that it would be my birthplace and abode?"

Nor is this an isolated example of his conceit, for in like fashion he vaunts his superiority to Anwarí, Abu'l-Faraj, Kháqání, and other great Persian poets, and this unamiable practice may have conduced to his unpopularity amongst his compatriots, who do not readily tolerate such disparagement of the national heroes. In Turkey, on the other hand, he had, as we have seen, a great influence and reputation, and likewise in India, so that Shiblí devotes to him fifty-two pages (pp. 82–133) of his *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, rather more than he devotes to Faydí, and much more than he gives to any other of the seven poets he mentions in the third volume of his work. But even Shiblí admits that his arrogance made him generally unpopular, a fact of which he was fully aware, as appears from the following poem[2], wherein he complains of the hypocritical sympathy of the so-called "friends" who came to visit him when he was confined to bed by a severe illness:

تـن اوفتاد درین حـال و دوستان فصیح'
بـدور بالش و بستر ستاده چون منبر'
یکی بریش کشد دست و کج کند گردن'
که روزگار وفا با که کرد جانِ پدر'
بجاه و مـالِ فرومایـه دل نـبایـد بـسـت'
کجاست دولتِ جمشید و نامِ اسکندر'

[1] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, iii, p. 88.
[2] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, iii, pp. 92–3.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

یکی بنرمی آواز و گفتگوی حزین،
کند شروع و کشد آستین بدیدهٔ تر،
که جانِ من همه‌را این رهست و باید رفت،
تمام راه روانیم و دهر راکب بر،
یکی بچرب زبانی سخن طراز شود،
که ای وفاتِ تو تاریخ انقلابِ خبر،
فراهم آی و پریشان مدار دل زنهار،
که نظم و نثرِ تو من جمع میکنم یکسر،
پس از نوشتن و تصحیح میکنم انشا،
بمدّعای تو دیباچهٔ چو درج گهر،
چنانچه هستی فهرستِ دانش و فرهنگ،
چنانچه هستی مجموعهٔ صفات و هنر،
بنظم و نثر در آویزم و فرو ریزم،
اگرچه حصرِ کمالِ تو نیست حدِّ بشر،
خدای عزّ و جلّ صحّتم دهد ببینی،
که این منافقکان‌را چه آورم بر سر،

'Urfí on Job's comforters.

"My body hath fallen into this state, and my eloquent friends stand like pulpits round my bed and pillow.

One draws his hand through his beard and cocks his neck, saying,
'O life of thy father! To whom is fortune constant?
One should not set one's heart on ignoble rank and wealth: where is the Empire of Jamshíd and the name of Alexander?'

Another, with soft voice and sad speech, begins, drawing his sleeve across his moist eyes:
'O my life! All have this road by which they must depart: we are all travellers on the road, and time bears forward the riders.'

Another, adorning his speech with smooth words, says, 'O thou whose death is the date of the revolution of news (*inqilábi-khabar*)![1]

[1] I think the words انقلاب خبر must be taken as a chronogram, giving the date 986/1578–9, in which case this cannot, as Shiblí suggests (*loc. cit.*, p. 92), have been 'Urfí's last illness, since he did not die until 999/1590–1.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Collect thyself, and beware, let not thy heart be troubled, for I will with single purpose collect thy verse and prose.
After copying and correcting it, I will compose an introduction like a casket of pearls in support of thy claims;
An index of learning and culture such as thou art, a compendium of good qualities and talents such as thou art,
I will pour forth, applying myself both to verse and prose, although it is not within the power of man to enumerate thy perfections!'

'May God, mighty and glorious, give me health again, and thou shalt see what wrath I will pour on the heads of these miserable hypocrites!'[1]"

Space does not allow us to follow in detail Shiblí's interesting and exhaustive study of this poet, to whose verse he assigns six salient merits, such as "forceful diction" (زورِ کلام), new and original combinations of words, fine metaphors and comparisons, and continuity or congruity of topics (مسلسل مضامین). Except for a little-known prose treatise on Ṣúfíism entitled *Nafsiyya* all his work was in verse, and included, according to Shiblí, two *mathnawí* poems in imitation of Niẓámí's *Makhzanu'l-Asrár* and *Khusraw wa Shírín*, and a *Díwán*, compiled in 996/1588, only three years before his death, containing 26 *qaṣídas*, 270 *ghazals*, and 700 fragments and quatrains. The following chronogram gives the date of its compilation[2]:

این طرفه نکاتِ سِحری و اعجازی'
چون گشت مکمّل برقم پردازی'
مجموعه طرازِ قدس تاریخش یافت'
اوّل دیوان عرفی شیرازی'

One of his most famous *qaṣídas*, given in the *Kharábát* (vol. i, pp. 169–174), is in praise of 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib, and contains 181 verses. It begins:

[1] This final verse is, of course, spoken by the poet himself.
[2] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 95.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

جهان بگشتم و دردا که هیچ شهر و دیار،
ندیده‌ام که فروشند بخت در بازار،

"I have wandered through the world, but alas! no city or country have I seen where they sell good fortune in the market!"

'Urfí is not, however, included amongst the Persian Shí'a poets to whom notices are consecrated in the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín*.

Mr Vincent Smith's harsh judgment.

Concerning the numerous Persians—theologians, scholars, philosophers and poets—attracted to Akbar's brilliant court, the third volume of Badá'úní's *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh* is a mine of information, but space will not permit us as a rule to go beyond the frontiers of the Persian Empire. The late Mr Vincent Smith in his otherwise admirable monograph on Akbar[1] is perhaps unduly hard on these poets when he says (pp. 415–6):

"The versifiers, or so-called poets, were extremely numerous. Abu'l-Faẓl tells us that although Akbar did not care for them, 'thousands of poets are continually at court, and many among them have completed a *díwán* (collection of artificial odes), or have written a *mathnawí* (composition in rhymed couplets).' The author then proceeds to enumerate and criticize 'the best among them,' numbering 59, who had been presented at court. He further names 15 others who had not been presented but had sent encomiums to His Majesty from various places in Persia[2]. Abu'l-Faẓl gives many extracts from the writings of the select 59, which I have read in their English dress, without finding a single sentiment worth quoting; although the extracts include passages from the works of his brother Fayẓí (Fayḍí), the 'king of poets,' which Abu'l-Faẓl considered to enshrine 'gems of thought.'"

Valuable data furnished by Badá'úní.

The third volume of Badá'úní's *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*, which is entirely devoted to the biographies of the poets and men of learning who adorned Akbar's court, contains notices of 38 *Shaykhs* (religious leaders), 69 scholars, 15 philosophers and phy-

[1] *Akbar the Great Mogul*, 1542–1605 (Oxford, 1917).

[2] "*Á'ín(-i-Akbarí*, translated by H. Blochmann and H. S. Jarrett, Calcutta, 1873–1894 in 3 volumes), vol. i, pp. 548, 611."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

sicians, and no fewer than 167 poets, most of whom, however, though they wrote in Persian and were in many cases Persians by birth, are unknown even by name in Persia.

Amongst the most eminent names belonging, in part at any rate, to the century which we here conclude, are those of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín 'Ámilí, Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (Fayż) of Káshán, Mír Dámád, and Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i-Findariskí, who, however, will be more suitably considered amongst the theologians or philosophers.

II. Between A.D. 1600 and 1700 (A.H. 1008–1111).

Four of the seven poets discussed at length by Shiblí in the third volume of his *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam* fall within the period indicated above. These are Naẓírí (d. 1021/1612–13), Ṭálib-i-Ámulí (d. 1036/1626–7), Abú Ṭálib Kalím (d. 1061/1651), and Ṣá'ib (d. 1088/1677–8)[1]. Riḍá-qulí Khán in the enumeration of eminent contemporaries of the Ṣafawí kings with which he concludes the supplementary eighth volume written by him in continuation of Mírkhwánd's *Rawḍatu's-Ṣafá* mentions not one of these, but, in the period now under consideration, names only Ẓuhúrí (d. 1024/1615) and Shifá'í (d. 1037/1627). Another poet ignored by both these writers but highly esteemed in Turkey, where, according to Gibb[2], "he continued for more than half a century to be the guiding star for the majority of Ottoman poets," being "deservedly famous for his marvellous ingenuity and fertility in the invention of fresh and picturesque images and similes," is Shawkat (or Shevket, according to the Turkish pronunciation) of Bukhárá (d. 1107/1695–6). To these seven we may add, besides four or five[3] who, though

[1] Other dates, *e.g.* 1080/1669–70, are also given. See Rieu, *op. cit.*, p. 693.

[2] *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. i, p. 130. See also vol. iv, p. 95, of the same.

[3] Namely, Mír Dámád, Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín, Abu'l-Qásim Findariskí, Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ and 'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí, called *Fayyáḍ*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

they wrote occasional verse, were primarily philosophers, and will be discussed in connection with that class, the following six, who were, perhaps, a trifle more distinguished than their innumerable competitors: Saḥábí of Astarábád (d. 1010/1601–2), Zulálí of Khwánsár (d. about 1024/1615), Jalál Asír (d. 1049/1639–40), Qudsí of Mashhad (d. 1056/1646–7), Salím of Ṭihrán (d. 1057/1647–8), and Amání of Mázandarán (d. 1061/1651). Although I think that Rieu[1] goes too far when he describes Ṣá'ib as "by common consent the creator of a new style of poetry, and the greatest of modern Persian poets," he is without doubt the greatest of those who flourished in the seventeenth century of our era, and, I think, the only one deserving a detailed notice in this volume, notwithstanding Riḍá-qulí Khán's remark that "he had a strange style in the poetic art which is not now admired[2]."

Here follows a list of these seventeen poets, arranged chronologically according to the dates of their deaths, with brief references to the authorities who may be consulted for further particulars concerning them. These are, besides Rieu's incomparable Persian Catalogue, Shiblí's *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii (*Sh.*), the *Átash-kada* (*A. K.*), the *Haft Iqlím* (*H. I.*, available in manuscript only), the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá* (*R. Ṣ.*), the *Majḍatu'l-Jannát* (*R. J.*), the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (*M. F.*), and the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* (*R. 'Á.*).

(1) **Saḥábí of Astarábád** (d. 1010/1601–2). Rieu, p. 672; *A. K.*, pp. 141–2, and *H. I.*, *s.v.* Astarábád in both; *M. F.*, ii, p. 21; *R. 'Á.*, pp. 85–6. He spent forty years of his life in tending the holy shrine of Najaf, and composed, besides *ghazals*, many quatrains, of which 6000 are said to be extant.

Saḥábí of Astarábád (d. 1010/1601–2).

1 *Persian Catalogue*, p. 693.

2 *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, vol. ii, p. 24, باری در طریق شاعری طرزی غریب داشته که اکنون پسندیده نیست'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(2) **Naẓírí of Níshápúr** (d. 1021/1612–3). Rieu, pp. 817–8; *Sh.* iii, pp. 134–64; *A. K.*, pp. 131–3; *H. I.*, *s.v.* Níshápúr (a long notice); *M. F.*, ii, pp. 48–9; *R. 'Á.*, pp. 236–7. The last thirty years of his life were spent in India, chiefly at Aḥmadábád in Gujerát, where he died. He was one of the many poets who benefited by the bounty of 'Abdu'r-Raḥím Khán-khánán, who provided him with money to perform the pilgrimage to Mecca in 1002/1593–4, in response to a *qaṣída* beginning:

Naẓírí of Níshápúr (d. 1021/1612).

ز هنر بخود نگنجم چو بخُم مَیِ مُغانی'
بدَرَد لباس بر تن چو بجوشدم معانی'
همه عیشِ این جهانی بعنایتِ تو دیدم'
چه عجب اگر بیابم ز تو زادِ آنجهانی'

"Through genius I cannot contain myself, like the Magian wine in the jar; the very garments are rent on my body when my ideas ferment.
Through thy beneficence I experienced all the pleasure of this world: what wonder if through thee [also] I should obtain provision for the other world?"

In matters of religion he was something of a fanatic, and wrote verses attacking "the heretic" Abu'l-Faḍl. He also wrote verses in praise of tobacco, some of which are quoted by Shiblí (p. 134).

(3) **Zulálí of Khwánsár** (d. 1024/1615). Rieu, pp. 677–8; *H. I.*, *s.v.* Khwánsár (a long notice). He was the panegyrist of Mír Dáinád, and composed seven *mathnawís*, of which that on Maḥmúd and Ayáz (begun in 1001/1592–3, and concluded in 1024/1615), shortly before his death, is the most popular. Two others mentioned by Rieu are "the Wine-Tavern" (*Maykhána*), and "the Mote and the Sun" (*Dharra u Khurshíd*).

Zulálí of Khwánsár (d. *circ.* 1024/1615).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(4) **Ẓuhúrí of Turshíz** (d. 1024/1615, murdered in an affray in the Deccan together with his fellow-poet and father-in-law Malik of Qum). Rieu, pp. 678–9; *A. K.*, pp. 68–70; *R. Ṣ.*, at end of vol. viii. He is, as Rieu observes, little known in Persia, though much admired in India, especially as a writer of extremely florid prose. The author of the *A. K.* says that in his opinion this poet's *Sáqí-náma* ("Book of the Cup-bearer") has no great beauty, in spite of the fame which it enjoys.

Ẓuhúrí of Turshíz (d. 1024/1615).

(5) **Bahá'u'd-Dín 'Ámilí, commonly called Shaykh-i-Bahá'í** (d. 1030/1620–1), was primarily a theologian, and to some extent a philosopher and mathematician, but he wrote at least two short *mathnawí* poems, entitled respectively *Nán u Ḥalwá* ("Bread and Sweetmeats") and *Shír u Shakkar* ("Milk and Sugar"). Extracts from both are given in the *M. F.* (vol. ii, pp. 8–10), besides a few *ghazals* and quatrains, and also in the *R. 'A.*, pp. 45–9. Apart from his mathematical and astronomical treatises, his best-known prose work is the *Kashkúl* (or "Beggar's Bowl"), which has been printed at Buláq and lithographed in Persia. This work, though written in Arabic, contains many Persian poetical citations, which, however, are omitted in the Egyptian edition. The famous *mujtahid* Mullá Muḥammad Taqí-i-Majlisí (d. 1070/1659–1660) was one of the most eminent of his disciples.

Shaykh Bahá'u-'d-Dín 'Amilí (d. 1030/1620–1).

(6) **Ṭálib-i-Ámulí** (d. 1036/1626–7). Rieu, p. 679; *Sh.* iii, pp. 165–188; *A. K.*, pp. 155–6, where it is said that "he had a peculiar style in verse which is not sought after by eloquent poets." In India, whither he emigrated in early life, he was so highly appreciated that Jahángír made him his poet-laureate (*Maliku'sh-Shu'ará*) in 1028/1619. He was far from modest, for he

Ṭálib of Ámul (d. 1036/1626–7).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

boasts that before he reached his twentieth year he had mastered seven sciences[1]:

پا بر دومین پایهٔ اوج عشراتم،
و اینک عددِ فنم از آلاف زیادست،
بر هندسه و منطقی و هئیت و حکمت،
دستی است مرا کش یدِ بیضا ز عبادست،
وین جمله چو طی شد نمکین علمِ حقیقت،
کاستادِ علومست برین جمله مزادست،
در سلسلهٔ وصفِ خط این بس که ز کلکم،
هر نقطه سویدای دلِ اهلِ سوادست،
پوشم نسبِ شعر چو دانم که تو دانی،
کاین پایه مرا ثامنِ این سبع شدادست،

Ṭálib's boasted accomplishments.

"My foot is on the second step of the zenith of the decades, and behold the number of my accomplishments exceeds the thousands!

In mathematics, logic, astronomy and philosophy I enjoy a proficiency which is conspicuous[2] amongst mankind.

When all these are traversed the savoury knowledge of the Truth[3], which is the Master of the Sciences, is added to the sum total.

In the concatenated description of my writing this is enough, that every dot from my pen is the heart's core of men of letters[4].

I put on the attribute of poetry, for I know that thou knowest that this step is to me the eighth of these 'seven severe ones.'[5]"

In the following quatrain, also cited by Shiblí (p. 168), he alludes to his proposed journey to India and bids himself

[1] The verses are given by Shiblí, *op. cit.*, p. 166.

[2] Literally "which has the White Hand," in allusion to one of the miracles of Moses.

[3] That is, Ṣúfíism, as explained by Shiblí.

[4] The word-play between *suwaydá* and *sawdá* cannot be reproduced in translation.

[5] This expression occurs in *Qur'án* xii, 48, where it denotes the "seven lean years."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"leave his black (*i.e.* bad) luck in Persia, because no one would take a Hindú as a present to India":

طالب گلِ این چمن بستان بگذار،
بگذار که می شوی پریشان بگذار،
هندو نبرد تحفه کسی جانب هند،
بختِ سیهِ خویش به ایران بگذار،

Ṭálib's affection for his sister.

He had an elder sister to whom he was deeply attached and after a long separation she came from Persia to Ágra to see him. He thereupon sought leave of absence from the Emperor Jahángír in the following verses[1]:

صاحبا ذرّه پرورا عرضی، بزبانِ سخن‌ورست مرا،
پیر همشیره ایست غم خوارم، که باو مهرِ مادرست مرا،
چارده سال بلکه بیش گذشت، کز نظر دور منظرست مرا،
دور گشتم ز خدمتش بعراق، وین گنه جُرْم منکرست مرا،
او نیاورد تابِ دوری من، که بمادر برابرست مرا،
آمد اینک بآگره وز شوقش، دل طپان چون کبوترست مرا،
می کند دل بسوی او آهنگ، چه کنم شوق رهبرست مرا،
گر شود رخصتِ زیارتِ او، به جهانی برابرست مرا،

"O Master, Patron of the humble[2]! I have a representation [to make] in eloquent language.
I have an old and sympathetic sister, who entertains for me a mother's love.
Fourteen years or more have passed since my eyes were parted from the sight of her face.
I was removed from her service in 'Iráq, and this sin is a grievous fault of mine.

[1] Shiblí, *op. cit.*, pp. 179–180.

[2] *Dharra* means a mote, then metaphorically any very small thing or person, so that *dharra-parwar* is equivalent to the common Indian *gharíb-parwar*, "protector of the poor."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

She could not bear to remain far from me, for she is as a mother to me.
Lo, she hath come to Ágra, and in longing for her my heart flutters like a pigeon.
My heart craves after her: what can I do? Yearning impels me on the road.
If leave should be granted me to visit her, it would be worth a world to me."

Of love-poems there are only too many in Persian, but poems such as this, testifying to deep and sincere family affection, are rare enough to make them worthy of record.

Shifá'í (d. 1037/1627).

(7) **Shifá'í** (d. 1037/1627). There exists in the British Museum (**Or. 1372**, f. 7ª) a portrait of this poet, as well as one of his satires, entitled *Sízdah-band*[1] (**Add. 12,560**, ff. 134–140): see Rieu, pp. 786 and 822. I cannot find in my manuscript of the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, either amongst the poets or the physicians of the court of Sháh 'Abbás, the notice of him to which Rieu refers, but there is a long account of him in *M. F.* (vol. ii, pp. 21–23) and in the *R. 'A.* of the same author (pp. 213–218), as well as in *A. K.* (pp. 168–9). His proper name was Ḥakím (Doctor) Sharafu'd-Dín Ḥasan, and he was court-physician and boon companion to Sháh 'Abbás the Great. Riḍá-qulí Khán says that "his medicine eclipsed his scholarship, as his poetry eclipsed his medicine":

فضلِ حکیمرا طبابت و طبابتِ اورا شاعری محجوب داشته

Besides satires and odes he composed a *mathnawí* poem entitled *Namakdán-i-Ḥaqíqat* in imitation of Saná'í's *Ḥadíqatu'l-Ḥaqíqat*.

Mír Báqir-i-Dámád (d. 1040/1630–1).

(8) **Mír Muḥammad Báqir-i-Dámád of Astarábád** (d. 1040/1630–1). The title *Dámád* ("Son-in-law") really applies to his father, who was the son-in-law of the celebrated *mujtahid* Shaykh 'Alí ibn 'Abdu'l-'Ál al-'Ámilí. Mír Dámád, who wrote

[1] So called, I suppose, because it contains 13 strophes.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

SHIFÁ'Í, POET AND PHYSICIAN

1920 . 9.17 –0298 [2] (Brit. Mus.)

To face p. 256

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

verse under the pen-name of *Ishráq*, was more notable as a theologian and philosopher than as a poet. See Rieu, p. 835; *M. F.*, ii, p. 7; *R. 'Á.*, pp. 166–7; *Á. K.*, p. 159. There are long notices of him in the *Rawḍátu'l-jannát* (pp. 114–116), and in the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, written in 1025/1616, while he was still living. He is there described as skilled in most of the sciences, especially philosophy, philology, mathematics, medicine, jurisprudence, exegesis and tradition, and about a dozen of his prose works are mentioned. He was one of the teachers of the great philosopher Mullá Ṣadrá of Shíráz.

(9) **Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i-Findariskí** (d. about 1050/1640–1) was also more notable as a philosopher than as a poet, but is mentioned in *M. F.*, vol. ii, pp. 6–7; *R. 'Á.*, pp. 165–6; *A. K.*, pp. 143–4; and Rieu, pp 815–816. One poem of his, written in imitation of Násir-i-Khusraw, is cited in all the *tadhkiras*, and is therefore, presumably, his best known if not his best production. It begins:

Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i-Findariskí (d. 1050/1640).

چرخ با این اخترانِ نغزو خوش زیباستی،
صورتی در زیر دارد هرچه بر بالاستی،
صورتِ زیرین اگر با نردبانِ معرفت،
بر رود بالا همان با اصلِ خود یکتاستی،
این سخن‌را در نیابد هیچ فهمِ ظاهری،
گر ابو نصرستی و گر بو علی سیناستی،

"The heaven with these fair and pleasant stars should be beautiful; it hath an aspect beneath, whatever there may be above.
If this lower aspect should ascend by the ladder of knowledge, it would indeed be at one with its original.
No exoteric understanding can comprehend this speech, though it be Abú Naṣr [al-Fárábí] or Abú 'Alí [ibn] Síná (Avicenna)."

Abu'l-Qásim was extraordinarily careless of appearances, dressing like a *darwísh*, avoiding the society of the rich

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

and the respectable, and associating with disreputable vagabonds. One day Sháh 'Abbás, intending to rebuke him for keeping such low company, said to him, "I hear that certain students cultivate the society of vagabonds and look on at their degrading diversions." "I move constantly in those circles," replied Mír Abu'l-Qásim, "but I have never seen any of the students there." He made a journey to India, and there, according to the *Dabistán*[1], came under the influence of certain disciples of Ádhar Kaywán and imbibed Zoroastrian and Hindú or Buddhist ideas which led him to declare that he would never perform the pilgrimage to Mecca, since it would involve his taking the life of an innocent animal. Though his attainments are rated high by Riḍá-qulí Khán, very meagre details are given concerning his life; perhaps because, while more a philosopher than a poet, and more a *darwísh* than a philosopher, he does not exactly fall into any one of these three classes, and is consequently apt to be omitted from the special biographies of each.

Among the better-known minor poets of this period are Jalál Asír (d. 1049/1639–40), Qudsí (d. 1056/1646–7), Salím of Ṭihrán (d. 1057/1647–8), Abú Ṭálib Kalím and Amání of Mázandarán (both died in 1061/1651), Muḥammad Ṭáhir Waḥíd (d. about 1120/1708–9), and Shawkat of Bukhárá (d. 1107/1695–6). Besides Ṣá'ib (d. 1088/1677–8), the greatest of them all, only the fourth, the sixth and the last of these demand any separate notice.

Abú Ṭálib Kalím (d. 1061/1651).

(10) Abú Ṭálib Kalím (d. 1061/1651) was born at Hamadán, but, until he went to India, lived chiefly at Káshán (whence he is often described as "Káshání") and Shíráz. Riḍá-qulí Khán (*M. F.*, ii, p. 28) gives a very meagre notice of him, but Shiblí (*Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, iii, pp. 205–230) discusses him at some length.

[1] Shea and Troyer's translation, vol. i, pp. 140–1.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

About 1028/1619 he paid a visit to his native country, but after remaining there for about two years, he again returned to India, where he became poet-laureate to Sháh Jahán. He accompanied that monarch to Cashmere and was so charmed with that country that he remained there until his death. He was a man of genial disposition, free from jealousy, and consequently popular with his fellow-poets, of whom Sá'ib and Mír Ma'ṣúm were his special friends, so that Ṣá'ib says:

بغیرِ صائب و معصومِ نکته سنج و کلیم،
دگر که ز اهلِ سخن مهربانِ یکدگرند،

"Except Ṣá'ib, the epigrammatic Ma'ṣúm, and Kalím, who of all the poets are kind to one another?"

When the poet Malik of Qum died, Abú Ṭálib composed the following verses giving the date of his death:

مَلکِ آن پادشاهِ مُلْکِ معنی، که نامش سکّهٔ نقدِ سخن بود،
چنان آفاق گیر از مُلْکِ معنی، که حدِّ ملکش از قُم تا دکن بود،
بجُستم مالِ تاریخش ز ایّام، بگفتا او سرِ اهل سخن بود،

"Malik, that king of the realm of ideas, whose name is stamped on the coin[1] of poetry,
So enlarged the horizons of this realm of ideas that the frontiers of his domains extended from Qum to the Deccan.
I sought for the date of the year [of his death] from the days: they said 'He was the chief of the Masters of Speech'" (*ú Sar-i-ahl-i-sukhun búd* = 1025/1616)[2].

Dislike of most of the Persian poets for India.

Most of the Persian poets who went to India to seek a fortune, or at least a livelihood, had, according to Shiblí[3], nothing but evil to say of the country, but Kalím speaks of it with appreciation[3]:

[1] *Malik* is, of course, the Arabic equivalent of *Pádisháh*, "king," and one of the two distinctive symbols of kingship is the imposition of the royal name on the current coin of the realm.

[2] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, iii, p. 209.

[3] He also learned more of the vernacular than most of his countrymen. See a poem full of Hindí words cited by Shiblí (*op. cit.*, p. 211).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

توان بهشتِ دوم گفتنش باین معنی'
که هرکه رفت ازین بوستان پشیمان شد'

"One can call it the second Paradise, in this sense, that whoever quits this garden departs with regret."

On one occasion the Sulṭán of Turkey wrote a letter to the Emperor Sháh Jahán reproaching him with arrogance in calling himself by this title, which means "King of the World," when he was in reality only king of India. Kalím justified his patron in the following verse:

هند و جهان ز روی عدد هر دو چون یکیست'
شه‌را خطابِ شاه جهانی مبرهن است'

"Since both Hind (India) and Jahán (world) are numerically identical[1], the right of the king to be called 'King of the World' [and not merely 'King of India'] is demonstrated."

Shiblí discusses Kalím's merits very fully, and cites many of his verses to illustrate them. He includes amongst them especially novelty of topics (مضمون آفرینی), original conceits (خیال بندی), and aptness of illustration (مثالیّه). In this last respect, illustrated by the following amongst other verses, Kalím resembles the more famous Ṣá'ib:

روزگار اندر کمین بختِ ماست' دزد دایم در پی خوابیده است'

"Fate sets an ambuscade against our luck: the thief always pursues the sleeper[2]."

دل گمان دارد که پوشیده است رازِ عشق‌را'
شمع‌را فانوس پندارد که پنهان کرده است'

"The heart imagines that it has hidden the secret of love: the lantern imagines that it has hidden the candle."

[1] Both words yield the numerical equivalent 59.

[2] Luck is called *bídár* ("awake") when it is good, and *khwábída* ("asleep") when it is bad.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

از خاك بر كرفته دوران چو نی سوار،
دایم پیاده رفت اگرچه سوار شد،

"He who has been raised up from the dust by fortune, like the rider of the hobby-horse, always goes on foot, although he is mounted."

از هنر حالِ خرابم نشد اصلاح پذیر،
همچو ویرانه که از گنجِ خود آباد نشد،

"My desolate state is not mended by my virtues, just like the ruin, which does not prosper through its treasure[1]."

سفله از قربِ بزرگان نکند کسبِ شرف،
رشته پُر قیمت از آمیزش گوهر نشود،

"The mean man does not acquire nobility by proximity to the great:
The thread does not become precious through its connection with the pearls."

دستِ هر کس‌را بسانِ سبحه بوسیدم چه سود،
هیچ کس نکشود آخر عقدهٔ کارِ مرا،

"What profits it that I, like the rosary, kissed the hands of all?
After all, no one loosed the knots of my affair."

با من آمیزشِ او الفتِ موجست و کنار،
دمبدم با من و پیوسته گریزان از من،

"Her converse with me is as the association of the wave and the shore,
Ever with me, yet ever fleeing from me."

چو هست قدرت دست و دل توانگر نیست،
صدف کشاده کف است آن زمان که گوهر نیست،

"Where there is power, the hand and heart are not able [to use it]:
The oyster-shell opens its palm when there is no pearl therein."

(This last verse is very similar to one by Ṣá'ib which runs:

شگوفه با ثمر هرگز نگردد جمع در یك جا،
مُحالست آنکه باهم نعمت و دندان شود پیدا،

"Flowers and fruit are never found together in one place: it is impossible that teeth and delicacies should exist simultaneously.")

[1] Treasures are popularly supposed to be found in ruins.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

واصل ز حرفِ چون و چرا بسته است لب'
چون ره تمام گشت جرس بی زبان شود'

' He who has reached [the goal] shuts his lips on 'Why?' and 'Wherefore?'
When the journey is finished the [camel-]bell becomes tongueless."

گر بقسمت قانعی بیش و کمِ دنیا یکیست'
تشنه چون یك جرعه خواهد کوزه و دریا یکیست'

"If thou art satisfied with thy portion, the more or less of the world is the same:
When the thirsty man requires but one draught, the pitcher and the ocean are alike."

ما ز آغاز و ز انجامِ جهان بیخبریم'
اوّل و آخرِ این کُهنه کتاب افتاده است

"We are without knowledge of the beginning and end of the world: the first and last [pages] of this ancient book have fallen out."

زود رفت آنکه ز اسرارِ جهان آگه شد'
از دبستان برود هرکه سبق روشن کرد'

"He who becomes acquainted with the mysteries of the world soon departs:
Whoever does his work brilliantly leaves the school."

The following ode, cited by Shiblí[1], is typical of Kalím, and with it we may conclude this brief notice:

پیری رسید و مستی طبع جوان گذشت'
ضعف تن از تحمُّل رطل گران گذشت'
وضع زمانه قابلِ دیدن دو باره نیست'
رو پس نکرد هرکه ازین خاکدان گذشت
از دست بُرد حسنِ تو بر لشکرِ بهار'
یك نیزه خونِ گل ز سرِ ارغوان گذشت'

[1] *Shu'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 229.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

طبعی بهم رسان که بسازی بعالمی،
با همّتی که از سرِ عالم توان گذشت،
در کیشِ ما تجرّدِ عنقا تمام نیست،
در فکرِ نام ماند اگر از نشان گذشت،
بی دیده راه اگر نتوان رفت پس چرا،
چشم از جهان چو بستی ازو می توان گذشت،
بدنامیِ حیات دو روزی نبود بیش،
آن هم کلیم با تو بگویم چسان گذشت،
یك روز صرفِ بستن دل شد باین و آن،
روزی دگر بکندنِ دل زین و آن گذشت،

"Old age hath come, and the exuberance of the youthful temperament hath departed;
The weakness of the body can no longer support the heavy [wine-] cup.
The way of the world is not worth seeing a second time:
Whoever passes from this dust-heap looks not back.
Through the triumph of thy beauty over the army of Spring
The blood of the roses hath risen a fathom above the top of the Judas-tree.
Acquire such a disposition that thou canst get on with the whole world,
Or such magnanimity that thou canst dispense with the world.
According to our creed the detachment of the *'Anqá* is not complete,
For, though it retains no sign, it continues to think of name[1].
If one cannot travel the road without sight, then how
Canst thou forsake the world when thou hast closed thine eyes to it?
The ill repute of Life endureth no more than two days:
O Kalím, I will tell thee how these too passed:
One day was spent in attaching the heart to this and that,
And another day in detaching it from this and that."

[1] The mythical bird called in Arabic *'anqá* and in Persian *símurgh* is often spoken of as "having name but not substance" (*mawjúdu'l-ism, mafqúdu'l-jism*).

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

(11) **Muḥammad Ṭáhir Waḥíd of Qazwín** (d. 1120/1708–9)[1] was an industrious rather than a great poet: he is said by Riḍá-qulí Khán[2] to have left a *Díwán* containing 90,000 verses, which, however, were for the most part "tasteless" (*maláḥatí na-dásht*), and of which only six are quoted as "the best of his poetry," amongst them the following quatrain testifying to his Shí'a proclivities:

Ṭáhir Waḥíd of Qazwín (d. 1120/1708-9).

از مهرِ علی طینتِ هر کس که سرشت'
هر چند بود همیشه در دیر و کنشت'
در دوزخ اگر در آورندش بمثل'
جا گرم نکرده میبرندش ببهشت'

"Whosoever's nature is leavened with the love of 'Alí,
Though he be the constant frequenter of church or synagogue,
Even if, for example, they should bring him into Hell
They would bear him thence to Paradise ere his place there had been heated."

The main facts of Waḥíd's life are given by Rieu[3]. He was secretary to two successive Prime Ministers of Persia, Mírzá Taqiyyu'd-Dín Muḥammad and Khalífa Sulṭán. In 1055/1645–6 he was appointed court-historiographer to Sháh 'Abbás II, became a Minister in 1101/1689–90, retired eighteen years later into private life, and died about 1120/1708–9. Five manuscripts of his historical monograph are described by Rieu, one of which (**Or. 2940**) comes down to the twenty-second year of the reign, 1073–4/1663. The remark of the *Átash-kada*, that these poems were only

[1] The date of his death is uncertain. See Rieu's *Persian Supplement*, pp. 40–41, and Ethé's India Office *Catalogue of Persian MSS*, cols. 900–1.

[2] *M. F.*, ii, p. 50.

[3] *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 189–190, and the *Supplement* cited in the last note but one.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

praised on account of the author's rank, is probably justified. He was, according to Ethé, a friend of the poet Ṣá'ib.

Shawkat of Bukhárá (d. 1107/1695-6).

(12) **Shawkat**[1] **of Bukhárá** (d. 1107/1695-6) is at the present day almost unknown in Persia. He is not even mentioned in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* and but briefly in the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín*, where only two of his verses are cited, together with the description of his eccentric demeanour given by his contemporary Shaykh Muḥammad 'Alí Láhijí, called Ḥazín, who saw him wandering about in mid-winter, bare-headed and bare-footed, with a piece of felt (*namad-pára*) over his shoulders and his head covered with snow, which he did not trouble to shake off. Shawkat only deserves mention because of the reputation which he enjoys in Turkey and the influence which he exerted over Turkish poetry, an influence which Gibb emphasizes in several places in his *History of Ottoman Poetry*[2].

Ṣá'ib of Tabríz (d. 1080/1670).

(13) **Ṣá'ib of Tabríz**[3] (d. 1088/1677–8) is considered by Shiblí[4] as the last great Persian poet, superior in originality to Qá'ání, the greatest and most famous of the moderns, whom he regards as a mere imitator of Farrukhí and Minúchihrí. Riḍá-qulí Khán, on the other hand[5], says that Ṣá'ib has "a strange method in the poet's path, which is not now admired." He is, in short, like 'Urfí, one of those poets who, while greatly esteemed in Turkey and India, are without honour in their own country. I have already expressed[6] my own personal opinion as to his high merits.

[1] See Rieu's *Persian Cat.*, p. 698; Ethé's India Office *Persian Cat.*, cols. 891–2.

[2] Vol. i, p. 130; vol. iv, pp. 96–7, 185. Cf. p. 250 *supra*.

[3] Though he was born in Tabríz he was educated and grew up in Iṣfahán, and is therefore often called "of Iṣfahán."

[4] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 189.

[5] *M. F.*, vol. ii, p. 24. Cf. p. 251, n. 2 *supra*.

[6] Pp. 164–5 *supra*.

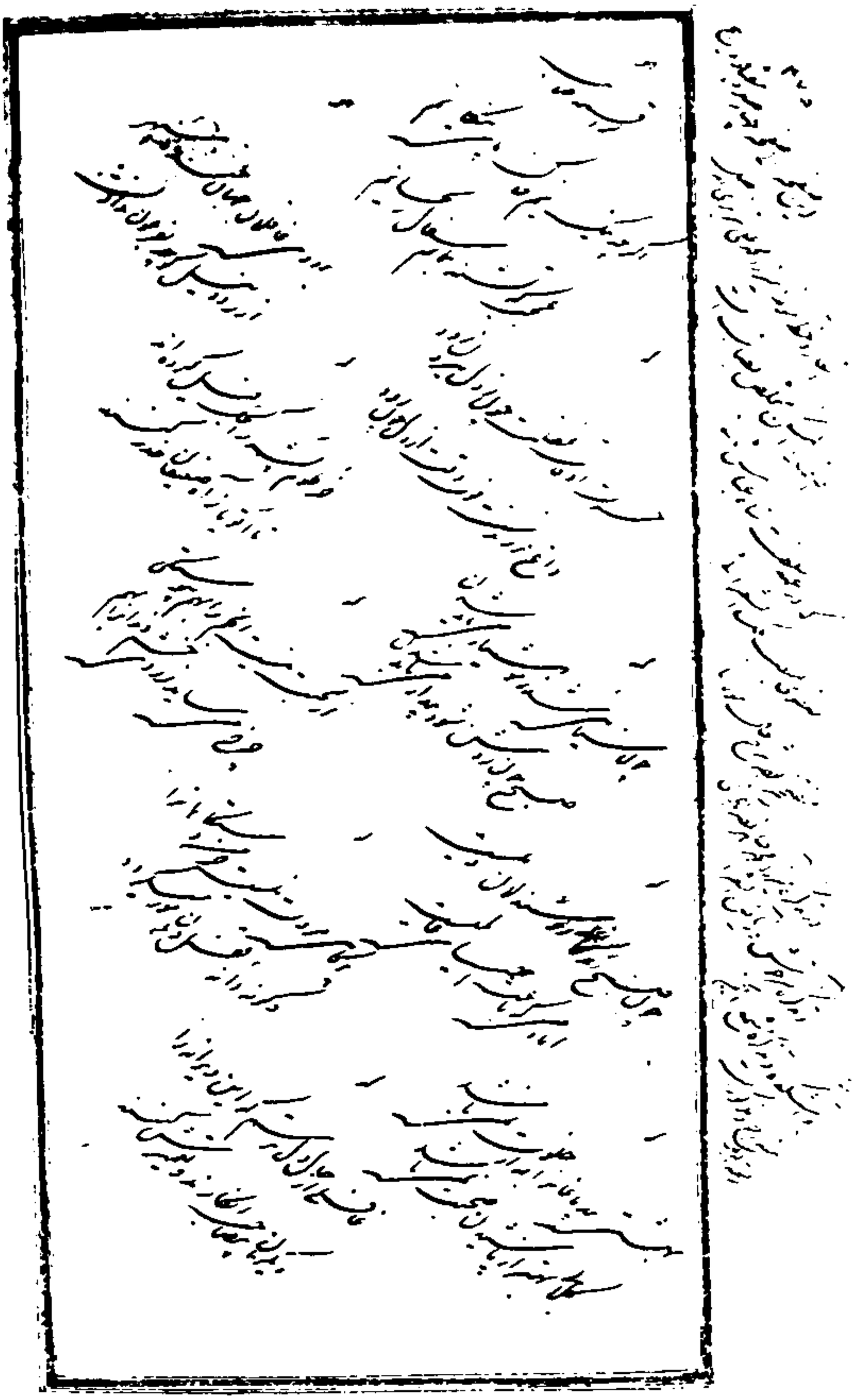
Marfat.com
Marfat.com

According to the *Ātash-kada*[1], Ṣá'ib, whose proper name was Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí, was born in the village of 'Abbás-ábád near Iṣfahán, whither his father's family had been transferred from Tabríz by Sháh 'Abbás. Having completed his studies in Iṣfahán, he visited Dihlí and other cities of India at an early age, certainly before 1039/1629–30, and was patronized by Ẓafar Khán and other nobles. He had only spent two years there, however, when his father, though seventy years of age, followed him to India in order to induce him to return home, for which journey he sought permission from his patron Ẓafar Khán in the following verses[2]:

شش سال بیش رفت که از اصفهان بهند،
افتاده است توسنِ عزم مرا گذار،
آورده است جذبهٔ کستاخ شوقِ من،
از اصفهان بآگره و لاهورش اشکبار،
هفتاد ساله والدِ پیرست بندهٔرا،
کز تربیت بود بمنش حقِّ بی شمار،
ز آن پیشتر کز آگره بمعمورهٔ دکن،
آید عنان گسسته‌تر از سیل بیقرار،
این راه دوررا ز سرِ شوق طی کند،
با قامت خمیده و با پیکرِ نزار،
دارم امیدِ رخصتی از آستانِ تو،
ای آستانت کعبهٔ امیدِ روزگار،
مقصودِ او ز آمدنش بُردنِ منست،
لب‌را بحرفِ رخصتِ من کن گهر نثار،
با جبههٔ کشاده‌تر از آفتابِ صُبح،
دستِ دعا ببدرقهٔ راهِ من بر آر،

[1] Bombay lith. 1277/1860–1, pp. 30–31.
[2] Shiblí's *Shi'r al-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 194.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com



Autograph of the poet **Sá'ib**

Or. 4937 (Brit. Mus.), p. 472

To face p. 266

Marfat.com
Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"More than six years[1] have passed since the passage of the steed of
my resolve from Iṣfahán to India took place.
The bold attraction of my longing has brought him weeping from
Iṣfahán to Agra and Lahore.
I your servant have an aged father seventy years old, who has count-
less claims upon me by reason of the education [he gave me].
Before he comes from Agra to the flourishing land of the Deccan
with reins looser than the restless torrent,
And eagerly traverses this far road with bent body and feeble form,
I hope for permission from thy threshold, O thou whose threshold is
the Ka'ba of the age's hopes!
His object in coming is to take me hence, therefore cause thy lips
to scatter pearls [of speech] by [uttering] the word of permission,
And, with a forehead more open than the morning sun, raise thy
hand in prayer to speed me on my way."

On his return to Iṣfahán, Ṣá'ib became poet-laureate to Sháh 'Abbás II, but had the misfortune to offend his successor Sulaymán. He died in Iṣfahán after an apparently uneventful life in 1080/1669–70. The words "Ṣá'ib found death" (صائب وفات یافت) give the date of his decease[2].

Amongst the merits ascribed to Ṣá'ib by Shiblí is an appreciation of Indian poets rare with the Persians. Shiblí quotes thirteen verses in which Ṣá'ib cites with approval, by way of *taḍmín* or "insertion," the words of Fayḍí, Malik, Ṭálib-i-Ámulí, Naw'í, Awḥadí, Shawqí, Fatḥí, Shápúr, Muṭí', Awjí, Adham, Ḥádhiq and Ráqim. In the following verses he deprecates the jealousy which too often characterizes rival singers:

Ṣá'ib's generous appreciation of his Indian colleagues.

خوش آن گروه که مستِ بیانِ یکدگرند،
ز جوشِ فکر مَیِ ارغوانِ یکدگرند،
نمی زنند بسنگِ شکست گوهر هم،
پی رواج متاعِ دکانِ یکدگرند،

[1] If, as Shiblí says, these verses were composed in or about 1041/1631–2, Ṣá'ib must have come to India about 1035/1625–6.
[2] These words, however, yield the number 1081, not 1080.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

زنند بر سرِ هم گُل ز مصرعِ رنگین،
ز فکرِ تازه گُلِ بوستانِ یکدگرند،
سخن تراش چو گردند تیغ الماسند،
زند چو طبع بکُنْدی فسانِ یکدگرند،
بغیر صائب و معصومِ نکته سنج و کلیم،
دگر که ز اهلِ سخن مهربانِ یکدگرند،

"Happy that company who are intoxicated with each other's speech; who, through the fermentation of thought, are each other's red wine.

They do not break on the stone [of criticism] one another's pearls [i.e. verses], but rather strive to give currency to the wares of one another's shops.

They pelt one another with tender-hued verses as with roses, with fresh ideas they become the flowers of one another's gardens.

When they shape their poetry it is with blades like diamonds, and when their genius tends to become blunted, they are each other's whetstones.

Except Ṣá'ib, the epigrammatic Ma'ṣúm, and Kalím, who of all the poets are kind to one another[1]?"

Ṣá'ib was a great admirer of Ḥáfiẓ, and is also complimentary to his masters Rukná and Shifá'í. Of the latter he says

در اصفهان که بدردِ سخن رسد صائب،
کنون که نبض شناسِ سخن شفائی نیست،

"Who will care for poetry in Iṣfahán, O Ṣá'ib,
Now that Shifá'í, whose discerning hand was on the pulse of poetry, is no more?"

He puts Naẓírí not only above himself but above 'Urfí. "So far," says Shiblí[2], "no objection can be made, but it is a pity that, yielding to popular approbation and fame, he makes himself also the panegyrist of Ẓuhúrí and Jalál-i-

[1] *Cf.* p. 259 *supra*.

[2] *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 198.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Asír.... This was the first step in bad taste, which finally established a high road, so that in time people came to bow down before the poetry of Násir 'Alí, Bí-dil, and Shawkat of Bukhárá. 'The edifice of wrong-doing was at first small in the world, but whoever came added thereunto[1].'"

Though Ṣá'ib tried his hand at all kinds of poetry, it was in the ode (*ghazal*) that he excelled. He was a ready wit. One of his pupils once composed the following absurd hemistich:

از شیشهٔ بی مَی مَیِ بی شیشه طلب کن،

"Seek for the bottleless wine from the wineless bottle."

Ṣá'ib immediately capped it with the following:

حق‌را ز دلِ خالی از اندیشه طلب کن،

"Seek for the truth from the heart which is empty of thought."

On another occasion one of his friends produced the following meaningless hemistich and apparently invited Ṣá'ib to complete the verse and give it a meaning:

دویدن رفتن استادن نشستن خُفتن و مُردن،

Ṣá'ib immediately prefixed the following hemistich:

بقدرِ هر سکون راحت بود بنگر تفاوت‌را،

so that the completed verse runs in translation:

"Peace is in proportion to every pause: observe the difference between 'to run, to walk, to stand, to sit, to lie, to die.'"

Ṣá'ib was a very careful student of the works of his predecessors, both ancient and modern, and himself compiled a great anthology of their best verses, of which, according to Shiblí[2], a manuscript exists at Ḥaydar-ábád in the Deccan, and which appears to have been utilized by Wálih of Dághistán and other *tadhkira*-writers. Shiblí

[1] This is a quotation from the *Gulistán* of Sa'dí (ed. Platts, p. 32).

[2] *Op. cit.*, p. 201.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

compares Ṣá'ib to Abú Tammám, the compiler of the great anthology of Arabic poetry called the *Ḥamása*, inasmuch as his taste is shown even more in his selective than in his creative powers. The following are the verses by Ṣá'ib which I selected from the *Kharábát* and copied into a note-book many years ago[1]. They pleased me when I was a beginner, they still please me, and I hope that some of them at any rate may please my readers.

Selected verses from Ṣá'ib.

چو شد زهر عادت مضرّت نبخشد ' بمرگ آشنا کن بتدریج جان‌را '

"When poison becomes a habit it ceases to injure: make thy soul gradually acquainted with death."

ریشهٔ نخلِ کهن سال از جوان افزونترست '
بیشتر دلبستگی باشد بدنیا پیررا '

"The roots of the aged palm-tree exceed those of the young one; the old have the greater attachment to the world."

هر سری دارد درین بازار سودائی دگر '
هر کسی بندد بآئینِ دگر دستاررا '

"In this market every head has a different fancy: everyone winds his turban in a different fashion."

تهی دستانِ قسمت‌را چه سود از رهبرِ کامل '
که خضر از آبِ حیوان تشنه باز آرد سکندررا '

"What profit accrues from a perfect guide to those whom Fate hath left empty-handed, for even Khiḍr brings back Alexander athirst from the Water of Life?"

سبحه برکف توبه برلب دل پُر از شوقِ گناه '
معصیت‌را خنده می آید ز استغفارِ ما '

"The rosary in the hand, repentance on the lips, and the heart full of sinful longings—sin itself laughs at our repentance!"

[1] See pp. 164–5 *supra*. My copy of these selected verses was completed on Sept. 4, 1885.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

مقامِ گوهرِ شهوار در گنجینه می باید،
بیاض از سینه باید ساخت شعرِ انتخابی‌را،

"The place of a royal pearl should be in a treasury: one should make one's breast the common-place book for chosen verses."

گفتگوی کُفْر و دین آخر بیکجا میکشد،
خواب یك خوابست امّا مُختلف تعبیرها،

"All this talk of infidelity and religion finally leads to one place:
The dream is the same dream, only the interpretations differ."

از تیرِ آه مظلوم ظالم امان نیابد،
پیش از نشانه خیزد از دل فغان کمان‌را،

"The tyrant finds no security against the arrows of the victim's sighs:
Groans arise from the heart of the bow before [they arise from] the target."

چارهٔ نا خوشی وضْعِ جهان بیخبریست،
اوست بیدار که در خواب گرانست اینجا،

"The cure for the unpleasant constitution of the world is to ignore it:
Here he is awake who is plunged in heavy sleep."

شگوفه با ثمر هرگز نگردد جمع در یکجا،
مُحالست آنکه با هم نعمت و دندان شود پیدا،

"Flowers and fruit are never combined in one place; it is impossible that teeth and delicacies should exist simultaneously."

ده در شود کشاده اگر بسته شد دری،
انگشت ترجمانِ زبان است لال‌را،

"Ten doors are opened if one door be shut: the finger is the interpreter of the dumb man's tongue."

ساده لوحان زود میگیرند رنگِ همنشین،
صحبتِ طوطی سخنور میکند آئینه‌را،

"The simple-minded quickly acquire the colour of their companions:
The conversation of the parrot makes the mirror [seem to] speak."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

گردشِ اقبال دارد لغزشِ ادبارها'

یك دو خطوه باز رفتن پر دهد وتّاب‌را'

"The march of good fortune has backward slips: to retreat one or two paces gives wings to the jumper."

موج از حقیقتِ کُهرِ بحر غافلست'

حادث چگونه درك نماید قدیمرا'

"The wave is ignorant of the true nature of the sea: how can the Temporal comprehend the Eternal?"

معیار دوستان دغل روز حاجتست'

قرضی برسمِ تجربه از دوستان طلب'

"The touchstone of false friends is the day of need: by way of proof, ask a loan from your friends."

در میانِ اهل دنیا مردمِ دانا غریب'

همچو انگشتِ شهادت در کفِ ترسا غریب'

"The learned man is a stranger amidst the people of the world, just as the 'witness-finger' [i.e. the index-finger] appears strange on the Christian's hand."

چه سود ازین که کتبخانهٔ جهان از تست'

نه علم هرچه عمل میکنی همان از تست'

"What doth it profit thee that all the libraries of the world should be thine? Not knowledge but what thou dost put into practice is thine."

هستی دنیای فانی انتظارِ مُرْدنست'

ترکِ هستی ز انتظارِ نیستی وا رَسْتن است'

"The life of this transitory world is the expectation of death: to renounce life is to escape from the expectation of annihilation."

ترا ز جان غمِ مال ای عزیز بیشترست'

علاقهٔ تو بدستار بیشتر ز سرست'

"O my dear friend! thou hast more care for wealth than for life: Thy attachment to the turban is greater than to the head."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

با کمالِ قُرْب از جانان دلِ ما غافلست،

زنده از دریاست ماهی و ز دریا غافلست،

"Our heart is heedless of the Beloved, notwithstanding our complete proximity:
The fish lives through the sea, yet heeds not the sea."

گریهٔ شمع از برای ماتمِ پروانه نیست،

صُبْح نزدیکست در فکرِ شبِ تارِ خودست،

"The weeping of the candle is not in mourning for the moth: the dawn is at hand, and it is thinking of its own dark night."

رفتن از عالمِ پُرشور به از آمدنست،

غنچه دلتنگ بباغ آمد و خندان بر خاست،

"To quit this troubled world is better than to enter it: the rose-bud enters the garden with straitened heart and departs smiling."

اگر میانِ دو دل هست دوستی بقرار،

نمی شوند بآمد شدِ خبر محتاج،

"If friendship is firmly established between two hearts, they do not need the interchange of news."

آدمی پیر چو شد حرص جوان میگردد،

خواب در وقتِ سحرگاه گران میگردد،

"When a man becomes old, his greed becomes young: sleep grows heavy at the time of morning."

خموشی حُجّتِ ناطق بود جویای گوهررا،

که از غوّاص در دریا نفس بیرون نمی آید،

"To the seeker after pearls silence is a speaking argument, for no breath comes forth from the diver in the sea."

یا سبو یا خُمِ مَی یا قدحِ باده کنند،

یك کفِ خاك درین میکده ضایع نشود،

"Not one handful of earth is wasted in this tavern: they make it either into a pitcher, a wine-jar, or a wine-cup."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

حریص‌را نکند نعمتِ دو عالم سیر‘ همیشه آتشِ سوزنده اشتها دارد‘

"The enjoyments of both worlds will not satisfy the greedy man:
Burning fire has always an appetite."

پیرانه سر همای سعادت بمن رسید‘

وقتِ زوال سایهٔ دولت بمن رسید‘

شد مهربان سپهر بمن آخرِ حیات‘

در وقتِ صُبح خواب فراغت بمن رسید‘

"The *humá*[1] of happiness came to me in old age; the shadow of fortune came to me at the time of [the sun's] decline:
Heaven became kind to me at the close of my life: peaceful slumber visited me at morning-time."

از پشیمانی سخن در عهدِ پیری میزنم‘

لب بدندان میزنم اکنون که دندانم نماند‘

"I talk of repentance in the days of old age; I bite my lip [in remorse] now that no teeth remain to me."

میشود غارتگرِ جان چون کمال افتد زیاد‘

شاخِ نازك بشکند چون بیشتر بار آورد‘

"When perfection[2] is unduly increased it becomes the destroyer of life:
The tender branch breaks when it bears too much fruit."

اگر مجنون منم پس کیست در روی زمین عاقل‘

اگر عاقل توئی دیوانه در عالم نمی باشد‘

"If I am mad, then who on the face of the earth is sane? If thou art sane, then there is no madman in the world."

مرا بروزِ قیامت غمی که هست اینست‘

که روی مردمِ عالم دو باره نباید دید‘

[1] The *humá* is a mythical bird of whom it is supposed that if its shadow falls on anyone he will become a king.

[2] As already pointed out, perfection is regarded as a danger because it is specially obnoxious to the Evil Eye, which the Arabs call *'Aynu'l-Kamál*, "the Eye of Perfection." See *supra*, p. 117, n. 2, and p. 216, n. 2.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

"The only thing which troubles me about the Resurrection Day is this,
That one will have to look once again on the faces of mankind."

لا مکانی شو که تبدیلِ مکانِ آب و گِل،
نقل کردن باشد از زندانِ بزندانِ دگر،

"Become placeless, for to change this place of water and clay is but to move from one prison to another."

نکویمت که دل از حاصلِ جهان بر دار،
بهرچه دست رَسَت نیست دل از آن بر دار،

"I do not bid thee detach thy heart from the sum of the world: detach thy heart from whatever lies beyond thy reach."

انجام بت پرست بود به ز خود پرست،
در قیدِ خود مباش و بقیدِ فرنگ باش،

"In the end the idolator is better than the worshipper of self: better be in bondage to the Franks than in the bondage of self."

گر پُشتِ پا بعالمِ صورت نمی زنی،
تا حشر در شکنجهٔ این کفش تنگ باش،

"If thou dost not trample under foot this world of form, then suffer until the Resurrection the torments of this tight boot."

درون خانهٔ خود هر گدا شهنشاهیست،
قدم برون منه از حدِّ خویش و سلطان باش،

"Within his own house every beggar is an emperor: do not overstep thine own limit and be a king."

گر سجودِ گُل کنم بر سُنّتِ بلبل خطاست،
من که در آتش پرستی اُمّتِ پروانه‌ام،

"If I worship the rose according to the rites of the nightingale, it is a fault—I, who in the worship of fire am of the religion of the moth."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

چون شمع هرکه افراشت گردن بافسرِ زر،
در اشکِ خود نشیند بسیار تا بگردن،

"Everyone who like the candle exalts his head with a crown of gold
will oft-times sit [immersed] in his tears up to the neck."

پیش ازین بر رفتگان افسوس می خوردند خلق،
می خورند افسوس در ایّامِ ما بر ماندگان،

"Formerly people used to grieve over the departed, but in our days
they grieve over the survivors."

یا ز سیلابِ حوادث رو نباید تافتن،
یا نباید خانه در صحرای امکان ساختن،

"Either one should not avert one's face from the torrent of vicissitudes,
Or one should not make one's home in the plain of the Phenomenal
World."

هر لوحِ مزاری ز فرامُشکدهٔ خاک،
دستیست برون آمده بهرِ طلبِ تو،

"Every tombstone is a hand stretched forth from the house of oblivion
of the earth to search for thee."

شد از فشارِ گردون موی سفید و سر زد،
شیری که خورده بودم در روزگارِ طفلی،

"The hair has become white through the squeezing of the sphere, and
the milk which I had drunk in the time of childhood has re-
appeared [on my head]."

در وطن گر میشدی هر کس بآسانی عزیز،
کی ز آغوشِ پدر یوسف بزندان آمدی،

"If everyone could easily become honoured in his own country,
How would Joseph have passed from his father's embrace to a prison?"

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

III. Between A.D. 1700 and 1800 (A.H. 1111–1215).

From the literary point of view this century is perhaps the most barren in the whole history of Persia[1], so much so that the only notable poem produced by it is, so far as I know, the celebrated *tarjí'-band* of Hátif-i-Iṣfahání, of which I shall speak presently. On the other hand we have two full and authoritative accounts of the period by two men of letters who were personally involved in the disastrous events which befell Persia during and after the Afghán invasion, and who have left us a fairly clear and detailed picture of that sad and troubled epoch. These men were Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín (b. 1103/1692, d. 1180/1766–7), and Luṭf 'Alí Beg poetically surnamed Ádhar (b. 1123/1711, d. 1195/1781). Both were poets, and the former even a prolific poet, since he composed three or four *díwáns*, but their prose writings are, from our point of view, of much greater interest and value than their verse.

Barrenness of the eighteenth century.

Two important contemporary records.

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, whose proper name was Muḥammad ibn Abí Ṭálib of Gílán, is best known by his "Memoirs" (*Tadhkiratu'l-Aḥwál*), which he composed in India in 1154/1741–2, twenty years after he had become an exile from his native land, and which are easily accessible to students in the text and English translation published by F. C. Belfour in 1830–31. He was born, as he himself tells us, on Monday the 27th of Rabí' ii, 1103 (Jan. 19, 1692) at Iṣfahán, and was directly descended in the eighteenth degree from the famous Shaykh Záhid of Gílán, of whom some account was given in a previous chapter[2]. The family continued to reside in Gílán, first at Astárá and then at Láhiján, until the author's

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín (b. 1103/1692; d. 1180/1766–7).

[1] Cf. p. 168 *supra*.

[2] See pp. 38–43 *supra*.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

father, Shaykh Abú Ṭálib, at the age of twenty, went to Iṣfahán to pursue his studies, and there married and settled. He died there in 1127/1715 at the age of sixty-nine, leaving three sons, of whom our author was the eldest, to mourn his loss[1]. Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín speaks in the highest terms of his father's character and ability, and quotes a few lines from an elegy which he composed on this mournful occasion. He also mentions that, amongst other final injunctions, his father addressed to him the following remarkable words[2]: "If you have the choice, make no longer stay in Iṣfahán. It were meet that some one of our race should survive." "At that time," the author continues, "I did not comprehend this part of his address, not till after some years, when the disturbance and ruin of Iṣfahán took place[3]."

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín's Memoirs.

Since the "Memoirs" can be read in English by anyone interested in their contents, it is unnecessary to discuss or analyse them here, and it will be sufficient to emphasize their importance as a picture of the author's times, and to note a few points of literary interest. In 1135/1722–3 he began to compile a kind of literary scrap-book or magazine (*majmú'a*), probably somewhat similar in character to the *Kashkúl* of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín 'Ámilí, and entitled *Muddatu'l-'Umr*[4] ("Lifetime"), but it was lost with the rest of his library in the sack of Iṣfahán by the Afgháns a few months later. About the same time or a little earlier he wrote, besides numerous philosophical commentaries, a book on the Horse (*Faras-náma*), and

[1] A fourth son died in infancy. The mother survived the father by two years.

[2] Belfour's text, p. 16; translation, p. 14.

[3] Compare text, p. 107; translation, p. 117.

[4] See pp. 93–4 of Belfour's translation, to which henceforth references will be given. There is a MS. of this work in the British Museum. See Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, p. 483, where two other works by the same author, one on wine and measures and another on beasts of venery, are mentioned.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

published his second *Díwán* of poetry, and soon afterwards his third[1].

The Afghán invasion and the misery which it caused, especially in Iṣfahán, put a stop to Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín's literary activities for some time. "During the latter days of the siege," he says[2], "I was attacked by severe illness; and my two brothers, my grandmother, and the whole of the dwellers in my house died, so that my mansion was emptied of all but two or three infirm old women-servants, who attended me till my disorder began to abate." Being somewhat recovered, he escaped from Iṣfahán early in Muḥarram, 1135 (October, 1722), only a few days before it surrendered to, and was entered by, the Afgháns. During the next ten years he wandered about in different parts of Persia, successively visiting or residing at Khurramábád in Luristán, Hamadán, Niháwand, Dizful, Shúshtar (whence by way of Baṣra he made the pilgrimage to Mecca and on his return journey visited Yaman), Kirmánsháh, Baghdád and its holy places, Mashhad, Kurdistán, Ádharbáyján, Gílán and Ṭihrán. From the last-named city he returned once more to Iṣfahán, to find "that great city, notwithstanding the presence of the King[3], in utter ruin and desertion. Of all that population and of my friends scarcely any one remained." It was the same at Shíráz, whither he made his way six months later. "Of all my great friends there," he says[4], "the greatest I had in the world, not one remained on foot; and I met with a crowd of their children and relatives in the most melancholy condition and without resource." From Shíráz he made his way by Lár to Bandar-i-'Abbás, intending to go thence in

[1] See Belfour's translation, pp. 106 and 111, and for his fourth *Díwán*, which was published somewhat later, p. 176.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 128.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 205. This was after the expulsion of the Afgháns by Nádir.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 207.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

a European ship to the Ḥijáz, "because their ships and packets are very spacious and are fitted up with convenient apartments, and their navigators also are more expert on the sea and more skilful in their art than any other nation[1]." He was, however, prevented by illness and poverty (caused partly by the loss of his patrimony in Gílán, partly by the exorbitant and oppressive taxation which now prevailed) from carrying out this plan. A subsequent attempt carried him in a Dutch vessel as far as Muscat, which he found little to his liking, so that after a stay of rather more than two months he returned again to Bandar-i-'Abbás. He next visited Kirmán, but, finding "the affairs of that ruined country in utter confusion by reason of the insurrection of a body of the Balúch tribe and other accidents[2]," he returned thence after a few months' stay to Bandar-i-'Abbás in the hope of being able to go thence once again to Baghdád and the Holy Shrines. Finding this impracticable owing to Nádir's operations against the Turks, and unable to endure any longer the sight of the misery prevailing throughout Persia, he embarked on the 10th of Ramaḍán, 1146 (Feb. 14, 1734) for India, where, in spite of the deep dislike which he conceived for that country, he was destined to spend the remaining forty-five years of his long life. "To me," he says[3], "who do not reckon the time of my residence in this country as a portion of my real life, the beginning of my arrival on the shores of this empire appears as it were the end of my age and vitality." A little further on he says, "Altogether my nature had no agreement with the fashions and manners of this country, nor any power of patiently enduring them," and adds a few lines lower "the sight of these dominions became more and more hateful to me, and being continually in hope of escape from them, I reconciled

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín's deep dislike for India.

[1] See Belfour's translation, p. 215.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 253.
[3] *Ibid.*, p. 240.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

my mind to the incidents in the affairs of Persia, and bent my thoughts on my return thither[1]." Although unhappily disappointed in this hope, and compelled to spend the long remainder of his days in "a country traced ... with foulness and trained to turpitude and brutality[2]," where "all the situations and conditions ... are condemned by fate to difficulty and bitterness of subsistence[3]," he declined to include in his "Memoirs" any account of his personal experiences in India, save in so far as they were connected with such important historical events as Nádir Sháh's invasion and the terrible massacre he made in Dihlí on March 20, 1739. So, though the "Memoirs" were penned at "the end of the year [A.H.] 1154[4]" (beginning of A.D. 1742), they deal chiefly with the author's personal history before he left Persia twenty years earlier. The accounts of contemporary scholars and men of letters (many of whom perished during the siege of Iṣfahán in A.D. 1722) with whom he was personally acquainted constitute one of the most valuable features of this interesting book.

Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín's biography of contemporary poets.

Eleven years later (1165/1752) Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín composed an account of about a hundred contemporary poets entitled *Tadhkiratu'l-Mu'áṣirín*, which is included in the lithographed edition of his complete works published at Lucknow in 1293/1876, and of which MSS. exist in the British Museum and elsewhere[5].

[1] See Belfour's translation, p. 255. [2] *Ibid.*, p. 256.

[3] *Ibid.*, p. 261. [4] *Ibid.*, p. 257.

[5] See Rieu's *Pers. Cat.*, p. 372, and Sprenger's *Catalogue*, pp. 135–141, where the contents are fully stated. Through the kindness of my friend Professor Muḥammad Shafí' of the Oriental College, Lahore, I have recently (September, 1923) received a copy of the *Kulliyyát*, or Complete Works, of Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, lithographed at Kánpúr in 1893. It comprises 1032 pp., of which this *Tadhkira* occupies pp. 931–1025. I make the number of biographies contained in it 96, and of all these

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Another and more accessible contemporary account of the poets of this period forms the last portion of the well-known *Átash-kada* ("Fire-temple") of Luṭf 'Alí Beg *Ádhar*. The greater part of this book deals with the Persian poets who flourished before the author's time, arranged in alphabetical order under the various towns and countries which gave birth to them, including Túrán and Hindústán. This is followed by an account of sixty of the author's contemporaries, which begins with a brief historical survey of the misfortunes of Persia during the fifty years succeeding the Afghán invasion down to the re-establishment of security and order in the South by Karím Khán-i-Zand[1]. The author recognizes the dearth of poets and men of letters during this period and ascribes it to the prevalent chaos and misery, "which," he says, "have reached such a point that no one has the heart to read poetry, let alone to compose it":

Luṭf 'Alí Beg *Ádhar* (b. 1123/1711, d. 1195/1781).

تفریقِ بال و اختلالِ حال بحدّیستْ که کسی‌را حالِ خواندنِ شعر نیست تا بگفتنِ شعر چه رسد'

To most of these poets the author devotes only a few lines. The longer notices include Mullá Muḥammad Mú'min, poetically surnamed *Dá'í*, who died in 1155/1742–3 at the age of ninety; Mullá Ḥusayn *Rafíq* of Iṣfahán; Sayyid Muḥammad *Shu'la* of Iṣfahán; Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣádiq of Tafrish; Mírzá Ja'far *Ṣáfí* of Iṣfahán; a young friend of the author's named Sulaymán, who wrote under the name *Ṣabáḥí*, and to whose poems he devotes no less than thirteen pages; Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí *Ṣubúḥ* of Iṣfahán;

poets there are only about four of whom I ever heard even the names, to wit, Ṭáhir of Qazwín, Shawkat of Bukhárá, Shafí'á Athar of Shíráz, and Luṭf 'Ali Beg Shámí.

[1] "That peerless Prince of happy fortune Abu'n-Naṣr Sulṭán Karím."

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

Áqá Taqí *Ṣahbá* of Qum; Sayyid 'Abdu'l-Báqí *Ṭabíb* ("the physician"), whose father Mírzá Muḥammad Raḥím was court-physician to Sháh Sulṭán Ḥusayn, as he himself was to Nádir Sháh; *Ṭúfán* of Hazár-jaríb, whose death was commemorated by the author in a chronogram giving the date 1190/1776–7; Áqá Muḥammad *'Áshiq* of Iṣfahán (d. 1181/1767–8), to whom he devotes eight pages; and his own younger brother Isḥáq Beg, who wrote under the pen-name of *'Udhrí* and died in 1185/1771–2, according to the chronogram:

بادا در بهشت جاودان اسحق بیگ،

Other poets noticed are Muḥammad 'Alí Beg the son of Abdál Beg, a Frankish painter who embraced Islám; Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn *Ghálib*, who spent fourteen years of his earlier life in India and married the daughter of the Nawwáb Sar-afráz Khán; Mír Sayyid 'Alí *Mushtáq* of Iṣfahán; Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣádiq, nephew of the above-mentioned court-physician Mírzá Muḥammad Raḥím, who, besides several *mathnawí* poems dealing with the somewhat threadbare romances of Laylá and Majnún, Khusraw and Shírín and Wámiq and 'Adhrá, was engaged on a history of the Zand dynasty; Mírzá Naṣír, son of the physician Mírzá 'Abdu'lláh (d. 1192/1778); and Sayyid Aḥmad *Hátif*, the most notable of all these poets, of whom we shall shortly have to speak.

Luṭf 'Alí Beg concludes his *Átash-kada* with an autobiography of himself, from which we learn that he was born on the 20th of Rabi' i, A.H. 1123 (June 7, 1711) at Iṣfahán, but spent fourteen years of his earlier life at Qum, whither his family migrated in consequence of the Afghán menace. At the beginning of Nádir Sháh's reign his father was made governor of Lár and the coasts of Fárs, and he resided in Shíráz. On the death of his father two years later he accompanied his uncle Ḥájji Muḥammad Beg on the

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

pilgrimage to Mecca, and, after visiting that and the other holy places, returned to Persia, and was at Mashhad when Nádir's victorious army returned from India. After accompanying them to Mázandarán he returned to Iṣfahán, and, after the assassination of Nádir Sháh, was attached for a while to the service of 'Alí Sháh, Ibráhím Sháh, Sháh Isma'íl and Sháh Sulaymán. He then seems to have retired from public life and devoted himself to the cultivation of poetry under the guidance and tuition of Mír Sayyid 'Alí Mushtáq. With selections of this poetry, largely drawn from his *Yúsuf u Zulaykhá*, he concludes the book[1].

Hátif of Iṣfahán.

Of Sayyid Aḥmad *Ḥátif* of Iṣfahán, though he was the contemporary and friend of Luṭf 'Alí Beg, no biographical particulars are given in the *Átash-kada*, but only praises which appear somewhat exaggerated, since he is described as "in Arabic and Persian verse and prose the third after A'shá and Jarír, and second only to Anwarí and Ẓahír." Nearly ten pages are filled with citations from his poems, but of all these we need only concern ourselves with the beautiful and celebrated *tarjí'-band* by which alone Hátif's name has been immortalized.

(بند اوّل)

ای فدای تو هم دل و هم جان'
وی نثارِ رهت هم این و هم آن'
دل فدای تو چون توئی دلبر'
جان نثارِ تو چون توئی جانان'
دل رهاندن ز دستِ تو مشکل'
جان فشاندن بهای تو آسان'

[1] I have used the *Átash-kada* in the Bombay lithographed edition of 1277/1860. It has three defects: the numeration of the pages stops at 189; the dates are often omitted; and the accuracy of the text leaves a good deal to be desired.

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

راهِ وصلِ تو راهِ پُر آسیب،
دردِ عشقِ تو دردِ بی درمان،
بندگانیم جان و دل در کف،
چشم بر حکم و گوش بر فرمان،
گر سرِ صلح داری اینک دل،
ور سرِ جنگ داری اینک جان،
دوش از شورِ عشق و جذبهٔ شوق،
هر طرف می شتافتم حیران،
آخرِ کار شوقِ دیدارم،
سوی دیرِ مغان کشید عنان،
چشمِ بد دور خلوتی دیدم،
روشن از نورِ حق نه از نیران،
هر طرف دیدم آتشی کآن شب،
دید در طور موسی عمران،
پیری آنجا بآتش افروزی،
بادب کردِ پیرِ مغبچگان،
همه سیمین عذار و گل رخسار،
همه شیرین زبان و تنگ دهان،
عود و چنگ و نی و دف و بربط،
شمع و نقل و گل و می و ریحان،
ساقی ماهروی و مشکین موی،
مطرب بذله گوی خوش الحان،
مغ و مغ زاده موبد و دستور،
خدمتش‌را تمام بسته میان،
من شرمنده از مسلمانی،
شدم آنجا بگوشهٔ پنهان،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

پیر پرسید کیست این گفتند'
عاشقی بی قرار و سر گردان'
گفت جامی دهیدش از می ناب'
گرچه ناخوانده باشد این مهمان'
ساقی آتش دست و آتش پرست'
ریخت در ساغر آتشِ سوزان'
چون کشیدم نه عقل ماند و نه هوش'
سوخت هم کفر از آنّ و هم ایمان'
مست افتادم و در آن مستی'
بزبانی که شرحِ آن نتوان'
این سخن می شنیدم از اعضا'
همه حتّی الورید و الشّریان'
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او'
وحده لا اله الّا هو' ٭

(بند دویم)

از تو ای دوست نگسلم پیوند'
ور بتیغم بُرند بند از بند'
الحق ارزان بود از ما صد جان'
وز دهانِ تو نیم شکر خند'
ای پدر پند کم ده از عشقم'
که نخواهد شد اهل این فرزند'
پند آنان دهند خلق ای کاش'
که ز عشقِ تو میدهندم پند'
من رهِ کوی عافیت دانم'
چکنم کاوفتاده‌ام بکمند'

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

در کلیسا بدلبری ترسا،
گفتم ای دل بدامِ تو در بند،
ای که دارد بستارِ زُنّارت،
هر سرِ موی من جدا پیوند،
ره بوحدت نیافتن تا کی،
ننگِ تثلیث بر یکی تا چند،
نام حقِ یگانه چون شاید،
که اب و ابن و روح قُدْس نهند،
لبِ شیرین کشود و با من گفت،
وز شکرخند ریخت از لب قند،
که گر از سرِّ وحدت آگاهی،
تهمتِ کافری بما مپسند،
در سه آئینه شاهدِ ازلی،
پرتو از روی تابناك افگند،
سه نگردد بریشم ار اورا،
پرنیان خوانی و حریر و پرند،
ما درین گفتگو که از یکسو،
شد ز ناقوس این ترانه بلند،
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او،
وحده لا اله الّا هو،

(بند سوم)

دوش رفتم بکوی باده فروش،
ز آتشِ عشق دل بجوش و خروش،
مجلسی نغز دیدم و روشن،
میرِ آن بزم پیرِ باده فروش،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

چاکران ایستاده صف در صف،
باده خواران نشسته دوش بدوش،
پیر در صدر و میکشان گردش،
پارهٔ مست و پارهٔ مدهوش،
سینه بی کینه و درون صافی،
دل پر از گفتگو و لب خاموش،
همه‌را از عنایتِ ازلی،
چشم حق بین و گوش راز نیوش،
سخنِ این بآن هنئاً لك،
پاسخ آن باین که بادت نوش،
گوش بر چنگ و چشم بر ساغر،
آرزوی دو کون در آغوش،
بادب پیش رفتم و گفتم،
ای ترا دل قرارگاهِ سروش،
عاشقم دردمند و حاجتمند،
دردِ من بنگر و بدرمان کوش،
پیر خندان بطنز با من گفت،
ای ترا پیرِ عقل حلقه بگوش،
تو کجا ما کجا ای از شرمت،
دخترِ رز نشسته برقع پوش،
گفتمش سوخت جانم آبی ده،
و آتشِ من فرو نشان از جوش،
دوش میسوختم ازین آتش،
آه اگر امشبم بود چون دوش،

Marfat.com
Marfat.com

کفت خندان که هین پیاله بگیر،
ستدم کفت هان زیاده منوش،
جرعه‌ٔ در کشیدم و کشتم،
فارغ از رنجِ عقل و محنتِ هوش،
چون بهوش آمدم یکی دیدم،
ما بقی‌را همه خطوط و نقوش،
ناکهان در صوامع ملکوت،
این حدیثم سروش کفت بگوش،
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او،
وحده لا اله الّا هو،

(بند چهارم)

چشمِ دل باز کن که جان بینی،
آنچه نا دیدنیست آن بینی،
کر باقلیمِ عشق رو آری،
همه آفاق کلستان بینی،
بر همه اهلِ این زمین بمراد،
کردشِ دورِ آسمان بینی،
آنچه بینی دلت همان خواهد،
و آنچه خواهد دلت همان بینی،
بی سر و پا کدای آنجارا،
سر ز ملکِ جهان کران بینی،
هم در آن پا برهنه قومی‌را،
پای بر فرقِ فرقدان بینی،
هم در آن سر برهنه جمعی‌را،
بر سر از عرش سایبان بینی

Marfat.com

گاه وجد و سماع هر یکی‌را'
بر دو کون آستین فشان بینی'
دل هر ذرّه' که بشگافی'
آفتابیش در میان بینی'
هرچه داری اگر بعشق دهی'
کافرم گر جَوِی زیان بینی'
جان گدازی اگر بآتشِ عشق'
عشق‌را کیمیای جان بینی'
از مضیقِ جهات در گذری'
وسعتِ ملك لا مکان بینی'
آنچه نشنیده گوش آن شنوی'
و آنچه نا دیده چشم آن بینی'
تا بجائی رساندت که یکی'
از جهان و جهانیان بینی'
با یکی عشق ورزی از دل و جان'
تا بعین الیقین عیان بینی'
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او'
وحده لا اله الّا هو'

(بند پنجم)

یار بی پرده از در و دیوار'
در تجلّی است یا اولو الأبصار'
شمع جوئی و آفتاب بلند'
روز بس روشن و تو در شب تار'
گر ز ظلماتِ خود رهی بینی'
همه عالم مشارقِ انوار'

Marfat.com

گوزوَش فاید و عصا طلبی،
بهر این راه روشن و هموار،
چشم بکشا بگلستان و ببین،
جلوهٔ آب صاف در گل و خار،
زآب بیرنگ صد هزاران رنگ،
لاله و گل نگر درین گلزار،
۸۰ پا براهِ طلب نه و از عشق،
بهرِ این راه توشهٔ بر دار،
شود آسان ز عشق کاری چند،
که بود پیش عقل بس دشوار،
یار کو بالغدوّ و الآصال،
یار جو بالعشیّ و الابکار،
صد رهت لَنْ تَرَانِی ار گویند،
باز میدار دیده بر دیدار،
تا بجائی رسی که می نرسد،
پای اوهام و دیدهٔ افکار،
۸۰ بار یابی بمحفلی کآنجا،
جبرئیلِ امین ندارد بار،
این ره این توشهٔ تو این منزل،
مردِ راهی اگر بیا و بیار،
ور نهٔ مرد راه چون دگران،
یار میگوی و پشتِ سر میخار،
هاتف ارباب معرفت که کهی،
مست خوانندشان و که هشیار،
از می و جام و مطرب و ساقی،
از مُغ و دَیْر و شاهد و زُنّار،

Marfat.com

ای قصدِ ایشان نهفته اسراریست،
که بایما کنند گاه اظهار،
هی بری گر برازشان دانی،
که همین است سرِّ آن اسرار،
که یکی هست و هیچ نیست جز او،
وحده لا اله الّا هو،

(Strophe I)

"O Thou to whom both heart and life are a sacrifice, and O Thou in whose path both this and that are an offering!
The heart is Thy sacrifice because Thou art a charmer of hearts; life is Thine offering because Thou art the Life of our lives[1].
Hard it is to deliver the heart from Thy hand; easy it is to pour out our life at Thy feet.
The road to union with Thee is a road full of hardships; the pain of Thy love is a pain without remedy.
We are servants holding our lives and hearts in our hands, with eyes [fixed] on Thy orders and ears [waiting] on Thy command.
If Thou seekest peace, behold our hearts; and if Thou seekest war, behold our lives!
Last night, [impelled] by the madness of love and the impulse of desire, I was rushing in bewilderment in every direction.
At last desire for the [Beatific] Vision turned my reins towards the temple of the Magians.
Far from it be the Evil Eye! I beheld a secret gathering bright with the Light of Truth, not with the Flames [of Hell].
On every side I beheld that fire which Moses the son of 'Imrán saw that night on Sinai.
There was an elder [busied] with tending the fire, round about whom respectfully stood the young Magians,
All silver-skinned and rose-cheeked, all sweet-tongued and narrow-mouthed.
[There were] lute, harp, flute, cymbals and barbiton; candles, desert, roses, wine and basil;
The moon-faced and musky-haired cup-bearer; the witty and sweet-voiced minstrel.

[1] It is impossible adequately to preserve in English the play between *dil* and *dilbar*, *ján* and *jánán*.

Marfat.com

Magian and Magian boy, Fire-priest and High Priest, all with loins
girt up for His service.
I, ashamed of my Muhammadanism, stood there concealed in a
corner.
The elder enquired, 'Who is this?' They answered, 'A restless and
bewildered lover.'
He said, 'Give him a cup of pure wine, although he be an unbidden
guest.'
The fire-handed and fire-worshipping cup-bearer poured into the
goblet the burning fire.
When I drained it off, neither reason remained nor sense; thereby
were consumed both Infidelity and Faith.
I fell down intoxicated, and in that intoxication, in a tongue which
one cannot explain,
I heard this speech from [all] my limbs, even from the jugular vein
and the carotid artery:

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'

(Strophe II)

O Friend, I will not break my ties with Thee, even though with a
sword they should hew me limb from limb!
Truly a hundred lives were cheap on our part [to win] from Thy
mouth a sweet half-smile.
O Father, counsel me not against love, for this son [of thine] will
not prove susceptible [to counsel]!
People counsel these [others]: O would that they would counsel
me concerning Thy love!
I know the road to the street of safety, but what can I do? for I am
fallen into the snare.
In the church I said to a Christian charmer of hearts, 'O thou in
whose net the heart is captive!
'O thou to the warp of whose girdle each hair-tip of mine is sepa-
rately attached!
'How long [wilt thou continue] not to find the way to the Divine
Unity? How long wilt thou impose on the One the shame of
the Trinity?
'How can it be right to name the One True God "Father," "Son,"
and "Holy Ghost"?'
She parted her sweet lips and said to me, while with sweet laughter
she poured sugar from her lips:

Marfat.com

'If thou art aware of the Secret of the Divine Unity, do not cast on us the stigma of infidelity!

'In three mirrors the Eternal Beauty cast a ray from His effulgent countenance.

'Silk does not become three things if thou callest it *Parniyán*, *Ḥarír* and *Parand*[1],'

Whilst we were thus speaking, this chant rose up beside us from the church-bell:

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone![2]'

(*Strophe III*)

Last night I went to the street of the wine-seller, my heart boiling and seething with the fire of love.

I beheld a bright and beautiful gathering presided over by the wine-selling elder.

The attendants stood row on row, the wine-drinkers sat shoulder to shoulder.

The elder sat in the chief seat and the wine-drinkers around him, some drunk and some dazed,

With breasts devoid of malice and hearts pure, the heart full of talk and the lips silent.

The eyes of all, by the Eternal Mercy, beholding the Truth, and their ears hearkening to secrets.

The greeting of this one to that one, 'Wassail!' the response of that one to this one, 'Drink-hale'!

With ears for the harp and eyes on the goblet, and the desire of both worlds in their embrace.

Advancing respectfully, I said, 'O thou whose heart is the abode of the Angel *Surúsh*[3],

'I am an afflicted and needy lover: behold my pain and strive to remedy it!'

The elder, smiling, said to me mockingly: 'O thou to whom the Guide of Reason is a devoted[3] slave!

[1] All these words, of which the first and last are Persian and the other Arabic, mean silk.

[2] *Surúsh* with the Zoroastrians, like *Jibra'íl* (Gabriel) with the Muhammadans, is the Angel who brings revelation.

[3] Literally "with a ring in the ear," a sign of servitude.

Marfat.com

'Where art thou, and where are we[1], O thou for shame of whom the
daughter of the grape[2] sits with veiled face?'
I said to him, 'My soul is consumed! Give me a draught of water,
and abate my fire from its vehemence!
'Last night I was consumed by this fire: alas if my to-night be as
my yestere'en!'
He said smiling, 'Ho! Take the cup!' I took it. He cried, 'Ha!
Drink no more!'
I drained a draught and became free from the pain of understanding
and the trouble of sense.
When I came to my senses I saw for a moment One, and all else
mere lines and figures.
Suddenly in the temples of the Angelic World the *Surúsh*[3] whispered
these words into my ear:

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'

(*Strophe IV*)

Open the eye of the heart that thou mayst behold the spirit, that
thou mayst see that which is not to be seen.
If thou wilt turn thy face towards the Realm of Love thou wilt see
all the horizons a garden of roses.
Thou wilt behold the revolution of the cycle of heaven favourable to
all the people of this earth.
That which thou seest thy heart will desire, and that which thy heart
desireth thou wilt see.
The headless and footless beggar of that place thou wilt see heavy-
headed with the dominion of the world[4].
There also thou wilt see a bare-footed company with their feet set
on the summit of the Guard-stars[5].

[1] That is, how far apart are we.

[2] Wine, who must veil her face before the stranger (*nú-maḥram*).

[3] See p. 294 *supra*, n. 2 *ad calc.*

[4] *I.e.* even the veriest beggar in the Realm of Love exercises in this lower world such authority as do the kings and rulers of earth, and is as much preoccupied by his responsibility as they are.

[5] *Farqadán*, two bright stars in Ursa Minor, called "the Guards" or "Guardians" (from the Spanish word *guardare*, "to behold") because of their "singular use in navigation." See vol. ii of my *Traveller's Narrative*, p. 125, *ad calc.*

Marfat.com

There also thou wilt see a bare-headed assembly canopied overhead by the throne of God.
Each one at the time of ecstasy and song thou wilt see shaking his sleeves over the two worlds[1].
In the heart of each atom which thou cleavest thou wilt behold a sun in the midst.
If thou givest whatsoever thou hast to Love, may I be accounted an infidel if thou shouldst suffer a grain of loss!
If thou meltest thy soul in the fire of Love, thou wilt find Love the Alchemy of Life;
Thou wilt pass beyond the narrow straits of dimensions, and wilt behold the spacious realms of the Placeless;
Thou shalt hear what ear hath not heard, and shalt see what eye hath not seen;
Until they shall bring thee to a place where of the world and its people thou shalt behold One alone.
To that One shalt thou make love with heart and soul, until with the eye of certainty thou shalt clearly see

'That He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'

(Strophe V)

From door and wall, unveiled, the Friend shines radiant, O ye who have eyes to see!
Thou seekest a candle whilst the sun is on high: the day is very bright whilst thou art in darkest night.
If thou wilt but escape from thy darkness thou shalt behold all the universe the dawning-place of lights.
Like a blind man thou seekest guide and staff for this clear and level road.
Open thine eyes on the Rose-garden, and behold the gleaming of the pure water alike in the rose and the thorn.
From the colourless water [are derived] a hundred thousand colours: behold the tulip and the rose in this garden-ground.
Set thy foot in the path of search, and with Love furnish thyself with provision for this journey.
By Love many things will be made easy which in the sight of Reason are very difficult.

[1] *I.e.* snapping his fingers at them, taking no account of them.

Marfat.com

Speak of the Friend in the mornings and the evenings: seek for the Friend in the gloaming and at dawn.
Though they tell thee a hundred times '*Thou shalt not see me*[1],' still keep thine eyes fixed on the Vision,
Until thou shalt reach a place to which the foot of Fancy and the eye of Thought cannot attain.
Thou shalt find the Friend in an assembly whereunto not even Gabriel the trusted hath access. 85
This is the Road, this thy Provision, this the Halting-place: if thou art a roadsman, come and bring!
And if thou art not equal to the Road, then, like the others, talk of the Friend and scratch the back of thy head[2]!
O Hátif, the meaning of the Gnostics, whom they sometimes call drunk and sometimes sober,
[When they speak] of the Wine, the Cup, the Minstrel, the Cup-bearer, the Magian, the Temple, the Beauty and the Girdle,
Are those hidden secrets which they sometimes declare in cryptic utterance. 90
If thou shouldst find thy way to their secret thou wilt discover that even this is the secret of those mysteries,

'He is One and there is naught but He:
There is no God save Him alone!'

[1] *Lan taráni*, the answer given to Moses when he desired to see God face to face. See *Qur'án*, vii, 139.
[2] Like one bewildered or undecided.

Marfat.com

CHAPTER VII.

POETS OF THE QÁJÁR PERIOD.

Revival of poetry under the Qájárs.

The Qájár rule was strong though severe, and, in spite of its harshness, was, perhaps, welcome on the whole to a country which had suffered seventy years of anarchy and civil war. The brief and bloody reign of the eunuch Áqá Muḥammad Khán[1], who once more carried the Persian standards into Georgia and captured Tiflis, was followed by the milder administration of his nephew Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh (A.D. 1797–1834), to whose influence Riḍá-qulí Khán, in the Introduction to his *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, ascribes the revival of poetry and the restoration of a better literary taste. He himself wrote verses under the pen-name of Kháqán, and gathered round him a host of poets to whose lives and work several monographs are devoted, such as the *Zínatu'l-Madá'iḥ*, the *Anjuman-i-Kháqán*, the *Gulshan-i-Maḥmúd* and *Saftnatu'l-Maḥmúd*, the *Nigáristán-i-Dárá*, and the *Tadhkira-i-Muḥammad-Sháhí*, all of which are described by Rieu in his *Supplementary Catalogue of the Persian MSS. in the British Museum* (pp. 84–91), and most of which were utilized by the above-mentioned Riḍá-qulí Khán. One of them, the *Gulshan-i-Maḥmúd*, contains notices of forty-eight of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh's sons who wrote poetry, and at a later date the Royal Family supplied Persia with another verse-making autocrat in Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh (A.D. 1848–1896), but these kingly outpourings need detain only those who accept the dictum *Kalámu'l-Mulúk Mulúku'l-Kalám* ("the Words of Kings are the Kings of Words").

[1] Though practically supreme for eighteen years (A.D. 1779–1797), he was not crowned until 1796 and was assassinated in the following year.

Marfat.com

These poets of the earlier Qájár period might very well have been included in the preceding chapter, but for the inordinate length which it has already attained.

Reversion to earlier models.

The only respect in which they differed from their immediate predecessors was in their reversion to earlier models and their repudiation of the school typified by 'Urfí, Ṣá'ib, Shawkat, and their congeners. This fact is established from two opposite quarters. On the one hand Shiblí, as we have seen[1], takes the view that Persian poetry, which began with Rúdakí, ended with Ṣá'ib, and that Qá'ání and the moderns did but imitate the older classical poets, especially Farrukhí and Minúchihrí. Riḍá-qulí Khán takes the same view of the facts, but puts on them a quite different interpretation. According to him[2], Persian poetry had long been on the decline and at the end of the pre-Qájár period had become thoroughly decadent, so that the early Qájár poets did well to break away from the ideals of their immediate predecessors and revert to earlier models, amongst which he especially mentions the poems of Kháqání, 'Abdu'l-Wási'-i-Jabalí, Farrukhí, Minúchihrí, Rúdakí, Qaṭrán, 'Unṣurí, Mas'úd-i-Sa'd-i-Salmán, Saná'í, Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, Abu'l-Faraj-i-Rúní, Anwarí, Asadí, Firdawsí, Niẓámí, Sa'dí, Azraqí, Mukhtárí, Mu'izzí, Lámi'í, Náṣir-i-Khusraw and Adíb Ṣábir, all of whom flourished before the Fall of the Caliphate and the Mongol Invasion in the middle of the thirteenth century. Of the later poets Ḥáfiẓ was perhaps the only one who retained an undiminished prestige in the eyes of his countrymen, and it is doubtful how far even he served as a model, though this was perhaps rather because he was inimitable than because he was out of fashion, like Jámí, 'Urfí and Ṣá'ib, who lost and never regained the

Divergent taste of Persian and Indian critics.

[1] Pp. 164 and 265 *supra*, and *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, vol. iii, p. 189.

[2] Fifth (unnumbered) page of the Introduction to the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*.

Marfat.com

position they had once held in their own country. Henceforth, therefore, the divergence between Turkish and Indian taste on the one hand and Persian taste on the other increases, while the action of the British rulers of India[1] in substituting Urdú for Persian as the polite language of that country in 1835–6 tended still further to cut off India from the intellectual and literary currents of modern Persia.

It would be easy with the help of the Biographies of Poets mentioned above and others of a later period to compile a list of a hundred or two more or less eminent poets of the Qájár period, but it will be sufficient for our purpose to mention ten or a dozen of those who followed the classical tradition. Nor is it necessary to group them according to the reigns in which they flourished, though it will be convenient to arrange them in chronological order. Of one great family of poets, the sons and grandsons of Wiṣál (Mírzá Shafí', commonly called Mírzá Kúchuk) who died in 1262/1846, it was my privilege to meet several, including the brothers Farhang and Yazdání, at Shíráz in the spring of 1888[2]. The latter was accompanied by his own son and the son of his deceased brother who wrote under the pen-name of Himmat. Of the three elder brothers, sons of Wiṣál, the eldest, Wiqár, was about forty-two years of age when Riḍá-qulí Khán[3] met him in Ṭihrán in 1274/1857–8, while the second, Mírzá Maḥmúd the physician, who adopted the *takhalluṣ* of Ḥakím, died in 1268/1851. Of the third, Dáwarí, a specimen of whose work is quoted in translation in vol. ii of my *Literary History*, pp. 41–42, I do not know the date of decease. As his poems have not, I think, been published, I here give the Persian text on which the trans-

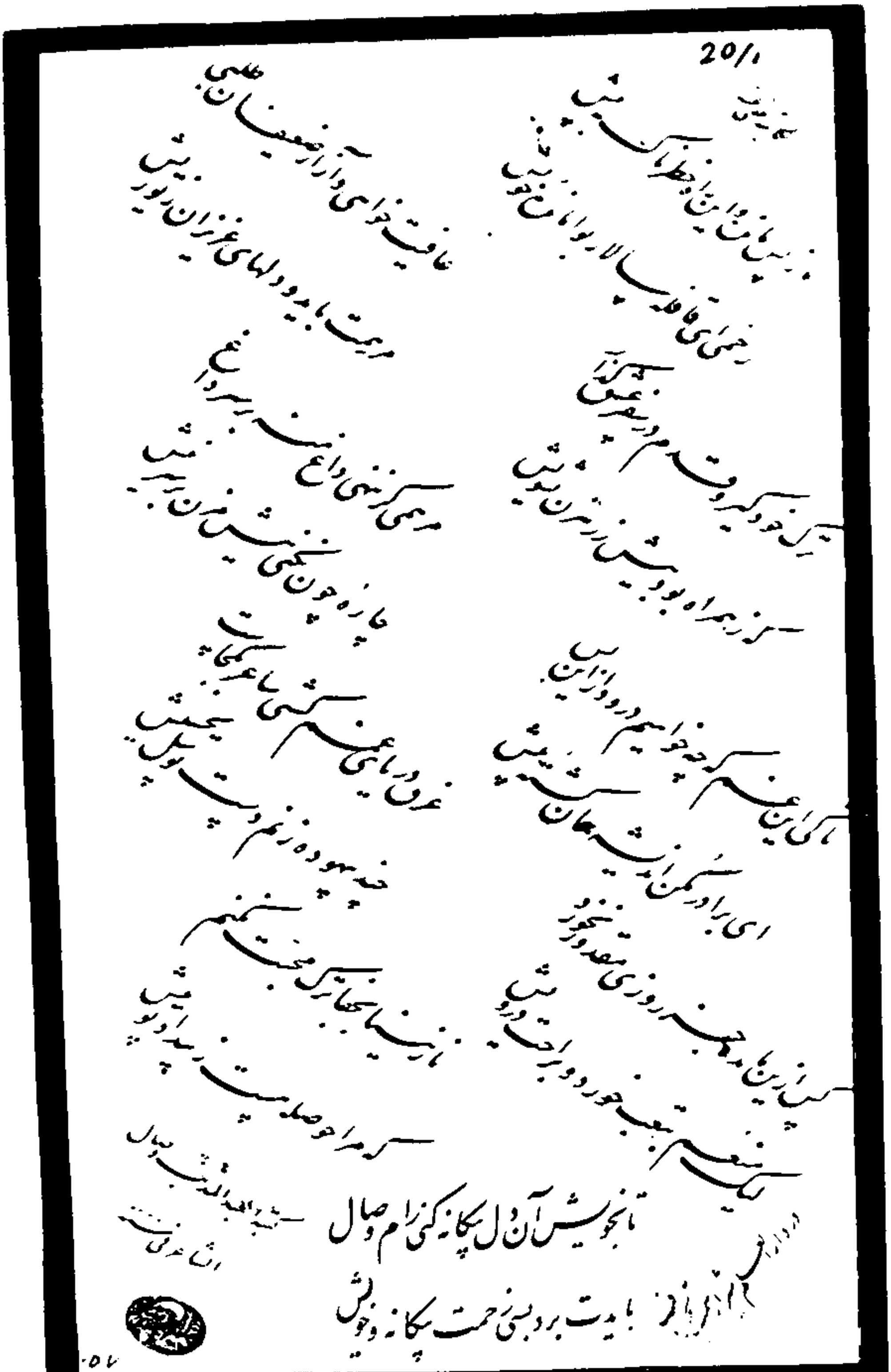
Wiṣál and his family.

[1] At or about the same time they ceased to subsidise the publication of Oriental texts, thus inflicting a great injury on Oriental studies.

[2] See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 267–8, and also p. 119.

[3] *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, vol. ii, p. 548.

Marfat.com



Autograph of the poet **Wiṣál**

Or. 4936 (Brit. Mus.), 20

To face p. 300

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

lation above mentioned is based. It is taken from a small manuscript selection of his poems[1] given to me in Ṭihrán in the winter of 1887–8 by my late friend the Nawwáb Mírzá Ḥasan 'Alí Khán, one of his admirers and patrons.

Two stanzas of a *musammaṭ* by Dáwarí.

ای بچه عرب صَبَّحَكَ آللّٰه بِخَیْرا'
صبح است صبوحی بده آن ساغرِ می‌را'
زآن می که بقطب ار بدهی جرعهٔ ویرا'
بر پات بساید سر اکلیل جُدَی‌را'
کردند بناتش بفدا چون تو بُنَی‌را'
چون چرخ زنی گردِ خمِ باده جُدَی وار'
گر نیست ترا باده یکی شیشه ببر کش'
بر خیز و عبارا عربی وار بسر کش'
همچون عربان دامنِ خود تا بکمر کش'
یکدست عبا شیشه بدان دستِ دگر کش'
با دامنِ تر منّت از آن دامن تر کش'
وز خانه برو تا بدرِ خانهٔ خمّار'

This mention of my kind friend the Nawwáb reminds me of a quaint incident which occurred while I was his guest at Ṭihrán in the early part of the year 1888, and which shows how relatively unprofitable is the profession of a Persian poet now compared to what it was in the "good old days" when a poet's mouth was sometimes filled with gold or pearls as the reward of a successful poem which hit the taste of his patron. A minor poet, whose name I forget, if ever I knew it, came one day to the Nawwáb's house and

The modest reward of a modern panegyrist.

[1] These selections are now bound up in my MS. bearing the class-mark **Y. 1.** The whole *musammaṭ* contains eight strophes, of which only the first two are here given.

Marfat.com

asked and obtained permission to recite a poem which he had composed in his praise. On its conclusion he received the sum of one *túmán* (at that time worth about six shillings), with which he departed, apparently very well contented. But so far from the gift being deemed insignificant, the Nawwáb was subsequently reproached by some of his friends for turning the poet's head and making him imagine that he could earn an honest livelihood by writing poetry!

Another cause of the decline of panegyric.

This is no doubt one of the causes which are tending to put an end to the old style of poetry, especially the panegyric *qaṣída*. Another still more potent one is the position attained by the Press since the Revolution of 1905–6, for the poet now tends more and more to write for the people as a whole rather than for some special patron. The transition can be very well seen in the case of poets like the unfortunate Mírzá Jahángír Khán of Shíráz, the proprietor and editor of that remarkable product of the Revolution the weekly *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl*, whose life, death, and literary activities in connection with that great national upheaval are fully discussed in my previous works, the *Persian Revolution* and the *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*. As a poet and writer of the Revolution only did I know him until lately, when I received from my accomplished friend and former pupil Mr W. A. Smart, one of the most sympathetic Consular officers ever sent to Persia from this country, a large fragment (292 pages) of an untitled, anonymous, acephalous and incomplete Persian manuscript work[1] containing accounts of thirty-eight poets, mostly of Fárs, who were either still living in A.D. 1910 or who had died in the course of the preceding forty years. Amongst these mention is made of Mírzá Jahángír Khán (pp. 74–77), and specimens are given of his earlier pre-revolutionary poems, including one addressed to his friends at Shíráz from

[1] It bears the class-mark J. 19 in my library.

Marfat.com

Ṭihrán, which are quite in the classical style, and bear no traces of the modern peculiarities. Two other not less eminent "transition poets" mentioned in this extraordinarily interesting volume are Abu'l-Ḥasan Mírzá, a grandson of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, born in 1264/1848, and commonly entitled Ḥájji Shaykhu'r-Ra'ís, chiefly known as a philosophical and political writer and a strong advocate of Pan-Islamism, who also wrote poetry, mostly topical, but in the classical forms, under the pen-name of Ḥayrat (pp. 102–121 of my MS.); and the eminent journalist *Adíbu'l-Mamálik*[1] (born in 1277/1860–1), a descendant in the third degree of Mírzá 'Ísá the *Qá'im-Maqám*, who composed verse under the pen-name of Amírí of Faráhán (pp. 39–50 of my MS.). The new poets of the Revolution were therefore, except in the case of the younger ones who have appeared since that epoch-making event, to a large extent the poets of the old school who had sufficient enthusiasm and flexibility to adapt themselves to the new conditions. But the transition itself is marked by as hard and fast a line as can mark any such historical transition, that line lying in the years 1906–7. Of course an abundance of poetry of the old type is still being produced, and I myself was gratified and honoured on the occasion of my sixtieth birthday (February 7, 1922) by receiving an album of verses contributed by sixteen of the most notable contemporary poets, besides a separate *qaṣída* from 'Imádu'l-Kuttáb, that Benvenuto Cellini of contemporary Persia.

The transition poets of the Revolution.

Nor is there any reason to apprehend the early disappearance of the old verse-forms. The panegyric (as opposed to the philosophical and didactic) *qaṣída* will probably become rarer for the reasons given above, but the *mathnawí*, *ghazal* and *rubá'í* will survive as long as mysticism, love and epigram continue to interest the Persians.

The older forms of poetry in no danger of extinction.

[1] See pp. 37–39 of my *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*.

Marfat.com

After these preliminary general remarks on the poetry of the latest epoch, we may pass to the consideration of some of its chief representatives. For information as to those who flourished before about A.D. 1870 my chief sources have been the three works of that industrious writer Riḍá-qulí Khán, poetically surnamed Hidáyat, to wit the large general biography of Persian poets entitled *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* ("the Concourse of the Eloquent"); the smaller biography entitled *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* ("Gardens of the Gnostics"), which deals chiefly with the mystical poets; and the Supplement to Mírkhwánd's *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*, which carries that well-known general history down to about 1857 and was already well advanced in 1272/1855–6, when the author returned from the embassy to Khwárazm described in his *Safárat-náma*, of which the Persian text was published by the late M. Ch. Schefer with a French translation in 1876–9[1]. At the end of the ninth volume of the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá* (the second of the Supplement), which concludes the reign of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, several pages (unfortunately unnumbered, so that exact references are impossible) are devoted to the notable statesmen, poets, theologians and other eminent men of that period which sometimes contain biographical material lacking in the two earlier monographs. From these three sources, so far as they extend, the following particulars are chiefly drawn, but I have also made use of a rare manuscript work (possibly an autograph) entitled *Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá*, a biography of contemporary poets by Mírzá 'Alí Akbar of Shíráz, who himself wrote poetry under the pen-name of

Biographies of modern poets.

Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá.

Riyáḍu'l-Árifín.

Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá (Supplement).

Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá.

[1] Brief notices of these and other published works of the same author will be found in Mr E. Edwards's excellent *Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum* (London, 1922), columns 631–2.

Marfat.com

Bismil, composed about 1237/1821–2. This fine MS., written throughout in a large, clear *naskh* with rubrications, formerly belonged to the late Sir Albert Houtum-Schindler, and now bears in my library the class-mark J. 18. Mention is made of this author and his work by Riḍá-qulí Khán (who in his youth used to see him at Shíráz) both in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (ii, pp. 82–3) and the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* (pp. 243–4).

(1) Saḥáb (d. 1222/1807–8).

Saḥáb (d. 1222/1807–8).

Sayyid Muḥammad of Iṣfahán, poetically surnamed *Saḥáb*, was the son of that Sayyid Aḥmad *Hátif* mentioned at the end of the preceding chapter as almost the only notable Persian poet of the eighteenth century. Riḍá-qulí Khán (*M.F.*, ii, 207–11) says that he was held in high honour by Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, for whom he composed, besides numerous panegyrics, a book of memoirs (presumably of poets) entitled *Rashaḥát-i-Saḥáb*, which I have never met with, and that his *Díwán* comprises only some five thousand verses. The following, censuring the conceit and arrogance of certain poets, are of some interest[1]:

کس‌را کمالِ نفس بجز حُسْنِ حال چیست،
و آن‌را که حسنِ حال نباشد کمال چیست،
شعرست هیچ و شاعری از هیچ هیچ‌تر،
در حیرتم که در سرِ هیچ این جدال چیست،
یك تن نپرسد از پی ترتیبِ چند لفظ،
ای ابلهانِ بی هنر این قیل و قال چیست،
از بهر مصرعی دو که مضمونِ دیگریست،
چندین خیالِ جاه و تمنّای مال چیست،

[1] *M.F.*, ii, p. 211.

Marfat.com

شعر اصلش از خیال بود حُسْنش از مُحال،
تا از خیالِ این همه فکرِ مُحال چیست،
از چند لفظِ یاوه نَزَدَ لافِ برتری،
هر کس که یافت شرم چه و انفعال چیست،
صد نوع از این کمال برِ اهل رای و هوش،
با حُسْنِ ذات عامی نیکو خصال چیست،
گیرم که نظمِ بحر دُر و کانِ گوهرست،
با نثرِ کلکِ داورِ دریا نوال چیست،

"Wherein save in good nature lies anyone's 'perfection[1],' and what 'perfection' can there be to him who has not good nature?
Poetry is naught, and the poet's vocation less than naught: I wonder what is all this quarrel about nothing!
No one will ask about the arrangement of a few words: O fools devoid of merit, what is all this talk?
On account of one or two hemistichs expressing some one else's ideas, what is all this thought of position and hope of wealth?
The root of poetry is phantasy, and its beauty lies in the impossible[2]: what can result from the imagining of all these impossible ideas?
Whoever has discovered what shame and modesty are will not boast of superiority on account of a few silly words.
What in the eyes of men of judgment and sense are a hundred sorts of such 'perfection' compared with the good nature of an ordinary well-disposed man?
I grant that the *naẓm* (arrangement, or verse) of the ocean is pearls and mines of precious stones: but what is it compared with the *ṉathr* (scattering, or prose) of the pen of that Lord whose bounty is as that of the ocean?"

[1] *Kamál* ("Perfection") means especially literary attainments. Cf. pp. 26–7 *supra*.

[2] The Arabs say "the best poetry is that which contains most lies," and the exaggeration characteristic of most Persian panegyrists is notorious. Cf. *Lit. Hist. Persia*, ii, pp. 69–70.

Marfat.com

(2) Mijmar (d. 1225/1810–11).

Mijmar (d. 1225/1810-11).

Sayyid Ḥusayn-i-Ṭabáṭabá'í of Ardistán near Iṣfahán, who earned the title of *Mujtahidu'sh-Shu'ará*, is noticed by Riḍá-qulí Khán in all three of his above-mentioned works. He owed his introduction to the Persian Court to his fellow-townsman and fellow-poet Mírzá 'Abdu'l-Wahháb *Nashát*, who survived him by eighteen or nineteen years. He appears to have died young, for Riḍá-qulí Khán, after praising his verse, of which but a small collection was left, says that "had he lived longer, he would probably have attained the utmost distinction," but even as it is he is one of the five poets of this period whom my accomplished old friend Ḥájji Mírzá Yaḥyá of Dawlatábád placed in the first class[1]. Copies of his poems are rare, but the British Museum possesses a manuscript of his *Kulliyyát*, or collected works[2]. I can find nothing very noteworthy in Riḍá-qulí Khán's selections, but the two following riddles, the first on the Wind and the second on the Pen, taken from the *Tadhkira i-Dilgushá*, may serve as specimens of his work.

لُغز باد

چیست آن پیكِ مبارك مقدمِ فرّخ جناب،
روز و شب اندر تحرّك سال و مه اندر شتاب،
نافه‌اش در دامن و اندر گریبانش عبیر،
عنبرش در جیب و اندر آستینش مشكِ ناب،
رهروی بی پا و سر دیوانهٔ بی عقل و هوش،
عاشقی بی خان و مان آوارهٔ بیخورد و خواب،

[1] See p. 225 *supra*. The others are *Furúghí*, *Ṣabá* (not *Ṣafá*), *Nashát*, and *Qá'ání* in the first class; *Wiṣál* and Riḍá-qulí Khán *Hidáyat* in the second; and *Wiqár* and *Surúsh* in the third.

[2] Or. 3543. See *B.M.P.S.*, No. 354, pp. 222–3.

Marfat.com

کس نمیداند که از عشقِ که باشد بیقرار،
کس نمی یابد که از هجرِ که دارد اضطراب،
آب از او چون دلِ عشّاق از زلفِ بُتان،
گاه باشد در سلاسل که بود در پیچ و تاب،
مُرده که از او زمین و زنده که از او جهان،
چون قوی از پیری و همچون طبیعت از شباب،

"What is that messenger of auspicious advent and fortunate presence who is moving every day and night and hastening every year and month?
Who carries musk-pods in his skirt and perfume in his collar, ambergris in his pocket, and pure musk in his sleeve?
A traveller without foot or head, a madman without sense or reason, a lover without abode or habitation, a wanderer without food or sleep.
None knoweth for love of whom he is so restless; none discovereth through separation from whom he is so troubled.
Through him water becomes, like the hearts of lovers through the tresses of their idols, now wreathed in chains, now twisted and tormented.
Now the earth dies through him, and again the world lives through him, like the faculties through old age and like the nature through youth."

لُغز قلم

گُلبُنِ باغِ نفسِ ناطقه‌را، من بکی ابرِ گوهر افشانم،
هم شکر ریز و هم عبیر افشان، لبِ دلدار و زلفِ جانانم،
در دُر افشانی و گُهَر ریزی، طبع دستور و دستِ سلطانم،

"To the rose-bush of the garden of the reasoning faculty I am a cloud raining down pearls,
Both pouring forth sugar and diffusing perfume [like] the darling's lips and the sweetheart's tresses.
In scattering pearls and pouring forth jewels I am [like] the nature of the Minister and the hand of the King."

Marfat.com

(3) Ṣabá (d. 1238/1822–3).

Ṣabá (d. 1238/1822–3).

Fatḥ-'Alí Khán of Káshán, with the pen-name of Ṣabá, was poet-laureate (*Maliku'sh-Shu'ará*) to Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh. Riḍá-qulí Khán, who mentions him in all three of his works, says that no poet equal to him had appeared in Persia for nearly seven hundred years, and that some critics prefer his *Shahinsháh-náma* to the *Sháhnáma* of Firdawsí[1]. He also composed a *Khudá-wand-náma*, an *'Ibrat-náma*, and a *Gulshan-i-Ṣabá*, while his *Díwán* is said to comprise ten or fifteen thousand verses. He was for a time governor of Qum and Káshán, but latterly devoted himself entirely to the Sháh's service. In his youth he was the pupil of his fellow-townsman the poet Ṣabáḥí, who was a contemporary of Hátif and Ádhar, and died, according to the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, in 1206/1791–2. His eldest son Mírzá Ḥusayn Khán, poetically surnamed 'Andalíb ("Nightingale"), succeeded him in the laureateship. His poetry, being mostly panegyric, has little attraction for us, but is extraordinarily melodious, as the following extract from a *qaṣída* quoted in the *Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá* (which I think it unnecessary to translate, since the beauty lies in the form only) will show:

عیدست و عشرت‌را بقا بر درگهِ شه ره نما'
در دم نوای مرحبا بر لب سرودِ آفرین'
عیدست و شاهانِ جهان گویان بهم در آستان'
بر خاست بانگِ بارهان بنشست شاهِ راد هین'
عیدست و از نوبت سرا آوازِ کوس و بانگِ نای'
در کاخِ هفت اختر صدا در کاسِ نُه گردون طنین'
شهزادگان خورشید فر بر کلّهٔ پروین سپر'
بر جانشان پا تا بسر در آفرین جان آفرین'

[1] *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín*, p. 264. The *Shahinsháh-náma* was lithographed in Bombay in 1890.

Marfat.com

بر ز آسمان‌شان پایگه بل آسمان‌شان خاکِ ره‘
دیدار رشکِ مهر و مه گفتار رازِ داد و دین‘
شه‌را مهین بر آستان با شه سرایان داستان‘
گوهر فشان بر آستان چندانکه شه از آستین‘
فضل و هنر آب و گِلش آسان از آن هر مشکلش‘
گنجِ جواهر در دلش گنجورِ قدرت‌را دفین‘
در پیشگاهی کآسمان بنهاده سر در آستان‘
عکسی از آن باغِ جنان فرشی برآن عرشِ برین‘
شاهنشهِ فرخنده خو با صدرِ اعظم راز گو‘
گلبرگ رُو کافور مُو آن پس نگر این پیش بین‘
برجیس سان خورشید سا آن در سخن این در سخا‘
چون پورِ پیر برخیا چون رودِ رادِ آبتین‘[1]
کار آگهی فرّخ لقا از آن صفاهان در صفا‘
بر رنجِ درویشی دوا بر گنج سلطانی امین‘
برتر ز گردون پایه‌اش افزون ز اَنْجُم مایه‌اش‘
زین دو بهین پیرایه‌اش روی نکو رای رزین‘
زیبِ بساط شه نشاط آری نشاط و انبساط‘
اطفالِ معنی‌را قماط از کلک و از حبر انگبین‘
هر طفلِ معنی کآورد گر بخوردش از جان خرد‘
ندهد بلی چون بگذرد ناقص ثمن مثمن ثمین‘

[1] The "aged son of Barkhiyá" is Ásaf, Solomon's *Wazír*; the "noble son of Ábtín" is the legendary King Firídún. I have made a slight but necessary emendation in the penultimate and antepenultimate words of this line.

Marfat.com

(4) Nashát (d. 1244/1828-9).

Passing over Mírzá Muḥammad-qulí Afshár *Ulfat* (d. 1240/1824–5) and Áqá 'Alí Ashraf *Ágáh* (d. 1244/1828-9), the younger brother of the poet *Bismil*, both of whom were personally known to Riḍá-qulí Khán, we come to Mírzá 'Abdu'l-Wahháb of Iṣfahán, celebrated as a calligraphist as well as a poet, and master of the three languages, Arabic, Persian and Turkish. After nearly ruining himself by his prodigal hospitality and liberality to poets, mystics and men of letters, he gained the favour of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, who conferred on him the title of *Mu'tamadu'd-Dawla*. He excelled in the *ghazal*, and his best-known work is entitled *Ganjína* (the "Treasury"). The following chronogram gives the date of his death (A.H. 1244):

Nashát (d. 1244/1828–9).

از قلبِ جهان نشاط رفته'

"*Nashát* (Joy) hath departed from the heart of the world."

(5) Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim Qá'im-maqám (put to death in 1251/1835).

Two eminent men, father and son, bore this title (of which the literal meaning is exactly equivalent to "lieutenant," in the sense of vicar or deputy), Mírzá 'Ísá of Faráhán, called Mírzá Buzurg, who acted as Deputy Prime Minister to Prince 'Abbás Mírzá and died in 1247/1831–2; and his son Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim, who, on the death of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, fell into disgrace, and was put to death by his successor Muḥammad Sháh on June 26, 1835[1]. The latter was, from the literary point of view, the more remarkable, but though he wrote

Mírzá Abu'l-Qá-im *Qá'im-maqám* (d. 1251–1835).

[1] See R. G. Watson's *History of Persia*, pp. 271–2 and 287–8. His estimate of this Minister's character differs very widely from that of Riḍá-qulí Khán.

Marfat.com

poetry under the pen-name of *Thaná'í*, he is more celebrated as a prose-writer, his numerous published letters being regarded by his countrymen as models of good style. I possess a collection of his writings, both prose and verse, compiled at the instance of the late Prince Farhád Mírzá in 1281/1864–5, and lithographed at Tabríz in 1282/1865–6, of which the letters, addressed to various more or less eminent contemporaries but only occasionally bearing dates[1], occupy by far the larger portion. Many of them are diplomatic documents of some historical importance, *e.g.* the apology addressed to the Tsar of Russia for the murder of the Minister Grebaiodoff and his staff at Ṭihrán on February 11, 1829[2], which is here given as a specimen of the Qá'im-maqám's much admired style.

نامهٔ شاهنشاهی بامپراطور اعظم در باب گذشتن خون ایلچی
بآن طور که خواهش کرده بودند،

اوّلِ دفتر بنامِ ایزدِ دانا، صانع پروردگار حیّ و توانا،

وجودی بی مثل و مانند مبرّا از چون و چند که عادل و عالم است و قاهرِ هر ظالم پاداشِ هر نیك و بدرا اندازه و حدّ نهاده بحکمتِ بالغهٔ خود بدکاران‌را زجر و عذاب کند و نیکوکاران‌را اجر و ثواب بخشد، و درود نامعدود بر روان پیغمبران راست کار و پیشوایان فرخنده کردار باد، و بعد، بر رای حقایق نمای پادشاهِ ذی جاهِ انصاف کیشِ عدالت اندیش تاجدار با زیب و فرّ شهریارِ بحر و برّ برادر والا گُهر خجسته اختر امپراطور ممالك روسیه و مضافات که دولتش با جاه و خطر است و رایتش با فتح و ظفر مخفی و مستور نماناد که ایلچی آن

[1] Shawwál, 1238 (June–July, 1823), is the earliest date I have noticed.
[2] The circumstances are fully given by R. G. Watson, *op. cit.*, pp. 247–57.

Marfat.com

دولت‌را در پای تخت این دولت باقتضای حوادث دهر و غوغای
کسانِ او با جُهّالِ شهر آسیبی رسید که تدبیر و تدارك آن
بر ذمّهٔ کارگذاران این دوست واقعی واجب و لازم افتاد، لهذا
اوّلاً برای تمهیدِ مقدّمات عذرخواهی و پاسِ شوکت و احترامِ آن
برادر گرامی فرزندِ ارجمندِ خود خسرو میرزارا بپای تختِ دولتِ
بهیّهٔ روسیه فرستاد، حقیقتِ ناگاهی این حادثه و نا آگاهی
اُمنای این دولت‌را در تلو نامهٔ صادقانه مرقوم و معلوم داشتیم
و ثانیًا نظر بکمالِ یگانگی و اتّفاق [که] ما بین این دو حضرت
آسمان رفعت هست انتقامِ ایلچی مزبوررا بر ذمّت سلطنتِ خود
ثابت دانسته هر گرا از اهالی و سُکّانِ دار الخلافه گمان میرفت
که درین کار زشت و کردار ناسزا اندك مدخلیّتی تواند داشت
باندازهٔ استحقاق موردِ سیاست و حدّ و اخراجِ بلد نمودیم حتّی
داروغهٔ شهر و کدخدای محلّه‌را نیز بهمین جرم که چرا دیر
خبردار شده و قبل از وقوعِ این حادثه ضابطهٔ شهر و محلّه‌را
محکم نداشته‌اند عزل و تنبیه و ترجمان کردیم، بالاتر از
اینها همه پاداش و سزائی بود که نسبت بعالیجناب میرزا
مسیح وارد آمد با مرتبهٔ اجتهاد در دینِ اسلام و اقتفا و اقتدائی
که زمرهٔ خواصّ و عوامّ باو داشتند بواسطهٔ اجتماعی که مردم
شهر هنگام حدوث غایلهٔ ایلچی در دایرهٔ او کرده بودند گذشت
و اغماض‌را نظر باتّحادِ دولتَیْن شایسته ندیدیم و شفاعت هیچ
شفیع و توسّطِ هیچ واسطه در حقِّ او مقبول نیفتاد، پس چون
اعلام این گذارش بآن برادر نیکو سِیَر لازم بود بتحریر این نامهٔ
دوستی علامه پرداخته اعلامِ تفاصیل اوضاع‌را بفرزند مؤیّد موفّق
نایب السلطنه عبّاس میرزا محوّل داشتیم، امید از درگاهِ پروردگار
داریم که دم بدم مراتبِ وداد این دو دولت ابدیّت بنیاد در

Marfat.com

ترقّی و ازدیاد باشد و روابطِ دوستی و یگانگی حضرتَیْن پیوسته بآمد و شدِ رسل و رسایل متأکّد و متضاعف گردد و العاقبة بالعافیه،

تحریرًا فی شهر ربیع الاوّل سنه ۱۲۴۰،

" The Royal Letter to the Most Great Emperor concerning the reparations for the murder of the Envoy in such wise as was desired.

" The beginning of the record is in the Name of the All-Knowing God, The Living and All-Powerful Creator and Provider,—

—that Peerless and Incomparable Being, exempt from every 'how' and 'how much[1],' Who is just and wise, and subdueth every wrong-doer, Who hath set a measure and limit to the recompense of every good and evil deed, and Who, by His far-reaching wisdom, reproveth and punisheth the doers of evil, and rewardeth and recompenseth the well-doers. And countless blessings be upon the spirits of the righteous Prophets and beneficent Leaders[2].

But to proceed. Be it not hidden and concealed from the truth-discerning judgment of that most eminent, equitable, and just King, that brilliant and glorious Sovereign, that Lord of land and sea, my noble-natured and fortunate-starred brother, the Emperor of the Russian domains and their dependencies, whose rule is mighty and glorious, and whose standards are triumphant and victorious, that a disaster hath overtaken the Envoy of that State in the capital of this, by impulse of the vicissitudes of the time and the quarrels of his people with certain ignorant townsfolk, for which it is incumbent and obligatory on the acting officials of this Government to make reparation and give satisfaction. Therefore, in order to express our preliminary apologies and to satisfy the self-respect and honour of that esteemed brother, I have sent my dearly beloved son Khusraw Mírzá[3] to the capital of the glorious Russian State. In the course of a friendly letter we have expressed and explained the truth as to the suddenness of

[1] *I.e.* transcending quality and quantity.

[2] As the letter is addressed to a Christian sovereign, the usual specific mention of Muḥammad is replaced by this more general phrase.

[3] See R. G. Watson, *op. cit.*, pp. 254–6. He was the son of 'Abbás Mírzá and therefore the grandson of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh.

Marfat.com

this tragedy and the non-complicity of those responsible for the conduct of our Government; and secondly, having regard to the perfect accord and agreement existing between these two Heaven-high Courts, we have recognized it as incumbent on Our Royal Person to avenge the above-mentioned Envoy, and, according to his deserts, have chastised, punished or expelled from the country everyone of the inhabitants and dwellers in our Capital who was suspected of having participated in the slightest degree in this foul deed and improper action. We have even reprimanded and dismissed the chief constable of the city and the headman of the quarter, merely for the crime of being informed too late and of not having established a firmer control over the town before the occurrence of this catastrophe. Beyond all this was the retribution and punishment which befel His Reverence Mírzá Masíḥ, notwithstanding the rank of *mujtahid* which he holds in the religion of Islám and the respect and influence which he enjoys alike with gentle and simple, by reason of the assembly made by the townsfolk in his circle. Having regard to the concord of our two Governments, we have regarded as improper any overlooking of, or connivance at, such matters, nor hath the intercession or intervention of anyone been admitted in regard to him. Wherefore, since it was necessary to make known this procedure to that brother of goodly disposition, we have applied ourselves to the writing of this friendly letter, committing the elucidation of the details of these events to our divinely aided and favoured son Prince 'Abbás Mírzá, our Viceroy. The hope which we cherish from the Court of God is that every moment the extent of the mutual affection of these two States of ancient foundation may expand and increase, and that the bonds of friendship and unity of these two Courts may be continually confirmed and multiplied by the interchange of messengers and messages: and may the end be in welfare!

"Written in the month of the First Rabí', 1245" (September, 1829).

This letter, although professedly from Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, was, of course, really written by the Qá'im-maqám. It must have been gall and wormwood to him to be compelled to write so civilly, indeed so humbly, to the Russians, of whom he says in a poem commemorating a Persian victory by 'Abbás Mírzá over them and the Turks[1]:

"Rás-i-manḥás."

[1] *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, ii, p. 88.

Marfat.com

رومِ شوم و روسِ منحوس از دو جانب'
قصدشان تسخیرِ آذربایجان شد'

"The unlucky Turks and the ill-starred Russians on either side attempted the subjugation of Ádharbáyján,"

and in one of his letters to Mírzá Buzurg of Núr, written after the conclusion of peace with Russia (probably in 1243/1828), he laments that he no longer dares speak of the "*Rús-i-manḥús*" (the "sinister" or "ill-starred Russians"):

تالان سیم که در مقدّمهٔ روس میترسم بگویم منحوس

A later, greater, and more virtuous, but equally unfortunate, Persian Prime Minister, Mírzá Taqí Khán *Amír-i-Kabír*[1], still further simplified the style of official correspondence; but the *Qá'im-maqám's* letters, though they may not strike one unused to the flowery effusions of the preceding age as very simple, mark an immense advance on the detestable rhodomontades which had for too long passed as eloquent and admirable, and probably deserve the high esteem in which, as already mentioned, they are held by the best contemporary Persian taste and judgment. A critical annotated edition of these letters would be of considerable literary and historical value, and might with advantage engage the attention of some Persian scholar whose interests are not confined to a remote past.

Mírzá Taqí Khán *Amír-i-Kabír*.

(6) Wiṣál (d. 1262/1846) and his sons.

I have already mentioned Wiṣál, some of whose gifted sons and grandsons I was privileged to meet at Shíráz in the spring of 1888. He is generally regarded by his countrymen as one of the most eminent of the modern poets, and both Riḍá-qulí Khán, who devotes lengthy notices to him in all three of his works,

Wiṣál (d. 1262/1846) and his sons.

[1] For a most favourable sketch of his character, see R. G. Watson, *op. cit.*, pp. 404–6.

Marfat.com

and the poet Bismil, the author of the *Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá*, were personally acquainted with him, the latter intimately. His proper name was Mírzá [Muḥammad] Shafí', but he was commonly entitled "Mírzá Kúchuk," and he was a native of Shíráz. Bismil speaks in the most glowing terms of his skill in calligraphy and music as well as in verse, wherein he holds him "incomparable" (*'adímu'l-mithál*), and praises his lofty character and fidelity in friendship, but describes him as "rather touchy" (*andak súd-ranj*), a description illustrated by Riḍá-qulí Khán's remark (in the *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá*) that he was much vexed when the Sháh, meaning to praise him, told him that he was "prodigal of talents[1]." He is said to have written twelve thousand verses, which include, besides *qaṣídas* and *ghazals*, the *Bazm-i-Wiṣál* and the continuation and completion of Waḥshí's *Farhád u Shírín*, described as "far superior to the original[2]." He also translated into Persian the *Aṭwáqu'dh-Dhahab* ("Collars of Gold") of Zamakhsharí. Bismil, who professes to have read all his poems, only cites the relatively small number of 213 couplets, of which the following are fairly typical, and afford a good instance of what Persian rhetoricians call the "attribution of praise in the form of blame," for the *qaṣída* begins:

"The sea, the land, heaven and the stars—
Each one of them declares the King a tyrant—

an opening calculated to cause consternation to courtiers, until it is stated that the sea considers itself wronged by his liberality, the mountain because he has scattered its hoarded gold like dust, the stars because they are eclipsed in number and splendour by his hosts, and so forth. As

[1] باسراف در کمالات نسبت داد'

[2] فرهاد و شیرین وحشی‌را تمام فرموده و کمال فصاحت ظاهر نموده و بمراتب به از وحشی گفته'

Marfat.com

such far-fetched conceits can hardly be made attractive in translation, I again confine myself to quoting a few lines of the original:

هرکس شها ز بحر و بر و چرخ و اخترست‘
اقرار میکنند که خسرو ستمگرست‘
ز آنها یکیست بحر که نالد ز دستِ شاه‘
کآبم ازو برفت و کنون خاك بر سرست‘
اندخته‌ام تمام بپردخت و خود نگفت‘
کاین سنگریزه نیست که مرجان و گوهرست‘
دریا نشست و کوه بر آورد سر که داد‘
زین شاهِ جود پیشه مرا دل پر آذرست‘
بر من هر آنچه رفت بدریا ز شه نرفت‘
مرجان کجا بپایهٔ یاقوتِ احمرست‘
لعلی که جز بر افسرِ شاهان حرام باد‘
بی آب تر ز افسرِ شاهانش بر درست‘
زرِّ مرا ندیدی و آن عزّتی که داشت‘
با خاكِ ره ز جودِ وی اکنون برابرست‘
کوه‌است و سنگِ خویش کنون از سخای شاه‘
و آن نیز پیشِ حلم وی از کاه کمترست‘
افراخت چرخ سر که مرا شِکْوَه بیشتر‘
برفش فزون‌ترست که بامش فزون‌ترست‘
اختر مرا شمار نه و پیشِ لشکرش‘
اختر مگو که مُهْرهٔ چندم نبشش درست‘
خورشیدرا که چشم و چراغ زمانه بود‘
آتش بدل ز مجمرِ شاهش چو مجمرست‘

Marfat.com

تا کرد شیرِ رایتش آهنگِ آسمان،
شیرِ من از هراس چو روباهِ لاغرست،
از پیش نر کرسنه چشمم بهار شاه،
صد عجز نامه بیش بهالِ کهولترست،
این شاه نیست دشمنِ بحرست و معدنست،
این شاه نیست آفتِ چرخ است و اخترست،

Wiṣál's *Farhád u Shírín* has been lithographed, and ample selections from his poems are given by Riḍá-qulí Khán in his *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* (pp. 337–50) and *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (ii, pp. 528–48), which latter work also contains (pp. 548–58) an ample notice of his eldest son Wiqár, who was presented to Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh in 1274/1857–8 at Ṭihrán, where his biographer met him again "after twenty years' separation." The same work contains notices of Wiqár's younger brothers, Mírzá Maḥmúd the physician, poetically named Ḥakím (d. 1268/1851–2: pp. 102–5), and Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim Farhang, of whom I have already spoken (p. 300 *supra*), but not of the three other brothers Dáwarí, Yazdání and Himmat. The following fine *musammaṭ* by Dáwarí, describing one of the Sháh's hunting parties, I copied for myself in the house of the late Nawwáb Mírzá Ḥasan 'Alí Khán at Ṭihrán early in the year 1888, and, as it has never been published, and I know of no other copy in Europe, I cannot resist the temptation of here assuring a survival hitherto so precarious, for it was copied on a loose half-sheet of note-paper which I only accidentally came across just now while searching for something else.

Wiṣál's sons.

Wiqár.

Mírzá Maḥmúd the physician.

Farhang.

Dáwarí.

یك چند جدا از برم آن شوخ پسر بود،
از وی نه نشان بود مرا و نه خبر بود،

Marfat.com

با موکبِ منصور همانا بسفر بود'
از حسرتِ او آتشِ شوقم بجگر بود'
شبهای فراقم ز شبِ گور بتر بود'
روزم ز غمِ هجر سیه‌تر ز شبِ تار'

دوشینه همان ز اوّلِ شب ناشده پاسی'
زنگیّ شب افگنده برخ تیره پلاسی'
با قیر بیندوده و پوشیده لباسی'
مه برسرِ گردون شده چون سیمین طاسی'
آمد زدر آن دلبر بی ترس و هراسی'
یکباره ببرد از دلِ من اندُه و تیمار'

بر بسته میان و زده خنجر بکمر بر'
مسکین دلم از خنجرِ تیزش بَحذر بر'
سرداریّ سنجاب پوشیده ببه بر'
چوخایٔ خراسانی آنرا بزبر بر'
ازبس هوسِ دیدنِ من داشت بسربر'
ازره سوی من آمده با چکمه و شلوار'

پُر خاك سر و زلف و رخ از گَرْدِ سپاهش'
خشکیده دو عنّاب تر از صدمهٔ راهش'
از بس نزده شانه بزلفینِ سیاهش'
درهم شده و ریخته بَر گردِ کلاهش'
چون کاسهٔ خون سرخ شده چشمِ سیاهش'
از صدمهٔ بیخوابی و از زحمتِ بسیار'

یك دسته گُلِ سرخ ره آوردِ سفر داشت'
از سنبلِ تر نیز یکی دسته بسر داشت'

Marfat.com

از لعلِ بدخشانی یك حُقّه گهر داشت،
از حُقّه عجبتر که یکی تنگ شکر داشت،
چون از دلِ بیمارِ منِ خسته خبر داشت،
در تنگ شکر داشت دوای دل بیمار،
گفتم صنما گرچه بسی رنج کشیدی،
صد شکر که شاد آمدی و نیك رسیدی،
جانِ رهی از دستِ غمان باز خریدی،
هر گو که در این راه چه کردی وچه دیدی
در موکب منصور چه دیدی و شنیدی،
چون بود سرانجام و چه شد عاقبتِ کار،
گفتا که نبودی و ندیدی که چه سان بود،
نخجیرگهِ شاه یکسی لاله‌ستان بود،
هر گوشه ز خون دجلهٔ بغداد روان بود،
تا چشم همی کار کند تیر و کمان بود،
تا ابر همی جای دهد گرز و سنان بود،
نه دشت پدیدار بُد از لاش و نه کُهسار،

دلها همه آسوده ز رنج و ز حزن بود،
در دشت و بیابان همه گل بود و سمن بود،
کبك دری از هر طرفی قهقهه زن بود،
نخجیرگه از آهو چون دشتِ خُتن بود،
اینها همه از بختِ شهِ شیر شکن بود،
کاقبالِ وی افزوده بُوَد بختش بیدار،

بخ بخ چه تماشائی و وه وه چه شکاری،
آراسته صحرا و بیابان چو نگاری،

Marfat.com

گیتی بزمستان شده چون تازه بهاری،
هر گوشه ز آهو و ز نخجیر قطاری،
هر آهوئی آویخته از ترك سواری،
چون لاش بقنّارهٔ قصّاب نگونسار،

This poem is simple, sonorous and graphic; the court page, who has just returned from accompanying the Sháh on a winter hunting-expedition, and is in so great a hurry to visit his friend the poet that he enters in his riding-breeches and boots (*bá chakma wa shalwár*), with hair still disordered and full of dust, and eyes bloodshot from the glare of the sun, the hardships of exposure, and lack of sleep, bringing only as a present from the journey (*rah-áward-i-safar*) roses and hyacinths (his cheeks and hair), rubies of Badakhshán (his lips), and a casket of pearls (his teeth), is a vivid picture; and if a description of the Royal massacre of game reminds us of the immortal Mr Bunker's Bavarian battue[1], we must remember that the wholesale slaughters of game instituted by Chingíz Khán the Mongol in the thirteenth century, whereof the tradition still survives to some extent, were on a colossal scale, altogether transcending any European analogy[2].

In 1887, the year before I met Dáwarí's brother Farhang at Shíráz, two of his unpublished poems were shown to and copied by me in London. One was a *qaṣída* in praise of Queen Victoria, composed on the occasion of her Jubilee, which I was asked to translate so that it might perhaps be brought to her notice, a hope not fulfilled. The other, composed in May of the same year (Sha'bán, 1304), contained a quaint description

Farhang's description of Paris.

[1] See J. Storer Clouston's *Lunatic at Large* (shilling edition, 1912, p. 241).

[2] See Baron d'Ohsson's *Histoire des Mongols* (the Hague and Amsterdam, 1834), vol. i, pp. 404–6; and p. 59, n. 2 *supra*.

Marfat.com

of Paris, laudatory for the most part, but concluding with some rather severe reflections on the republican form of government. It differs widely from the poems of Farhang cited in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (ii, pp. 384-8), is full of French words, and produces, as was probably intended, a somewhat comic and burlesque effect. It contains 78 verses and is too long to be cited in full, but I here give the opening and concluding portions:

چشم بکشا بیآ ببین انوار، سوی پاریس از در و دیوار،
دیدهٔ راز بین خود بکشای، تا ببینی ز هر طرف اسرار،
سرِّ آزادگان و آزادی، حق نموده برایشان اظهار،
همکی خواجه‌های آزادند، نیست مملوك جمله شان احرار،
همهٔ شهر پادشاه وَشند، هم زن و مرد و هم صغار و کبار،
همه دارای مکنت و ثروت، همه با مال و دولتِ بسیار،
همه دارای شغل و کارِ خودند، نیست در ملك یك نفر بیکار،
همکی صاحبانِ منصب و شغل، همه سر کرده و همه سالار،
شهر آراسته چو خُلدِ برین، باغی آراسته چو باغِ بهار،
شب زبس مشعل است و شمع و چراغ، نیست فرقی میان لیل و نهار،
ماه رویان و گلعذاران را، بنگر از هر طرف قطار قطار،
کوچه‌هائی همه چو باغِ ارم، هر طرف بر نشسته سرو و چنار،
در خیابان و کوچه‌ها بینی، کُرسی و صندلی دویست هزار،
همه کالسکه‌های پُر دلبر، همه [1]واتورها پُر از دلدار،
وه چه کالسکه ها چو حجلهٔ حور، وه چه واتور های خوش رفتار،
از [2]ترم وا و [3]امنبوس بسی، هست چندان که نآید او بشمار،
ز اوّلِ شهر تا بآخرِ شهر، در خیابان و کوچه و [4]بلوار،
گوئیا حجلهٔ ز قصرِ بهشت، می برندش همی یمین و یسار،

[1] *Voiture.* [2] *Tramway.* [3] *Omnibus.* [4] *Boulevard.*

Marfat.com

حجلهٔ پُر ز حوریانِ بهشت، دورِ آن حجله بر نشسته قطار،
هر طرف بگذری گل و نسرین، هر طرف بنگری گل و گلزار،

* * * * * *

از گل و عطر و بوی ریحانها، گشته پاریس طبلهٔ عطّار،

* * * * * *

تا نیائی و خود نه بینی تو، نکنی بر کلامِ من اقرار،

* * * * * *

راست گویند و راست کردارند، راستیشان شده همیشه شعار،
هرچه گیرند و هرچه بفروشند، راست گویند در همه بازار،
کس نگوید کلام نا مربوط، نشنود کس کلامِ نا هنجار،
مهربانی و لطف و خوشخوئی، همه با یکدگر کنند ایثار،
همهٔ خلق عیسوی مذهب، همهٔ ملك عیسوی آثار،
همه روحانی و مسیحائی، همه در کیش و دینِ خود هُشیار،
در کلیسا برای خدمت دین، هر کشیشی نموده استظهار،
آن یکی طیلسان کشیده بسر، آن یکی بسته بر کمر زُنّار،
در کلیسای [1]نُتر دام دیدم، معتکف مردی نماز گذار،
صورتی نقش کرده بر لوحی، شکلِ عیسی کشیده بر سرِ دار،
سجده گاهِ همه همان صورت، قبله گاهِ همه همان دیوار،
از سرِ صدق و از سرِ اخلاص، همه در دینِ خویش بر خوردار،
همه پاك و منزّه و خوشخوی، همه عیسی صفت همه احرار،
همه در کارِ خویشتن محکم، همه در شغل خویشتن مختار،
همه در مشورت بهم هم رای، همه در گفتگوی بهم همکار،
همه با عقل و هوش و با تدبیر، همه با علم و دانش و افکار،
لیك با این همه صنایع و علم، رمزکی گویمت بکن اقرار،

[1] *Notre-Dame*

Marfat.com

حکمت و طبّشان دروغ بود، کس ندیده که به شود بیمار،
همه شان پادشاه و سلطانند، زین سبب نیست سلطنت درکار،
شهرشان منضبط نه با سلطان، قوچشان منتظم نه با سردار،
قومی از عاقلان و دانایان، متّفق میروند در دربار،
محفلی منعقد برای همه، می نشینند متّحد گفتار،
گفتگوی میکنند در هر امر، مشورت میزنند در هر کار،
مجلسی منعقد ز هفت صد تن، همگان عاقلان و کار گذار،
متّفق قول و متّفق کارند، متّفق رای و متّفق گفتار،
نامِ این جمع و نامِ این مجلس، گشته جمهور در همه اقطار،
همهٔ دولتِ فرانسه‌را، قوم جمهور می دهند مدار،
بعدِ لوئی فلیپ و ناپلیان، کس نکرده بسلطنت اقرار،
همه سلطانِ دولتِ خویشند، همگی پادشاهِ ملك مدار،
از رهِ علم و از رهِ دانش، نیست کاری برایشان دشوار،
هرچه این گوید آن دگر شنود، نبودشان به قبل هم انکار،
گفتم این شعرها مهِ شعبان، سال هجری هزار و سیصد و چار،

Lack of space compels me to pass over several poets of some note, such as Áqá Muḥammad Ḥasan *Zargar* ("the Goldsmith") of Iṣfahán, who died in 1270/1853–4[1]; Áqá Muḥammad '*Áshiq*, a tailor, also of Iṣfahán, who died at the age of seventy in 1281/1864[2]; Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí *Surúsh* of Sidih, entitled *Shamsu'sh-Shu'ará*, who died in 1285/1868–9[3]; and Áqá Muḥammad 'Alí *Jayḥún* of Yazd, of whose life I can find no particulars save such as can be gleaned from his verses, but who composed, besides numerous poems of

Other poets of less importance.

[1] See *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, ii, pp. 151–2.
[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 346–9.
[3] *Ibid.*, pp. 184–95.

Marfat.com

various types, a prose work entitled *Namakdán* ("the Salt-cellar") on the model of the *Gulistán*, and whose complete works were lithographed at Bombay in 1316/1899, making a volume of 317 pp. Others who are reckoned amongst the poets were more distinguished in other fields of literature, such as the historians Riḍá-qulí Khán *Hidáyat*[1], so often cited in this chapter (born 1215/1800, died 1288/1871–2), and Mírzá Muḥammad Taqí *Sipihr* of Káshán[2], entitled *Lisánu'l-Mulk* ("the Tongue of the Kingdom"), author of the *Násikhu't-Tawárikh* ("Abrogator of Histories") and of another prose work entitled *Baráhínu'l-'Ajam* ("Proofs of the Persians"); the philosopher Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, who was born in 1212/1797–8, wrote a small amount of verse under the pen-name of *Asrár* ("Secrets"), and died in 1295/1878[3]; and others. Of the remaining modern representatives of the "Classical School" Qá'ání is by far the most important, and after him Yaghmá, Furúghí and Shaybání, of whom some account must now be given.

(7) Qá'ání (d. 1270/1853–4).

Qá'ání (d. 1270/1853–4).

Qá'ání is by general consent the most notable poet produced by Persia in the nineteenth century. He was born at Shíráz about 1222/1807–8, for, according to his own statement at the end of the *Kitáb-i-Parishán*, he completed that work on Rajab 20, 1252 (October 31, 1836), being then two or three months short of thirty years of age:

[1] His autobiography concludes the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, ii, pp. 581–678.

[2] *Ibid.*, ii, pp. 156–81.

[3] See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 131–4; and the *Riyáḍu'l-'Ariftn*, pp. 241–2, which, however, puts his birth in 1215/1800–1, and adds that he was sixty-three years of age at the time of writing (1278/1861–2).

Marfat.com

شکر که از یاری یزدانِ من،
جمع شد اوراقِ پریشانِ من،
نیست درو عاریتِ هیچ کس،
خاصِّ منست آنچه درو هست و بس،
جز دو سه بیتی ز عرب وز عجم،
کآمده جاری بزبانِ قلم،
خاصّه که در طیّ عبارت همی،
رفته بدانجمله اشارت همی،
تا ز حسودان نرسد دق مرا،
سخرهٔ باطل نشود حق مرا،
رفته ز ماهِ رجب ایّام بیست،
پنجه و دو سال و هزار و دویست،
کم بود از سی دو سه مه سالِ من،
لیك بسی خسته بود حالِ من،
بسکه ز غم کوژتر از هاله‌ام،
راست چو پیرانِ نود ساله‌ام،
لیك غمِ من غمِ عشقست و بس،
زآنکه جُز او نیست کسم داد رس،
شادی عالم همه در این غم است،
عاشق ازین غم بجان خرّم است،
غم اگر اینست فزونتر خوش است،
بر صفتِ قند مکرّر خوش است،
هر که ازین غم بدلش پرتوی است،
در نظرش مُلكِ دو عالم جَوی است،
یا رب ازین غم دل من شاد کن،
وز غمِ دنیا دلم آزاد کن،

Marfat.com

His proper name was Ḥabíb, under which he originally wrote, and which he uses as his *takhallus*, or *nom de guerre*, in many of his earlier poems. Later when he and Mírzá 'Abbás of Bisṭám, who originally wrote under the pen-name of Miskín, had attached themselves to Ḥasan 'Alí Mírzá *Shujá'u's-Salṭana*, for some time Governor of Khurásán and Kirmán, that prince changed their pen-names respectively to Qá'ání and Furúghí, after his two sons Ogotáy Qá'án and Furúghu'd-Dawla[1].

Originally wrote under the pen-name of Ḥabíb.

Qá'ání was born at Shíráz. His father, Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí, was also a poet who wrote under the pen-name of Gulshan. Though Qá'ání was but a child when he died, his statement in the *Kitáb-i-Parishán*[2] that "though thirty complete years have elapsed since the death of my father, I still imagine that it was but two weeks ago" cannot be reconciled with the other statement quoted above that he was not yet thirty when he completed the book in question. The *Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá* consecrates articles to both father and son, but unfortunately in my manuscript the last two figures of the date of Gulshan's death are left blank, while it is also omitted in the notice contained in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*[3], which is very meagre.

His father Gulshan.

About Qá'ání's seemingly uneventful life there is not much to be said. He appears to have spent most of it at Shíráz, where in the spring of 1888 I had the honour of occupying the room in the house of the Nawwáb Mírzá Ḥaydar 'Alí Khán which he used to inhabit; and, as we have seen, he resided for some time at Kirmán. The latter part of his life, when he had established himself as a recognized Court poet, was spent at Ṭihrán, where he died in

[1] *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, ii, p. 394.
[2] Ṭihrán lithographed edition of Qá'ání's works of 1302/1884–5, p. 35.
[3] Vol. ii, p. 426.

Marfat.com

HÁJJI MÍRZÁ ÁQÁSÍ

Or. 4938 (Brit. Mus.), 9

To face p. 328

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

1270/1853–4. Two of his latest poems must have been those which he wrote to celebrate the escape of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh from the attempt on his life made by three Bábís on August 15, 1852, quoted in my *Traveller's Narrative*[1].

Qá'ání is one of the most melodious of all the Persian poets, and his command of the language is wonderful, but he lacks high aims and noble principles. Not only does he flatter great men while they are in power, and turn and rend them as soon as they fall into disgrace, but he is prone to indulge in the most objectionable innuendo and even the coarsest obscenity. In numerous *qaṣídas* he extols the virtues and justice of Ḥájji Mírzá Áqásí[2], the Prime Minister of Muḥammad Sháh, but in a *qaṣída* in praise of his successor Mírzá Taqí Khán *Amír-i-Kabír* he alludes to the fallen minister thus:

Qá'ání's merits and defects.

بجای ظالمی شقی نشسته عادلی تقی،

که مؤمنانِ متّقی کنند افتخارها،

"In the place of a vile tyrant is seated a just and God-fearing man,
In whom pious believers take pride."

Of his innuendo the following is a good specimen:

خندان خندان دوید و پیشِ من آمد،

دوخت دو لب بر لبم که بوسه بزن ها،

الحق شرم آمدم بدین لبِ منکر،

بوسه زدن بر لبی چو لاله حمرا،

کاین لبِ همچون زلوی من نه سزا بود،

بر لبکی سرخ‌تر ز خونِ مصفّا،

[1] Vol. ii, pp. 325–6.

[2] Ṭihrán ed. of 1302/1884–5, pp. 19, 35, 40, 41, 43, 70, 82, 94, 95, 115, 123, 130 *etc.*

Marfat.com

گفتمش ای تُرْك داده گیر دو صد بوس‘
کز لبِ لعلِ تو قانعم بتماشا‘
روی ترش کرد و گفت کِبْر فرو هل‘
کز تو تولّا نکو بود نه تبرّا‘
شاعر و آنگاه ردِّ بوسهٔ شیرین‘
کودك و آنگاه تَرْكِ جوزِ مُنقّا‘
مادح شاهی تورا رسد که بروبد‘
خاكِ رهت‌را بزلفِ تافته حورا‘
بوسه بزن مر مرا ؛ لطف و گرنه‘
نزدِ بُتان سرشکسته گردم و رسوا‘
در همه عُضْوَم مخیّری پی بوسه‘
از سرم اینك بگیر و بوسه بزن تا....
بوسه چه باشد که مستحقِّ کناری‘
شاکرمْ اینك ببوسهٔ تو ولی با....
روی و لبم هر دو نیك درخورِ بوسند‘
این من و اینك تو یا ببوس لبم یا....
گفتمش ای تُرْك تَرْكِ این سخنان گوی‘
بس کن ازین غمزو رمزو عشوه و ایما‘

The beauty of Qá'ání's language can naturally only be appreciated by one who can read his poems in the original, which is fortunately easily accessible, as his works have been repeatedly published[1]. I have chiefly used the Ṭihrán lithographed edition of 1302/1884–5, and in a lesser degree the Tabríz lithographed edition of 1273/1857, and the "Selections... recommended for the Degree of Honour

[1] See E. Edwards's *Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum*, 1922, columns 237–9.

Marfat.com

Examination in Persian" printed at Calcutta in A.D. 1907. Like most of the Qájár poets, he excels chiefly in the *qaṣída*, the *musammaṭ* and the *tarkíb-band*, but the following *ghazal*[1] is extraordinarily graceful and melodious:

یارکی مراست رند و بذله‌گو،
شوخ و دلرُبا خوب و خوش سرشت،
طرّه‌اش عبیر پیکرش حریر،
عارضش بهار طلعتش بهشت،
نقش‌بندِ روح کوئی از نخست،
صورت و لبش تا کشد درست،
لعل‌پاره‌را زآب خضر شُست،
پس نمود حل با شکر سرشت،
در قُمارِ عشق از مں آن پسر،
برده عقل و دین جسم و جان و سر،
هوش و صبر و تاب مال و سیم و زر،
قولِ لوطیان هرچه بود کِشت،
پیش از آنکه خط رویدش ز روی،
بود آن پسر سخت و تند خوی،
وینك از رخش سر زدست موی،
تا از آن خطم چیست سر نوشت،
چون خطش دمید خاطرم فسرد،
کآن صفای حسن شد بدل بدُرْد،
نکهتِ رخش باغ وَرْد بُرْد،
غنچه از لبش داغ و درد هشت،
موی عارضم داشت رنگ قیر،
در فراقِ او شد برنگِ شیر،

[1] Ṭihrán ed. of 1302, p. 355.

Marfat.com

در جوانیم عمر گشت پیر'
دهر پنبه کرد چرخ هرچه رشت'
خواهم از خدا در همه جهان'
یك قفس زمین یك نفس زمان'
تا بکامِ دل مَی خورم در آن'
بی حریفِ بد بی نگارِ زشت'
خوش دهد بهار نشأ سرخ مُل'
که کنارِ رود که فرازِ پُل'
که بزیر سرو که بپای گُل'
گه بصحنِ باغ گه بطرفِ کشت'
مرد چون شناخت مغزرا ز پوست'
هرچه بنگرد نیست غیر دوست'
هر کجا رود ملك ملكِ اوست'
خواه در حرم خواه در کنشت'

چون ملك مرا گفت کای حبیب'
یك غزل بگو نغز و دلفریب'
پس از آن غزل او برد نصیب'
زرع زان کس است کزنخست کِشت'
زَیْنِ عابدین زیبِ مجد و جاه'
بنده امیر نیکخواهِ شاه'
مُلْكرا شرف خلقرا پناه'
هم مَلِك لقا هم مَلَك سرشت'

Wonderful also is the swing and grace of the poem in praise of the Queen-mother (*Mahd-i-'Ulyá*) beginning[1]:

بنفشه رُسْته از زمین بطرفِ جویبارها'
و یا گُسسته حورِ عین ز زلفِ خویش تارها'

[1] Ṭihrán ed. of 1302, p. 309.

Marfat.com

ز سنگ اگر ندیده چه سان جهد شرارها،

بسرگهای لاله بین میانِ لاله زارها،

که چون شراره میجهد ز سنگِ کوهسارها،

"Are these violets growing from the ground on the brink of the streams,
Or have the houris [of Paradise] plucked strands from their tresses?
If thou hast not seen how the sparks leap from the rock,
Look at the petals of the red anemones in their beds
Which leap forth like sparks from the crags of the mountains!"

Not inferior to this is another similar poem in praise of Mírzá Taqí Khán *Amír-i-Kabír*, beginning[1]:

نسیمِ خُلد میوزد مگر ز جویبارها،

که بوی مشك میدهد هوای مُرغزارها،

فرازِ خاك و خشتها دمیده سبزه کشتها،

چه کشتها بهشتها نه ده نه صد هزارها،

Instead of the far-fetched and often almost unintelligible conceits so dear to many Persian poets, Qá'ání prefers to draw his illustrations from familiar customs and common observances, as, for example, in the following verses[2], wherein allusion is made to various popular ceremonies connected with the *Naw-rúz*, or Persian New Year's Day:

عید شد ساقی بیآ در گردش آور جام را،

پُشتِ پا زن دورِ چرخ و گردشِ ایّام را،

سیمنِ ساغر بس بود ای تُرك مارا روزِ عید،

گو نباشد هفت سین[3] رندانِ دُرد آشام را،

[1] Ṭihrán ed. of 1302, p. 16. [2] *Ibid.*, pp. 14–15.

[3] *Haft Sín.* It is customary at the *Naw-rúz* to collect together seven objects whereof the names begin with the letter S, such as *sunbul* (hyacinth), *sib* (apple), *súsan* (lily), *sím* (silver), *sír* (garlic), *sirka* (vinegar), and *sipand* (rue).

Marfat.com

خلق‌را بر لب حدیث جامهٔ نو[1] هست و من'
از شرابِ کهنه میجویم لبالب جام‌را'
هر کسی شکّر نهد بر خوان و بر خواند دعا'
من ز لعلِ شکّرینت طالبم دشنام‌را'
هر تنی‌را هست سیم و دانهٔ گندم بدست'
مایلم من دانهٔ خالِ تو سیم اندام‌را'
سیر بر خوانست مردم‌را و من از عمر سیر'
بی دلآرامی که بُرده‌است از دلم آرام‌را'
پسته و بادام نقلِ روزِ نوروزست و من'
با لب و چشمت نخواهم پسته و بادام‌را'
عود اندر عید میسوزند و من نالان چو عود'
بی بُتی کز خالِ هندو ره زند اسلام‌را'
یکدگررا خلق میبوسند و من زین غم هلاك'
کزچه بوسد دیگری آن شوخ شیرین کام‌را'
سرکه بردستارخوان خلق وهمچون سرکه دوست'
میکند بر ما تُرُش رنگین رخ گلفام‌را'
خلق‌را در سال روزی عید و من از چهرِ شاه'
عید دارم سال و ماه و هفته صبح و شام‌را[2]'
لا جرم این عیدِ خاصِّ من که بادا پایدار'
کرّ و فرّش بشکند بازارِ عیدِ عام‌را'

[1] All the people put on new clothes at this great national festival, distribute sugar-plums amongst their friends, fill their hands with silver and corn, eat pistachio-nuts and almonds, burn aloe-wood and other fragrant substances, and greet one another with kisses.

[2] The first verse of a poem by Imámí of Herát cited on p. 116 of my *Persian Literature under Tartar dominion* contains a very similar thought.

Marfat.com

Qá'ání is also one of the very few Persian poets who has condescended to reproduce actual peculiarities of speech or enunciation, as in his well-known dialogue between an old man and a child both of whom are afflicted with a stammer. This poem, which may more conveniently be transcribed into the Roman character, is as follows[1]:

Qá'áni's stammering poem.

"Pírakí lál saḥar-gáh bi-ṭiflí alkan
Mí-shunídam ki badín naw' hamí-ránd sukhan:
'K'ay zi zulfat ṣa-ṣa-ṣubḥam sha-sha-sháin-i-tárík,
W'ay zi chihrat sha-sha-shámam ṣa-ṣa-ṣubḥ-i-rawshan!
Ta-ta-tiryákiyam, u az sha-sha-shahd-i-la-labat
Ṣa-ṣa-ṣabr u ta-ta-tábam ra-ra-raft az ta-ta-tan.'
Ṭifl guftá, 'Ma-ma-man-rá tu-tu taqlíd ma-kun!
Ga-ga-guin shaw zi baram, ay ka-ka-kamtar az zan!
Mi-mí-khwáhí mu-mu-mushtí bi-ka-kallat bi-zanam,
Ki biyuftad ma-ma-maghzat ma-mayán-i-da-dihan?'
Pír guftá, 'Wa-wa-wa'lláhi ki ma'lúm-ast ín
Ki-ki zádam man-i-bíchára zi mádar alkan!
Ha-ha-haftád u ha-hashtád u si sál-ast fuzún
Ga-ga-gung u la-la-lálam ba-bi-Khalláq-i-Zaman!'
Ṭifl guftá: 'Kha-khudá-rá ṣa-ṣa-ṣad bár sha-shukr
Ki bi-rastam bi-jahán az ma-la-lál u ma-miḥan!
Ma-ma-man ham ga-ga-gungam ma-ma-mithl-i-tu-tu-tú:
Tu-tu-tú ham ga-ga-gungí ma-ma-mithl-i-ma-ma-man!"

Besides his poems, Qá'ání wrote a collection of stories and maxims in the style of Sa'dí's *Gulistán* entitled *Kitáb-i-Parishán*, comprising one hundred and thirteen anecdotes, and concluding with thirty-three truly Machiavellian counsels to Kings and Princes. This book, which contains a certain amount of autobiographical material, occupies pp. 1–40 of the Ṭihrán lithographed edition of Qá'ání's works, and numerous other editions exist, several of which are mentioned by Mr Edwards in his *Catalogue*[2].

The *Kitáb-i-Parishán*.

[1] See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 118–19, and pp. 345–6 of the edition of Qá'ání cited above.

[2] Columns 237–9.

Marfat.com

(8) Furúghí (d. 1274/1858).

Furúghí (d. 1274/1858).

Mention has already been made of Mírzá 'Abbás, son of Áqá Músá of Bisṭám, who wrote verse first under the pen-name of Miskín and later of Furúghí. He is said to have written some twenty thousand verses, of which a selection of some five thousand is placed at the end (pp. 4–75) of the Ṭihrán edition (1302/1884–5) of the works of Qá'ání, with whom he was so closely associated. Unlike him, however, he seems to have preferred lyric to elegiac forms of poetry; at any rate the selections in question consist entirely of *ghazals*.

His Ṣúfí tendencies.

According to the brief biography prefixed to them he adopted the Ṣúfí doctrine in the extremer forms which it had assumed in ancient times with Báyazíd of Bisṭám and Ḥusayn ibn Manṣúr al-Ḥalláj, and so incurred the suspicion and censure of the orthodox. Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, in the beginning of whose reign he was still flourishing, once sent for him and said, "Men say that like Pharaoh[3] thou dost advance the claim 'I am your Lord the Supreme[1],' and that thou dost openly pretend to Divinity." "This assertion," replied Furúghí, touching the ground with his forehead, "is sheer calumny....For seventy years I have run hither and thither, and only now have I reached the Shadow of God![2]" The first three verses from the first ode cited seem to me as good and as typical as any others. They run as follows:

کی رفتهٔ ز دل که تمنّا کنم ترا'
کی بودهٔ نهفته که پیدا کنم ترا'
غیبت نکردهٔ که شَوَم طالبِ حضور'
پنهان نگشتهٔ که هویدا کنم ترا'
با صد هزار جلوه برون آمدی که من'
با صد هزار دیده تماشا کنم ترا'

[1] *Qur'án*, lxxix, 24. [2] *I.e.* the King.

Marfat.com

"When didst thou depart from the heart that I should crave for Thee?
When wert thou hidden that I should find Thee?
Thou hast not disappeared that I should seek Thy presence:
Thou hast not become hidden that I should make Thee apparent.
Thou hast come forth with a hundred thousand effulgences
That I may contemplate Thee with a hundred thousand eyes."

(9) Yaghmá of Jandaq.

Yaghmá of Jandaq.

Mírzá Abu'l-Ḥasan of Jandaq, chiefly celebrated for his abusive and obscene verses (*Hazaliyyát*), and commonly known, from his favourite term of coarse invective, as *Zan-qaḥba*, is the last poet mentioned by the author of the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*[1] before the autobiography with which he concludes. He was for some time secretary to a very violent and foul-mouthed nobleman named Dhu'l-Fiqár Khán of Samnán, for whose amusement he is said to have written these offensive poems, collectively known as the *Sardáriyya*[2]. Though he wrote a quantity of serious verse and a number of elegant letters in prose, which are included in the large Ṭihrán edition of his works lithographed in 1283/1866–7, it is on his *Hazaliyyát*, or "Facetiae," that his fame or infamy is based. The author of the *Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá*[3] devotes but three lines to him, and was not personally acquainted with him, but had heard him well spoken of as "an amiable and kindly man and a good-natured and eloquent youth, who did not believe in making a collection of his poems." Qá'ání attacked him in his own style in the following abusive verses[4]:

Qá'áni's attack on Yaghmá.

هفت اخترِ زنقحبه و نه گُنبُدِ دوّار'
پُر گشته ز زنقحبگیِ مرشدِ اشرار'

[1] Vol. ii, p. 580.

[2] These poems, which occupy pp. 204–217 of the Ṭihrán lithographed edition of 1283/1866–7, are, however, only a fraction of the *Hazaliyyát*.

[3] F. 53[b] of my MS.

[4] P. 372 of the lithographed Ṭihrán edition of 1302/1884–5.

Marfat.com

آن شاعرِ زنقحبه که یغماش ستایند'
شعرش همه زنقحبه و زنقحبگیش کار'
گوئی همه زنقحبه و از خویش نگوئی'
خوانی همه زنقحبه و از خود نه خبردار'
زنقحبه تو زنقحبه‌تری از همه مردم'
عالم همه زنقحبهٔ مجبول و تو مختار'
عکسِ تو فتاده است در آینهٔ عالم'
تا آنکه بزنقحبگی خود کنی اقرار'

Contents of Yaghmá's *Kulliyyát* or Complete Works.

Yaghmá's *Kulliyyát*, or Complete Works, as represented in the Ṭihrán lithographed edition above mentioned, comprise the following:

A. *Prose writings* (pp. 2–145), consisting of numerous letters written to friends and acquaintances, unfortunately, so far as I have seen, undated. A careful examination of these letters would undoubtedly furnish abundant materials for the poet's biography. Many of them are addressed to unnamed friends, acquaintances or patrons, but some were written to his sons, Mírzá Isma'íl who wrote poetry under the pen-name of *Hunar*, Mírzá Aḥmad *Ṣafá'i*, Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí *Khaṭar*, and Mírzá Ibráhím *Dastán*, while others were written to men of more or less note whose names are given. In many of these letters he elects to write in pure Persian (*Pársí-nigárí*), avoiding all Arabic words, while others, called *náma-i-basíṭ*, are written in a very simple style.

B. *Verse.*

1. Early odes (*ghazaliyyát-i-qadíma*), pp. 146–183.
2. Later odes (*ghazaliyyát-i-jadída*), pp. 184–203.
3. The *Sardáriyya* mentioned above (pp. 204–217), written in the *ghazal* form with the pen-name *Sardár*.

Marfat.com

Autograph of the poet **Yaghmá**

Or. 4936 (Brit. Mus.), 19

To face p. 338

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

4. The *Qaṣṣábiyya* (pp. 218–231), similar to the last-mentioned work in form and contents, but with the pen-name *Qaṣṣáb* ("Butcher").

5. The *Kitáb-i-Aḥmad* (pp. 232–247), similar to the two last, but with the pen-name *Aḥmad*.

6. The *Khuláṣatu'l-Iftiḍáḥ* ("Quintessence of Disgrace," pp. 248–265), an account in *mathnawí* verse of a scandalous incident fully described in a marginal note on p. 248.

7. The *Kitáb-i-Ṣukúku'd-Dalíl* (pp. 266–280), another *mathnawí* in the metre of the *Sháhnáma* outwardly praising but inwardly satirizing a certain Sayyid Qanbar-i-*Rawḍa-khwán*, entitled by Yaghmá *Rustamu's-Sádát*.

8. *Maráthí* or Elegies on the deaths of the Imáms (pp. 282–301).

9. *Tarjí'-bands* and *Tarkíb-bands* (pp. 302–331), mostly of a ribald character.

10. *Qiṭa'át* or Fragments (pp. 332–355), mostly ribald and satirical.

11. *Rubá'iyyát* or Quatrains (pp. 356–389), also ribald.

Yaghmá's abusive verse.

The odes, old and new, and the elegies (Nos. 1, 2 and 8 in the above list) constitute the respectable part of Yaghmá's verse, in all about one-third of the whole. As for the rest, with the possible exception of No. 7, it is for the most part not fit to print, much less to translate. The poet's favourite term of abuse *Zan-qaḥba*, by which he himself is commonly known, is by no means a nice expression, but it is delicacy itself compared with much of the language he employs. On the other hand, his serious odes and elegies show that he can write fine poetry, while his command of language is almost greater than that of Qá'ání, even though the melody of his verse be less. He also appears to have invented a type of *marthiya* or elegy which he calls *Núḥa-i-Sína-zaní*, or Lamentation accom-

His religious elegies.

Marfat.com

panied by beating of the breast. This I supposed till lately to have been one of the new models which sprang into existence after the Revolution of 1905–6, and I gave several specimens of it in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*[1]. The following are the initial lines of eight of Yaghmá's elegies of this type:

نوحهٔ سینه زنی

میرسد خشك لب از شطِّ فرات اکبرِ من
نو جوان اکبرِ من

سیلانی بکن ای چشمهٔ چشمِ ترِ من
نو جوان اکبرِ من

کوتِ عمرِ تو تا این خمِ فیروزه نمون
لعلی آورد بخون

گیتی از نیلِ عزا ساخت سیه معجرِ من
نو جوان اکبر من

تا ابد داغ تو ای زادهٔ آزاده نهاد
نتوان برد ز یاد

از ازل کاش نمیزاد مرا مادرِ من
نو جوان اکبرِ من، الخ

و له ایضًا

شکوه از چرخ ستمگر چکنم گر نکنم چکنم گر نکنم
گله از گردشِ اختر چکنم گر نکنم چکنم گر نکنم
غمِ عبّاسِ بلاکش چکشم گر نکشم چکشم گر نکشم
ناله بر حسرتِ اکبر چکنم گر نکنم چکنم گر نکنم، الخ

[1] See No. 19 (pp. 216–218) and No. 31 (pp. 246–248).

Marfat.com

و له ایضاً،

در شبت بوشیده بینم روزِ محشر آفتاب،
آفتاب، باز سرکش آفتاب،
وز صباحت آشکارا شام دیگر آفتاب،
آفتاب، باز سرکش آفتاب،
سُنْت ازین سخت ابتلا ذرّات‌را بالا و پست،
هرچه هست، با زراه ازکاردست،
شرم کن آخر نه از ذرّه کمتر آفتاب،
آفتاب، باز سرکش آفتاب، الخ

و له ایضاً،

کوه و صحرا خصم و شاه کم سپه تنها دریغ،
وا دریغ، نصرتِ اعدا دریغ،
قلبِ ایمان‌را شکست و نصرتِ اعدا دریغ،
وا دریغ، نصرت اعدا دریغ،
آه کز بیدولتانِ دین بدنیا باخته،
تاخته، گشت کارش ساخته،
پادشاهِ کشورِ دین خسروِ دنیا دریغ،
وا دریغ، نصرتِ اعدا دریغ، الخ

و له ایضاً،

محشری بینم عیان در هفت کشور آسمان،
آسمان، شرمی آخر آسمان،
شامِ عاشوراست این یا صُبْح محشر آسمان،
آسمان، شرمی آخر آسمان،

Marfat.com

آفتابی شد ز دَوْرت تیره اختر آسمان'
آسمان' شرمی آخر آسمان'
با چنین دوران نکردی کاش دیگر آسمان'
آسمان' شرمی آخر آسمان' الخ

و له ایضًا'

زین مصیبت نه همین از خاکیان ماتم بپاست'
کی رواست' سرنگون گردی فلك'
چار ارکان شش جهت تا نُه فلك ماتم سزاست'
کی رواست' سرنگون گردی فلك'
نعرهٔ جنّ و ملك در ماتمِ فخرِ اُمَم'
از قِدَم' تا دمِ شامِ عدم'
از ثری هم تا ثریّا از ثریّا تا ثراست'
کی رواست' سرنگون گردی فلك'

و له ایضًا'

هفتهٔ کین مهِ شَر سالِ دغل قرن دغاست'
خون هدر مال هباست'
شبِ غم روزِ ستم شامِ الم صُبح عزاست'
خون هدر مال هباست'
فتنه بیدار و امان خُفْته و خصم از درِ کین'
ترکتازان بکمین'
رسته بی شحنه و خوان چیده فرمان یغماست'
خون هدر مال هباست' الخ

Marfat.com

و له ایضاً

زادهٔ زهـرا بـکـامِ زادهٔ مـروان نـگـر،
آه آه، گردشِ دوران نگر،
این بخواری آن بعزّت این ببین و آن نگر،
آه آه، گردش دوران نگر،
آلِ مروان تیغ بر کف آلِ یَـس نقدِ جان،
زین و آن، گر نظر داری عیان،
نَفْیِ حقّ اثباتِ باطل کفر بین ایمان نگر،
آه آه، گردشِ دوران نگر، الخ

This last poem in form most closely approaches No. 19 in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*.

The above poems are interesting as regards their form. The following, an ordinary *Niḥa*, or "Lamentation," without refrain, partly in colloquial dialect, is simple and rather beautiful. I quote only the first six of the nineteen verses which it comprises:

دلم از زندگـانی سخت سیره، بمیرم هرچه زوتر بـاز دیـره،
زنان‌را دل سرای درد و ماتم، تنِ مردان نشانِ تیغ و تیره،
پسر در خون تپان دختر عزادار، برادر کُشته و خواهر اسیره،
بکامِ مادران لَخْت جگر خون، بحلقِ کودکان خوناب شیره،
اسیران‌را بجای اشك و افغان، شرر در چشم و آتش در ضمیره،
خروشِ تشنه کامان زیر و بالا، ز خاكِ تیره تا چرخ اثیره،

"My heart is very weary of life; however soon I die, it is still too late.
The women's hearts are the abode of grief and mourning; the men's bodies are the target of swords and arrows.
Their sons welter in their blood; their daughters mourn; the brother is slain; the sister is a captive.
The morsel in the mothers' mouths is their own heart's blood; the milk in the children's throats is liquid gore.

Marfat.com

The captives, in place of tears and lamentations, have sparks in their eyes and fire in their souls.
The outcry of the thirsty reaches down and up from the dark earth to the Sphere of the Ether."

Ribaldry and piety.

It is curious to find in two such ribald poets as Yaghmá and Qá'ání[1] so deep a religious sense and sympathy with the martyrs of their faith as are manifested in a few of their poems. Verlaine, perhaps, offers the nearest parallel in modern European literature.

Sipihr, Hidáyat and Shaybání.

Of the remaining poets who flourished during the long reign of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, whose assassination on May 1, 1896, may be regarded as the first portent of the Revolution which bore its full fruit ten years later, two, Mírzá Muḥammad Taqí of Káshán with the pen-name of *Sipihr*, and Mírzá Riḍá-qulí Khán *Hidáyat*, are better known as historians and will be mentioned as such in a later chapter, though notices of both are given by the latter in his often-quoted *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*[2]. Another poet of some note is Abu'n-Naṣr Fatḥu 'lláh Khán *Shaybání* of Káshán, a copious selection of whose poems was printed by the *Akhtar* Press at Constantinople in 1308/1890–1[3], and of whom a long notice (pp. 224–245) is also given in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*. The list might be increased almost indefinitely, did space permit, but the most notable names have been mentioned, and even to them it has been impossible to do justice.

[1] For his beautiful *marthiya* on the tragedy of Karbalá, see pp. 177–181 *supra*.

[2] See vol. ii, pp. 156–181 for Sipihr, and pp. 581–678 for the autobiography of Hidáyat. This great anthology was concluded in 1288/1871–2.

[3] It was edited by Isma'íl Naṣírí Qarája-Dághí, published at the instigation of Mírzá Riḍá Khán, afterwards entitled Arfa'u'd-Dawla, and comprises 312 pp.

Marfat.com

MUẒAFFARU'D-DÍN MÍRZÁ (afterwards SHÁH) seated, with his tutor (*Lala-báshí*) RIḌÁ-QULÍ KHÁN, poet and historian, standing on his right (the reader's left)

Or. 4938 (Brit. Mus.), 14

To face p. 344

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

Of the new school of poets produced by the Revolution in 1906 and the succeeding years I have treated in a separate work, the *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*[1], more fully than would have been possibl in this volume. The most eminent of these contemporary poets are, perhaps, Dakhaw (Dih-Khudá) of Qazwín, 'Árif of Qazwín, Sayyid Ashraf of Gílán, and Bahár of Mashhad. Dakhaw is probably the youngest and the most remarkable of them, though I do not think he has produced much verse lately. The versatility of his genius is illustrated by two of his poems (Nos. 3 and 14) cited in my above-mentioned work, on the one hand the riotous burlesque of "*Kablây*," and on the other the delicate and beautiful *In Memoriam* addressed to his former colleague Mírzá Jahángír Khán of Shíráz, editor of the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl*, of which the former was published in that admirable paper on November 20, 1907, and the latter on March 8, 1909. Bahár, entitled *Maliku'sh-Shu'ará*, "King of the Poets," or Poet Laureate, was the editor of the *Naw Bahár* (which after its suppression reappeared under the title of *Táza Bahár*), and was the author of several fine poems (Nos. 20, 34 and 36–47) published in my book, while 'Árif is represented by No. 33, and Ashraf by Nos. 4–7, 9–13, 16–19, and 27. I do not think that the works of these or any others of the post-Revolution poets have been published in a collected form. They appeared from time to time in various newspapers, notably the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl*, *Nasím-i-Shimál* and *Naw Bahár*, and must be culled from their pages. Many of the now numerous Persian papers contain a literary corner entitled *Adabiyyát* in which these poems appear. The importance of the fact that their aim must now be to please

The new school of post-Revolution poets.

Dakhaw, 'Árif, Ashraf and Bahár.

[1] Camb. Univ. Press, 1914, pp. xl+357, with a Persian foreword of 5 pp. The poems (originals and translations) occupy pp. 168–308, comprise 61 separate pieces, and can be obtained separately for 5*s*.

Marfat.com

the increasing public taste and reflect the growing public opinion, not to gratify individual princes, ministers and noblemen, has been already emphasized[1].

The late Adíbu'l-Mamálik.

Of one other poet, lately deceased, who is very highly esteemed by his countrymen, but whose writings are not yet readily accessible, something more must be said. This is Mírzá Ṣádiq Khán, a great-grandson of the celebrated Qá'im-maqám[2], best known by his title *Adíbu'l-Mamálik*, who died on the 28th of Rabí' ii, 1335 (Feb. 21, 1917). Three sources of information about him are at my disposal, viz. (1) a notice in my MS. marked **J. 19**[3] on modern Persian poets (pp. 39–50); (2) an obituary notice in No. 20 of the old *Káwa* of April 15, 1917; and (3) a pamphlet published at the "Kaviani Press" in 1341/1922 by Khán Malik-i-Ḥusaynί-i-Sásánί, a cousin of the poet, announcing his intention of collecting and publishing his poems, and asking help from those who possess copies of verses not in his possession. Some particulars concerning him are also given in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia* in connection with the various papers he edited or wrote for at different times,

His journalistic activities.

viz. the *Adab* of Tabríz (pp. 37–8), Mashhad (p. 38) and Ṭihrán (p. 39), which extended over the period 1316–1322/1898–1905; the Turco-Persian *Irshád* (p. 39), which he edited in conjunction with Aḥmad Bey Aghayeff of Qarábágh at Bákú in 1323/1905–6; the *Rúznáma-i-Írán-i-Sulṭání* (pp. 88–91), to which he contributed in 1321/1903–4; the *'Iráq-i-'Ajam* (pp. 118–19), which he edited in 1325/1907; and the *Majlis* (pp. 132–3), for

[1] See p. 302 *supra*.

[2] See pp. 311–316 *supra*.

[3] See p. 302 *supra*. Since writing this, my attention has been called by my friend Mírzá Salmán-i-Asadí to an interesting article on the *Adíbu'l-Mamálik* in the periodical entitled *Armaghán* (No. 1 of the third year, pp. 15–25).

Marfat.com

which he wrote in 1324/1906. One of the most celebrated of his poems is also given on pp. 300–302 of the same work.

Brief chronology of his life.

The *Adíbu'l-Mamálik* was born in 1277/1860–1, and was a descendant in the third degree of Mírzá 'Ísá Qá'im-maqám, and in the thirty-fifth degree of the Imám Zaynu'l-'Ábidín. In 1307/1889–90 he was at Tabríz in the service of the Amír Niẓám (Ḥasan 'Alí Khán-i-Garrúsí), in honour of whom he changed his pen-name from *Parwána* ("Moth") to *Amírí*. In 1311/1893–4 he followed the Amír Niẓám to Kirmánsháh and Kurdistán. During the two following years (1894–6) he was employed in the Government Translation Office (*Dáru't-Tarjuma-i-Dawlatí*) in Ṭihrán, but in Ṣafar 1314/July–August, 1896, he returned with the Amír Niẓám to Ádharbáyján, where, in 1316/1898–9, he adopted the turban in place of the *kuláh*, became Vice-master of the Luqmániyya College at Tabríz, and founded the *Adab* newspaper, which, as stated above, he afterwards continued at Mashhad and Ṭihrán. During the years 1318–20/1900–02 he travelled in the Caucasus and Khwárazm (Khiva), whence he came to Mashhad, but at the end of A.H. 1320 (March, 1903) he returned to Ṭihrán, and for the next two years, 1321–2/1903–5, was the chief contributor to the *Rúz-náma-i-Írán-i-Sulṭání*. In 1323/1905–6 he was joint editor of the *Irshád* at Bákú; in 1324/1906 he became chief writer for the *Majlis*. edited by Mírzá Muḥammad Ṣádiq-i-Ṭabáṭabá'í; and in 1325/1907 he founded the *'Iráq-i-'Ajam*. In July, 1910, he took part in the capture of Ṭihrán by the Nationalists, and subsequently held the position of President of the High Court of Justice (*Ra'ís-i-'Adliyya*) in 'Iráq and afterwards at Samnán. He lost his only daughter in 1330/1912. Two years later he was appointed editor of the semi-official newspaper *Aftáb* ("the Sun"). In 1335/1916–17 he was appointed President of the High Court of Justice at

Marfat.com

Yazd, but soon afterwards, as we have seen, he died at Ṭihrán, aged fifty-eight[1].

Estimate of his poetry.

The special value and interest of his poems, according to Khán Malik, his cousin and intimate friend, lie not only in their admirable and original style, but in their faithful reflection of the varying moods of the Persian people during the fateful years 1906–1912. In satire it is said that no Persian poet has equalled him since the time of old Súzaní of Samarqand[2], who died in 569/1173–4. In his pamphlet Khán Malik gives the opening verses of all the poems in his possession, with the number of verses in each, and invites those who possess poems lacking in his collection to communicate them to him before Jumáda i, 1342 (December, 1923), when he proposes to publish as complete an edition as possible. The *Káwa* quotes the following verses from one of his poems on the Russian aggressions in Persia, which it compares with the celebrated poems of Sa'dí on the destruction of the Caliphate by the Mongols[3], Anwarí on the invasion of the Ghuzz Turks[4], and Ḥáfiẓ on Tímúr's rapacity[5]:

چون برّهٔ بیچاره بچوپانش نپیوست،
از بیم بصحرا در نه خفت و نه بنشست،
خرسی بشکار آمد و بازوش فرو بست،
شد برّهٔ ما طعمهٔ آن خرس زبردست،

[1] These dates are taken from Khán Malik's pamphlet, pp. 4–6.
[2] See *Lit. Hist. Persia*, ii, pp. 342–3.
[3] *Ibid.*, pp. 29–30.
[4] *Ibid.*, pp. 384–9.
[5] The reference here is to the well-known verse—

فغان کین لولیان شوخ شیرین‌کارِ شهر آشوب،
چنان بردند صبر از دل که ترکان خوانِ یغمارا،

It is, however, but a vague and casual allusion.

Marfat.com

افسوس بر آن برّهٔ نوزادهٔ سرمست،
فریاد از آن خرسِ کهن سالِ شکم خوار

"Since the poor lamb did not forgather with its shepherd, through fear it neither slept nor rested in the plain.
A bear came forth to hunt, and bound its limbs: our lamb became the prey of that high-handed bear.
Alas for that new-born and bemused lamb! Alack for that aged and greedy bear!"

My manuscript J. 19[1] (p. 44) enumerates twelve of his works, which include an Arabic and a Persian *Díwán*, a collection of *Maqámát*, a rhymed vocabulary, a volume of travels, and several books on Astronomy, Geography, Prosody, and other sciences.

[1] See p. 302 *supra*.

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

PART III.

PERSIAN PROSE DURING THE LAST FOUR CENTURIES

Marfat.com

Marfat.com

CHAPTER VIII.

THE ORTHODOX SHÍ'A FAITH AND ITS EXPONENTS, THE MUJTAHIDS AND MULLÁS.

The Shí'a hierarchy.

One of the chief results of the Shí'a revival effected by the Ṣafawí dynasty was the establishment of the powerful hierarchy of *mujtahids* and *mullás*, often, but not very accurately, described by European writers as "the clergy." This title is, however, more applicable to them than to the *'ulamá*, or "doctors," of the Sunnís, who are simply men learned in the Scripture and the Law, but not otherwise possessed of any special Divine virtue or authority. The great practical difference between the *'ulamá* of the Sunnís and of the Shí'a lies in their conception of the doctrine of *Ijtihád*, or the discovery and authoritative enunciation of fresh religious truths, based on a comprehensive knowledge of the Scripture and Traditions, and arrived at by supreme effort and endeavour, this last being the signification of the Arabic word. One who has attained to this is called a *mujtahid*, whose position may be roughly described as analogous to that of a Cardinal in the Church of Rome. No such dignitary exists amongst the Sunnís, who hold that the *Báb'l-Ijtihád*, or "Gate of Endeavour" (in the sense explained above), was closed after the death of the founders of their four "orthodox" schools or sects, Abú Ḥanífa (d. 150/767), Málik ibn Anas (d. circâ 179/795), ash-Sháfi'í (d. 204/820), and Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad ibn Ḥanbal (d. 241/855). Thus the "Gate of Endeavour," which, according to the Shí'a view, is still open, has for the Sunnís been closed for more than a thousand years; and in this respect the Shí'a doctrine must be credited with a greater flexibility and adaptability than that of the

The doctrine of *Ijtihád*.

Marfat.com

Sunnís, though in other respects narrower and more intolerant.

Attractions of theology for the ambitious.

As will appear in the course of this chapter, the power and position attained by these prelates tended to divert the ambitions of young men who possessed, or believed themselves to possess, the necessary intellectual qualifications from poetry, *belles lettres*, and other forms of mental activity to theology, and from this tendency in part resulted the dearth of poets and abundance of divines under the Ṣafawís. Those were spacious times for the "turbaned classes" (*ahlu'l-'amá'im*), and every poor, half-starved student who frequented one or other of the numerous colleges (*madrasa*) founded, endowed and maintained by the piety of the Ṣafawí Sháhs, who delighted to call themselves by such titles as "Dog of the Threshold of the Immaculate Imáms," or "Promoter of the Doctrine of the Church of the Twelve," dreamed, no doubt, of becoming at last a great *mujtahid*, wielding powers of life and death, and accorded honours almost regal.

Aloofness of the clerical class.

No class in Persia is so aloof and inaccessible to foreigners and non-Muslims as that of the *mullás*. It is easy for one who has a good knowledge of Persian to mix not only with the governing classes and officials, who are most familiar with European habits and ideas, but with merchants, tradesmen, artisans, landowners, peasants, *darwíshes*, Bábís, Bahá'ís, Ṣúfís and others; but few Europeans can have enjoyed intimacy with the "clergy," whose peculiar, exclusive, and generally narrow life is, so far as my reading has gone, best depicted in an otherwise mediocre and quite modern biographical work entitled

The *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, or "Tales of the Divines."

Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá ("Tales of the Divines")[1] by Muḥammad

[1] I possess two lithographed editions of this book, the (second) Ṭihrán edition, published in Ṣafar, 1304 (Nov. 1886), and another published (apparently) in Lucknow in 1306/1888–9.

Marfat.com

ibn Sulaymán of Tanukábun, who was born in 1235/1819–20, wrote this book in three months and five days, and concluded it on the 17th of Rajab, 1290 (Sept. 10, 1873). It contains the lives of 153 Shí'a doctors, ranging from the fourth to the thirteenth centuries of the Muhammadan (tenth to nineteenth of the Christian) era, arranged in no intelligible order, either chronological or alphabetical. To his own biography, which he places fourth in order, the author devotes more than twenty pages, and enumerates 169 of his works, besides various glosses and other minor writings. From this book, which I read through during the Easter Vacation of 1923, having long ago made use of certain parts of it bearing on the Shaykhís and Bábís, I have disentangled from much that is tedious, trivial or puerile, a certain amount of valuable information which is not to be found in many much better biographical works, whereof, before proceeding further, I shall here speak briefly.

'Ilmu'r-Rijál, or theological biography.

What is known as *'Ilmu'r-Rijál* ("Knowledge of the Men," that is of the leading authorities and transmitters of the Traditions) forms an important branch of theological study, since such knowledge is necessary for critical purposes. Of such *Kutu-bu'r-Rijál* ("Books of the Men") there are a great many. Sprenger, in his edition[1] of one of the most important of these, the *Fihrist*, or "Index," of Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan ibn 'Alí of Ṭús, entitled *Shaykhu'ṭ-Ṭá'ifa*, who died in 460/1067, ranks with it in importance four other works, the *Asmá'u'r-Rijál* ("Names of the Men") of Shaykh Aḥmad ibn 'Alí an-Najáshí[2] (d. 455/1063); the *Ma'álimu'l-'Ulamá* of Muḥammad ibn 'Alí ibn Shahr-áshúb of Mázandarán,

[1] Printed in the *Bibliotheca Indica*.

[2] Lithographed at Bombay in 1317/1899–1900. In the *Kashfu'l-Ḥujub* (see pp. 357–8 *infra*) the date of the author's death is given as 405/1014.

Marfat.com

who died in 588/1192; the *Íḍáḥu'l-Ishtibáh* ("Elucidation of Confusion") of Ḥasan ibn Yúsuf ibn Muṭahhar al-Ḥillí (b. 648/1250; d. 726/1326); and the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn*[1], a work of a more special character, dealing especially with the *'ulamá* of Baḥrayn, by Yúsuf ibn Aḥmad ibn Ibráhím al-Baḥrání (d. 1187/1773–4). Another work, similar to the last in dealing with a special region, is the *Amalu'l-Ámil fí 'Ulamá'i Jabal-'Ámil*, composed by Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan ibn 'Alí...al-Ḥurr al-'Ámilí (b. 1033/1623–4) in 1097/1686. All these works are written in Arabic, but of the older books of this class there is one in Persian (compiled in 990/1582) which must on no account be overlooked. This is the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín* ("Assemblies of Believers") of Sayyid Núru'lláh ibn Sharíf al-Mar'ashí of Shúshtar, who was put to death in India on account of his strong Shí'a opinions in 1019/1610–11. This book is both of a wider scope and a more popular character than those previously mentioned, since it contains, in twelve chapters, notices of eminent Shí'as of all classes, not merely theologians, and includes not only those who adhered to the "Sect of the Twelve" (*Ithnà-'ashariyya*) but all those who held that 'Alí should have immediately succeeded the Prophet.

The *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín*.

Of modern works of this class, composed within the last sixty years, three, besides the above-mentioned *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, deserve special mention. The most general in its scope, entitled *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát fí Aḥwáli'l-'Ulamá wa's-Sádát* ("Gardens of Paradise: on the circumstances of Divines and Sayyids[2]"), was composed in Arabic by Muḥammad Báqir ibn Ḥájji Zaynu'l-'Ábidín al-Músawí al-Khwánsárí, whose auto-

The *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*.

[1] Lithographed in Bombay, n. d.

[2] An excellent lithographed edition (four vols. in one, containing in all about 750 pp. and 713 biographies) was published at Ṭihrán in 1306/1888.

Marfat.com

biography is given on pp. 126-8 of vol. i, in 1286/1869-70. The biographies, which are arranged alphabetically, include learned Muslims of all periods, and are not confined to theologians or members of the Shí'a sect. Thus we find notices of great Mystics, like Báyazíd of Bisṭám, Ibráhím ibn Adham, Shiblí and Ḥusayn ibn Manṣúr al-Ḥalláj; of Arabic poets, like Dhu'r-Rumma, Farazdaq, Ibnu'l-Fárid, Abú Nuwás and al-Mutanabbí; of Persian poets, like Saná'í, Farídu'd-Dín 'Aṭṭár, Náṣir-i-Khusraw, and Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí; and of men of learning like al-Bírúní, Thábit ibn Qurra, Ḥunayn ibn Isḥáq and Avicenna, etc., besides the accounts of Shí'a theologians down to comparatively modern times which give the book so great a value for our present purpose.

Another important work, composed in the same year as that last mentioned (1286/1869-70) but in Persian, is entitled *Nujúmu's-Samá* ("Stars of Heaven")[1]. It deals with Shí'a theologians of the eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth centuries of the *hijra* (A.D. 1592-1882), and the biographies are arranged on the whole chronologically. The author was Muḥammad ibn Ṣádiq ibn Mahdi. Like most of these books its utility is impaired by the lack of an Index or even a Table of Contents, but it contains a great deal of useful information.

The *Nujúmu's-Samá*

The third work of which I desire to make special mention here is primarily a bibliography, though it also contains a good deal of biographical matter. It is entitled *Kashfu'l-Ḥujúb wa'l-Astár 'an Asmá'i'l-Kutub wa'l-Asfár* ("the Removal of Veils and Curtains from the Names of Books and Treatises"), contains notices of 3414 Shí'a books arranged alphabetically, and was composed in Arabic by Sayyid I'jáz Ḥusayn, who was born in 1240/1825, and died in 1286/1870. The editor, Muḥammad Hidáyat Ḥusayn, discovered the manuscript in the excellent

The *Kashfu'l-Ḥujúb*.

[1] Lithographed at Lucknow in 1303/1885-6 (pp. 424).

Marfat.com

Bankipore Library, and, encouraged by Sir E. Denison Ross, prepared the text for publication at the expense of the Asiatic Society of Bengal[1].

An anthology of Shí'a poets.

Mention must also be made of another Arabic work on Shí'a poets entitled *Nasimatu's-Saḥar fi-man tashayya'a wa sha'ar* ("the Morning Breeze, on those who held the Shí'a faith and composed poetry"), compiled by Yúsuf ibn Yaḥyá al-Yamaní aṣ-Ṣan'ání, a rare book, hitherto, so far as I know, unpublished, of which I am fortunate enough to possess a manuscript of the second half, containing the letters ط to ى[2]. Only poets who wrote in Arabic are noticed.

Comparison of these works.

Of these books the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* is the most scholarly and comprehensive, but those who read Persian only will derive much instruction and some amusement from the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín*, *Nujúmu's-Samá*, and *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*. The older "Books of the Men," such as the works of aṭ-Ṭúsí and an-Najáshí, are generally very jejune, and suited for reference rather than reading. As it is with the theologians of the Ṣafawí and subsequent periods that we are chiefly concerned here, a very few words about the older *'ulamá* of the Shí'a will suffice, though with their names, titles and approximate dates the student should be familiar. The most important of these earlier divines are "the three Muḥammads[3]," al-Kulayní (Muḥammad ibn Ya'qúb, d. 329/941), Ibn Bábawayhi (Muḥammad ibn 'Alí ibn Músá, d. 381/991–2), and the already-mentioned Ṭúsí (Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan, d. 460/

The founders of Shí'a theology: the "three Muḥammads" and the "four Books."

[1] It was printed at the Baptist Mission Press at Calcutta in 1330/1912, and comprises 607 pp.

[2] For description of another copy see Ahlwardt's *Berlin Arabic Catalogue*, vol. vi, pp. 502–3, No. 7423.

[3] See the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, p. 221 of the Lucknow edition, *s.v.* Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí.

Marfat.com

1067). Of these the first composed the *Káfí*, the second *Man lá yaḥḍuru-hu'l-Faqíh* (a title which approximates in sense to our familiar "Every man his own Lawyer"), and the third the *Istibṣár* and the *Tahdhību'l-Aḥkám*, which are known collectively amongst the Shí'a as "the Four Books" (*al-Kutubu'l-arba'a*)[1], and of which full particulars will be found in the above-mentioned *Kashfu'l-Ḥujúb*.

The "three Muḥammads" of later days.

More modern times also produced their "three Muḥammads," namely Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan ibn 'Alí...al-Ḥurr al-'Ámilí (author of the above-mentioned *Amalu'l-Ámil*); Muḥammad ibnu'l-Murtaḍá, commonly known as Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayẓ (Fayḍ), who died about 1090/1679; and Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí (d. 1111/1699–1700)[2]. Each of these also produced a great book, the first the *Wasá'il*, the second the *Wáfí*, and the third the *Biḥáru'l-Anwár* ("Oceans of Light"), which constitute the "Three Books" of the later time. These seven great works on Shí'a theology, jurisprudence and tradition are, of course, like the great bulk of the works of the Muhammadan Doctors and Divines, written in Arabic, which language occupies no less a position in Islám than does Latin in the theological literature of the Church of Rome. Of them space will not permit me to speak further; it is the more popular Persian manuals of doctrine, whereby the great theologians of the Ṣafawí period sought so successfully to diffuse their religious teachings, which must chiefly concern us here, and even of these it will be impossible to give an adequate account. According to the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*[3], Kamálu'd-Dín Ḥusayn of Ardabíl, called "the Divine Doctor" (*al-*

Arabic the usual medium of theological works.

Persian theological works of the later period.

[1] Or *al-Uṣúlu'l-arba'a* ("the Four Principles"). See *Nujúmu's-Samá*, p. 75.

[2] See p. 120 *supra*.

[3] Vol. i, p. 185.

Marfat.com

Iláhí), a contemporary of Sháh Isma'íl I, "was the first to compose books in Persian on matters connected with the Holy Law according to the doctrine of the Shí'a":

نُقل أنّه أوّل من صنّف فى الشّرعيّات على مذهب الشيعة بالفارسيّة

We have already seen[1] what difficulty Sháh Isma'íl experienced on his capture of Tabríz in finding teachers or books to inculcate the doctrines of the creed which he was determined to impose throughout his dominions, and it is not strange, though the fact is often overlooked, that it became necessary to introduce into Persia learned Arabs of the Shí'a persuasion, where such were obtainable. Two districts furnished the bulk of these: Baḥrayn, across the Persian Gulf, and Jabal 'Ámil in Syria[2]. To the divines furnished by each of these two localities a special biographical work has, as we have seen, been devoted, namely the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn* and the *Amalu'l-Ámil*. Some of them came to Persia totally ignorant of the Persian language, like Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh al-Jazá'irí, who, on reaching Shíráz with his brother, had to obtain from a Persian acquaintance the sentence "*Madrasa-i-Manṣúriyya-rá mi-khwáhím*" ("We want the Manṣúriyya College"), and even then each learned only half of this simple phrase and spoke alternately[3].

Scarcity of works of Shí'a theology in early Ṣafawí days.

Importation to Persia of Shí'a doctors from Arabia.

[1] Pp. 54–5 *supra*.

[2] See G. le Strange's *Palestine under the Moslems*, pp. 75–6 and 470.

[3] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* (ed. Lucknow, p. 229; ed. Ṭihrán, p. 333):

...پس با پای برهنه آن راه‌را طی کردیم و من یازده ساله بوده
و در وقتِ نماز صبح بشیراز رسیدیم، پس بخانهٔ آن شیخ که
با ما بود رفتیم و منزلش از مدرسهٔ منصوریّه دور بود و ما می
خواستیم که در آن مدرسه منزل کنیم زیرا که بعضی از اقاربِ
ما در آنجا بود، پس آن شیخ گفت که این راه‌را بگیرو بگوئید که

Marfat.com

It is the autobiography of this same Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh, as given in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, which furnishes us with so unusually vivid a picture of the privations and hardships experienced by a poor student of Divinity. He was born in 1050/1640–1 and wrote this narrative when he was thirty-nine years of age[1], "in which brief life," he adds, "what afflictions have befallen me!" These afflictions began when he was only five years old, when, while he was at play with his little companions, his father appeared, saying, "Come with me, my little son, that we may go to the school-master, so that thou mayst learn to read and write, in order that thou mayst attain to a high degree." In spite of tears, protests, and appeals to his mother he had to go to school, where, in order the sooner to escape and return to his games, he applied himself diligently to his lessons, so that by the time he was aged five years and a half he had finished the *Qur'án*, besides learning many poems. This, however, brought him no relief and no return to his childish games, for he was now committed to the care of a blind grammarian to study the Arabic paradigms and the grammar of Zanjání. For this blind teacher he had to act as guide, while his next preceptor

Autobiography of a student of theology.

First steps in learning.

Tyranny of teachers.

مدرسهٔ منصوریّه‌را میخواهیم و ما فارسی نمی دانستیم، پس ما رفتیم و سخن‌را تقطیع کردیم، پس یك کلمه‌را من ضبط کردم و کلمهٔ دیگررا آن دیگری ضبط کرد، پس هرکه‌را که می دیدیم یکی میگفت مدرسهٔ منصوریّه آن دیگری میگفت که میخواهیم تا بآن مدرسه رسیدیم،

[1] He died, according to the *Kashfu'l-Ḥujub*, p. 70, No. 328, in 1130/1718. Since writing this, I have found the Arabic original of this autobiography in one of my MSS. (C. 15) entitled *Kitábu'l-Anwári'n-Nu'mániyya*, composed by Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh in 1089/1678. It concludes the volume, and occupies ff. 329–34.

Marfat.com

compelled him to cut and carry fodder for his beasts and mulberry-leaves for his silk-worms. He then sought another teacher with whom to study the *Káfiya* of Ibnu'l-Ḥájib,

An ignorant Professor.

and found an imposing personage dressed in white with an enormous turban "like a small cupola," who, however, was unable to answer his questions. "If you don't know enough grammar to answer these questions, why do you wear this great load on your head?" enquired the boy; whereupon the audience laughed, and the teacher rose up ashamed and departed. "This led me to exert myself to master the paradigms of grammar," says the writer; "but I now ask pardon of God for my question to that believing man, while thanking Him that this incident happened before I had attained maturity and become fully responsible for my actions."

After pursuing his studies with various other masters, he obtained his father's permission to follow his elder brother

Hardships of travel "in search of knowledge."

to Ḥuwayza. The journey thither by boat through narrow channels amongst the weeds, tormented by mosquitoes "as large as wasps" and with only the milk of buffaloes to assuage his hunger, gave him his first taste of the discomforts of travel to a poor student. In return for instruction in Jámí's and Járbardí's commentaries and the *Sháfiya*, his teacher exacted from him "much service," making him and his fellow-students collect stones for a house which he wished to build, and bring fish and other victuals for him from the neighbouring town. He would not allow them to copy his lecture-notes, but they used to purloin them when opportunity arose and transcribe them. "Such was his way with us," says the writer, "yet withal we were well satisfied to serve him, so that we might derive benefit from his holy breaths."

He attended the college daily till noon for instruction and discussion, and on returning to his lodging was so hungry

Marfat.com

that, in default of any better food, he used to collect the melon-skins cast aside on the ground, wipe off the dust, and eat what fragments of edible matter remained. One day he came upon his companion similarly employed. Each had tried to conceal from the other the shifts to which he was reduced for food, but now they joined forces and collected and washed their melon-skins in company. Being unable to afford lamps or candles, they learned by heart the texts they were studying, such as the *Alfiyya* of Ibn Málik and the *Káfiya*, on moonlight nights, and on the dark nights repeated them by heart so as not to forget them. To avoid the distraction of conversation, one student would on these occasions often bow his head on his knees and cover his eyes, feigning headache.

Study under difficulties.

After a brief visit to his home, he determined to go to Shíráz, and set out by boat for Baṣra by the Shaṭṭu'l-'Arab. He was so afraid of being stopped and brought back by his father that, during the earlier part of the voyage, he stripped off his clothes and waded behind the boat, holding on to the rudder, until he had gone so far that recognition was no longer probable, when he re-entered the boat. Farther on he saw a number of people on the bank, and one of his fellow-passengers called out to them to enquire whether they were Sunnís or Shí'a. On learning that they were Sunnís, he began to abuse them and invoke curses on the first three Caliphs, to which they replied with volleys of stones.

From Baṣra to Shíráz.

The writer remained only a short while at Baṣra, then governed by Ḥusayn Páshá, for his father followed him thither to bring him home, but he escaped privily with his brother, and, as already narrated[1], made his way to Shíráz and established himself in the Manṣúriyya College, being then only eleven

At College in Shíráz.

[1] P. 360 *supra*.

Marfat.com

years of age. He found one of the tutors lecturing on the *Alfiyya* of Ibn Málik, who, on the conclusion of the lecture, questioned him as to his aims and adventures, and finally, seizing him by the ear and giving it a sharp twist, said, "O my son, do not make thyself an Arab Shaykh or seek for supremacy, and do not waste thy time! Do not thus, that so perchance thou mayst become a scholar."

Sufferings from cold and hunger.

In this college also the life was hard and the daily allowance of food inadequate, and the writer's brother wished to return home, but he himself determined to remain, copying books for a pittance, and working almost all night through the hot weather in a room with closed doors while his fellow-students slept on the roof. Often he had neither oil for his lamp nor bread to eat, but must work by moonlight, faint with hunger, while in the winter mornings his fingers often bled with the cold as he wrote his notes. Thus passed two or three years more, and, though his eyesight was permanently affected by the strain to which it was subjected, he began to write books himself, a commentary on the *Káfiya*, and another, entitled *Miftáḥu'l-Labíb*, on the *Tahdhíb* of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín Muḥammad[1]. He now began to extend the range of his studies beyond Arabic grammar, and to frequent the lectures of more eminent teachers from Baghdád, al-Aḥsá and Baḥrayn, amongst them Shaykh Ja'far al-Baḥránί. One day he did not attend this Shaykh's lecture because of the news which had reached him of the death of certain relatives. When he reappeared on the following day the Shaykh was very angry and refused to give him any further instruction, saying, "May God curse my father and mother if I teach

An exacting Professor.

[1] See the *Kashfu'l-Ḥujub*, p. 146, No. 725. The author died in 1031/1621–2. He was one of the most notable theologians of the reign of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, and is commonly called in Persia "Shaykh-i-Bahá'í." See p. 407 *infra*.

Marfat.com

you any more! Why were you not here yesterday?" And, when the writer explained the cause of his absence, he said, "You should have attended the lecture, and indulged in your mourning afterwards"; and only when the student had sworn never to play the truant again whatever might happen was he allowed after an interval to resume his attendance. Finally he so far won the approval of this somewhat exacting teacher that the latter offered him his daughter in marriage; an honour from which he excused himself by saying, "If God will, after I have finished my studies and become a Doctor (*'álim*), I will marry." Soon afterwards the teacher obtained an appointment in India, at Ḥaydarábád in the Deccan.

Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh remained in Shíráz for nine years, and for the most part in such poverty that often he swallowed nothing all day except water. The earlier part of the night he would often spend with a friend who lived some way outside the town so as to profit by his lamp for study, and thence he would grope his way through the dark and deserted bazaars, soothing the fierce dogs which guarded their masters' shops, to the distant mosque where he lectured before dawn. At his parents' wish he returned home for a while and took to himself a wife, but being reproached by a learned man whom he visited with abandoning his studies while still ill-grounded in the Science of Traditions, he left his parents and his wife (he had only been married for three weeks) and returned to the Manṣúriyya College at Shíráz. Soon afterwards, however, it was destroyed by a fire, in which one student and a large part of the library perished; and about the same time he received tidings of his father's death. These two misfortunes, combined with other circumstances, led him to leave Shíráz and go to Iṣfahán.

Life of a poor student at Shíráz.

During his early days at Iṣfahán he still suffered from the same poverty with which he had been only too familiar

Marfat.com

in the past, often eating salted meat to increase his thirst, so that the abundance of water he was thereby impelled to drink might destroy his appetite for solid food. The change in his fortune took place when he made the acquaintance and attracted the notice of that great but fanatical divine Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, perhaps the most notable and powerful doctor of the Shí'a who ever lived. He was admitted to the house of this famous man and lived with him for four years studying theology, and especially the Traditions[1]. Yet in this case familiarity did not breed contempt, for, as the author mentions in his *Anwáru'n-Nu'mániyya*[2], though specially favoured by this formidable "Prince of the Church," he often, when summoned to his library to converse with him, or to help in the compilation of the *Biḥáru'l-Anwár*, would stand trembling outside the door for some moments ere he could summon up courage to enter.

He wins the favour of Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí.

Thanks to this powerful patronage, however, he was appointed lecturer (*mudarris*) in a college recently founded by a certain Mírzá Taqí near the Bath of Shaykh-i-Bahá'í in Iṣfahán, which post he held for eight years, when the increasing weakness of his eyes and the inability of the oculists of Iṣfahán to afford him any relief determined him to set out again on his travels. He visited Sámarrá, Káẓimayn, and other holy places in 'Iráq, whence he returned by way of Shúshtar to Iṣfahán. In 1079/1668–9 his brother died, and ten years later, when he penned this autobiography, he still

He obtains a lectureship at Iṣfahán.

[1] As has been already mentioned (p. 359 *supra*), this powerful prelate was one of the "three Muḥammads" of the later time, and his great work on Shí'a tradition, the *Biḥáru'l-Anwár*, is still accounted in Persia the most authoritative work on this subject.

[2] See the *Kashfu'l-Ḥujub*, p. 70, No. 328. I have a MS. of this work obtained from the late Ḥájji 'Abdu'l-Majíd Belshah and now bearing the class-mark **C. 15**. As already noted (p. 361), it concludes (ff. 329–34) with the Arabic original of the narrative here given.

Marfat.com

keenly felt this loss. After visiting Mashhad he returned to Ḥuwayza, where he was living a somewhat solitary and disillusioned life at the time of writing (1089/1678–9). Of his further adventures I have found no record, but his death did not take place until 1130/1718, only four years before the disaster which put an end to the Ṣafawí Dynasty.

I have given in a somewhat compressed form the whole of this illuminating narrative, one of those "human documents" which are so rare in Persian books (though indeed, as already noted on p. 361, it was originally written in Arabic), because it throws so much light on the life of the Persian student of theology, which, for the rest, *mutatis mutandis*, closely resembles that of the mediaeval European student. We see the child prematurely torn from the games and amusements suitable to his age to undergo a long, strenuous, and arid course of instruction in Arabic grammar and philology, reading one grammar after another in an ascending scale of difficulty, with commentaries, supercommentaries, glosses and notes on each; we see him as a boy, now fired with ambition, pursuing his studies in theology and law, half-starved, suffering alternately from the cold of winter and the heat of summer, ruining his eyesight by perusing crabbed texts by the fitful light of the moon, and his digestion by irregular and unwholesome meals, varied by intervals of starvation; cut off from home life and family ties; submerged in an ocean of formalism and fanaticism; himself in time adding to the piles of glosses and notes which serve rather to submerge and obscure than to elucidate the texts whereon they are based; and at last, if fortunate, attracting the favourable notice of some great divine, and becoming himself a *mudarris* (lecturer), a *mutawallí* (custodian of a shrine), or even a *mujtahid*.

Value of this "human document."

But if the poor student's path was arduous, the possible prizes were great, though, of course, attained only by a few.

Marfat.com

In the eyes of the Ṣafawí kings the *mujtahid* was the representative of the Expected Imám, whose name they never mentioned without adding the prayer, "May God hasten his glad advent!" (*'ajjala 'lláhu faraja-hu!*). He had power of life and death. Ḥájji Ṣayyid Muḥammad Báqir ibn Muḥammad Taqí of Rasht, entitled *Ḥujjatu'l-Islám* ("the Proof of Islám"), is said to have put to death seventy persons for various sins or heresies. On the first occasion, being unable to find anyone to execute his sentence, he had to strike the first ineffective blow himself, after which someone came to his assistance and decapitated the victim, over whose body he then recited the funeral prayers, and while so doing fainted with emotion[1].

Power and position of the *mujtahids* under the Ṣafawis and their successors.

Another *mujtahid*, Áqá Muḥammad 'Alí, a contemporary of Karím Khán-i-Zand, acquired the title of *Ṣúfí-kush* ("the Ṣúfí-slayer") from the number of *'urafá* and *darwíshes* whom he condemned to death[2].

Another, Mullá 'Abdu'lláh-i-Túní, induced Sháh 'Abbás the Great to walk in front of him as he rode through the *Maydán-i-Sháh*, or Royal Square, of Iṣfahán[3], with the object of demonstrating to all men the honour in which learning was held.

Mullá Ḥasan of Yazd, who had invited his fellow-townsmen to expel, with every circumstance of disgrace, a tyrannical governor, was summoned to Ṭihrán by Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh to answer for his actions, and threatened with the bastinado unless he disavowed responsibility for this procedure. As he refused to do this, and persisted that he was entirely responsible for what had happened, he was actually tied up to receive the bastinado, though it was not actually inflicted. That night the Sháh was notified in a dream of the extreme displeasure with which the Prophet regarded

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* (Lucknow ed.), p. 138.
[2] *Ibid.*, p. 210.
[3] *Ibid.*, part ii, p. 54.

Marfat.com

the disrespect shown by him to the exponent of his doctrine and law, and hastened next morning to offer his apologies and a robe of honour, which last was refused by the indignant ecclesiastic[1].

Mullá Aḥmad of Ardabíl, called *Muqaddas* ("the Saint," died in 993/1585), being asked by one of the King's officers who had committed some fault to intercede for him, wrote to Sháh 'Abbás the Great in Persian as follows[2]:

بانیٔ ملکِ عاریه عبّاس بداند که اگر این مرد اوّل ظالم بود اکنون مظلوم مینماید چنانچه از تقصیرِ او بگذری شاید حقّ سبحانه و تعالی از پارهٔ تقصیراتِ تو بگذرد،

کتبه بندهٔ شاهِ ولایت احمد الاردبیلی،

"Let 'Abbás, the founder of a borrowed empire[3], know that this man, if he was originally an oppressor, now appears to be oppressed; so that, if thou wilt pass over his fault, perhaps God (Glorious and Exalted is He) may pass over some of thy faults.

"Written by Aḥmad al-Ardabílí, servant of the Lord of Saintship[4]."

To this the Sháh 'Abbás replied:

بعرض میرساند عبّاس که خدماتیکه فرموده بودند بجان منّت دانسته بتقدیم رسانید که این محبّرا از دعای خیر فراموش نکند،

کتبه کلب آستانِ علی عبّاس،

"'Abbás makes representation that he accepts as a spiritual favour and has fulfilled the services which you enjoined on him. Do not forget [me] your friend in your prayers!

"Written by 'Abbás, the dog of 'Alí's threshold."

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* (Lucknow ed.), pp. 99–100.

[2] This and the following anecdote are from the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* (Ṭihrán ed., p. 260; Lucknow ed., p. 132).

[3] Because it really belongs to the Expected Imám, and is only held by the Sháh as his trustee and vice-gerent.

[4] *I.e.* 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib, the First Imám.

Marfat.com

Another *mujtahid* of Ardabíl entitled *Muḥaqqiq* ("the Investigator" or "Verifier") wrote on behalf of certain Sayyids to Sháh Ṭahmásp, who, on receiving the letter, rose to his feet, placed it on his eyes, and kissed it, and gave the fullest satisfaction to its demands. Then, because the letter addressed him as "O brother" (*Ayyuha'l-Akh*), the Sháh caused it to be placed with his winding-sheet and ordered that it should be buried with him, "in order that," said he, "I may argue with the Angels of the Tomb, Munkir and Nakír, that I should not be subjected to their torment."

Still more extraordinary is another anecdote in the same work[1] of how Prince Muḥammad 'Alí Mírzá gave a thousand *túmáns* to each of two *mujtahids* in return for a paper, duly signed and sealed, promising him a place in Paradise. One of them (Sayyid Riḍá ibn Sayyid Mahdí) hesitated to do this, but the Prince said, "Do you write the document and get the doctors of Karbalá and Najaf to witness it, and I will get it (*i.e.* the mansion in Paradise) from God Most High."

A mansion in Paradise bought by a Prince.

Many similar anecdotes might be cited, besides numerous miracles (*karámát*) ascribed to most of the leading divines, but enough has been said to show the extraordinary power and honour which they enjoyed. They were, indeed, more powerful than the greatest Ministers of State, since they could, and often did, openly oppose the Sháh and overcome him without incurring the fate which would almost inevitably have overtaken a recalcitrant Minister. Nor is this a thing of the past, as is abundantly shown by the history of the overthrow of the Tobacco Concession in 1890–1, which was entirely effected, in the teeth of the Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh and his Court, and the British Legation, by the *mujtahids*, headed by Ḥájji Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Shírází and Ḥájji Mírzá Ḥasan-i-Ashtiyání,

Modern instances of clerical power.

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, ed. Lucknow, p. 32.

Marfat.com

inspired and prompted by that extraordinary man Sayyid Jamálu'd-Dín miscalled "the Afghán[1]." Dr Feuvrier, the Sháh's French physician, who was in Ṭihrán at the time, gives a graphic account of this momentous struggle in his *Trois Ans à la Cour de Perse*[2]. I have described it fully in my *Persian Revolution of 1905–1909*[3], and also the still more important part played by Mullá Muḥammad Káẓim of Khurásán and other patriotic *mujtahids*[4] in the Persian struggle for freedom and independence in the first decade of this century of our era. Mullá Muḥammad Káẓim, a noble example of the patriot-priest, deeply moved by the intolerable tyranny and aggression of the then government of Russia, formally proclaimed a *jihád*, or religious war, against the Russians on December 11, 1911, and was setting out from Karbalá for Persia in pursuance of this object when he died very suddenly on the following day, the victim, as was generally believed, of poison[5]. He was not the only ecclesiastical victim of patriotism, for the *Thiqatu'l-Islám* was publicly hanged by the Russians at Tabríz on the *'Ashúrá*, or 10th of Muḥarram, 1330 (January 1, 1912)[6], a sacrilegious act only surpassed by the bombardment three months later of the shrine of the Imám Riḍá at Mashhad, which many Persians believe to have been avenged by the fate which subsequently overtook the Tsar and his family at the hands of the Bolsheviks.

The *mujtahids* and *mullás*, therefore, are a great, though probably a gradually decreasing force, in Persia, and concern themselves with every department of human activity,

[1] For a full account of him, see my *Persian Revolution*, ch. i, pp. 1–30 etc.

[2] Paris, n.d., ch. v, pp. 307–349.

[3] Ch. ii, pp. 31–58.

[4] *Ibid.*, p. 262 etc. For facsimiles of *fatwá* and letter, see pp. 421–4.

[5] See my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, p. 334.

[6] *Ibid.*, pp. 335–6, and also my pamphlet entitled *The Reign of Terror at Tabríz* (October, 1912).

Marfat.com

from the minutest details of personal purification to the largest issues of politics. It is open to any Shí'a Muslim to submit any problem into the solution of which religious considerations enter (and they practically enter everywhere) to a *mujtahid*, and to ask for a formal decision, or *fatwá*, conformable to the principles of Shí'a doctrine. Such *fatwá* may extend to the denunciation of an impious or tyrannical king or minister as an infidel (*takfír*), or the declaration that anyone who fights for him is as one who fights against the Hidden Imám. The fact that the greatest *mujtahids* generally reside at Najaf or Karbalá, outside Persian territory, greatly strengthens their position and conduces to their immunity. To break or curb their power has been the aim of many rulers in Persia before and after the Ṣafawís, but such attempts have seldom met with more than a very transient success, for the *mullás* form a truly national class, represent in great measure the national outlook and aspirations, and have not unfrequently shielded the people from the oppression of their governors. And although their scholarship is generally of a somewhat narrow kind, it is, so far as it goes, sound, accurate, and even in a sense critical. The finest Persian scholar I know, Mírzá Muḥammad ibn 'Abdu'l-Wahháb of Qazwín, is one who has superimposed on this foundation a knowledge of European critical methods acquired in England, France and Germany.

The fatwá.

The better side of the "clergy."

On the other hand, apart from corruption, fanaticism and other serious faults, many of the *'ulamá* are prone to petty jealousy and mutual disparagement. A well-known anecdote, given by Malcolm[1] and in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*[2], shows that great doctors like Mír Dámád and Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín al-'Ámilí could rise

The worse side: jealousy and vulgar abuse.

[1] *History of Persia* (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 258–9.

[2] Lucknow ed., second part, pp. 26–7; Ṭihrán ed., p. 181.

Marfat.com

above such ignoble feelings; but, as the author of the latter work complains, their less magnanimous colleagues were but too prone to call one another fools and asses, to the injury of their own class and the delight of irreligious laymen. Nor was this abuse rendered less offensive by being wrapped up in punning and pedantic verses like this[1]:

و لستَ جديرًا أنْ تكونَ مقدّمًا، و ما أنت إلّا نصف ضدّ المقدّم،

"Thou art not worthy to be advanced; nay, thou art nothing more than half of the opposite of 'advanced'!"

The opposite of "advanced" (*muqaddam*) is "postponed" (*mu'akhkhar*), and the second half of the latter word, *khar*, is the Persian for an ass. This is a refined specimen of *mullás*' wit: for a much coarser one the curious reader may refer to an interchange of badinage between Mullá Mírzá Muhammad-i-Shírwání the Turk and Áqá Jamál of Iṣfahán recorded in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*[2]. That some *mullás* had the sense to recognize their own rather than their neighbours' limitations is, however, shown by a pleasant anecdote related in the same work[3] of Jamálu'd-Dín Muḥammad ibn Ḥusayn-i-Khwánsarí. As a judge he was in receipt of a salary of four thousand *túmáns* a year. One day four persons successively put to him four questions, to each of which he replied, "I do not know." A certain high official who was present said to him, "You receive from the King four thousand *túmáns* to know, yet here to everyone who asks you a question you reply 'I do not know.'" "I receive these four thousand *túmáns*," replied the *mullá*, "for those things which I do know. If I required a salary for what I do not know, even the Royal Treasury would be unable to pay it."

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, Lucknow ed., second part, p. 165; Ṭihrán ed., p. 281.

[2] *Ibid.*, Lucknow ed., second part, p. 52; Ṭihrán ed., pp. 200–1.

[3] *Ibid.*, Lucknow ed., second part, p. 50; Ṭihrán ed., p. 199.

Marfat.com

Jurisprudence (*fiqh*) and theology (*'aqá'id*), with the ancillary sciences, all of which are based on a thorough knowledge of the Arabic language, normally constitute the chief studies of the "clergy," though naturally there is a certain tendency to specialization, the *qáḍí*, or ecclesiastical judge, being more concerned with *fiqh*, and the theologian proper with doctrine. We must also distinguish between the prevalent *Uṣúlí* and the once important but now negligible *Akhbárí* school, between whom bitter enmity subsisted. The former, as their name implies, follow the general "principles" (*uṣúl*) deducible from the *Qur'án* and accredited traditions, and employ analogy (*qiyás*) in arriving at their conclusions. The latter follow the traditions (*akhbár*) only, and repudiate analogical reasoning. Mullá Muḥammad Amín ibn Muḥammad Sharíf of Astarábád, who died in 1033/1623–4, is generally accounted the founder of the *Akhbárí* school, and was, according to the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn*[1], "the first to open the door of reproach against the *Mujtahids*, so that the 'Saved Sect' (*al-Firqatu'n-Nájiya, i.e.* the Shí'a of the Sect of the Twelve) became divided into *Akhbáris* and *Mujtahids*," and the contents of his book *al-Fawá'idu'l-Madaniyya*[2] consist for the most part of vituperation of the *Mujtahids*, whom he often accused of "destroying the true Religion." A later doctor of this school, Mírzá Muḥammad *Akhbárí* of Baḥrayn, entertained so great a hatred for the *Mujtahids* that he promised Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh that he would in forty days cause to be brought to Ṭihrán the head of a certain Russian general who was at that time invading and devasting the frontier provinces of Persia, on condition that Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh would, in case of his success, "abrogate and abandon the *Mujtahids*,

Akhbárís and *Uṣúlís.*

"Envoûtement" of a Russian general.

[1] Bombay lith., p. 122.

[2] See the *Kashfu'l-Ḥujub*, p. 406, No. 2242. The author wrote the book at Mecca two years before his death.

Marfat.com

extirpate and eradicate them root and branch, and make the *Akhbárí* doctrine current throughout all the lands of Persia." The Sháh consented, and thereupon the *Akhbárí* doctor went into retirement for forty days, abstained from all animal food, and proceeded to practise the "*envoûtement*" of the Russian general, by making a wax figure of him and decapitating it with a sword. According to the story, the head was actually laid before the Sháh just as the period of forty days was expiring, and he thereupon took council with his advisers as to what he should do. These replied, "the sect of the *Mujtahids* is one which hath existed from the time of the Imáms until now, and they are in the right, while the *Akhbárí* sect is scanty in numbers and weak. Moreover it is the beginning of the Qájár dynasty. You might, perhaps, succeed in turning the people from the doctrine [to which they are accustomed], but this might be the cause of disastrous results to the King's rule, and they might rebel against him. Moreover it might easily happen that Mírzá Muḥammad should be annoyed with you, arrive at an understanding with your enemy, and deal with you as he dealt with the Russian '*Ishpukhtur*[1].' The wisest course is that you should propitiate him, excuse yourself to him, and order him to retire to the Holy Thresholds (Karbalá or

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, Ṭihrán ed., p. 132; Lucknow ed., pp. 188–9. The Russian general is here called *Ishpukhtur* (اشپختر), which, as my friend M. V. Minorsky informs me, represents "Inspector" (pronounced *Išpextor*), and is, perhaps, influenced in its form by the popular etymology ایشی پوخ دور (in Ottoman Turkish = ایشی بوق در) invented by the Turkish-speaking Ádharbáyjánís, meaning "his work is dirt." M. Minorsky further informed me that this general's real name was Tsitsianoff, that he was a Georgian, and that the phrase "Have you brought the Inspector's head?" (مگو سرِ اشپختررا آوردی) is still used proverbially to one who presents himself in great hurry and excitement, as though in fulfilment of some very important commission.

Marfat.com

Najaf) and stay there; for it is not expedient for the State that such a person should remain in the capital." This advice Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh decided to follow.

The very dry, narrow and formal divines are called by the Persians *Qishrí* (literally "Huskers," *i.e.* externalists), and to these the *Akhbárís* in particular belong, but also many of the *Uṣúlís*, like Mírzá Ibráhím, the son of the celebrated Mullá Ṣadrá, one of the teachers of Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh Jazá'irí, who used to glory in the fact that his belief was that of the common people, and Mullá 'Alí Núrí, who used to pray that God would keep him in the current popular faith[1]. On the other hand we have the more liberal-minded divines, whose theology was tinctured with Philosophy or Ṣúfíism, the *Mutakallimún*, who strove to reconcile Philosophy with Religion and closely resemble the School-men of mediaeval Europe, and finally the pure philosophers, like the celebrated Mullá Ṣadrá of Shíráz, who, however little their ultimate conclusions accorded with orthodox theology, had generally had the training of the *'ulamá* and were drawn from the same class.

The *Qishrí* theologians.

Latitudinarians.

The literature produced by this large and industrious body of men, both in Arabic and Persian, is naturally enormous, but the bulk of it is so dull or so technical that no one but a very leisured and very pious Shí'a scholar would dream of reading it. The author of the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* remarks[2] that the *'ulamá* often live to a very advanced age, and as their habits are, as a rule, sedentary and studious, and they devote a large portion of their time to writing, it is not unusual to find a single author credited with one or two hundred books

Literary fecundity of the *'ulamá*.

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, Ṭihrán ed., p. 248; Lucknow ed., second part, p. 107.

[2] Lucknow ed., p. 65.

Marfat.com

and pamphlets. Thus the author of the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* enumerates 169 of his own works, besides glosses, tracts and minor writings[1]; of those of Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (Fayẓ), 69 by name, but he adds that the total number is nearly 200[2]; of those of Muḥammad ibn 'Alí...ibn Bábawayhi, entitled *aṣ-Ṣadúq*, 189[3]; and so on. Many of these writings are utterly valueless, consisting of notes or glosses on super-commentaries or commentaries on texts, grammatical, logical, juristic or otherwise, which texts are completely buried and obscured by all this misdirected ingenuity and toil. It was of this class of writings that the late Grand Muftí of Egypt and Chancellor of al-Azhar Shaykh Muḥammad 'Abduh, one of the most able and enlightened Muhammadan divines of our time, was wont to say that they ought all to be burned as hindrances rather than aids to learning.

The works on Jurisprudence (*Fiqh*) also, even the best, are as a rule very unreadable to a non-Muslim. What is taught in English universities as "Muhammadan Law" is, of course, only a portion of the subject as understood in the Lands of Islám. The *Sharí'at*, or Holy Law, includes not only Civil and Criminal Law, but such personal religious obligations as Prayer and the Purifications necessary for its due performance; Alms; Fasting; Pilgrimage; and the Holy War (*Jihád*), which subjects, with their innumerable ramifications and the hair-splitting casuistry applied to all sorts of contingencies arising from them, constitute perhaps one half of the whole. It is curious that, in spite of the neglect of Shí'a theology by European Orientalists, one of the best European books on Muhammadan Jurisprudence treats of Shí'a Law. This is M. Amédée Querry's *Droit Musulman: Recueil de Lois*

Jurisprudence (*Fiqh*).

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, Lucknow ed., pp. 77–85.
[2] *Ibid.*, second part, pp. 112–16.
[3] *Ibid.*, second part, pp. 183–6.

Marfat.com

concernant les Musulmans Schyites[1]; and the European reader who wishes to form an idea of the subject, with all its intricate, and, to the non-Muslim mind, puerile and even disgusting details, cannot do better than consult this monumental work, which is based on the *Sharáyi'u'l-Islám fi masá'ili'l-Ḥalál wa'l-Ḥarám*[2] of the celebrated Shí'a doctor Najmu'd-Dín Abu'l-Qásim Ja'far ibn al-Ḥasan...al-Ḥillí, commonly called *al-Muḥaqqiq al-Awwal* ("the First Verifier" or "Investigator"), who died in 676/1277–8. Other works of authority, enumerated in the Preface (vol. i, p. vii) were also consulted, as well as leading contemporary Persian jurists, by M. Querry, whose twenty-five years' sojourn in Turkey and Persia, where he occupied important official positions, such as counsellor of the French Legation at Ṭihrán, singularly fitted him for the arduous task which he so ably accomplished. An excellent Index of Arabic technical terms explained in the course of the book greatly enhances its value.

Su'ál u Jawáb.

Mention should be made in this connection of a Persian catechism on problems of jurisprudence (*fiqh*) entitled *Su'ál u Jawáb* ("Question and Answer"), by the eminent *mujtahid* Ḥájji Sayyid Muḥammad Báqir, whose severity in enforcing the death-penalty in cases where it is enacted by the Ecclesiastical Law has been already mentioned[3]. This work, composed subsequently to 1236/1820, was very beautifully printed in 1247/1832, apparently at Iṣfahán, under the supervision of Mírzá Zaynu'l-'Ábidín of Tabríz, "the introducer of this art into Persia." It comprises 162 ff. of 29·6 × 20·5 c. and 28 lines, and the letters س (*su'ál*, "question") and ج (*jawáb*, "answer")

[1] Two vols. of pp. viii+768 and 669 respectively (Paris, Maisonneuve, 1871–2).

[2] See p. 54, n. 3, *supra*.

[3] See p. 368 *supra*. His life is given very fully in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-Ulamá* (Lucknow ed., pp. 129–78).

Marfat.com

are throughout inserted by hand in red. I possess only one volume, which was to have been followed by a second, but whether this was ever completed I do not know[1]. The topics are arranged in the usual order, beginning with the personal obligations of purification, prayer, alms, fasting and pilgrimage, and ending with the *Kitábu'l-Wadí'at*, dealing with objects deposited in trust in the hands of another. An Introduction on "Principles" (*Uṣúl*) is prefixed to the whole, and in each book, or section, various problems connected with the topic in question are propounded, with the author's decisions, the whole in the form of dialogue. Thus the Introduction begins abruptly, without any doxology, with the following question:

Q. "If a person follows the opinions of one of the *mujtahids* (may God increase the like of them!) during the life of that *mujtahid*, is it lawful after his death for that person to continue to follow him and act according to his sayings, or not?"

The answer, which fills nearly a page, is to the effect that it is not lawful so to do, and that the person in question should transfer his allegiance to some other *mujtahid*. Numerous authorities are cited in support of this view, amongst them Muḥammad Báqir (presumably al-Majlisí), Sayyid Muḥammad Mahdí, the "Second Martyr" (*ash-Shahídu'th-Thání*), and the "Second Verifier" or "Investigator" (*al-Muḥaqqiqu'th-Thání*).

The "books," or sections, are of very unequal length, that on Prayer occupying nearly 70 ff., and other "books," including the last, on Trusts, only half a page. Of the latter, which contains only two questions and their answers, the full translation is as follows:

[1] The British Museum Library also possesses only this one volume. See E. Edwards's *Catalogue* (1922), col. 458. The *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* gives 1227/1812 as the date of composition, but on f. 28[b] of the text, line 2, Muḥarram 1236/Oct. 1820 is mentioned as the current date.

Marfat.com

Q.—"Zayd[1] sends an article in trust to a trustee, bidding him give it to So-and-so. After the arrival of the article, the trustee learns for certain that the article entrusted to him belongs to 'Amr[1], and that the hand of the sender, etc., is the hand of borrowing and usurpation. Moreover 'Amr lays claim to the trust, saying, 'This trust committed to thee is my property.' The trustee also admits the validity of his claim to the property, but says, 'He sent it to me to give it to So-and-so; I will not give it to thee.' Has 'Amr legally power to assume possession of the property and take it from the trustee, or not? And to whom should the trustee surrender the trust, so that he may be cleared of all further responsibility?"

A.—"If what has been penned actually corresponds with the facts of the case, that is to say, if the trustee knows that the property belongs to 'Amr, and that the hand of the sender of it is the hand of usurpation and violence, it is incumbent on the said trustee to surrender such property to its owner, whether the sender gives permission for such surrender or not. For such trustee to say to 'Amr, having knowledge of the fact that the said property really belongs to him, 'I will not give it to thee, in view of the fact that the sender of it bade me give it to So-and-so, not to thee,' is incompatible with the functions of a trustee, and is not conformable to the Holy Law."

Q.—"If Zayd shall have deposited an article in trust with 'Amr, and if nearly seventeen years shall have passed, and if, notwithstanding 'Amr's urgent insistance with Zayd that he should remove the said article, he neglects to do so, and the said article, without any excess or defect of action[2] [on 'Amr's part], perishes, is 'Amr liable to any penalty, or not?"

A.—"Provided the details as set forth in writing correspond with the facts, there will be no penalty."

This sample of Shí'a jurisprudence must suffice, but such as desire a further illustration of the matters which preoccupy the minds of these jurisconsults and doctors may with profit read the narrative of the trial of the Báb at Tabríz for heresy about A.D. 1848, of which an account,

[1] 'Amr and Zayd in Muslim jurisprudence correspond to "John Doe" and "Richard Roe" of English law-books; in grammar to Balbus and Caius; and in common speech to "Tom, Dick, and Harry."

[2] *I.e.* without any fault of commission or omission on his part.

Marfat.com

based on the principal Persian narratives, will be found in vol. ii of my *Traveller's Narrative*, pp. 277–90.

We turn now to the more interesting subject of Shí'a theology, which has hitherto hardly attracted the attention it deserves from European Orientalists, and can only receive brief and inadequate treatment here. It must suffice to sketch in outline the current popular creed, without considering its evolution from early times, and to mention a few of the chief doctrinal works written in Persian during or since the Ṣafawí period. For the purpose of this outline, however, I choose not one of the larger, more authoritative and more famous books like the *Ḥaqqu'l-Yaqín* ("Certain Truth") of Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, but a little manual entitled *'Aqá'idu'sh-Shí'a* ("Beliefs of the Shí'a") composed during the reign of Muḥammad Sháh Qájár (before the middle of the nineteenth century of our era) by a certain 'Alí Aṣghar ibn 'Alí Akbar, and lithographed in Persia without indication of place or date. This work, comprising 438 (unnumbered) pages, consists of an Introduction (*Muqaddama*), five sections called *Mishkát*, and a Conclusion (*Khátima*). The contents are briefly as follows:

Popular theological doctrine.

'Aqá'idu'sh-Shí'a.

Introduction (*Muqaddama*).

Sets forth that God has not created mankind in vain, but that they should worship and serve Him, and reap the recompense of their actions in the next world. He has sent, to make known to them His Will and Law, numerous prophets, of whom Muḥammad is the last and greatest. He left behind him the Scripture (the *Qur'án*) and his holy descendants and representatives for the continued guidance of mankind. In these days of the Greater Occultation (*Ghaybat-i-Kubrá*)[1] wherein we live, the true faith is deduced

[1] This began in 260/873–4, when the Twelfth and last Imám disappeared, to return in "the Last Time"

Marfat.com

from the *Qur'án* and the sayings and traditions of the Holy Imáms. According to these, three things are required of us: (1) heartfelt belief; (2) oral confession; (3) certain prescribed acts. These are ascertained either by personal investigation and "endeavour" (*ijtihád*), or by adopting the opinions of such investigator (*mujtahid*) by conformity to his authority (*taqlíd*). The author concludes by enumerating a number of heresies to be avoided, such as Pantheism (*waḥdatu'l-wujúd*); Apotheosis and Incarnation (*ittiḥad wa ḥulúl*); Determinism or Fatalism (*jabr*); Antinomianism (*suqúṭ-i-'ibádát*) consequent on self-mortification and discipline (*riyáḍát*); Communism (*ibáḥat*)[1]; Deification and adoration of the Imáms; denial of the Resurrection of the body, or of any future life; sanction of the use of musical instruments, and of narcotic or intoxicating substances; Metempsychosis (*tanásukh*); Anthropomorphism (*tashbíh*), and the like.

Various heresies denounced.

Mishkát I (pp. 7–28), in four sections (*Miṣbáḥ*).

What is to be believed concerning the Essence and Attributes of God.

Belief in the Unity of God (*tawḥíd*) is fourfold, namely:

Section i. *Unity of the Divine Essence* (*Tawḥíd-i-Dhátí*).

God is One, without partner, peer or equal; Holy; Perfect; Free from defect; not composite, or capable of being so conceived, imagined, or apprehended; neither Body, nor Light, nor Substance, nor Accident; not located, nor born, nor producing offspring; Invisible both in this world and the next[2], even to the

The Divine Essence and Attributes.

[1] Communism was preached in Persia in Sásánian times (sixth Christian century) by Mazdak. From his time until that of the Bábís this accusation has been brought against many heterodox sects.

[2] Ḥáfiẓ has accordingly been blamed by one of his critics for the verse:

Marfat.com

Prophets, Imáms and Saints, but known to us only by His acts and the signs of His Power; neither eating, nor drinking, nor clothing Himself; exempt from anger, vexation, pain, joy, height, depth, change, progression, or retrogression; Eternal and absolutely independent of all else. His Attributes are identical with His Essence, not added to or superimposed on His Essence. These Attributes are for the most part negative, and are called *Ṣifát-i-Salbiyya* or "Privative Attributes."

Here again the author digresses to denounce various heresies of the Ṣúfís, especially the idea that beautiful persons are especially the Mirrors or Tabernacles of God, and the doctrine of Pantheism (*Waḥdatu'l-Wujúd*), according to which the relation of Phenomena to Absolute Being is similar to that between the Waves and the Sea, or to sunlight passing through windows of variously coloured glass.

Ṣúfís denounced.

Section ii. *Unity of the Divine Attributes* (*Tawḥíd-i-Ṣifátí*). These Attributes are of several kinds, namely (1) "Essential Attributes" (*Ṣifát-i-Dhátí*)[1], to wit, Life, Power, with its derivative Speech, and Knowledge, with its derivatives Will and Comprehension. To these six some theologians add Eternity and Truth, but these, like Speech, Will and Comprehension, are Secondary Attributes, while Life, Power and Knowledge are primary. (2) The "Privative" or "Negative Attributes" (*Ṣifát-i-Salbiyya*), also called the "Attributes of Glory" (*Jalál*) as opposed to "Perfection" (*Kamál*) and

Tawḥíd-i-Ṣifátí

این جانِ عاریت که بحافظ سپرد دوست
روزی رخش ببینم و تسلیم وی کنم

"This borrowed spirit which the Friend hath entrusted to Ḥáfiẓ, one day I shall see His Face and surrender it to Him."

[1] Or "Positive" (*Thubútiyya*), or *Ṣifát-i-Kamál*, "Attributes of Perfection."

Marfat.com

"Beauty" (*Jamál*), are seven qualities from which God is exempt, namely, Compositeness, Corporeality, Visibility, Locality, Association or Partnership, Unreality, and Need. (3) "Effective Attributes" (*Ṣifát-i-Fi'lí*), or "Attributes of Beauty" (*Ṣifát-i-Jamál*), are acts which may be ascribed or not ascribed to God at different times and in different circumstances, like "the Provider" (*Ráziq*), "the Creator" (*Kháliq*), "the Merciful, the Compassionate" (*Raḥmán, Raḥím*), "the Bounteous" (*Jawád*), and so forth. In this section reference is made to other views entertained by the Ash'arís, the Mu'tazila, the Kirámís, al-Balkhí, an-Najjár, Ḥasan of Baṣra, etc.

Section iii. *Creative Unity of God* (*Tawḥíd-i-Khalqí*). God alone can create, and it is heresy to believe with the Zoroastrians that God creates only what is good, and the Devil what is evil. But God can and does use means to this end, and can delegate His creative powers to Angels or other agents. "The good or evil manifested through God's plenipotentiary servants[1] is not God's act but their act, wherefore they are the recipients of reward or punishment, by reason of the option which they enjoy, so that they themselves, by their own

Tawḥíd-i-Khalqí.

[1] This passage is so important in connection with the doctrine of Free Will and Predestination that I give it in the original:

وامّا خیر و شرّ از بندگان مختار ظاهر میشود کار خدا نیست بلکه کارِ بنده‌است لهذا موردِ ثواب و عقاب میشوند باختیاریکه دارند و بخواهشِ خود بخود میکنند آنهارا که خداوند امر و نهی نموده‌است اگرچه ایشان هم بقدرت و قوّتی که ندارند بایشان عطا فرموده‌است میکنند لکن چون اختیاررا هم بایشان داد پس ثواب و عقاب‌را هم قرار داد و امّا خدا خالق خیر و شرّاست و بنده فاعل و کنندهٔ اوست، باری چون [این] رساله بجهة عوامّاست محلّ کلام با [ما؟] اینجا نیست،

Marfat.com

volition, do those things which God hath commanded or forbidden. For although they act by virtue of a power and strength which they do not in themselves possess, but which God hath conferred upon them, yet, since He hath given them this option, He hath also assigned to them rewards and punishments. Yet God is the Creator of Good and Evil, while His servant is but the agent and doer thereof. Since, however, this treatise is designed for the common people, it would be out of place for us to discuss this matter [more fully] here."

The author next proceeds to refute certain opinions entertained by the extreme Shí'a (*Ghulát*), such as that 'Alí can create, with or without God's permission; or that he is the "Assigner of Daily Bread" (*Qásimu'l-Arzáq*); or that God obtained his permission to create the universe; or that he put his hand under his prayer-mat and brought forth in it the heavens and the earth. It may, however, be believed, as is implied in sundry traditions, that on the Day of Judgement God will leave "the Reckoning" with 'Alí or other of the Imáms, and will accept their intercession, and the like. Hence 'Alí is entitled "the Face of God" (*Wajhu'lláh*), "the Hand of God" (*Yadu'lláh*), "the Gate of God" (*Bábu'lláh*), and the like.

Refutation of the *Ghulát*.

It is also necessary to believe in *al-Bidá*, or God's sovereign Will, that He does what He pleases; and that He can create what He pleases "without material or period" (*bilá mádda wa mudda*), that is, from nothing in the twinkling of an eye.

Section iv. *Unity of Worship* (*Tawḥíd-i-'Ibádatí*). Worship is the exclusive prerogative of God, and of the Divine Essence, not of the Attributes. To worship an Attribute or Name (such as "the Word of God") apart from the Essence is unbelief, while to worship an Attribute in conjunction with the Essence is polytheism. This is of two sorts, patent and latent. The

Tawḥíd-i-'Ibádatí.

Marfat.com

former includes the external worship of idols, trees, stars, the sun and moon, fire and human beings; or of symbols, such as crucifixes or pictures of holy persons; the latter includes excessive devotion to wife or child, or worldly wealth, or ambition, or hypocritical ostentation of piety. The visitation of the Ka'ba at Mecca and the Tombs of the Holy Imáms is, however, permitted; as also bowing down before kings or holy and learned men, provided there be not actual prostration (*sujúd*), and that no worship be intended.

Mishkát II (pp. 28–31).

What is to be believed concerning the Justice of God.

"It is necessary to believe that God is just, not a tyrant, and that at no time hath He acted, or doth He or will He act, unjustly towards any one. This is a fundamental article of our Faith, and whosoever holds the contrary is eternally damned." Thus begins this section, of which the most interesting portion again deals with the question of Free Will and Predestination.

Free Will and Predestination.

"It is also necessary to believe that God neither compels His creatures to act in a given way (*jabr*, 'compulsion'), nor allows them unrestricted choice (*tafwíḍ*), but pursues a course intermediate between these two: that is to say that He has created them equally capable of both good and evil, so that they neither act under such compulsion that their deeds are in reality God's deeds, nor can they do what they do by their own strength and power without God's assistance. The former belief is Determinism or Fatalism (*jabr*) and the latter Free Will (*tafwíḍ*). The correct view is that, whatever they do, they do voluntarily, not by compulsion and constraint, although God furnishes them with the power, means, and instruments, and has indicated to them the paths of good and evil, so that whoever elects to do good becomes deserving of reward, while he who elects to do evil becomes deserving of punishment."

Marfat.com

The author illustrates this by the example of a carpenter's apprentice, who, having been taught his craft and furnished with the necessary tools, is bidden by his master to make a window of a certain size and description. If instead of this he makes a door, he cannot excuse himself by pleading that his master taught him the craft and gave him the tools which enabled him to make the door. Such is the case of man if he misuses the powers and limbs which God hath given him. Here follows the well-known story[1] of the sceptic whose three questions were answered by a *darwísh* who struck him on the head with a clod, but here Abú Ḥanífa and Buhlúl (the "wise fool") take the parts of the sceptic and the *darwísh* respectively.

The author's theory that God created the hearts of believers, unbelievers, and waverers each from a different clay, "Knowing before He created them that the believer by reason of his belief would be good, and the unbeliever by reason of his unbelief bad, and so creating each of the appropriate substance, so that there might be no question of compulsion" (*jabr*), is not very convincing.

Mishkát III (pp. 32–45).

On the Prophetic Function, general and special.

Section i. *The general Prophetic Function* (*Nubuwwat-i-'ámma*). The number of the true prophets antecedent to Muḥammad, "the Seal of the Prophets and the last of them," is variously stated as from 140 to 124,000. It is necessary to believe that these, whatever their actual number, were true and immaculate (*ma'ṣúm*), that is, that during the whole of their lives they were guilty of no sin, major or minor; that they all enunciated the same essential truths; and that the revela-

The Prophetic Function.

[1] It is included in the extracts at the end of Forbes's *Persian Grammar*, No. 67, pp. ٢٧–٢٦.

Marfat.com

tions which they received were essentially identical, though in detail the later abrogate the earlier, to wit, the *Qur'án* the Gospel, and the Gospel the Pentateuch (*Tawrát*). These three, together with the Psalms of David (*Zubúr*) and the Books of Abraham (*Ṣuḥuf*), are the principal Scriptures, but the total number of revealed books is estimated by some as 104 and by others as 124. Of the Prophets sent to all mankind (*mursal*) four (Adam, Seth, Enoch or Idrís and Noah) were Syrians; five (Húd, Ṣáliḥ, Shu'ayb, Ishmael and Muḥammad) were Arabs, and the remainder of the Children of Israel. The five great Prophets called *Ulu'l-'Azm* are Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus and Muḥammad.

Section ii. *The Special Prophetic Function* [*of Muḥammad*] (*Nubuwwat-i-Khásṣa*). It is necessary to believe that Muḥammad was the last of all the Prophets, and that anyone after him who claims to be a prophet is an unbeliever and should be killed by the Muslims. Also that in every virtue and excellence he surpasses all other beings; that his "Light" (*Núr-i-Muḥammad*) was created thousands of years before all other creatures; that he was sent not only to all mankind but to the *Jinn*; and that his doctrine and law abrogate all preceding ones.

The Prophethood of Muḥammad.

Section iii. *What is to be believed touching the* Qur'án. It is the last and greatest of revealed Scriptures, abrogating all others, and is the miracle of Muḥammad, though not the product of his mind; it is temporal (*ḥadíth*), not eternal (*qadím*); was revealed in the pure Arabic language (as were all the Scriptures, though each prophet received his revelation in the language of his people), and was sent down on the *Laylatu'l-Qadr* ("Night of Worth") in its entirety from the Preserved Tablet (*Lawḥ-i-Maḥfúẓ*), but was revealed by Gabriel in instalments, as occasion arose, over a period of 23 years.

The *Qur'án*.

Marfat.com

Neither men nor *Jinn*, though all should combine, can produce the like of the *Qur'án*, or even one chapter or verse of it. It contains all truth and all knowledge, and the full interpretation of it is known only to God, the Prophet, and the Imáms, and those "firmly established in Knowledge" to whom they have imparted it. The original *Qur'án* is in the keeping of the Hidden Imám, and has undergone no change or corruption.

Section iv. *The Prophet's Attributes.* He was "illiterate" (*ummí*), having never studied or received instruction from men or *Jinn*; he cast no shadow; a cloud used to overshadow his head; he could see behind his back as well as before his face; he was luminous to such a degree that in his presence on the darkest night his wives could find a lost needle without the aid of lamp or candle. His birth was heralded and accompanied by miracles, enumerated in detail. He was immaculate (*ma'ṣúm*), and the most excellent of all beings. Gabriel was really his servant, and 'Azrá'íl (the Angel of Death) could not approach him to receive his soul without his permission. He was neither a poet (*shá'ir*), nor a magician (*sáḥir*), nor a liar (*kadhdháb*), nor a madman (*díwána*), and to assert any of these things is blasphemy. He had five souls or spirits, of which the first three (called *Rúḥ-i-mudraj*, *Rúḥ-quwwat*, and *Rúḥ-i-shahwat*) are common to all men; the fourth, *Ruḥ-i-imán*, "the Spirit of Faith," is peculiar to true believers; while the last, "the Holy Spirit" (*Rúḥu'l-Quds*), belongs to the Prophet alone, and his successors, the Holy Imáms.

Character of the Prophet.

Section v. *The Prophet's Miracles.* These included the Cleaving of the Moon (*shaqqu'l-qamar*); knowledge of the Past, the Future, and the Unseen; raising the dead; knowledge of 72 out of the 73 Names of God, whereof not more than twenty were known to any previous Prophet, and the like. He saw

Miracles of the Prophet.

Marfat.com

Paradise and Hell with his own eyes, and ascended into Heaven in his material body, clad in his own clothes, and wearing his sandals, which he would have put off on approaching God's Throne, but was forbidden by God to do so.

Section vi. *The Prophet's Ascension* (*Mi'ráj*). He ascended in his material body to the Station of "Two bow-shots or less[1]," a point nearer to God than that attained by Enoch or Jesus or any angel or archangel. To assert that this Ascension was allegorical, or within himself, or spiritual and esoteric, is heresy.

Ascension of the Prophet.

Section vii. *Sundry other beliefs concerning the Prophet.* He was "a mortal man to whom revelations were made[2]" in various ways mediate and immediate. He combined in himself the functions of Apostle (*Rasúl*), Prophet (*Nabí*), *Imám*, and *Muḥaddith*, by which is here meant one who sees and holds converse with the Angels. His intercession for sinners will be accepted in the Day of Resurrection; and God has bestowed on him, within certain limits, authority to command and prohibit, and to add to the obligations imposed by God in such matters as prayer and fasting. He explicitly appointed his cousin and son-in-law 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib to succeed him; but to assert that Gabriel took the Revelation from a well in a plain, and, receiving permission from God to see who was the author, looked into the well and saw that it was 'Alí; or that Gabriel mistook Muḥammad for 'Alí and brought the Revelation to him by mistake, are blasphemous heresies.

Other beliefs concerning the Prophet.

[1] *Qur'án*, liii, 9.
[2] *Ibid.*, xviii, 110.

Marfat.com

Mishkát IV (pp. 45–71).

On the Imámate.

Section i. Enumeration of the Twelve Imáms of the *Ithnà-'ashariyya* or "Sect of the Twelve," and refutation of the Sunnís, who recognize Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán as the *Khulafá*, or successors and vice-gerents of the Prophet; of the Kaysániyya, who accept Muḥammad ibnu'l-Ḥanafiyya, a son of 'Alí by another wife than Fáṭima, as Imám; of the Zaydiyya, who accept Zayd ibn Ḥasan; of the Isma'íliyya, who accept Isma'íl in place of his brother Músà al-Kázim; of the Aftaḥiyya, who accept 'Abdu'lláh al-Aftaḥ, another son of Ja'far aṣ-Ṣádiq the sixth Imám, and so forth. The Kaysánís, Zaydís, Isma'ílís, Ṭá'úsís, Aftaḥís and Wáqifís all belong to the Shí'a, but not to the "Sect of the Twelve," and they will all be tormented in Hell for their error, though they are Muslims, as are even the Sunnís, who are therefore pure, wherefore, according to the prevailing view, it is not lawful to interfere with their lives, wives or property, though some Shí'a doctors hold the contrary view.

The Imámate

Section ii. *Knowledge of the Prophet and Imáms.* This section is entirely historical or quasi-historical, giving the dates of the births, deaths, and chief events in the lives of Muḥammad and the Twelve Imáms.

Knowledge of the Prophet and Imáms.

The Prophet Muḥammad was born on Friday 17th (or 12th) of Rabí' i in the "Year of the Elephant," in the year 1021 of Alexander, and in the Seventh year of the reign of Anúsharwán "the Just." He lived 63 years, of which 53 were spent at Mecca and ten at al-Madína, and his "Mission" began when he was forty years old. He had nine (or 12, or 15) wives and two concubines; four sons, Qásim, Ṭáhir and Ṭayyib by Khadíja, and Ibráhím by Mary the Copt; and three

The Prophet Muḥammad.

Marfat.com

daughters, Fáṭima (who married 'Alí), and Zaynab and Ruqayya, who were married to 'Uthmán. He died (poisoned by a Jewess of Khaybar, as asserted) on Monday the 27th or 28th of Ṣafar, and was buried at al-Madína.

'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib, the First Imám.

'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib was the immediate legitimate successor of the Prophet and the First Imám, though not formally recognized as Khalífa until after the deaths of Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán (whom the Shí'a regard as usurpers). He waged three great wars, with the *Qásiṭín* ("wrong-doers"), *i.e.* Mu'áwiya the Umayyad and his partisans; the *Nákithín* ("troth-breakers"), *i.e.* 'Á'isha, Ṭalḥa and Zubayr; and the *Máriqín* ("rebels"), *i.e.* the Khárijites. He was assassinated by Ibn Muljam on Ramaḍán 21 at the age of sixty-three. He married twelve wives after the death of Fáṭima and had seventeen sons and nineteen daughters. His father Abú Ṭálib was inwardly a believer, though he made no outward profession of Islám. 'Alí is supposed to have been the twelfth of the *Awṣiyá* (executors, trustees, or vicegerents) of Jesus Christ.

Fáṭima was the daughter of the Prophet by Khadíja, and the wife of 'Alí, to whom she bore three sons (al-Ḥasan, al-Ḥusayn and Muḥassin), and two daughters (Zaynab the elder and Umm Kulthúm). She died, aged about eighteen, on the 3rd of Jumádà ii, A.H. 11 (26 August, 632).

Ḥasan ibn 'Alí, the Second Imám.

Ḥasan ibn 'Alí, the Second Imám, was born in Sha'bán or Ramaḍán, A.H. 3 (January or March, 625), resigned the position of Khalífa to Mu'áwiya, to safeguard himself and his followers, after he had held it for ten years and a half, and died of poison administered to him by Ja'da the daughter of al-Ash'ath ibn Naffs, known as Asmá, at the instigation of Mu'áwiya, nine years and a half later. He is said to have had 60 wives, besides concubines, but others say 300 or even 600,

Marfat.com

of whom he divorced so many that he earned the nick-name of *al-Miṭláq* ("the great divorcer"); and to have had fifteen sons and two daughters, though here again there is much difference of opinion. The best known of his numerous titles is *al-Mujtabà*.

Ḥusayn ibn 'Alí, the Third Imám.

Ḥusayn ibn 'Alí, the Third Imám, was born only six months (*sic*) after his brother Ḥasan; had five wives besides concubines; six sons, 'Alí Akbar, who succeeded him as Imám, 'Alí Awsaṭ, 'Alí Aṣghar, Muḥammad, Ja'far and 'Abdu'lláh; and three daughters, Fáṭimatu'l-Kubrà, Sakína and Fáṭimatu'ṣ-Ṣughrà. Account of his death at Karbalá on Muḥarram 10, A.H. 61 (October 10, 680) with 72 of his kinsmen and partisans at the age of 56, 57 or 58. Of his titles the best known is "the Chief of Martyrs" (*Sayyidu'sh-Shuhadá*).

'Alí Zaynu'l-'Ábidín, the Fourth Imám.

'Alí ibn Ḥusayn, the Fourth Imám, commonly known as *Zaynu'l-'Ábidín* and *Sayyid-i-Sajjád*. His mother was the daughter of Yazdigird, the last Sásánian King of Persia. Her name was Shahrbánú, or, according to others, Ghazála or Saláma. He was born in 36/656–7 or 38/658–9. He had one wife, his cousin Umm 'Abdi'lláh, daughter of al-Ḥasan, besides concubines. He had sixteen children (seven or twelve sons, and nine or four daughters). One of his sons, Zayd, was killed by the Umayyad Caliph Hishám ibn 'Abdu'l-Malik, who is also said to have poisoned him in 94/712 when he was fifty-seven years of age.

Muḥammad Báqir, the Fifth Imám.

Muḥammad Báqir, the Fifth Imám, was born in A.H. 57 or 58 (A.D. 676–8), and is said to have been poisoned by the Umayyads in 104/722 or 107/726–7. [From this point onwards there are so many discrepancies and conflicting statements that a more rigorous abridgment seems desirable. Thus the age of this Imám is given as 57 or 58, or even 78, all of which,

Marfat.com

especially the last, are absolutely incompatible with the dates given for his birth and death.]

Ja'far aṣ-Ṣádiq, the Sixth Imám, born 80/699–700, poisoned by the 'Abbásid Caliph al-Manṣúr in 148/765–6.

Ja'far aṣ-Ṣádiq, the Sixth Imám.

He took advantage of the internecine strife between the Umayyads and 'Abbásids to carry on an active propaganda for the Shí'a doctrine, which is therefore often called after him "Ja'farí."

Músà al-Káẓim, the Seventh Imám, born 129/746–7, poisoned by Hárúnu'r-Rashíd in 180/796–7.

Músà al-Káẓim, the Seventh Imám, and his five successors.

'Alí ar-Riḍá, the Eighth Imám, poisoned by al-Ma'mún in 203/818–9, and buried at Mashhad.

Muḥammad Taqí, the Ninth Imám, born 195/810–11, poisoned by his wife at the instigation of the Caliph al-Mu'taṣim in 220/835.

'Alí Naqí, the Tenth Imám, born in 212/827–8, poisoned in 245/868 at the instigation of the Caliph al-Mu'tazz.

Ḥasan al-'Askarí, the Eleventh Imám, born 232/846–7 poisoned in 260/873–4 at the instigation of the Caliph al-Mu'tamid.

The Imám Mahdí, also called Qá'imu Áli Muḥammad, Ḥujjatu'lláh and Baqiyyatu'lláh, the Twelfth and last Imám, born in 255/869 by Narjis Khátún to Ḥasan al-'Askarí, disappeared in 260/873–4, is still living and will return "in the last Days" to establish the Shí'a faith and "fill the earth with justice after it has been filled with iniquity."

The Imám Mahdí.

Section iii. *Attributes of the Imáms.* It is necessary to believe that the Imáms were created from one pre-existing Light; that all blessings and all knowledge of God come through them; that through them the universe lives and moves and has its being; and that they are in every respect the most excellent of beings after the Prophet Muḥammad, and superior to all other Prophets and to the Angels, though subject to all

Character of the Imáms.

Marfat.com

human needs and functions. They are also immaculate (*ma'ṣúm*), innocent of any sin, small or great, co-equal, endowed with every virtue, knowledge and power. Their birth was not as that of ordinary mortals, and, like the Prophet, they were born circumcised. After many further amplifications of the Imáms' perfections, the author proceeds to warn his readers against certain opinions of the *Ghulát*, or most extreme Shí'a, who would put them above the Prophet and even deify them.

Mishkát V[1] (pp. 71–85).

Beliefs connected with Death, Judgement and the Hereafter.

Section i. *Death.* The Angels, the Prophet and the Imáms are present at every death-bed, whether of a believer or an unbeliever. When the spirit leaves the body, it attaches itself to a subtle invisible body (*qálib-i-mithálí-i-laṭíf*) which is a simulacrum of the material body in the intermediate world or "World of the Barrier" (*'Álam-i-Barzakh*). To believe, as do some of the common people, that these disembodied spirits enter the crops of green birds or lamps attached to the Throne of God (*'Arsh*) is an error. This disembodied spirit watches the body it has quitted and the preparations for its burial, urging haste if it be a believing spirit, and delay if unbelieving, but none hears or heeds its appeal. It also sees its place in Heaven or Hell, as the case may be. A believer's death is not always easy, nor an unbeliever's hard. The Prophet's description of the Angel of Death, whom he saw during his Night Ascent to Heaven.

Death.

[1] Like so many Persian books, the actual divisions of this book do not correspond with the Table of Contents, which indicates five main divisions, each called *Mishkát*, while only four such headings actually occur in the text. This section is described as Section (*Miṣbáḥ*) iv of *Mishkát* IV, but it introduces a quite new topic and should, I am convinced, be called, as I have called it, *Mishkát* V

Marfat.com

Section ii. *The Questioning of the Tomb.* When the body has been buried and the mourners have dispersed, the spirit returns to the body to undergo the Questioning of the Tomb (*Su'ál-i-qabr*) at the hands of the Angels Munkir and Nakír, whose terrible aspect is described. If the deceased is a believer and gives satisfactory answers to their questions on his beliefs, they leave him in peace, saying, "Sleep as the bride sleeps in her bridal chamber," and they enlarge his Tomb as far as the eye can see, and open from it a door into Paradise, so that the air of Paradise enters it and gladdens the occupant. But if he is an unbeliever, they revile him and beat him with their clubs, and fill the tomb with fire; and he cries out in agony, so that if men and *Jinn* could hear, they would die of terror. But the animals hear, and that is why a sheep grazing or a bird gathering grain will suddenly stop and shiver and listen intently. Those of the Shí'a who are buried at Karbalá are said to be exempt from this Questioning, and some believe that the whole plain of Karbalá, rid of all impurities, including the bodies of unbelievers and hypocrites, will be bodily transferred to Paradise. The good deeds and kindnesses of the dead may take the form of a beautiful companion who will bear them company in the tomb and dispel their loneliness[1].

The "Questioning of the Tomb."

Section iii. *The Squeezing of the Tomb.* It is not certain whether all are subject to this, or only the unbelievers. This squeezing is not confined to those who are buried in the ground, for those who are hanged, drowned or eaten by wild beasts are equally subject to it. After the Questioning and the Squeezing, the spirit again leaves the material body and reunites with the subtle invisible body. Opinions differ as to whether this last always existed within the material body, or apart from

The "Squeezing of the Tomb."

[1] This affords an interesting parallel to the Zoroastrian belief set forth in the *Arda Virâf náma*.

Marfat.com

it in the "World of Similitudes," or is specially created for each spirit at the moment of dissolution.

Section iv[1]. *Concerning the Intermediate World* (*'Álam-i-Barzakh*). *Barzakh* means something intermediate between two other things, in this case a state or world between this life and the next, more subtle than the former and more gross than the latter. Some identify it with the World of Similitudes (*'Álam-i-Mithál*), others believe it to exist in this world, but in an Eighth Clime outside the Seven Climes, called *Arḍ-i-Huwarqilyá*[2]. The Terrestrial Paradise is in the *Wádi's-Salám* in the western part of this region, and the Terrestrial Hell in the *Wádí Barahút*[3], in the eastern part. In these places respectively the souls of the Blessed and the Lost congregate and experience pleasure or pain, and when a new spirit arrives they let it rest for a while to recover from the "Questioning" and the "Squeezing," and then interrogate it as to the friends who survived them on earth, whether they be still living or dead.

The "World of the Barrier."

Section v[4]. The departed spirits visit their former homes on earth to watch their families and friends, some daily, some weekly, some monthly, some yearly, some only once in several years. Some say they come in the form of green birds and perch on the roof or walls of the house and talk, but the living do not notice or attend to them because of their preoccupation with the things of this world. The spirits of the Blessed see only the

State of the departed before the Resurrection.

[1] This is headed *Miṣbáḥ* v (of *Mishkát* IV), and the numbering of the sections begins again, but it appears to me really to constitute Section iv of *Mishkát* V.

[2] Cf. the *Jism-i-Huwarqilyá'l* of the Shaykhís, mentioned in my *Traveller's Narrative*, vol. ii, p. 236.

[3] See Qazwíní's *Áthár'l-Bilád*, p. 25; also Halévy in the *Journal Asiatique* for Oct.-Dec. 1883, pp. 442–54; and Yáqút's *Mu'jamu'l-Buldán*, vol. i, p. 598.

[4] Entitled Section ii of *Miṣbáḥ* v (of *Mishkát* IV).

Marfat.com

good things which befall, or are wrought by, their families and friends. Some say that they come on a particular day, on Monday at noon, or on Thursday, or on Friday. If their friends remember them, offering good works, prayers or fasting as a present to them, they are pleased; the happiness of the Blessed is increased, and the torments of the Lost alleviated thereby. "Therefore, my dear friend," says the author, "you must not forget the departed in this world, but must strive, so far as in you lies, to send presents to them." The Earthly Paradise (*Bihisht-i-Dunyá*) is a place of rest and peace, there is no sorrow or weeping, nor any obligation to pray or fast.

Section vi[1]. *On the spirits of the wicked.* These are also permitted from time to time to visit their homes, but they see only the evil done by their friends, and strive to warn them, but cannot, and return to the Earthly Hell more miserable than before. Discussion as to the state after death of the children of believers and unbelievers, the ignorant and feeble-minded, and the insane; and concerning the Recording Angels. According to some, the male children of believers are, after their death, committed to the care of Abraham, and the female children to that of the Virgin Mary.

State of the wicked after death.

Conclusion (*Khátima*)[2] (pp. 85–132).

Beliefs connected with the Return of the Twelfth Imám.

Section i. *On his Occultation* (*Ghaybat*). Three Occultations are distinguished, entitled "Lesser," "Greater" and "Least." The "Lesser Occultation" (*Ghaybat-i-Ṣughrá*) began on the 8th of Rabí' i, 260 (Jan. 1, 874), lasted 69 years, and ended with

The "Occultation" (*Ghaybat*) of the Imám.

[1] Entitled Section iii etc., as in the preceding footnote.

[2] This, I believe, is how the title should stand, but it is actually described as *Miṣbáḥ* vi of *Mishkát* IV. See p. 395, n. 1, *supra*.

Marfat.com

the death of the last of the four *wakíls*[1] who maintained communication between the Hidden Imám and his followers in 329/940–1. Then began the "Greater Occultation" (*Ghaybat-i-Kubrà*), wherein no one has direct access to the "Hidden Imám[2]," and wherein we are now living. The "Least Occultation" (*Ghaybat-i-Aṣghar*) will last only from noon on the Friday succeeding his "Return" (*Raj'at*), when he will behead the preacher (*Khaṭíb*) at Mecca and forthwith disappear again, until the morning of the next day (Saturday). The time of the Advent or "Return" of the Imám is known to God alone, but it will be heralded by numerous signs, of which forty-eight or more are enumerated by our author, and of which the most celebrated are the coming of the wicked and hideous Sufyání, whose army the earth will finally swallow up; the appearance of a figure in the sun; the multiplication of misleading divines and lawyers and of poets; the abounding of tyranny and oppression; the appearance of Antichrist (*Dajjál*) riding on his Ass; the assembling of 313 chosen supporters of the Imám in Ṭáliqán of Khurásán, etc. After a "reign of the Saints" lasting seventy years, the Imám will die, poisoned by a woman named Maliḥa, and the Imám Ḥusayn will return to earth to read the Burial Service over him. This is the beginning of what is called the "Lesser Resurrection" (*Qiyámat-i-Ṣughrà*), when the

The Signs of the Last Time.

The "Lesser Resurrection."

[1] *I.e.* Agents or Representatives, also called "Gates" (*Báb*, pl. *Abwáb*). The avoidance of this last title by the author is probably intentional, for he wrote in 1263/1847, just when Mírzá 'Alí Muḥammad's claim to be the *Báb* was creating so great a stir in Persia. See my *Traveller's Narrative*, ii, pp. 226–34 and 296–8.

[2] Many particulars concerning the "Occultations," the "Gates," and the claims to communicate with the Hidden Imám advanced by the Shaykhís and Bábís, denounced as heretics by our author, are given in the notes (especially D, E and O) at the end of vol. ii of my *Traveller's Narrative*, to which the reader is referred.

Marfat.com

Prophet and all the Imáms, as well as their chief antagonists, shall return to earth for a while, and fight their battles over again, but with a different result, since the unbelievers shall be uniformly defeated. In this first temporary Resurrection only those who are purely believers or unbelievers (*Mú'min-i-Khálíṣ* or *Káfir-i-Khálíṣ*) will come to life. Then they will again disappear from the face of the earth, and, after forty days' anarchy and confusion, the tribes of Gog and Magog (*Yájúj u Májúj*) will burst through the Wall (*Sadd*) which keeps them back, and will overrun the earth, and eat up all the grass and herbs, and drink up the rivers.

The "Greater Resurrection."

The "Greater Resurrection" (*Qiyámat-i-Kubrà*), when all the dead shall be raised to life in the same bodies they had while on earth, re-created by God's Power as a broken brick can be re-made from its original materials, will be inaugurated by the blast of Isráfíl's trumpet, which shall draw into itself all the spirits of the quick and the dead, so that no living thing shall remain on earth save the "Fourteen Immaculate Ones" (*Chahárdah Ma'ṣúm*)[1]. Then, when their bodies have been re-created, Isráfíl will again blow his trumpet, and the spirits will emerge from it like a swarm of bees, and fly each one to its own body. All animals will also be raised to life to undergo the Reckoning and be judged for their acts of violence towards one another. Then the Balance (*Mízán*) will be set up for the weighing of the good and bad acts of each soul, and the scroll of each man's deeds, written down by the Recording Angels Sá'iq and Shahíd, will be placed in his hand.

The Seven Hells.

The Seven Hells (*Jihannam, Sa'ír, Saqar, Jaḥím, Laẓẓá, Ḥutama* and *Háwiya*) are next enumerated, whereof the first is for Muslims who died in sin without repenting, and who will be released when adequately punished; the second for the Jews;

[1] *I.e.* the Prophet, his daughter Fáṭima, and the Twelve Imáms.

Marfat.com

the third for the Christians; the fourth for the Sabaeans; the fifth for the Magians; the sixth for the idolatrous Arabs; and the seventh for the hypocrites. Unbelievers will remain in Hell for ever, but some, on account of their virtues, will remain there without suffering torment, as, for example, Khusraw Anúsharwán on account of his justice, and Ḥátim of Ṭayy on account of his generosity.

Next follows a description of the Bridge of *Ṣiráṭ*, "finer than a hair, sharper than a sword, and hotter than fire," which spans Hell, and over which everyone must pass, even the Prophets and Imáms and Saints, to reach Paradise. A detailed description of a very material Paradise succeeds, which in turn is followed by an account of the Purgatory or intermediate state called *al-A'ráf*. This is said to be a beautiful meadow or high ground situated on the Bridge of *Ṣiráṭ*, and peopled by the spirits of the feeble-minded, illegitimate children, and those who are neither good enough for Heaven nor bad enough for Hell. By the intercession of the Prophet or the Imáms some of these will be subsequently admitted to Heaven. Other heavenly delights described, such as the Water of *Kawthar*, the "Lote-tree of the Limit" (*Sidratu'l-Muntahà*), and the *Ṭúbà*-tree. When every soul has been assigned its place in Heaven, Hell or *al-A'ráf*, Death will be led forth in the form of a black sheep and slain, to show that henceforth there is neither fear nor hope of death.

The Bridge of *Ṣiráṭ*.

Purgatory (*A'ráf*).

Paradise.

Conclusion (*Khátima*)[1] (pp. 132–138).

[Section ii.] *On the meaning of Unbelief (Kufr) and Belief (Ímán).* Five meanings of *Kufr* in the *Qur'án* are distinguished, and three chief kinds in ordinary life, namely

[1] This is so headed, but see pp. 381 and 398 *supra*. This section might be called "Epilogue."

Marfat.com

spiritual (*qalbí*), verbal (*qawlí*), and actual (*fi'lí*). Three kinds of *Ímán* are also distinguished, and *Ímán* is distinguished from *Islám*. Sunnís and Shí'a not of the "Sect of the Twelve" are believers (*mú'min*), but not Muslims; they are not unclean, but will remain for ever in Hell-fire. The apostate (*murtadd*) from Islám is deserving of death, nor is his repentance accepted in this world, though, according to some theologians, it may be accepted in the next. But from the convert to Islám who reverts to his original faith repentance may be accepted; and a woman who apostasizes should not be killed, but imprisoned and beaten until she repents or dies in prison. The book ends with a description of five kinds of Faith and six kinds of Repentance.

Belief and unbelief.

Such in outline is the Shí'a creed of contemporary Persia in its crudest and most popular form. It would be interesting to trace the evolution of that creed from the earliest times of Islám, to compare (so far as the available materials allow) the historical with the legendary Imáms, and to contrast in detail the beliefs, both doctrinal and eschatological, of the Shí'a and the Sunnís. This, however, transcends the scope of this book, even had the preliminary work indispensable to such a study been adequately done. Even amongst the orthodox and formal (*qishrí*) *mujtahids* and *mullás* these doctrines must often have been held in a form less crude and childish than that outlined above, though they may have deemed it wiser to leave the popular beliefs undisturbed, and to discourage speculations which might become dangerous amongst a people only too prone to scepticism and heresy. Taking only the broad divisions of theological and philosophical thought in Persia, we may distinguish in each field three main types; amongst the theologians the *Akhbárís*, the *Uṣúlís* (or *Mujtahidís*), and the *Shaykhís*; amongst the philosophers the *Mutakallimún* or School-men,

Broad divisions of religious thought in Persia.

the *Falásifa* or *Ḥukamá* (Philosophers pure and simple), and the philosophical *Ṣúfís*. Of all these Gobineau's[1] account is still the most clear, lively and concise which I have met with in any European language, though it cannot be certainly affirmed that its accuracy is equal to its clarity. Thus he credits the Akhbárís, generally regarded as the straitest sect of the Shí'a, with a certain latitudinarianism to which they can hardly lay claim; and describes the Shaykhís as "not altogether rejecting the idea of the Resurrection of the Body," when it was precisely their doctrine of the "subtle body" (or *Jism-i-Huwarqilyá*)[2] which especially laid them under suspicion of heresy. The doctrines of the Shaykhís, moreover, definitely prepared the way for the still more heretical doctrines of the Bábís, who were outside the pale of Islám while the Shaykhís were just within it and counted many influential followers in high places. Of the Philosophers and Ṣúfís more will be said in another chapter, but as to the theologians we shall do well to bear in mind Gobineau's dictum[3]: "Il ne faut pas perdre de vue que si l'on peut, approximativement, classer les trois opinions ainsi que je le fais, il est nécessaire pourtant d'ajouter qu'il est rare que, dans le cours de sa vie, un Persan n'ait point passé de l'une à l'autre et ne les ait point toutes les trois professées." Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, one of the greatest, most powerful and most fanatical *mujtahids* of the Ṣafawí period, found it necessary to apologize for the tolerant and even sympathetic attitude assumed by his father Mullá Muḥammad Taqí-i-Majlisí, not less distinguished than himself as a theologian, towards

Gobineau's classification.

The Majlisís.

[1] *Les Religions et les Philosophies dans l'Asie Centrale* (2nd ed., Paris, 1866), pp. 28–33 for the three theological parties, pp. 63–111 (ch. iv) for the Ṣúfís and the Philosophers.

[2] See my *Traveller's Narrative*, vol. ii, p. 236.

[3] *Op. cit.* pp. 32–3.

the Ṣúfís. "Let none think so ill of my father," he says[1], "as to imagine that he was of the Ṣúfís. Nay, it was not so, for I was intimately associated with my father in private and in public, and was thoroughly conversant with his beliefs. My father thought ill of the Ṣúfís, but at the beginning of his career, when they were extremely powerful and active, my father entered their ranks, so that by this means he might repel, remove, eradicate and extirpate the roots of this foul and hellish growth (*in Shajara-i-Khabítha-i-Zaqqúmiyya*). But when he had extinguished the flames of their infamy, then he made known his inner feelings, for he was a man of the utmost virtue and piety, ascetic and devout in his life," etc.

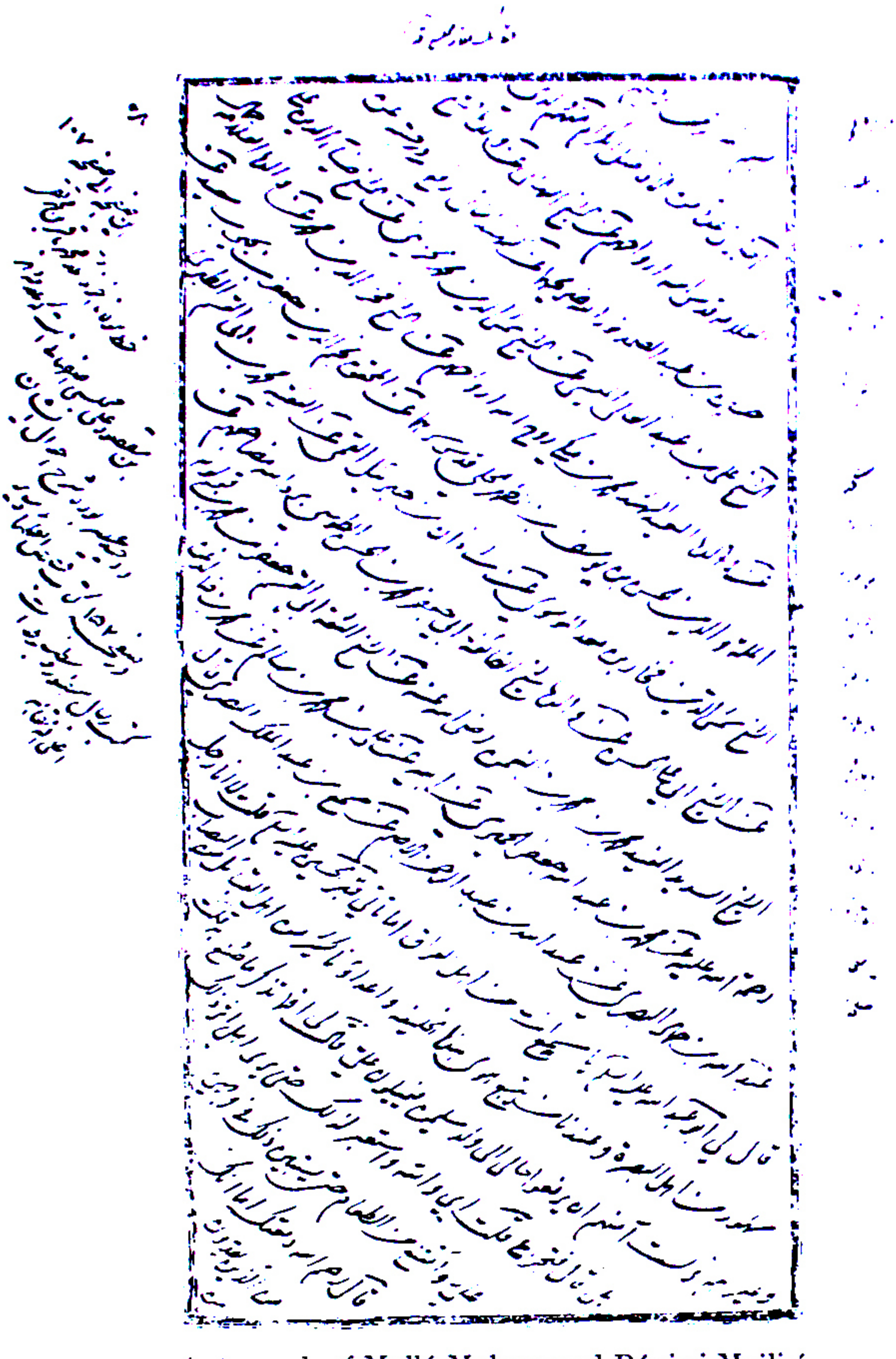
Yet Mullá Muḥammad Báqir, in spite of his formalism and fanaticism, his incredible industry in writing books in simple and easily intelligible Persian in order to popularize the Shí'a doctrines, and his ruthless persecution of the Ṣúfís, is credited with posthumous gleams of a higher humanity[2]. One saw him in a dream after his death and asked of him, "How fares it with you in that world, and how have they dealt with you?" He answered, "None of my actions profited me at all, except that one day I gave an apple to a Jew, and that saved me."

The *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* contains 153 biographies of eminent divines, of whom the following twenty-five appear to me the most interesting and important. They are here arranged, as far as possible, chronologically, the serial number of each biography in the book being indicated in brackets after the name[3].

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, Lucknow ed., part ii, p. 19.

[2] *Ibid.*, part i, p. 216. The author discredited the tale, which is described as widely current. As regards this theologian's literary activity, he is said on the same page to have been accustomed to write 1000 "*bayts*," *i.e.* 50,000 words, daily.

[3] They are numbered in both editions in the *abjad* notation, *e.g.* Kulayní as صو (96); Najjáshí as قلب (132), etc.



Autograph of Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí

Or. 4937 (Brit. Mus.), p. 105

To face p. 404

I. Pre-Ṣafawí divines.

Ten great divines of the pre-Ṣafawí period.

1. ***Muḥammad ibn Ya'qúb*** **al-Kulayní (No. 96), entitled *Thiqatu'l-Islám*, author of the *Káfí*, d. 329/941.**

2. ***Muḥammad ibn 'Alí ibn Ḥusayn ibn Músà*** **ibn Bábawayhi of Qum, called Ṣadúq (No. 95), d. 381/991–2. Of his works 189 are enumerated in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, the most important being that entitled *Man lá yaḥḍuruhu'l-Faqíh*, which, like the *Káfí* mentioned in the last paragraph, is one of the "Four Books."**

3. ***Muḥammad ibn Muḥammad ibn Nu'mán ibn 'Abdu's-Salám al-Ḥárithí*****, commonly called Shaykh-i-Mufíd (No. 97), d. 413/1022. The *Qiṣaṣ* enumerates 171 of his works.**

4. ***Sayyid Murtaḍà*****, entitled 'Alamu'l-Hudà (No. 98), d. 436/1044. He was the great-great-grandson of the Seventh Imám, Músà al-Káẓim.**

5. ***Aḥmad ibn 'Alí an-Najjáshí*** **(No. 132), d. 455/1063. He was a disciple of the *Shaykh-i-Mufíd*, and the author of the well-known *Kitábu'r-Rijál.***

6. ***Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan ibn 'Alí aṭ-Ṭúsí*****, called Shaykhu'ṭ-Ṭá'ifa (No. 100), d. 460/1067. He was the third of the older "three Muḥammads" (the others being Nos. 1 and 2 *supra*), and the author of two of the "Four Books," the *Tahdhíbu'l-Aḥkám* and the *Istibṣár*, and of the well-known *Fihrist*, or Index of Shí'a books.**

7. ***Naṣíru'd-Dín-i-Ṭúsí*****, entitled Muḥaqqiq ("the Investigator"), even more celebrated as a philosopher and man of science than as a theologian (No. 90), d. 672/1274. His most famous works are the *Akhláq-i-Náṣirí* on Ethics, the Astronomical Tables called *Zíj-i-Ilkhání*, compiled for Húlágú Khán the Mongol, and the *Tajríd* on Scholastic Philosophy, a favourite text for the countless host of commentators and writers of notes and glosses.**

8. ***Najmu'd-Dín Ja'far ibn Yaḥya*****, known as Muḥaqqiq-i-Awwal ("the First Investigator"), author of the *Sharáí-***

yi'u'l-Islám (No. 89), born 638/1240–1, died Muḥarram 726/Dec. 1325. As a youth he showed some poetic talent, which was, however, sternly repressed by his father, who told him that poets were accursed and poetry incompatible with a devout life.

9. *Ḥasan ibn Yúsuf ibn 'Alí ibnu'l-Muṭahhar al-Ḥillí*, commonly called **'Alláma-i-Ḥillí** ("the Sage of Ḥilla") (No. 83), died in the same month and year as the above-mentioned *Muḥaqqiq-i-Awwal*, who was ten years his senior. Of his works 75 are enumerated in the *Qiṣaṣ*. *'Alláma-i-Ḥillí* came of a great family of theologians, which produced in a comparatively short period ten *mujtahids*. His father was one, and his son, entitled *Fakhru'l-Muḥaqqiqín* (No. 86), another.

10. *Shaykh Shamsu'd-Dín Muḥammad ibn Makkí .. al-'Ámilí*, called **Shahíd-i-Awwal** ("the First Martyr") (No. 82), was put to death at Damascus about midsummer 786/1384[1] by judgement of the two *Qáḍís* Burhánu'd-Dín the Málikí and Ibn Jamá'a the Sháfi'í.

II. Ṣafawí and post-Ṣafawí divines.

Divines of the Ṣafawí and post-Ṣafawí periods.

11. *Núru'd-Dín 'Alí ibn 'Abdu'l-'Álí*, known as **Muḥaqqiq-i-Thání** ("the Second Investigator") (No. 84), came to Persia from Karak, his native place, and was highly honoured and esteemed by Sháh Ṭahmásp I. He died in 940/1533–4.

12. *Aḥmad ibn Muḥammad*, called **Muqaddas-i-Ardabílí** "the Saint of Ardabíl" (No. 83), was highly honoured by Sháh 'Abbás the Great. He died in 993/1585.

13. *Mír Muḥammad Báqir-i-Dámád* (No. 77), the grandson of *Muḥaqqiq-i-Thání* (No. 11 *supra*), also stood high in the favour of Sháh 'Abbás, and died in 1041/1631–2.

[1] This is the date given in the *Qiṣaṣ*, but the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn* gives 780/1378–9.

Concerning his book the *Ṣiráṭu'l-Mustaqím* ("the Straight Path") a Persian poet composed the following epigram:

صراط المستقیمِ میر دامادٔ مسلمان نشنود کافر مبیناد'[1]

He himself wrote poetry under the *takhallus*, or pen-name, of Ishráq.

14. *Shaykh Muḥammad Bahá'u'd-Dínal-'Ámilí*, commonly called **Shaykh-i-Bahá'í (No. 37)**, was equal in fame, influence and honour with the above-mentioned Mír Dámád, these two being amongst the men of learning who gave most lustre to the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great. The literary activities of Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, who was born near Ba'labakk in 953/1546, and died in 1031/1622, were not confined to theology. In that subject his best-known work is the *Jámi'-i-'Abbásí*, a popular Persian manual of Shí'a Law, which he did not live to complete. He also compiled a great collection of anecdotes in Arabic named the *Kashkúl* ("Alms-bowl"), a sequel to his earlier and less-known *Mikhlát*. He also wrote several treatises on Arithmetic and Astronomy, and composed the Persian *mathnawí* poem entitled *Nán u Ḥalwá* ("Bread and Sweetmeats").

15. *Muḥammad ibn Murtaḍà* of Káshán, commonly known as **Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (No. 76)**, though reckoned "a pure Akhbárí" (اخباری صِرف), and detested by Shaykh Aḥmad al-Aḥsá'í the founder of the Shaykhí sect, who used to call him *Musí'* ("the Evil-doer") instead of *Muḥsin* ("the Well-doer"), was in fact more of a mystic and a philosopher than a theologian. His best-known theological work is probably the *Abwábu'l-Janán* ("Gates of Paradise"), composed in 1055/1645. Ten years later he went from Káshán to Shíráz to study philosophy with Mullá Ṣadrá, whose daughter he married. He was also a poet, and in the

[1] "May the Musulmán not hear nor the unbeliever see Mír Dámád's *Ṣiráṭu'l-Mustaqím*."

Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá[1] the number of his verses is said to amount to six or seven thousand.

16. *Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i-Findariskí*, though omitted from the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, was accounted "the most eminent philosopher and Ṣúfí of his time, and stood high in the estimation of Sháh 'Abbás I, whom he is said, however, to have scandalized by his habit of mixing with the lowest orders and attending cock-fights[2]." He spent some time in India in the reign of Sháh-Jahán and died in Iṣfahán about 1050/1640–1.

17. *Mullá Ṣadru'd-Dín Muḥammad ibn Ibráhím* of Shíráz, commonly called **Mullá Ṣadrá**, is unanimously accounted the greatest philosopher of modern times in Persia. That in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* no separate article should be devoted to one whose life was a constant conflict with the "clergy," and whose clerical disguise was even more transparent than that of his teachers Mír Dámád and Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, is not surprising, but much incidental mention is made of him in this and other similar works, like the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn*, and his teaching affected theology, notably that of the Shaykhí school[3], in no small degree. His death is placed by the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* about 1070/1660[4], but by the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn* twenty years earlier.

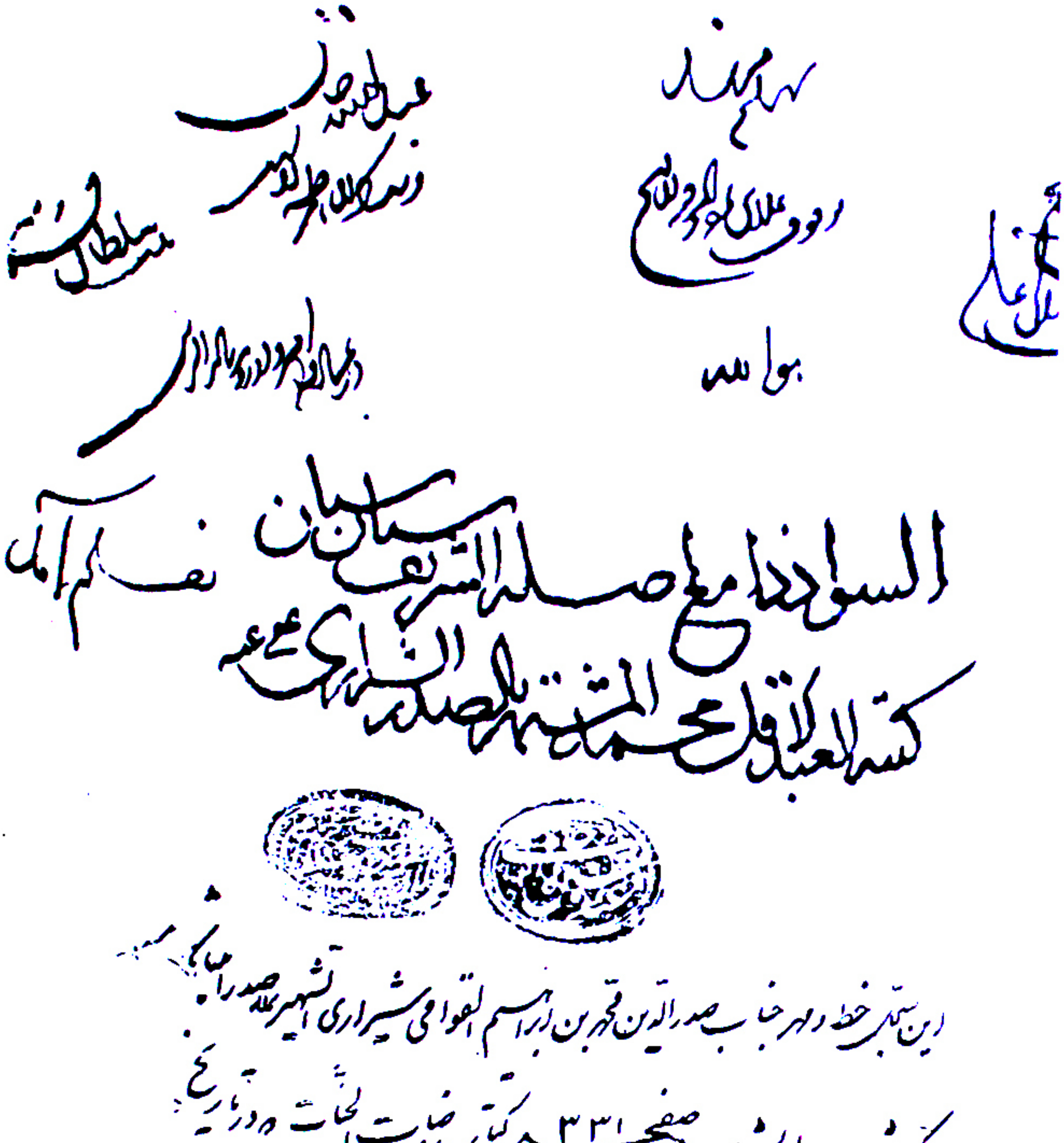
18. *'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí*, like Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, was a pupil of Mullá Ṣadrá. His two best-known works, both in Persian, are the *Sar-máya-i-Ímán* ("Substance of Belief") and the *Gawhar-i-Murád* ("Pearl of Desire"). He

[1] Ṭihrán lith. ed. of 1295/1878, vol. ii, pp. 25–6.

[2] Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, p. 815. See also p. 258 *supra*

[3] Shaykh Aḥmad al-Aḥsá'í commentated his *Mashá'ir* and other works (*Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, p. 331), but, according to the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* (Lucknow ed., p. 48), regarded him as an infidel.

[4] This is given by the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* as the date of his son Mírzá Ibráhím's death. The earlier date 1050/1640–1 is therefore more probable for the father.



این سجل خط و مهر جناب صدرالدین محمد بن ابراهیم القوامی شیرازی الشهیر بملا صدرا میباشد
که شرح حال ایشان در صفحه ۳۳۱ کتاب روضات الجنات در تاریخ
یکهزار و سیصد و شش ۱۳۰۶ در طهران بطبع رسیده مندرج وفات در شیراز سنه ۱۰۷۰

Autograph of Mullá Ṣadrá of Shíráz, the Philosopher

Or. 4935 (Brit. Mus.), 1

To face p. 408

shared with Shaykh Ṭabarsí, the author of the *Majma'u'l-Bayán*, the curious belief in the "essential meaning" of words, by which he meant that there existed a real relation between the sound and meaning of every word, so that having heard the sound of a strange word it was possible by reflection to conjecture the sense[1].

The last six persons mentioned were all philosophers as well as, or even more than, theologians. The following, except the last, Ḥájji Mullá Hádí, are all Shí'a divines of the strictest type.

19. *Mullá Muḥammad Taqí-i-Majlisí* (No. 36) is said to have been the first to compile and publish Shí'a traditions, which he received from the *Muḥaqqiq-i-thání*, in the Ṣafawí period. Allusion has already been made to his alleged Ṣúfí proclivities. He died in 1070/1659-60, a date expressed by the ingenious chronogram[2]:

افسرِ شرع اوفتاد بی سر و پا گشت فضل

"The crown of the Holy Law fell: scholarship become headless and footless."

By removing the "crown," *i.e.* the initial letter, of شرع, and the "head" and "foot," *i.e.* the initial and final letters of فضل, we get the three letters ع ر ض = 800 + 200 + 70 = 1070.

20. *Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí* (No. 33), son of the above, who has been already mentioned repeatedly in this chapter, was even more famous than his father. His great work is the *Biḥáru'l-Anwár* ("Oceans of Light"), an immense compilation of Shí'a traditions; but he composed many other works, of which the following are in Persian: *'Aynu'l-Ḥayát* ("the Fountain of Life"); *Mishkátu'l-Anwár* ("the Lamp of Lights"); *Ḥilyatu'l-Muttaqín* ("the Ornament of the Pious"); *Ḥaydtu'l-Qulúb* ("Life of Hearts"),

[1] *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, Lucknow ed., second part, p. 123.

[2] These data are from the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, pp. 129–31. The notice in the *Qiṣaṣ* is very incomplete.

not completed; *Tuḥfatu'z-Zá'irín* ("the Pilgrims' Present"); *Jalá'u'l-'Uyún* ("the Clearing of the Eyes")[1], etc. He died, as already stated, in 1111/1699–1700.

21. *Sayyid Muḥammad Mahdí* of Burújird, entitled Baḥru'l-'Ulúm ("the Ocean of Learning") (No. 27), was born in 1155/1742–3, and appears to have died about 1240/1824–5.

22. *Sayyid Muḥammad Báqir ibn Sayyid Muḥammad Taqí* of Rasht, entitled Ḥujjatu'l-Islám (No. 26), has been already mentioned for his severity in inflicting punishments for infractions of the *Sharí'at*. He was wealthy as well as influential, and, according to the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* (p. 125), spent 100,000 "legal *dínárs*[2]" in building a great mosque in the Bídábád quarter of Iṣfahán. He was born about 1180/1766–7, went to 'Iráq to pursue his studies at the age of sixteen or seventeen, returned to Iṣfahán in 1216 or 1217 (1801–3), and died on Sunday the 2nd of Rabí' i, 1260 (March 23, 1844). According to his namesake, the author of the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, his death was mourned for a whole year by the people (presumably the devout and orthodox only!), because none after him dared or was able to enforce the rigours of the Ecclesiastical Law to the same extent. By a strange coincidence, the "Manifestation" of Mírzá 'Alí the *Báb*, and the subsequent rise of that heresy which did so much to weaken the power of the orthodox Shí'a faith, took place just two months after his death.

23. *Shaykh Aḥmad ibn Zaynu'd-Dín ibn Ibráhím al-Aḥsá'í*, the founder of the Shaykhí school or sect, spent most of his life at Yazd, whence he went by way of Iṣfahán to Kirmánsháh. There he remained until the death of the

[1] *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, pp. 118–24.

[2] The *dínár* in modern Persia is of merely nominal value, and 100,000 (=10 *Túmáns*) are only worth £.2 to £.4, but originally the *dínár* was a gold coin worth about 10 francs, and this latter is presumably what is here intended.

governor of that city, Prince Muḥammad 'Alí Mírzá, son of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, who favoured him and invited him to make his abode there. He then retired to the Holy Shrines of 'Iráq, where he composed most of his numerous works, of which the most famous are the *Sharḥu'z-Ziyárati'l-Kabíra* and the *Sharḥu'l-Fawá'id*. He vehemently opposed Mullá Ṣadrá, Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, and the Ṣúfís, but was himself denounced as a heretic by Ḥájji Mullá Muḥammad Taqí of Qazwín, whose death at the hands of a Bábí assassin about A.D. 1847 earned for him the title of "the Third Martyr" (*Shahíd-i-Thálith*). Shaykh Aḥmad died in 1243/1827–8, being then nearly ninety years of age[1].

24. *Mullá Aḥmad-i-Niráqí*, who died of cholera in 1244/1828–9, was a poet as well as a theologian, and composed a Persian poem entitled *Táqdís* in imitation of the *Mathnawí* of Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí. His poetical name was Ṣafá'í, and an article is consecrated to him in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (vol. ii, p. 330).

25. *Ḥájji Mullá Hádí* of Sabzawár[2], the last great Persian philosopher, also wrote poetry under the *nom de guerre* of Asrár. He was born in 1212/1797–8 and died in 1295/1878.

[1] Most of these particulars are taken from the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, pp. 25–7.

[2] For an account of his life furnished by one of his disciples, see my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 131–43.

CHAPTER IX.

PROSE WRITERS UNTIL A.D. 1850.

Oriental writers on the art of rhetoric classify prose writings, according to their form, into three varieties, plain (*'árí*), rhymed (*muqaffá*), and cadenced (*musajja'*).

Varieties of Prose.

We may divide them more simply into natural and artificial. To us, though not always to our ancestors, as witness the Euphuists of Elizabethan days, artificial prose is, as a rule, distasteful; and if we can pardon it in a work like the Arabic *Maqámát* of al-Ḥaríri or the Persian *Anwár-i-Suhayli*, written merely to please the ear and display the writer's command of the language, we resent it in a serious work containing information of which we have need. It is a question how far style can be described absolutely as good or bad, for tastes differ not only in different countries but in the same country at different periods, and a writer deemed admirable by one generation is often lightly esteemed by the next, since, as the Arab proverb says, "Men resemble their age more than they do their fathers[1]."

Ornate prose in historical works condemned.

But when a serious historian takes a page to say what could be easily expressed in one or two lines, we have a right to resent the wilful waste of time inflicted upon us by his misdirected ingenuity. Before the Mongol Invasion in the thirteenth century Persian prose was generally simple and direct, and nothing could be more concise and compact than such books as Bal'amí's Persian version of Ṭabarí's great history, the *Siyásat-náma* of the Niẓámu'l-Mulk, the *Safar-náma* of Náṣir-i-Khusraw, the *Qábús-náma*, or the *Chahár Maqála*. Mongol, Tartar and Turkish influences

Early simplicity.

النّاس أشْبَهُ بزمانهم منهم بآبائهم. [1]

seem to have been uniformly bad, favouring as they did flattery and bombast. The historian Waṣṣáf, whose chronicle was presented to Úljáytú in A.D. 1312[1], was the first great offender, and unhappily served as a model to many of his successors. In recent times there has been a great improvement, partly due to the tendency, already remarked in the case of verse, to take as models the older writers who possessed a sounder and simpler taste than those of the post-Mongol period, and partly to the recent development of journalism, which, if not necessarily conducive to good style, at least requires a certain concision and directness. In point of style, arrangement, and, above all, documentation the quite recent but little-known "History of the Awakening of the Persians" (*Ta'ríkh-i-Bídárí-yi-Íráníyán*) of the Názimu'l-Islám of Kirmán (1328/1910), unfortunately never completed, is incomparably superior to the more ambitious general histories of Riḍá-qulí Khán and the Lisánu'l-Mulk (the Supplement to Mírkhwánd's *Rawḍatu'ṣ-Ṣafá* and the *Násikhu't-Tawáríkh*) compiled some fifty years earlier.

Corruption under Mongol and other foreign dominion.

Recovery in recent times.

Of prose works written simply to display the linguistic attainments and rhetorical ingenuities of the authors I do not propose to perpetuate the memory, or to say more than that, when they embody historical and other matter of sufficient value to render them worth translating, they should, in my opinion, if they are to be made tolerable to European readers, be ruthlessly pruned of these flowers of eloquence. As an instance I will take one passage from that very useful and by no means very florid history of the early Ṣafawí period the *Aḥsanu't-Tawáríkh* (985/1577–8), of which I have made such extensive use in the first part of this volume. It describes the war

An instance of misplaced floridity.

[1] See my *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, pp. 67–8.

waged on the blind Sháhrukh Dhu'l-Qadar by Muḥammad Khán Ustájlú in the spring of 914/1508–9, and begins thus[1]:

در بهار که سلطانِ گُل با حشمت وتجمّل روی بتاخت الوسِ ریاحین آورد و بزخمِ پیکانِ خار جنودِ شتوی‌را از گلزار منهزم گردانید

بر آمد ز کوس سحابی خروش‘
در آمد سپاهِ ریاحین بجوش‘
رخ خویش‌را ابر درهم کشید‘
بدعوی کمانهای رستم کشید‘
بر آورد شاخ شگوفه عَلَم‘
ریاحین بیاراست خیل و حشم‘
ز ژاله پیِ فرقِ افراسیاب[2]‘
بدامان کشان سنگ هر سو سحاب‘
خان محمّد استاجلو به ییلاقِ ماردین نزول فرمود‘

"In the spring, when the Rose-king with pomp and splendour turned his face to attack the tribes of the Basil, and, with thrusts of his thorn-spear, drove in rout from the Rose-garden the hibernal hosts—

A roar[3] arose from the cloud-drums, the army of the basils was stirred;
The cloud contracted its brows, and drew Rustam-bows[4] for the contest;
The flowering branches raised their standards, the basils prepared their cavalry and their hosts;
The cloud in its skirts bore in every direction hail-stones for the head of Afrásiyáb—

Khán Muḥammad Ustájlú encamped in summer quarters at Márdín."

[1] F. 75[a] of Mr A. G. Ellis's MS.

[2] This reading is conjectural. The MS. has افسر سحاب, which is obviously wrong, since it is neither sense nor verse.

[3] *I.e.* the spring thunder.

[4] The rainbow is called "Rustam's bow" (*Kamán-i-Rustam*) in Persian.

All this could much better be said in one line:

در بهار خان محمّد استاجلو به ییلاقِ ماردین نزول فرمود،

"In the spring Khán Muḥammad Ustájlú encamped in summer quarters at Márdín."

Graceful poetic fancies are all very well in their proper place, but in a serious history they are inappropriate and irritating. The trouble is that, as has been remarked already, nearly all literary Persians, and consequently historians, are poets or poetasters, and they unhappily find it easier and more entertaining to mix poetry with their history than history with their poetry, even their professedly historical poetry. In discussing the later prose literature of Persia I shall therefore confine myself to what has substantial value apart from mere formal elegance, and shall treat of it, according to subject, under the five following headings:

Classification of prose works.

(1) Theology.
(2) Philosophy.
(3) The Sciences—mathematical, natural and occult.
(4) History—general, special and local.
(5) Biography and autobiography. including travels.

1. THEOLOGY.

Theological literature.

Theology in Persia during the period with which we are dealing, that is from the establishment of the Ṣafawí dynasty to the present day, means Shí'a theology, and by extension the semi-heterodox doctrines of the Shaykhís and the wholly heterodox doctrines of the Bábís and Bahá'ís. A large portion of this theological literature—in older times almost all, and even now a considerable amount—is in Arabic, the sacred language of Islám and of the *Qur'án*, and much of it in all Muslim countries is almost unreadable, save for a few professional

theologians, and, it may be added, quite unprofitable. Some learned man writes a theological, philological, or logical treatise which achieves renown in the Colleges where the *'ulamá* get their mediaeval training. Some one else writes a commentary on that treatise; a third produces a super-commentary on the commentary; a fourth a gloss on the super-commentary; a fifth a note on the gloss; so that at the end we are confronted with what the immortal Turkish wit Khoja Naṣru'd-Dín Efendí called "soup of the soup of the soup of the hare-soup," a substance devoid of savour or nutriment, and serving rather to conceal than to reveal its original material. Shaykh Muḥammad 'Abduh, late Grand Muftí of Egypt and Chancellor of the University of al-Azhar, than whom, perhaps, no more enlightened thinker and no more enthusiastic lover of the Arabic language and literature has been produced by Islám in modern times, used to say that all this stuff should be burned, since it merely cumbered bookshelves, bred maggots, and obscured sound knowledge. This was the view of a great and learned Muhammadan theologian, so we need not scruple to adopt it; indeed the more we admire and appreciate the abundant good literature of Islám, the more we must deplore, and even resent, the existence of this rubbish. In reading the lives of the *'Ulamá* in such books as the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* and the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* we constantly find a theologian credited with forty, fifty, or sixty works of this type, which nobody reads now, and which, probably, no one but his pupils ever did read, and they only under compulsion. Even to enumerate these treatises, were it possible, would be utterly unprofitable.

A worthless class of books.

The great achievement of the Shí'a doctors of the later Ṣafawí period, such as the Majlisís, was their popularization of the Shí'a doctrine and historical *Anschauung* in the vernacular. They realized that to reach the people they must employ the language of

Popular theological works in Persian.

the people, and that in a simple form, and they reaped their reward in the intense and widespread enthusiasm for the Shí'a cause which they succeeded in creating. We have already seen[1] how few Shí'a books were available when Sháh Isma'íl first established that doctrine as the national faith of Persia, and, according to the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*[2], Mullá Muḥammad Taqí Majlisí was "the first to publish the Shí'a traditions after the appearance of the Ṣafawí dynasty." His even more eminent son Mullá Muḥammad Báqir compiled on this subject the immense *Biḥáru'l-Anwár* ("Oceans of Light") in Arabic, and in Persian the following works[3]: *'Aynu'l-Ḥayát* ("the Fountain of Life"), containing exhortations to renunciation of the world; *Mishkátu'l-Anwár* ("the Lamp of Lights"); *Ḥilyatu'l-Muttaqín* ("the Ornament of the Pious"), on example and conduct; *Ḥayátu'l-Qulúb* ("the Life of Hearts") in three parts, the first on the Prophets before Muḥammad, the second on the Prophet Muḥammad, and the third on the Twelve Imáms, but only part of it was written and it was never completed; *Tuḥfatu'z-Zá'irín* ("the Pilgrims' Present"); *Jalá'u'l-'Uyún* ("the Clearing of the Eyes"); *Miqbásu'l-Maṣábíḥ*, on the daily prayers; *Rabí'u'l-Asábí'* ("the Spring of Weeks"); *Zádu'l-Ma'ád* ("Provision for the Hereafter"), and numerous smaller treatises. Oddly enough one of the most notable of his Persian theological works, the *Ḥaqqu'l-Yaqín* ("Certain Truth"), which was compiled in 1109/1698, and beautifully printed at Ṭihrán so early as 1241/1825, is omitted from this list. The late M. A. de Biberstein Kazimirski began to translate this book into French, but abandoned his idea, sent his manuscript translation to me, and urged me to continue and complete the work he had begun;

Achievement of the Majlisí.

Works of Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí.

[1] Pp. 54–5 *supra*.
[2] Ṭihrán lithographed ed. of 1306/1888, p. 129.
[3] *Ibid.*, p. 119.

a task which, unfortunately, I have never had leisure to accomplish, though it would be well worth the doing, since we still possess no comprehensive and authoritative statement of Shí'a doctrine in any European language.

Classification of Persian theological works.

The basic works of the Shí'a faith, namely the *Qur'án* (the Word of God) and the Traditions (the sayings and deeds of the Prophet and the Imáms), are naturally in Arabic. The numerous Persian religious treatises may be roughly classified in three groups—the doctrinal, the historical, and the legal. In practice doctrine and history are almost inevitably intermixed, especially in the sections dealing with the Imámate, where attempts are made to prove that the Prophet intended 'Alí to succeed him; that Abú Bakr, 'Umar and 'Uthmán were usurpers of his rights; that the Imáms were twelve in number, no more and no less, and that they were the twelve recognized by the "Sect of the Twelve" (*Ithnà-'Ashariyya*) and none other. Thus while the earlier sections of these doctrinal works dealing with God and His Attributes border on Metaphysics, the later sections are largely composed of historical or quasi-historical matter, while the concluding portions, dealing with Heaven, Hell, the Last Judgement, and the like, are eschatological.

Simple style of these works.

The style of these books is generally very simple and direct, and totally devoid of rhetorical adornment, but commonly affects an imitation of the Arabic idiom and order of words, not only in passages translated from that language, but throughout, as though these theologians had so steeped their minds in the *Qur'án* and the Traditions that even when using the Persian language the thought must follow Arabic lines. The following example, taken from the beginning of the second volume of the *Ḥaqqu'l-Yaqín*[1], will suffice to illustrate this peculiarity:

[1] Ṭihrán printed ed. of 1241/1825, f. 142[b].

مقصد نهم در اثبات رجعت است، بدانکه از جملهٔ اجماعیّاتِ شیعه بلکه ضروریّاتِ مذهبِ حقّ فرقهٔ مُحِقّهٔ حقّیّت رجعت است یعنی پیش از قیامت در زمانِ حضرتِ قایم ع جمعی از نیکانِ بسیار نیك و بدانِ بسیار بد بدنیا بر میگردند نیکان برای آنکه بدیدنِ دولتِ ائمّهٔ خود دیدهای ایشان روشن گردد و بعضی ازجزای نیکیهای ایشان در دنیا بایشان برسد و بدان از برای عقوبت و عذابِ دنیا و مشاهدهٔ اضعاف آن دولتی که نمیخواستند باهلِ بیتِ رسالت ع برسد و انتقام کشیدنِ شیعیان از ایشان و سایرِ مردم در قبرها میمانند تا در قیامت محشور شوند چنانچه در احادیثِ بسیار وارد شده است که رجوع نمیکنند در رجعت مگر کسی که محضِ ایمان داشته باشد یا محضِ کفر امّا سایر مردم پس ایشانرا بحال خود میگذارند،

"*Maqṣad IX: establishing the 'Return'* (Raj'at).

"Know that of the number of those things whereon the Shí'a are agreed, nay, which are of the essentials of the true doctrine of that Truth-pursuing body, is the 'Return.' That is to say that in the time of His Holiness the *Qá'im*[1], before the Resurrection, a number of the good who are very good and of the bad who are very bad will return to the world, the good in order that their eyes may be brightened by seeing the triumph of their Imáms, and that some portion of the recompense of their good deeds may accrue to them in this world; and the bad for the punishment and torment of the world, and to behold the double of that triumph which they did not wish to accrue to the Imáms, and that the Shí'a may avenge themselves on them. But all other men will remain in their tombs until they shall be raised up in the general Upraising; even as it has come down in many traditions that none shall come back in the 'Return' save he who is possessed of pure belief or pure unbelief, but as for the remainder of mankind, these will [for the time being] be left to themselves."

It is true that here the sentence most Arabian in construction may be the literal translation of a tradition not

[1] "He who shall arise," *i.e.* the Imám Mahdí or Messiah of the Shí'a.

given in the original Arabic, which must evidently run something like this:

لا يرجع فى الرّجعة الّا من له محض الايمان او محض الكفر'

but the influence of Arabian syntax is constantly apparent.

Another class of Shí'a theological writings consists of polemical works directed against the Sunnís, the Ṣúfís, the Shaykhís, the Bábís and Bahá'ís, and the Christians. The Sunnís are naturally attacked in all manuals of doctrine with varying degrees of violence, for from Nádir Sháh downwards to Abu'l-Ḥasan Mírzá ("*Ḥájji Shaykhu'r-Ra'ís*"), an eager contemporary advocate of Islamic unity[1], no one has been able to effect an appeasement between these two great divisions of Islám, and a more tolerant attitude in the younger generation of Persians, so far as it exists, is due rather to a growing indifference to Islám itself than to a religious reconciliation. Attacks on the Ṣúfís, especially on their Pantheism (*Waḥdatu'l-Wujúd*), are also often met with in general manuals of Shí'a doctrine, but several independent denunciations of their doctrines exist, such as Áqá Muḥammad 'Alí Bihbihání's *Risála-i-Khayrátiyya*[2], which led to a violent persecution of the Ṣúfís and the death of several of their leaders, such as Mír Ma'ṣum, Mushtáq 'Alí and Núr 'Alí Sháh[3]; and the *Maṭá'inu'ṣ-Ṣúfiyya* of Muḥammad Rafí' ibn Muḥammad Shafí' of Tabríz, composed in 1221/1806[4]. The latter even has recourse to the Gospels to prove his case, quoting Christ's saying "Beware

Polemical works against—
(1) The Sunnís.
(2) The Ṣúfís.

[1] His pamphlet on the "Union of Islám" (*Ittiḥádu'l-Islám*) was lithographed at Bombay in 1312/1894–5.

[2] Composed in 1211/1796–7. See the full and interesting account of the work in Rieu's *Persian Catalogue*, pp. 33–4.

[3] For a full account of these events, see Malcolm's *History of Persia*, ed. 1815, vol. ii, pp. 417–22.

[4] Of this I possess a good MS. dated 22 Jumádá ii, 1222 (27 Aug. 1807).

of them which come to you in sheep's clothing (*súf*, wool), but within they are ravening wolves."

(3) The Christians.

The Islamo-Christian controversy has also produced a considerable literature in Persian, which has been discussed by Professor Samuel Lee in his *Controversial Tracts on Christianity and Mohammedanism* (Cambridge, 1824). Several such works were written in the first quarter of the seventeenth century by Sayyid Aḥmad ibn Zaynu'l-'Ábidín al-'Alawí, one in refutation of Xavier's *A'ína-i-Ḥaqq-numá* ("Truth-revealing Mirror"), and another directed against the Jews. Later the proselytizing activities of Henry Martyn the missionary called forth replies from Mírzá Ibráhím and others[1].

(4) The Shaykhís.

The Shaykhí sect or school derived its origin and its name from Shaykh Aḥmad ibn Zaynu'd-Dín al-Aḥsá'í, a native not of Persia but of Baḥrayn, who died, according to the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*[2], at the advanced age of ninety in 1243/1827–8, and was succeeded by Sayyid Kázim of Rasht, who numbered amongst his disciples both Sayyid 'Alí Muḥammad the Báb, the originator of the Bábí sect, and many of those who subsequently became his leading disciples, and Ḥájji Muḥammad Karím Khán of Kirmán, who continued and developed the Shaykhí doctrine. This doctrine, essentially a rather extreme form of the Shí'a faith, was accounted heterodox by several eminent *mujtahids*, such as Ḥájji Mullá Muḥammad Taqí of Qazwín, the uncle and father-in-law of the celebrated Bábí heroine Qurratu'l-'Ayn, whose hostility to the Shaykhís and Bábís ultimately cost him his life, but earned for him from the orthodox Shí'a the title of the "Third Martyr" (*Shahíd-i-Thálith*)[3]. Some account of the

[1] See my *Cat. of Pers. MSS. in the Camb. Univ. Library* (1896), pp. 7–13.

[2] Pp. 25–6, of the Ṭihrán lithographed edition of 1306/1888.

[3] See vol. ii of my *Traveller's Narrative*, pp. 197–8 and 310–12.

Shaykhís and their doctrines, sufficient for the ordinary student of Persian thought, is given in Note E (pp. 234–44) at the end of the second volume of my *Traveller's Narrative*[1]. Shaykh Aḥmad was the author of numerous works, all, I think, in Arabic, of which the titles are given in the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* (p. 25), which asserts amongst other things that he held the Ṣúfís in great detestation, notwithstanding his own unorthodox views on the Resurrection. Naturally the pantheistic and latitudinarian opinions of these mystics are distasteful to dogmatic theologians of every kind, whether orthodox Shí'a or Sunní, Shaykhí, Bábí and Bahá'í, or Christian. Henry Martyn evidently felt that he had far more in common with the ordinary fanatical *mullá* of Shíráz than with the elusive and eclectic Ṣúfí. The later Shaykhís and Bábís, though both derive from a common source, hold one another in the utmost detestation; and at least one of the doctors of theology who examined and condemned the Báb at Tabríz towards the end of the year A.D. 1847, Mullá Muḥammad Mámaqání, belonged to the Shaykhí school[2].

(5) The Bábís and Bahá'ís.

The Bábí-Bahá'í movement, of which the effects have now extended far beyond the Persian frontiers even to America, has naturally given rise to a far more extensive literature, which forms a study in itself, and which I have discussed elsewhere[3]. Of the Báb's own writings the Persian *Bayán* and the *Dalá'il-i-sab'a* ("Seven Proofs") are the most important of those composed in Persian[4]. Bahá'u'lláh's *Íqán* ("Assurance")

[1] See also A.-L.-M. Nicolas, *Essai sur le Cheïkhisme* (Paris, 1910), pp. 72. A list of Shaykh Aḥmad's writings is given.

[2] See *Traveller's Narrative*, vol. ii, p. 278.

[3] *Traveller's Narrative*, vol. ii. pp. 173–211; *Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion*, pp. 175–243.

[4] French translations of both have been published by the learned and impartial A.-L.-M. Nicolas.

is the earliest reasoned apology, and was written before he advanced his claim to be "He whom God shall manifest." His later "Tablets" (*Alwáḥ*), many of which are in Persian, are innumerable; amongst them the "Epistles to the Kings" (*Alwáḥ-i-Salátín*) are the most interesting and important. There is also an abundant Azalí literature; and each dichotomous schism has given rise to a fresh crop of controversial pamphlets. Of systematic refutations of the Bábí and Bahá'í doctrines in Persian the most elaborate are the *Iḥqáqu'l-Ḥaqq* ("Verification of the Truth") of Áqá Muḥammad Taqí of Hamadán[1], composed about 1326/1908; and the *Minháju'ṭ-Ṭálibín*[2] of Ḥájji Ḥusayn-qulí, an Armenian convert to Islám, lithographed at Bombay in 1320/1902. The Bábís and Bahá'ís have developed a somewhat distinctive style of their own in Persian which possesses considerable merits. Some of Bahá'u'lláh's "Tablets" (*Alwáḥ*) addressed to Zoroastrian enquirers are even written in pure Persian without admixture of Arabic. Their most important works, like the *Kitáb-i-Aqdas* ("Most Holy Book"), are, however, written in Arabic. From the point of view of style, both in Persian and Arabic, an immense improvement was effected by Bahá'u'lláh, for the style of Mírzá 'Alí Muḥammad the Báb was, as Gobineau says, "terne, raide, et sans éclat," "dull, stiff, and devoid of brilliance."

2. PHILOSOPHY.

Philosophy (*Ḥikmat*, *Filsafa*) is defined by the Muslims as "a knowledge of the true essence of things, as they really are, so far as is possible to human capacity."

Divisions of Philosophy.

It is divided into two branches, the theoretical (*naẓarí*), and the practical (*'amalí*). The former comprises Mathematics (*Riyáḍiyyát*), Natural Science (*'Ilmu'ṭ-Ṭabí'at*), and Metaphysics (*Má wará'ba'd* or *fawq*

[1] *Materials*, pp. 189–90.

[2] *Ibid.*, pp. 196–7.

aṭ-Ṭabí'at); the latter Ethics (*Tahdhíbu'l-Akhláq*), Economics (*Tadbíru'l-Manzil*), and Politics (*Siyasatu'l-Mudun*). The three best-known Persian treatises on Practical Philosophy, namely the *Akhláq-i-Náṣirí*, *Akhláq-i-Jaláli*, and *Akhláq-i-Muḥsini*[1], all belong to the period preceding that which we are now discussing, and I do not recollect any important Persian work on the subject which has appeared since. We may therefore confine our attention here to the first, or theoretical, branch of Philosophy, and in this section to Metaphysics, which on the one hand borders on Theology, and on the other on Science. It is generally admitted that a very close connection existed between the Shí'a and the Mu'tazila[2] in early 'Abbásid times, and it is well known that the latter were the most enlightened and philosophic of the theological schools of Islám, and that in particular they were the champions of Free Will against the rigid Determinism which subsequently triumphed, to the great detriment of the intellectual development of the Muhammadan world. Those sections of Shí'ite theological works which treat of the Nature and Attributes of God are, therefore, of a more philosophical character than is commonly the case in Sunní books of a similar type.

Shí'a and Mu'tazila.

Muslim Philosophy, like Muslim Science, admittedly and avowedly owes almost everything to the Greeks. Its development from the middle of the eighth century of the Christian era, when under the early 'Abbásid Caliphs the work of translating into Arabic the works of the most eminent and celebrated Greek thinkers began, down to the deadly blow inflicted on Islamic civilization by the Mongol Invasion and the destruction of

Debt of Muslim philosophers to the Greeks.

[1] See my *Persian Literature under Tartar Dominion*, pp 442–4.

[2] See de Boer's *Hist. of Philosophy in Islam*, translated by E. R. Jones (London, 1903), pp. 33, 43, 72 and 84; and Goldziher's *Vorlesungen über der Islam* (Heidelberg, 1910), pp. 234 *et seqq*.

Baghdád and the 'Abbásid Caliphate in the middle of the thirteenth century, has been repeatedly traced by European scholars. For a broad general view, characterizing the chief exponents of the different schools of Islamic thought, Dr T J de Boer's *History of Philosophy in Islam*, translated into English by E. R. Jones, may be recommended to the general reader. It will be observed that only one of the thinkers mentioned in that book, Ibn Khaldún (b. A.D. 1332 at Tunis, d. A.D. 1406 at Cairo), flourished after the fall of the 'Abbásid Caliphate, and he was a unique and isolated phenomenon, "without forerunners and without successors[1]." The question we have to answer here is, has Persia, which in earlier times produced so large a proportion of the so-called "Arabian Philosophers[2]," produced any metaphysician of note since the beginning of the sixteenth century? To answer this question one would need to combine with a competent knowledge of Arabic and Persian a grasp of the history and subject-matter not only of "Arabian" but of Greek Philosophy (and, indeed, of Philosophy in general) to which I cannot lay claim. This, indeed, constitutes the difficulty of judging the value of the scientific literature of Islám. How many of those who admire the Persian quatrains of 'Umar Khayyám can follow M. Woepcke in the appreciation of his Arabic algebraical treatises? A knowledge of Arabic does not suffice to enable us to decide whether ar-Rází or Ibn Síná (Avicenna) was the greater physician. Much valuable work of this technical character has been done in Germany, by Dr E. Wiedemann of Erlangen (Optics, Physics, etc.), Dr Julius Hirschberg of Berlin (Ophthalmology), Dr Max Simon (Anatomy), and others, but very much remains to

Difficulty of determining the value of later Persian philosophical systems.

[1] De Boer, *op laud.*, p. 208.

[2] So-called merely because they wrote in Arabic, at that time exclusively, and even now to a considerable extent, the learned language of Islám, as Latin was of Christendom.

be done, and few scholars are competent to undertake it. As regards Philosophy in Persia during the last three or four centuries, all one can say is that half a dozen thinkers have established a great reputation amongst their countrymen, but how far this reputation is deserved is a question which has not yet received a satisfactory answer. These thinkers are, in chronological order, as follows: (1) Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín al-'Ámilí (d. 1031/1622); (2) Mír Dámád (d. 1041/1631–2); (3) Mullá Ṣadrá (d. 1050/1640–1); (4) Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ (d. after 1091/1680); (5) Mullá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq al-Láhijí; and, in quite modern times, (6) Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár (d. 1295/1878).

Six modern Persian philosophers of repute.

Now Muslim philosophers are of two sorts, those whose philosophy is conditioned by and subordinated to revealed Religion, and those whose speculations are not so limited. The former are the *Mutakallimún* or *Ahl-i-Kalám*, the Schoolmen or Dialecticians[1]; the latter the *Ḥukamá* (pl. of *Ḥakím*) or *Falásifa* (pl. of *Faylasúf*), the Philosophers proper. Of the six persons mentioned above, Mullá Ṣadrá certainly and Ḥájji Mullá Hádí possibly belong to the second class, but the four others to the first. These four, however, if less important from the point of view of Philosophy, were in other ways notable men of letters. Biographies of all of them except Mullá Hádí, who is too modern, are given in the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, or the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, from which, unless otherwise stated, the following particulars are taken.

Ḥikmat and *Kalám*.

The first five were more or less contemporary, and are, to a certain extent, interrelated. Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín and Mír Dámád both enjoyed considerable influence and stood in high favour at the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, yet there was no jealousy between them, if we may believe the pleasing anecdote about them and the Sháh related by Sir

[1] See de Boer, *op. cit.*, pp. 42–3.

John Malcolm[1]. Mullá Ṣadrá was the pupil of both of them[2], while Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ and Mullá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq al-Láhijí were both his pupils and his sons-in-law.

1. *Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín al-'Ámilí.*

Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín Muḥammad ibn Ḥusayn ibn 'Abdu'ṣ-Ṣamad al-Ḥárithí al-'Ámilí al-Hamdání al-Jab'í was one of the numerous Shí'a doctors who came to Persia from Jabal 'Ámil in Syria, whence he derived the *nisba* by which he is commonly known, though by the Persians he is most often spoken of as "Shaykh-i-Bahá'í." His father Shaykh Ḥusayn, a disciple of Shaykh Zaynu'd-Dín "the Second Martyr" (*Shahíd-i-Thání*), came to Persia after his master had been put to death by the Turks for his Shí'ite proclivities, bringing with him the young Bahá'u'd-Dín, who applied himself diligently to the study of Theology in all its branches, Mathematics and Medicine. His teachers included, besides his father, Mullá 'Abdu'lláh of Yazd, a pupil of Jalálu'd-Dín-i-Dawání, the author of the *Akhláq-i-Jaláli*, who was in turn a pupil of the celebrated Sayyid-i-Sharíf-i-Jurjání. In Mathematics he studied with Mullá 'Alí *Mudhahhib* ("the Gilder") and Mullá Afḍal of Qá'in, while in Medicine he was the pupil of 'Alá'u'd-Dín Maḥmúd[3]. In due course he attained great celebrity as a theologian and jurist, and became *Ṣadr* or *Shaykhu'l-Islám* of Iṣfahán. After a while he was possessed with the desire to make the pilgrimage to Mecca, and on his homeward journey visited, in the guise of a *darwísh*, Mesopotamia, Egypt, the Ḥijáz

Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, b. 953/1546; d. 1031/1622.

His teachers.

[1] *Hist. of Persia* (ed. 1815), vol. i, pp. 558–9. The anecdote occurs in the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* and in the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, p. 115.

[2] *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, p. 331.

[3] Some account of him is given in vol. i of the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* amongst the notices of eminent men of the reign of Sháh 'Abbás, whence some of the particulars here given concerning Shaykh-i-Bahá'í and Mír Dámád are also derived.

and Palestine, and made the acquaintance of many learned men and eminent doctors and mystics.

His principal works.

Shaykh-i-Bahá'í was born at Ba'labakk in Syria on Muḥarram 17, 953 (March 20, 1546), and died on Shawwál 12, 1031 (August 20, 1622). His principal works are the *Jámi'-i-'Abbásí*, containing legal decisions (*fatáwà*); the *Zubda*; the *Miftaḥu'l-Faláḥ*; the *Tashríḥu'l-Aflák* ("Anatomy of the Heavens"); the *Khuláṣatu'l-Ḥisáb* on Arithmetic; the *Kashkúl* ("Beggars' Bowl"), a large miscellany of stories and verses, the latter partly in Persian[1]; a similar work called the *Mikhlát*; also a Persian *mathnawí* poem entitled *Nán u Ḥalwá* ("Bread and Sweetmeats") describing his adventures during the pilgrimage to Mecca, and another entitled *Shír u Shakar* ("Milk and Sugar"). Extracts from these poems, as well as from his *ghazals*, are given in the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (vol. ii, pp. 8–10).

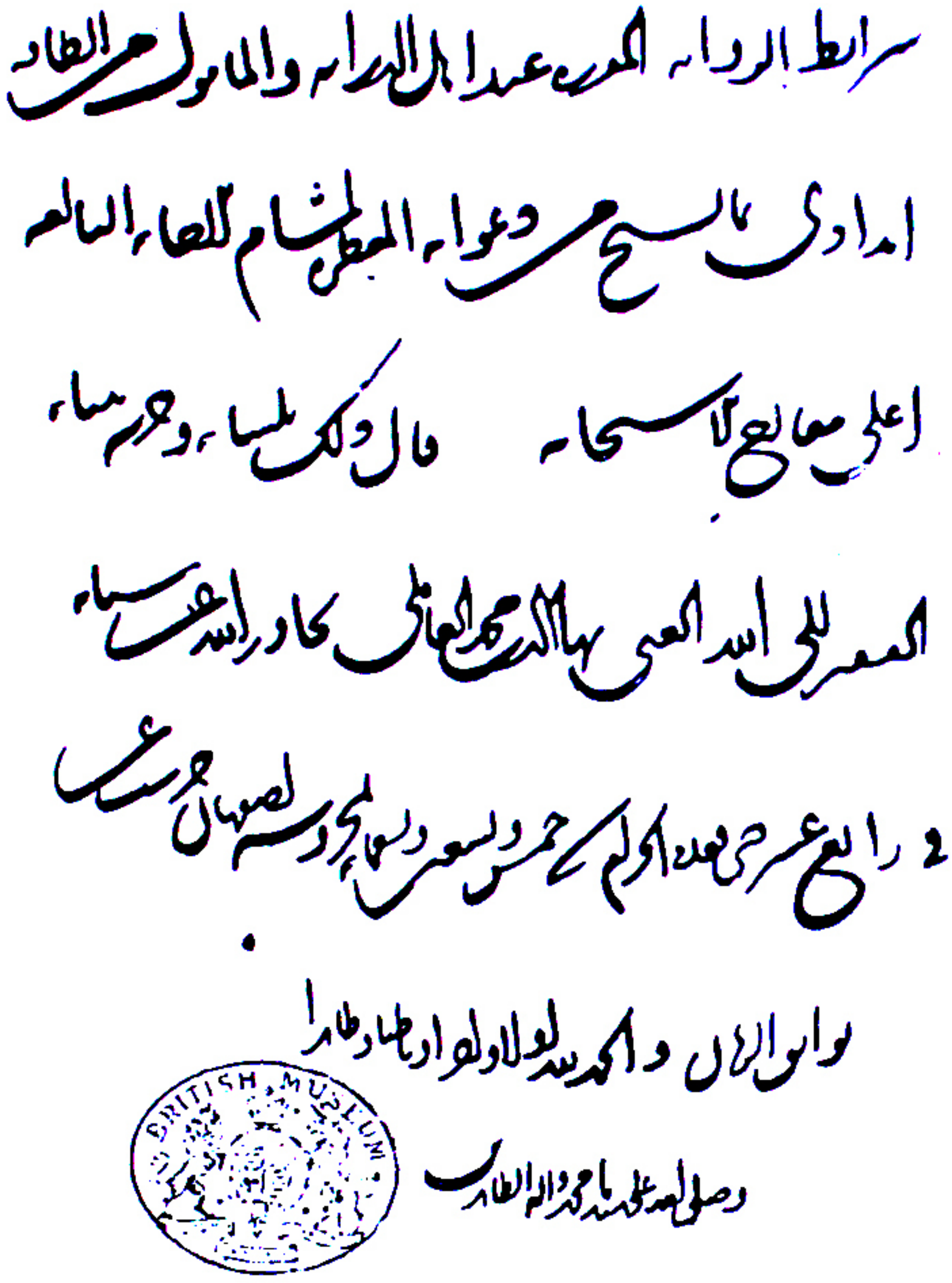
2. *Mír Dámád.*

Mír Dámád d. 1041/1631–2.

Mír Muḥammad Báqir of Astarábád, with the pen-name of Ishráq, commonly known as Dámád ("son-in-law"), a title properly belonging to his father Sayyid Muḥammad, whose wife was the daughter of the celebrated theologian Shaykh 'Alí ibn 'Abdu'l-'Álí, pursued his earlier studies at Mashhad, but spent the greater part of his life at Iṣfahán, where, as we have seen, he stood in high favour with Sháh 'Abbás the Great, and where he was still living when the author of the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí* wrote in 1025/1616. He died in 1041/1631–2. Most of his writings were in Arabic, but he wrote poetry in Persian under the *takhalluṣ* of Ishráq. He seems to have had a taste for Natural History as well as Philosophy, for, according to the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, he made an observation hive of glass in

Observes the habits of bees.

[1] These Persian verses are omitted in the Cairo ed. of 1305/1887–8, but are contained in the Ṭihrán lithographed ed. of 1321/1903–4.



Autograph of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín-i-,Ámilí

Or. 4936 (Brit. Mus.), 15

To face p. 428

order to study the habits of bees. It is stated in the same work that after his death his pupil and son-in-law Mullá Ṣadrá saw him in a dream and said, "My views do not differ from yours, yet I am denounced as an infidel and you are not. Why is this?" "Because," replied Mír Dámád's spirit,

Mír Dámád more cautious than Mullá Ṣadrá.

"I have written on Philosophy in such wise that the theologians are unable to understand my meaning, but only the philosophers; while you write about philosophical questions in such a manner that every dominie and hedge-priest who sees your books understands what you mean and dubs you an unbeliever."

3. *Mullá Ṣadrá of Shíráz.*

Ṣadru'd-Dín Muḥammad ibn Ibráhím of Shíráz, commonly known as Mullá Ṣadrá, was the only son of an aged and otherwise childless father. On his father's death he left Shíráz and went to Iṣfahán, where, as we have seen, he studied with Shaykh-i-Bahá'í and Mír Dámád, from both of whom he held *ijázas*, or authorizations to expound their works. He subsequently retired to a village near Qum, where he lived a secluded and austere life, engaged in profound meditations on Philosophy. He is said to have made the Pilgrimage to Mecca on foot seven times, and to have died at Baṣra on his return from his seventh journey in 1050/1640–1, leaving a son named Ibráhím who did not follow his father's doctrine but denounced and controverted it, boasting that "his beliet was that of the common people." To these meagre particulars of Mullá Ṣadrá's life, derived from the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* (pp. 331–2) and the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, I can only add that it is clear from some expressions in the Preface to his *Asfár* that he suffered a good deal at the hands of the orthodox divines, and that Shaykh Aḥmad Aḥsá'í, the founder of the Shaykhí school, wrote commentaries on two of his works, the *Ḥik-*

Mullá Ṣadrá, d. 1050/1640–1.

His influence on Shaykhí and Bábi theology.

matu'l-'Arshiyya and the *Mashá'ir*. Shaykh Muḥammad Iqbál is therefore probably right when he says[1] that "the Philosophy of Ṣadrá is the source of the metaphysics of early Bábíism," and that[2] "the origin of the philosophy of this wonderful sect must be sought in the Shí'a sect of the Shaykhís, the founder of which, Shaykh Aḥmad, was an enthusiastic student of Mullá Ṣadrá's philosophy, on which he had written several commentaries."

The two most celebrated of Mullá Ṣadrá's works, all of which, so far as I know, are in Arabic, are the *Asfár-i-Arba'a*, or "Four Books[3]," and the *Shawáhidu'r-Rubúbiyya*, or "Evidences of Divinity." Both have been lithographed at Ṭihrán, the first in two folio volumes in 1282/1865, the second, accompanied by the commentary of Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, without indication of date or place of publication. Amongst his other works which I have not seen the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* (p. 331) enumerates a Commentary on the *Uṣúlu'l-Káfí*, the *Kitábu'l-Hidáya*, notes on the metaphysical portion of Avicenna's *Shifá*, a Commentary on the *Ḥikmatu'l-Ishráq* (presumably that of the celebrated and unfortunate Shaykh Shihábu'd-Dín-Suhrawardí, known, on account of his execution for heresy, as *al-Maqtúl*), the *Kitábu'l-Wáridáti'l-Qalbiyya*, the *Kasru Aṣnámi'l-Jáhiliyya*, or "Breaking of the Idols of Ignorance," several commentaries on various portions of the *Qur'án*, etc.

His chief works.

Of Mullá Ṣadrá's philosophical doctrines, in spite of their

[1] *Development of Metaphysics in Persia* (Luzac, London, 1908), p. 175.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 187.

[3] Gobineau has misunderstood *Asfár* (which is the plural of *Sifr*, "a book," not of *Safar*, "a journey") when he writes (*Rel. et Philos.*, 1866, p. 81), "Il a écrit de plus quatre livres de voyages." In the same way he mistranslates the title of one of the Báb's earlier works, the *Ziyárat-náma* ("Book of Visitation") as "un journal de son pèlerinage."

high reputation in Persia, I know of only two brief and necessarily superficial accounts in any European language. The Comte de Gobineau devotes several pages[1] to them, but his information was probably entirely derived orally from his Persian teachers, who were very likely but ill-informed on this matter, since he concludes his notice with the words "la vraie doctrine de Moulla-Sadra, c'est-à-dire d'Avicenne," while the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*[2] explicitly states that he was an *Ishráqí* ("Illuminatus" or Platonist) and strongly condemned the Aristoteleans or Peripatetics (*Mashshá'ún*), of whom Avicenna was the great representative.

Gobineau's account of Mullá Ṣadrá.

The other shorter but more serious account of Mullá Ṣadrá's doctrine is given by Shaykh Muḥammad Iqbál, formerly a pupil of Dr McTaggart in this University of Cambridge, and now himself a notable and original thinker in India, in his excellent little book entitled *Development of Metaphysics in Persia: a contribution to the History of Muslim Philosophy*[3], p. 175, but he devotes much more space (pp. 175–95) to the modern Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, whom he regards as Mullá Ṣadrá's spiritual successor, and who, unlike his master, condescended, as we shall presently see, to expound his ideas in Persian instead of in Arabic. It may be added

Shaykh Muḥammad Iqbál's account.

[1] *Les Religions et les Philosophies*, etc. (1866), pp. 80–92.

[2] P. 331. The passage runs in the original:

كان ... منقّحاً اساسَ الاشراق بما لا مزيد عليه و مفتّحاً ابواب الفضيحة على طريقة المشّاء و الرّواق

[3] London, Luzac and Co., 1908. Muḥammad Iqbál has set forth his own doctrines (which, as I understand them, are in the main an Oriental adaptation of Nietzsche's philosophy) in a short Persian *mathnawí* poem entitled *Asrár-i-Khudí*, lithographed at the University Press, Lahore, and translated into English with an Introduction and Notes by my friend and colleague Dr R. A. Nicholson (*The Secrets of the Self*, London, Macmillan & Co., 1920).

that Mullá Ṣadrá speaks with great respect of that eminent Maghribí Shaykh Muḥyi'd-Dín ibnu'l-'Arabí, whose influence, non-Persian though he was, was probably greater than that of any other thinker on the development of the extremer forms of Persian philosophical-mystical speculation.

Influence of Shaykh Muḥyi'd-Dín ibnu'l-'Arabí.

4. *Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ of Káshán.*

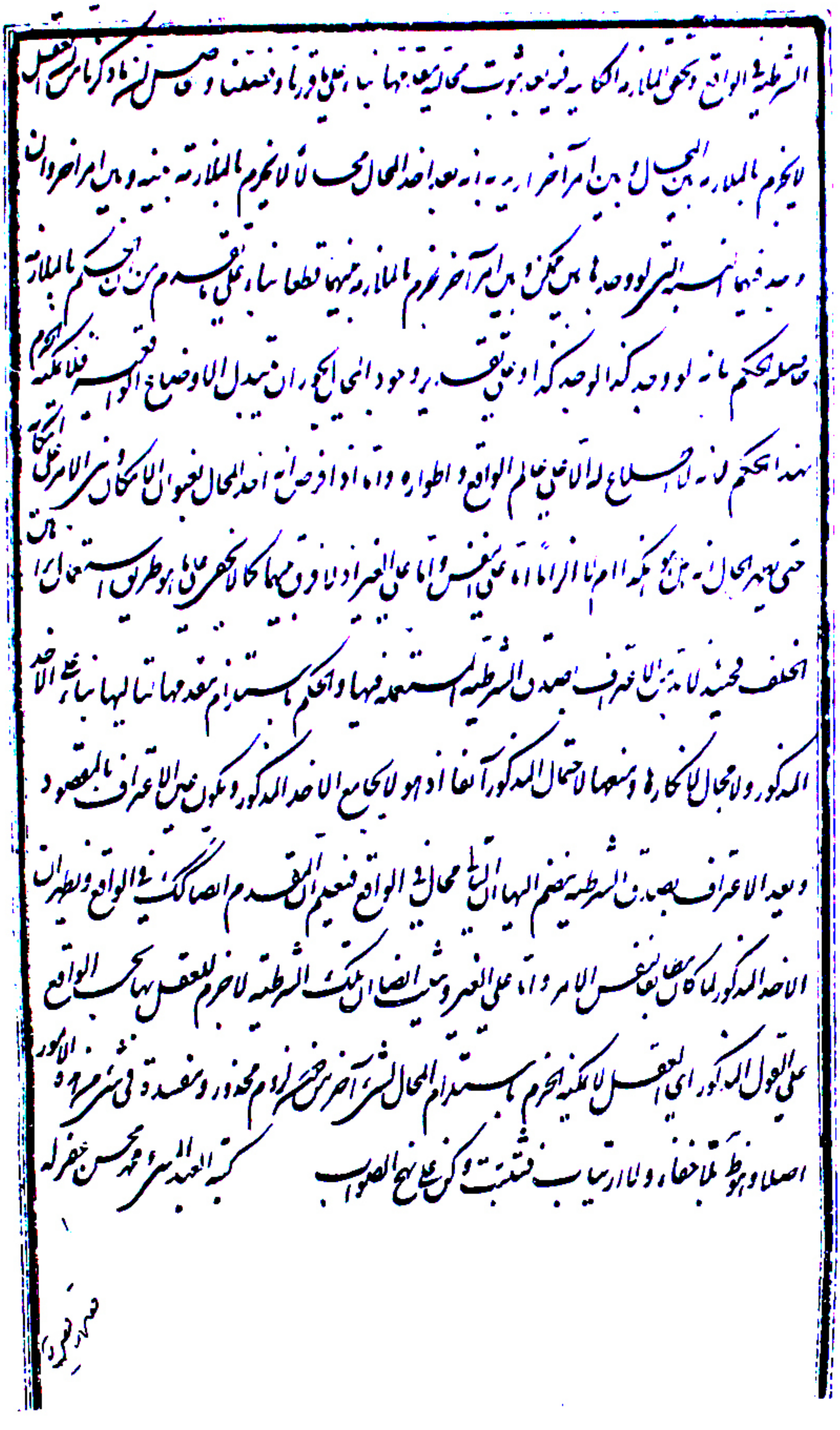
Muḥammad ibn Murtaḍà of Káshán, commonly called Muḥsin with the poetical pen-name of Fayḍ, was a native of Káshán, and, as already said, the favourite pupil and son-in-law of Mullá Ṣadrá. In the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* (pp. 542–9) and the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* much fuller notices of him are given than of his master, and, since he was not only a theologian and a philosopher but likewise a poet of some note, he is also mentioned in the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* (pp. 225–6) and the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá* (ii, 25–6). His literary activity was enormous: according to the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* he wrote nearly two hundred books and treatises, and was surpassed in productivity by hardly any of his contemporaries or predecessors except Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí. Sixty-nine of these works, of which the last, entitled *Sharḥu's-Ṣadr*[1], is autobiographical, are enumerated in the *Qiṣaṣ*, but fuller details of them are given in the *Rawḍát* (pp. 545–6), where the dates of composition (which range between 1029/1620 and 1090/1680) are in most cases recorded. His age at this latter date, which is also notified as the year of his death, is stated as eighty-four[2], so that he must have been born about 1006/1597–8. Of one of his works, the *Mafátíḥu'sh-Sharáyi'*, I possess

Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, d. about 1091/1680.

His prodigious literary activity.

[1] It was written in 1065/1654–5. See *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, p. 546. It is wrongly entitled *Sharḥ-i-Ṣuwar* in the Indian lithograph of the *Qiṣaṣ*.

[2] *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, pp. 542 and 549.



Autograph of Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ

Or. 4937 (Brit. Mus.), p. 84

To face p. 432

what appears to be an autograph copy, made in 1042/1632–3, now bearing the class-mark C. 18.

When Mullá Muḥsin wished to leave his home in Káshán and go to Shíráz to study under the celebrated theologian Sayyid Májid of Baḥrayn, his father opposed this project, and it was finally agreed to take an augury (*tafa"ul*) from the *Qur'án*, and from the poems ascribed to the first Imám 'Alí ibn Abí Ṭálib. The former yielded the verse (ix, 123) "*if a part of every band of them go not forth, it is that they may diligently instruct themselves in Religion*"; the latter the following lines rendered particularly apposite by the words *ṣuḥbatu Májidi*, "the society of some noble one," which might in this case be taken as referring particularly to the above-mentioned Sayyid Májid:

His travels in search of knowledge.

An apposite augury.

تغرّبْ عن آلأوْطان فی طلب العُلی،
و سافِرْ ففی الأسفار خمس فوائد،
تفرّج همٍّ و آکتساب معیشةٍ،
و علمْ و آدابْ و صحبةُ ماجد،
فإن قیل فی الأسفار ذلّ و محنةٌ،
و قطع الفیافی و ارتکاب الشّدائد،
فموت الفتی خیرٌ له من قیامه،
بدار هوانٍ بین ذلٍّ و حاسد،

"Go abroad from the home-lands in search of eminence, and travel,
for in travel are five advantages:
The dissipation of anxiety, the acquisition of a livelihood, knowledge, culture, and the society of some noble one (*májid*).
And if it be said, 'In travels are humiliation and trouble, the traversing of deserts and the encountering of hardships,'
Yet the death of a brave man is better for him than his continuance
in the mansion of abasement, between humiliation and an envious rival."

After these clear indications, Mullá Muḥsin's father no longer opposed his desire to go to Shíráz, where he pursued his studies not only with the aforesaid Sayyid Májid, but also with Mullá Ṣadrá. It is difficult to accept the statement of the *Qiṣaṣ* that this took place in 1065/1654–5, for this would make him nearly sixty years of age before he began his serious studies with Mullá Ṣadrá or married his daughter.

Antagonism between Shaykh Aḥmad Aḥsá'í and Mullá Muḥsin.

Mullá Muḥsin is described in the *Qiṣaṣ* as a "pure Akhbárí" (*Akhbárí-yi-Ṣirf*), a Ṣúfí, and an admirer of Shaykh Muḥyi'd-Dín ibnu'l-'Arabí. Shaykh Aḥmad Aḥsá'í, who, as we have seen[1], wrote commentaries on two of the books of his master Mullá Ṣadrá, detested him, and used to call him *Musí'* ("the ill-doer") instead of *Muḥsin* ("the well-doer"), and to speak of the great Shaykh as *Mumítu'd-Dín* ("the Slayer of Religion") instead of *Muḥyi'd-Dín* ("the Quickener of Religion"). According to an absurd story in the *Qiṣaṣ*, Mullá Muḥsin was chosen by Sháh 'Abbás to confute a Christian missionary sent by the "King of the Franks" to convert the Persians. The sign offered by this missionary was that he would specify any article held in the closed hand of his opponent[2]. Mullá Muḥsin chose a rosary (*tasbíḥ*) made of clay taken from the tomb of the Imám Ḥusayn. The Christian hesitated to speak, but, when pressed, said, "It is not that I cannot say, but, according to the rule I observe, I see that in thy hand is a portion of the earth of Paradise, and I am wondering how this can have come into thy possession." "Thou speakest truly," replied Mullá Muḥsin, and then informed him what he held, and bade him abandon his own faith and accept Islám, which,

Mullá Muḥsin triumphs over a Christian missionary.

[1] Pp. 429–30 *supra*.

[2] This is called *khaby*, and thought-reading *ḍamír*. See my translation of the *Chahár Maqála*, p. 64 and n. 2 *ad calc.*, and pp. 130–1.

according to the narrator, he was constrained to do. Though extremely pious in most respects, Mullá Muḥsin scandalized the orthodox by his approval and sanction of singing. His best-known Persian compilation is probably the *Abwábu'l-Jannán* ("Gates of Paradise") composed in 1055/1645, on prayer and its necessity[1], but few of his numerous writings have been published or are now read, and at the present day, at any rate, his name is more familiar than his works.

5. *Mullá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí.*

The subject of this notice resembled Mullá Muḥsin in being a pupil and son-in-law of Mullá Ṣadrá and a poet, who wrote under the pen-name of Fayyáḍ, but his writings, though much fewer in number, are more read at the present day. The best known are, perhaps, the philosophical treatise in Persian entitled *Gawhar-i-Murád* ("the Pearl of Desire"), and the *Sar-máya-i-Ímán* ("Substance of Faith"), also in Persian, both of which have been lithographed. The notices of him in the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát* (pp. 352–3) and the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* are short and unsatisfactory. The latter grudgingly admits that his writings were fairly orthodox, but evidently doubts how far they express his real convictions and how far they were designed from prudential motives to disguise them, thus bearing out to some extent the opinion expressed by Gobineau[2].

Mullá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí.

His *Gawhar-i-Murád.*

I have been obliged to omit any further notice than that already given[3] of the somewhat elusive figure of Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i-Findariskí, mentioned by Gobineau[4] as one of the three teachers of Mullá Ṣadrá, because, apart from the brief notices of him

Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i-Findariskí.

[1] Not to be confounded with a later homonymous work on Ethics.

[2] *Op. laud.*, pp. 91–2.

[3] See pp. 257–8 and 408 *supra.*

[4] *Op. laud.*, p. 82.

contained in the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín*[1] and the *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, in both of which the same poem is cited, and the passing reference in the *Dabistán*[2] to his association with the disciples of Kaywán and adoption of sun-worship, I have been unable to discover any particulars about his life or doctrines. He appears to have been more of a *qalandar* than a philosopher, and probably felt ill at ease in the atmosphere of Shí'a orthodoxy which prevailed at Iṣfahán, and hence felt impelled to undertake the journey to India. He must, however, have subsequently returned to Persia if the statement in the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* that his tomb is well known in Iṣfahán be correct.

Gobineau (*op. laud.*, pp. 91–110) enumerates a number of philosophers who succeeded Mullá Ṣadrá down to the time of his own sojourn in Persia, but most of them have little importance or originality, and we need only mention one more, who was still living when Gobineau wrote, and whom he describes as "personnage absolument incomparable."

6. *Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár*

It is not, however, necessary to say much about this celebrated modern thinker, since his philosophical ideas are somewhat fully discussed by Shaykh Muḥammad Iqbál at the end of his *Development of Metaphysics in Persia*[3], while I obtained from one of his pupils with whom I studied in Ṭihrán during the winter of 1887–8 an authentic account of his life, of which I published an English translation in my *Year amongst the Persians*[4]. According to this account, partly derived from one of his sons, Ḥájji Mullá Hádí the son of Ḥájji Mahdí was born in 1212/1797–8, studied first in his native town of Sabzawár, then at Mashhad, then at Iṣfahán

Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, b. 1212/1797–8, d. 1295/1878.

[1] Pp. 165–6.

[2] Shea and Troyer's translation (London, 1843), vol. i, pp. 140–1.

[3] Pp. 175–95.

[4] Pp. 131–4.

with Mullá 'Alí Núrí. Having made the pilgrimage to Mecca, he visited Kirmán, where he married a wife, and then returned to Sabzawár, where the remainder of his life was chiefly spent until his death in 1295/1878. His best-known works, written in Persian, are the *Asráru'l-Ḥikam* ("Secrets of Philosophy") and a commentary on difficult words and passages in the *Mathnawí*; in Arabic he has a versified treatise (*Manẓúma*) on Logic; another on Philosophy; commentaries on the Morning Prayer and the *Jawshan-i-Kabír*; and numerous notes on the *Shawáhidu'r-Rubúbiyya* and other works of Mullá Ṣadrá. He also wrote poetry under the pen-name of Asrár, and a notice of him is given in the *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín* (pp. 241–2), where he is spoken of as still living and in the sixty-third year of his age in 1278/1861–2, the date of composition. Most of his works have been published in Persia in lithographed editions.

His works.

3. The Sciences—Mathematical, Natural and Occult.

As stated above[1], Mathematics (*Riyáḍiyyát*) "the Disciplinary" and *Ṭabí'iyyát* the Natural Sciences, in conjunction with Metaphysics (*Má ward* or *Má ba'da'ṭ-Ṭabí'at*), constitute the subject-matter of the theoretical or speculative branch of Philosophy, of which, therefore, they form a part. It is probable that to this manner of regarding them is partly due the unfortunate tendency noticeable in most Muslim thinkers to take an *a priori* view of all natural phenomena instead of submitting them to direct critical observation. The so-called "Arabian," *i.e.* Islamic, Science was in the main inherited from the Greeks; its Golden Age was the first century of the 'Abbásid Caliphate (A.D. 750–

Evolution of "Arabian" Science, and its connection with Philosophy.

[1] Pp. 423–4 *supra*.

850), when so much trouble and expense was incurred by the Caliphs, especially al-Manṣúr, Hárúnu'r-Rashíd and al-Ma'mún, to procure good and faithful Arabic translations of the great Greek philosophers, naturalists and physicians; and the great service it rendered to mankind was to carry on the Greek tradition of learning through the Dark Ages of Europe down to the Renaissance.

So much is generally admitted, but there remains the more difficult and still unsolved question whether the Arabs were mere transmitters of Greek learning, or whether they modified or added to it, and, in this case, whether these modifications or additions were or were not improvements on the original. This question I have endeavoured to answer in the case of medical science in my *Arabian Medicine*[1], but I was greatly hampered by insufficient acquaintance with the original Greek sources. For such investigation, whether in the Medicine, Mathematics, Physics, Astronomy or Chemistry of the Muslims, three qualifications not often combined are required in the investigator, to wit, knowledge of the science or art in question, knowledge of Arabic (and, for later writers, of Persian and even Turkish), and knowledge of Greek. In the case of the "Arabian" (*i.e.* Muslim) physicians the conclusion at which I arrived (already reached by Dr Max Neuburger in his monumental *Geschichte der Medizin*[2]) was that Rhazes (Abú Bakr Muḥammad ibn Zakariyyá ar-Rází, *i.e.* a native of Ray in Persia) was, as a physician, far superior to the more celebrated and popular Avicenna (Ibn Síná), and was, indeed, probably the greatest clinical observer who ever existed amongst the Muslims. The notes of actual cases which came under his observation, as recorded in parts of his great "Continens"

What, if anything, did the Arabs add to what they inherited from the Greeks?

Eminence of Rhazes (ar-Rází) as an observer.

[1] Pp. viii + 138, Cambridge University Press, 1921.

[2] Vol. ii, Part i, pp. 168 *et seqq.*

(*al-Ḥáwí*), have an actual and not merely a historical or literary value; and even from his methods of treatment it is possible that here and there a hint might be obtained. Avicenna was more logical, more systematic, and more philosophical, but he lacked the Hippocratic insight possessed by his great predecessor.

In my *Arabian Medicine* I sketched the history of the art amongst the Muslims from its beginnings in the eighth century of our era down to the twelfth, but made no attempt to follow it down to the period which we are now considering. The Mongol Invasion of the thirteenth century, as I have repeatedly and emphatically stated, dealt a death-blow to Muslim learning from which it has not yet recovered. Medical and other quasi-scientific books continued, of course, to be written, but it is doubtful if they ever approached the level attained under the early 'Abbásid Caliphs and maintained until the eleventh, and, to some extent, until the thirteenth century of our era. That they added anything which was both new and true is in the highest degree improbable, though I cannot claim to have carefully investigated the matter. A long list of these books is given by Dr Adolf Fonahn in his most useful work entitled *Zur Quellenkunde der Persischen Medizin*[1], which has pointed the way for future investigators. Of these later works the most celebrated is probably the *Tuḥfatu'-Mú'minín*, compiled for Sháh Sulaymán the Ṣafawí by Muḥammad Mú'min-i-Ḥusayní in A.D. 1669. It deals chiefly with Materia Medica, and there are numerous editions and manuscripts, besides translations into Turkish and Arabic[2].

Decay of learning after the Mongol Invasion

What has been said about Medicine holds good also of Zoology, Botany, Chemistry, etc., and in a lesser degree of Mathematics, Astronomy and Mineralogy. Fine work

[1] Leipzig, 1910, pp. v+152.

[2] See Fonahn, *op. laud.*, pp. 89–91. See also *B.M.P.C.*, pp. 476–7.

has been done in some of these subjects by experts who also possessed an adequate knowledge of Arabic. I will only instance Woepcke in Algebra, Wiedemann in Mechanics, Hirschberg in Ophthalmology, and, amongst younger men, Holmyard in Chemistry. All these, I think, have come to the conclusion that the standard attained by the best Muslim investigators surpassed rather than fell short of what is generally supposed. Yet it is often difficult to assure oneself that direct observation, which is the foundation of true science, has played its proper part in ascertaining the phenomena recorded. Dr Badhlu'r-Raḥmán, now Professor of Arabic in the Oriental College at Lahore, when he was a Research Student in this University, took as the subject of his studies the works of al-Jáḥiẓ, who, on the strength of his great book on animals, the *Kitábu'l-Ḥayawán*, is often regarded as one of the leading naturalists of the Arabs[1]. At my request this able and industrious young scholar devoted especial attention to the question whether the writings of this author afforded any proof that he had himself observed the habits of any of the animals about which he wrote. A passage was ultimately found which seemed conclusive. In speaking of instinct al-Jáḥiẓ says that when the ant stores corn for food it mutilates each grain in such a way as to prevent it from germinating. After numerous fruitless enquiries as to the truth of this statement, I finally ascertained from Mr Horace Donisthorpe, one of the chief British authorities on ants, that it was correct, and I began to hope that here at last was proof that this old Muslim scholar had himself observed

How far did the Muslim scientists observe for themselves?

Al-Jáḥiẓ on instincts in ants.

[1] *E.g.* by Fr. Wüstenfeld in his *Geschichte der Arabischen Aerzte und Naturforscher* (Göttingen, 1840), pp. 25–6 (No. 65). Carl Brockelmann's view is correct (*Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, i, p. 152), but his criticism of Dr L. Leclerc's remarks on the subject (*Hist. de la Médecine Arabe*, i, p. 314) hardly appears justified.

a fact of Natural History apparently unknown to many modern Zoologists. Unhappily I subsequently discovered the same statement in Pliny, and I am afraid it is much more likely that it reached al-Jáḥiẓ by tradition rather than by direct observation.

In each of the "Arabian" sciences the same question arises and demands an answer which only one thoroughly versed in the scientific literature of the ancients can give. Does Ibnu'l-Bayṭár's great Arabic work on medicinal plants, for example, contain any information not to be found in Dioscorides? Be the answer what it may, it is doubtful whether the later Muslim writers on these various sciences ever surpassed, or even equalled, their predecessors. In quite recent times, especially since the foundation of the *Dáru'l-Funún*, or Polytechnic College, at Ṭihrán early in the reign of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, numerous Persian translations or adaptations of European scientific works have been made, but these are entirely exotic, and can hardly claim to be noticed in a work on Persian Literature. A number of them are mentioned in my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, pp. 154–66, under the heading "Modernising Influences in the Persian Press other than Magazines and Journals." But of those Persians who since the middle of the nineteenth century have successfully graduated in the European schools of science, I know of none who has hitherto made a reputation for original research.

Modern European Science in Persia.

In conclusion a few words must be said about the Occult Sciences, excluding Astrology and Alchemy, which are in the East hardly to be separated from Astronomy and Chemistry. Alchemy is called in Arabic and Persian *Kímiyá*, and the names of four other Occult Sciences, dealing with Talismans, Necromancy, and the like, are formed on the same model, *Límiyá*, *Hímiyá*, *Símiyá*, and *Rímiyá*, the initial letters

The Occult Sciences.

being derived from the words *Kulluhu Sirr* (كلّه سرّ), "All of it is a Mystery." The book entitled *Asrár-i-Qásimi* ("Secrets of Qásim")[1] in Persian, and the *Shamsu'l-Ma'árif* ("Sun of Knowledges")[2] of the celebrated Shaykh al-Búní in Arabic, may be regarded as typical of this class of literature, but to the uninitiated they make but arid and unprofitable reading. Ibn Khaldún is the only Muslim writer I know of who has sought to discover a philosophical and rational basis for these so-called sciences, and his ideas have been collated with the theories of modern Psychical Research in a most masterly manner by Professor Duncan Black Macdonald in his interesting and suggestive book entitled *The Religious Attitude and Life in Islam*[3]. I have always kept an open mind as to the reality of the powers claimed by Occultists, and, when opportunity offered, have always gone out of my way to investigate such manifestations. Disappointment has invariably been my portion, save in two cases: a "magician" whom I met in Kirmán in the summer of 1888, who, amidst much vain boasting, did accomplish one feat which baffled my comprehension[4]; and the late Shaykh Ḥabíb Aḥmad, author of an astonishing work in English entitled *The Mysteries of Sound and Number*[5], who, if nothing more, was an amazingly skilful thought-reader.

4. History—General, Special and Local.

It must be admitted, with whatever unwillingness and regret, that in the art of historical compilation the Persians

[1] Lithographed at Bombay in 1885 and 1894.

[2] I possess the lithographed edition of 1318/1900, but others have appeared in India and Egypt.

[3] University of Chicago Press, 1909.

[4] See my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 453–5.

[5] London, Nichols & Co., 1903; pp. xiv+211.

fall far short of the Arabs, who, indeed, excel in this branch of literature. The earlier Muslim annalists like Ṭabarí, with their verbatim narratives by eye-witnesses of the events recorded transmitted orally through carefully scrutinized chains of traditionists, are not only singularly graphic but furnish us, even at this distance of time, with materials for history of which, thanks to these *isnáds*, it is still possible to estimate the authenticity, even if our judgement as to the strength of the respective links in the chain does not always agree with that of Muslim critics. The later Arab historians selected, condensed, and discarded these somewhat wearisome if valuable *isnáds*, but their narrative, as a rule, continues to be crisp, concise, graphic and convincing. The best of the earlier Persian historians, down to the thirteenth century, though lacking the charm of the Arabian chroniclers, are meritorious and trustworthy. The bad taste of their Tartar and Turkish rulers and patrons gradually brought about a deterioration both of style and substance, very noticeable between Juwaynί's *Ta'ríkh-i-Jahán-gushάy* (completed about 658/1260) and its continuation, the *Ta'ríkh-i-Waṣṣáf* (completed in 712/1312), which, as already observed[1], exercised an enduring evil influence on subsequent historians in Persia. Of later Persian histories I have met with few equal to a history of the Caliphate by Hindúsháh ibn Sanjar ibn 'Abdu'lláh aṣ-Ṣáḥibí al-Kiráni, composed in 724/1324 for Nuṣratu'd-Dín Aḥmad the Atábak of Luristán, and entitled *Tajáribu's-Salaf* ("Experiences of Yore"). This, however, is entirely and avowedly based on the delightful Arabic history of Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín Muḥammad ibn 'Alí al-'Alawí aṭ-Ṭiqtaqí, composed in 701/1302, commonly known

Superiority of the Arabs to the Persians as historians.

Deplorable influence of the *Ta'ríkh-i-Waṣṣáf*.

A Persian version of the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*.

[1] P. 413 *supra*.

as the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*[1], but here entitled *Munyatu'l-Fudalá fí Tawárikhi'l-Khulafá wa'l-Wuzará* ("the Desire of Scholars on the History of the Caliphs and their Ministers"). That it never appealed to the debased taste which we are here deploring is sufficiently shown by the fact that not only has it never been published, but, so far as I know, it is represented only by my manuscript, G. 3 (copied in 1286/1870), and one other (dated 1304/1886–7) in the Bibliothèque Nationale in Paris[2].

Some notable later Persian histories.

It would be a wearisome and unprofitable task to enumerate the many Persian historical works composed during the last four centuries. Of the histories of special periods the most important have been not only described but freely quoted in the first part of this volume, notably the *Ṣafwatu'ṣ-Ṣafá* for the life of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín from whom the Ṣafawí kings were descended; the monograph on Sháh Isma'íl described by Sir E. Denison Ross in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1896, pp. 264–83; the *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, completed in 985/1577–8 by Ḥasan-i-Rúmlú; and the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álamárá-yi-'Abbásí* of Iskandar Munshi, composed in 1025/1616. There are other monographs on the later Ṣafawí period, such as the *Fawá'id-i-Ṣafawiyya* (1211/1796–7) and the *Tadhkira-i-Ál-i-Dáwúd* (1218/1803–4), which I would fain have consulted had they been accessible to me. For the post-Ṣafawí period we have several excellent European accounts which render us less dependent on the native historians, some of whose works moreover (*e.g.* the *Ta'ríkh-*

[1] Originally edited by Ahlwardt from the Paris MS. 895 (now 2441) and published at Gotha in 1860. A revised text was published by H. Derenbourg at Paris in 1895, and there are at least two cheap and good Egyptian editions. A French translation by Emil Amar has been published by the Société des Études Marocaines (Paris, 1910).

[2] See Blochet's *Cat. des Mscr. Persans* etc. (Paris, 1905), vol. i, p. 251 (Schefer 237 = Suppl. Pers. 1552).

i-Zandiyya[1] and the *Mujmalu't-Ta'rikh-i-Ba'd-Nádiriyya*[2]) have been published in Europe, while others, such as the *Durra-i-Nádirí* of Mírzá Mahdí Khán of Astarábád, are easily accessible in Oriental lithographed editions. These monographs contain valuable material and are indispensable to the student of this period, but they are generally badly arranged and dully written, and further marred by the florid and verbose style of which we have just been complaining.

Poor quality of most of the Persian general histories.

For the general histories of our present period, from Khwándamír's *Ḥabíbu's-Siyar* (929/1523) at the beginning to Riḍá-qulí Khán's Supplement to the *Rawḍatu's-Ṣafá* and Lisánu'l-Mulk's *Násikhu't-Tawárikh* at the end, with the very rare *Khuld-i-Barín* (1071/1660–1) in the middle, there is even less to be said, since, though for events contemporary with their authors they have the same value as the monographs just mentioned, for the earlier periods they are not even good or judicious abstracts of the carelessly selected authorities from whom they derive their information. They are, moreover, histories not of the Persian people but of the kings, princes and nobles who tyrannized over them and contended with one another for the spoils; wearisome records of bloodshed, violence and rapine from which it is hard to derive any general concepts of value[3]. Only by diligent and patient study can we extract from them facts capable of throwing any real light on the religious, political and social problems which a historian like Ibn Khaldún would have handled in so masterly a manner.

There are, however, hopeful signs of improvement in

[1] Ed. Ernst Beer, Leyden, 1888.

[2] Ed. Oskar Mann, Leyden, 1891.

[3] Compare Mr Vincent Smith's judicious remarks on this subject in his monograph on *Akbar*, pp. 386–7.

recent times. Poor Mírzá Jání of Káshán, though a merchant without much literary training, wrote his *Nuqṭatu'l-Káf*[1] on the history of the Bábí sect, of which in 1852 he was one of the proto-martyrs, with violence and passion indeed, but with knowledge, in plain and simple language without that florid rhetoric which we find so intolerable; while the unfinished "History of the Awakening of the Persians" (*Ta'ríkh-i-Bídárí-yi-Íráníyán*) of the Názimu'l-Islám of Kirmán[2], with its ample documentation and endeavour to estimate personal characteristics and influence on political events, seems to me to stand on an altogether higher level than any preceding Persian historical work composed during the last six or seven centuries.

Signs of improvement in modern times.

5. Biography, Autobiography and Travel.

Muslim writers have always evinced a great partiality for biography, which may be general, dealing with the lives of eminent men of all sorts, like Ibn Khallikán's *Wafayátu'l-A'yán* ("Obituaries of Notable Men") and the *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát*, of which I have made such extensive use in the latter part of this volume, the former composed in the thirteenth, the latter in the late nineteenth century, and both in Arabic; and the ambitious but unfinished modern Persian *Náma-i-Dánishwarán* ("Book of Learned Men") compiled by a committee

Biography popular with the Muslims.

[1] Published in 1910 as vol. xv of the "E. J. W. Gibb Memorial" Series.

[2] This work was published in lithographed fasciculi, and, so far as it has reached me, comprises the Introduction (*Muqaddama*) of 273 pp.; vol. i, completed on the 20th of Dhu'l-Qa'da, 1328 (Nov. 23, 1910), which carries the narrative down to what is called the *Hijrat-i-Ṣughrá* (December, 1905), and comprises 256 pp.; and vol. ii, completed at the end of Ṣafar, 1330 (Feb. 18, 1912), comprising 240 pp. Whether there is any likelihood of the work being completed I do not know.

of some half a dozen scholars, of which the first volume was lithographed at Ṭihrán in 1296/1879 and the second in 1312/1904–5[1]. More often such works treat of the biographies of some particular class of men, such as Ministers, Physicians, Poets or Theologians; or they follow a geographical or a chronological arrangement, merging on the one hand into geography and on the other into history. Khwándamír's *Dastúru'l-Wuzará* ("Models for Ministers")[2], composed, according to the chronogram implicit in the title, in 915/1509–10, affords us a Persian example of the first type falling at the beginning of the period reviewed in this volume. For the Physicians and Philosophers no Persian work approaches the level of al-Qifṭí's *Ta'ríkhu'l-Ḥukamá*[3] and Ibn Abí Uṣaybi'a's *'Uyúnu'l-Anbá fí Ṭabaqáti'l-Aṭibbá*[4], both composed in the thirteenth century of our era, a period so rich in Arabic biographical works. Biographies of poets, on the other hand, abound in Persian, especially in the later period, since Sháh Isma'íl's son Sám Mírzá set the fashion with his *Tuḥfa-i-Sámí* (a continuation of Dawlatsháh's "Memoirs of the Poets") compiled in 957/1550. Eminent representatives of the Shí'a sect, both Arabs and Persians of every category from kings to poets, form the subject-matter of the very useful *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín* ("Assemblies of Believers"), the author of which, Sayyid Núru'lláh of Shúshtar, was flogged to death in 1019/1610–11 by order of Jahángír at the instigation of the Sunnís, and who is therefore called by his fellow-believers the "Third Martyr" (*Shahíd-i-Thálith*)[5].

Different types of biographical works.

[1] See my *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*, pp. 165–6.

[2] Compare Rieu (*B.M.P.C.*), p. 335. I have a good modern MS. professedly collated with the original in 1268/1851–2, now marked J. 11.

[3] Edited by Professor Julius Lippert (Leipzig, 1903).

[4] Printed in Cairo in two volumes in 1299/1882.

[5] See Rieu (*B.M.P.C.*), pp. 337–8.

Of the older geographico-biographical works the *Áthárú'l-Bilád* ("Monuments of the Lands") of Zakariyyá ibn Muḥammad ibn Maḥmúd al-Qazwíní[1], and the Persian *Haft Iqlím* ("Seven Climes"), composed in 1028/1619 by Amín Aḥmad-i-Rází, are typical specimens[2]. Monographs on different provinces or cities of Persia are also fairly common, and generally include notices of the more eminent natives of the region discussed. Of modern biographical works produced in Persia I have made extensive use,

The *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát.*

especially in the chapter on the Theologians, of the Arabic *Rawḍátu'l-Jannát fí Aḥwáli'l-'Ulamá wa's-Sádát* ("Gardens of Paradise, on the circumstances of Men of Learning and Leading"). This comprehensive work, which deserves to be better known, contains some 742 notices of eminent Muslim scholars, saints and poets, ancient and modern, and was compiled by Muḥammad Báqir ibn Ḥájji Amír Zaynu'l-'Ábidín al-Músawí of Khwánsár in the latter half of the nineteenth century. A good lithographed edition (except that, as usual, it has no Index) appeared at Ṭihrán in 1306/1888. The notices are arranged in alphabetical order, not very strictly observed, under personal names, such as Aḥmad, 'Alí, Muḥammad, etc., which, of course, are seldom the names by which those who bear them are commonly known. Thus the Muḥammads, who fill the greater part of the fourth and last volume and comprise a hundred and forty-three articles, include the great Shí'a theologians generally referred to as al-Kulayní, Ibn Bábawayhi and

[1] Edited in the original Arabic by F. Wüstenfeld (Göttingen, 1848), and followed in the succeeding year by the same author's "Wonders of Creation" (*'Ajá'ibu'l-Makhlúqát*).

[2] In the *Haft Iqlím* the biographical element preponderates. Unfortunately it remains unpublished, though a critical edition was begun by Mawlawí 'Abdu'l-Muqtadir, of which, so far as I know, only the first fasciculus (pp. x+114) has been printed at Calcutta in 1918.

Shaykh-i-Mufíd; the historians Ṭabarí and Shahristání; the scientists Rází and Bírúní; the thinkers Fárábí, Ghazálí and Muḥyí'd-Dín ibnu'l-'Arabí; and the Persian poets Saná'í, Farídu'd-Dín 'Aṭṭár and Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, nor is any subordinate plan, chronological or other, discernible within these sections, so that the owner of the book who wishes to consult it regularly is compelled to make his own Index or Table of Contents.

The other book which I have constantly consulted as to the lives of the theologians is the Persian *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá* ("Stories of the Doctors") of Muḥammad ibn Sulaymán of Tanakábun, who wrote it in 1290/1873[1]. It contains about a hundred and fifty biographies of Shí'a divines, and is more readable, if less accurate, than the work previously mentioned. Another useful Persian book on the same subject is the *Nujúmu's-Samá* ("Stars of Heaven") composed by Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí in 1286/1869–70[2], dealing with the Shí'a doctors of the eleventh, twelfth and thirteenth centuries of the *hijra* (seventeenth, eighteenth and nineteenth of the Christian era). There exist also two special monographs in Arabic on the Shí'a divines of Baḥrayn and Jabal 'Ámil, the *Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn* ("Pearl of Baḥrayn") of Shaykh Yúsuf ibn Aḥmad al-Baḥráni, who flourished in the eighteenth century; and the *Amalu'l-Ámil fí 'Ulamá'i Jabal'Ámil* ("the Hoper's Hope, on the Doctors of Mount 'Ámil"), by Muḥammad ibn Ḥasan ibn 'Alí ... al-Ḥurr al-'Ámilí, who belongs to the previous century.

The *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*.

The *Nujúmu's-Samá*, and other biographies of Theologians.

Mention must also be made of another modern biographical work of a somewhat special character, which,

[1] I possess two lithographed editions, one, the second Ṭihrán edition, published in 1304/1886; the other, apparently at Lucknow, in 1306/1888–9

[2] Lithographed at Lucknow in 1303/1885–6.

though the work of a Persian, is written in Turkish. This is the *Khaṭṭ u Khaṭṭáṭán* ("Writing and Writers")[1], a history of the art of Calligraphy and its votaries by the learned Mírzá Ḥabíb of Iṣfahán, who spent the latter period of his life in Constantinople, where he was a member of the *Anjuman-i-Ma'árif*, or Turkish Academy.

Calligraphists.

These are but a selection of the more useful or less known biographical works, of which many more will be found described in Rieu's, Ethé's, and other catalogues of Persian manuscripts. Of autobiographies the most notable is that of Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, which contains one of the few first-hand Persian accounts of the Afghán Invasion and fall of Iṣfahán in A.D. 1722. Travels are a special form of autobiography, in which His late Majesty Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh indulged freely. An account of the mission of Farrukh Khán Amínu'l-Mulk to London and Paris at the close of the Anglo-Persian War in 1857–8 was written by one of his staff, Mírzá Ḥusayn ibn 'Abdu'lláh, but has never been published[2]. It concludes with a description of the French Departments of State and Public Institutions. More valuable and varied in its contents is the *Bustánu's-Siyáḥat* ("Garden of Travel") of Ḥajji Zaynu'l-'Ábidín of Shírwán[3], who wrote it in 1247/1831–2. In a brief autobiography under the heading Shamákhí he tells us that he was born in mid-

Autobiographies.

Travels.

The *Bustánu's-Siyáḥat*.

[1] A very nicely printed edition of this book was published at Constantinople in 1305/1887–8.

[2] My MS. **K. 7**, copied in 1276/1860 for Prince Bahman Mírzá Bahá'u'd-Dawla, came to me amongst the Schindler MSS. Concerning Farrukh Khán's mission, see R. G. Watson's *History of Persia 1800–1858*, pp. 456 *et seqq.*

[3] Lithographed at Ṭihrán in 1310/1892–3. See Rieu (*B.M.P.S.*), pp. 99–101, Nos. 139 and 140, and B. Dorn in *Mélanges et Extraits*, vol. iii, pp. 50–59.

Sha'bán, 1194 (August 15, 1780), and was taken to Karbalá, where he thenceforth made his home, when only five years old. He travelled extensively in 'Iráq, Gílán, the Caucasus, Ádharbáyján, Khurásán, Afghánistán, India, Kashmír, Badakhshán, Turkistán, Transoxiana, the Persian Gulf, Yaman, the Ḥijáz, Egypt, Syria, Turkey in Asia and Armenia, and in Persia also visited Ṭihrán, Hamadán, Iṣfahán, Shíráz and Kirmán. He was a Shí'ite and a *darwísh* of the Order of Sháh Ni'matu'lláh, and in this double capacity made the acquaintance and enjoyed the friendship of many eminent doctors (*'ulamá*) and "gnostics" (*'urafá*). The author, a man of intelligence and a keen observer, does not give a continuous narrative of his travels, but arranges his materials under the following heads:

Chapter I. Account of the Prophet, his daughter Fáṭima, and the Twelve Imáms.

Chapter II Account of certain doctors, gnostics, philosophers, poets and learned men.

Chapter III. On sundry sects and doctrines.

Chapter IV. Geographical account of towns and villages visited by the author in Persia, Turkistán, Afghánistán, India, parts of Europe and China, Turkey, Syria and Egypt, the names of these places being arranged alphabetically.

Promenade (*Sayr*). Prolegomena on the arrangement of this Garden, and on certain matters connected therewith.

Rose-bed (*Gulshan*). Countries and persons to describe which is the ultimate object of the book, arranged alphabetically in twenty-eight sections, corresponding with the letters of the Arabic alphabet.

Spring (*Bahár*), containing four *Rose-bowers* (*Gulzár*):

(i) On the interpretation of dreams;
(ii) Names of certain halting-places of the author on his travels;
(iii) Various anecdotes;
(iv) Conclusion.

The book contains a great deal of miscellaneous biographical and geographical information, which, owing to the alphabetical arrangement generally observed, and the very full table of contents prefixed, is fairly accessible to the reader. The author was full of curiosity, and, though unable to visit Europe, lost no opportunity of cultivating the society of European travellers and acquainting himself with the peculiarities of their countries by hearsay. Under the article *Firang* (pp. 385–7) he discusses the general characteristics of the chief European nations, amongst whom he puts the French first, the Austrians second, and the English third; and he gives a long account of his conversations with an Englishman whom he calls "Mr Wiklís" (مستر وکلیس)[1] and with whom he became acquainted at 'Aẓímábád. He also cultivated the society of the Austrian ambassador at Constantinople, who invited him to visit his country, "but," he concludes, "since there was no great spiritual advantage to be gained by travelling in that country, I declined." More valuable is his account of the various religions and sects of Asia, in which he treats, amongst other matters, of the Zoroastrians, Mazdakites, Jews, Christians, Hindús, Ṣúfís and *Ghulát* (extreme Shí'a).

It would be impossible to notice here the many excellent books of reference, historical, biographical and geographical, which have been produced in Persia since the middle of the nineteenth century. Many of them, it is true, are for the most part compiled and condensed from older works, both Arabic and Persian, but some contain valuable new matter, not to be found elsewhere. Something must, however, be said as to certain peculiarities connected with this later literature and with the world of books in modern Persia.

European students of Persian are, as a rule, unless they have lived in that country, accustomed to think in terms of

[1] Perhaps a corruption of Wilkins (ولکنس).

manuscripts, and to turn to Dr Rieu's admirable catalogues of the British Museum MSS. for information as to literary history. But since the introduction into Persia of printing and lithography, especially since about 1880, the importance of the manuscript literature has steadily diminished, the more important books written being either transferred to stone or set up in type from the original copy. This printed and lithographed literature has not hitherto received nearly so much attention as the older manuscript literature, and it is often impossible to obtain ready and trustworthy information as to the authors and contents of these modern books. The recent publication of Mr Edwards's *Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum*[1] marks a great step in advance of anything previously accomplished, but the notices are necessarily very brief, and contain, as a rule, no particulars about the authors and only the most general indication of the character of their works. What is needed is a *catalogue raisonné* of Persian books composed during the last century and lithographed or printed in Persia, for it is much easier, for reasons which will be stated immediately, to ascertain what has been published in Persian in Turkey, Egypt and India.

The fact is that the Persian book trade is in the most chaotic condition. There are no publishers or booksellers of substance, and no book-catalogues are issued. Most books have no fixed price or place of sale; many have no pagination; hardly any have indexes or tables of contents. Often books comprising several volumes change their size and shape, their plan, and even their nature, as they proceed, while the author not unfrequently changes his title. Let us take as an illustration a few of the numerous works of reference published under the name of Mírzá Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, who successively bore the titles of Ṣaní'u'd-

[1] London, 1922: 968 columns. The works are arranged under their authors, but there is a General Index of Titles and a Subject Index.

Dawla, Mú'tamanu's-Sulṭán, and I'timádu'd-Dawla, and was the son of Ḥájji 'Alí Khán of Maráǵha, originally entitled Ḥájibu'd-Dawla and later I'timádu's-Salṭana. Now first of all it is very doubtful whether these books were really written by Ṣaní'u'd-Dawla at all; at any rate it is commonly asserted that he coerced various poor scholars to write them, and ascribed the authorship to himself[1], proceedings of which the latter must be regarded as wholly reprehensible, whatever may be said in extenuation of the former. In 1293/1876 he published the first volume of the *Mirátu'l-Buldán* ("Mirror of the Lands"), a geographical dictionary of Persian towns and villages, largely based on Yáqút's well-known Arabic *Mu'jamu'l-Buldán*, containing the first four letters of the alphabet (ا to ت). Of this volume, however, there appear to have been two editions, the first ending with the notice of Tabríz and containing 388 pages, the second, published a year later (1294/1877), extending to Ṭihrán, and containing 606 pages. Having reached Ṭihrán, however, the author, growing tired, apparently, of geography, decided to continue his work as a history of the reigning king Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, and to add at the end of each remaining volume a Calendar and Court Directory for the current year. Vol. ii, therefore, comprises the first fifteen years of the Sháh's reign (298 pp.) and the Calendar (45 pp.) for the year of publication (1295/1878). Vol. iii continues on the same lines, and contains the years xvi–xxxii of the current reign (264 pp.) and the Calendar (50 pp.). At this point, however, the author seems to have remembered his original plan, and in vol. iv he continues the geographical dictionary with the next two letters of the alphabet (ث and ج), at which point he reverts to history, and gives an account of the events of the year of publication (1296/1879), followed by the annual Calendar. More-

[1] See my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, pp. 156 and 164–6.

over, in order to celebrate this reconciliation of geography and history, the size of this fourth volume is suddenly enlarged from 10½ × 6¾ inches to 13½ × 8¾ inches.

By this time the author appears to have grown weary of the "Mirror of the Lands," for after a year's rest he began the publication of a new book entitled *Muntaẓam-i-Náṣirí*, of which also three volumes appeared in the years 1298–1300/1881–3. Of these three volumes I possess only the first and the third. The first contains an outline of Islamic history from A.H. 1–656 (A.D. 622–1258), that is, of the history of the Caliphate (pp. 3–239), followed by an account of the chief events of the solar year beginning in March, 1880, both in Persia and Europe (pp. 239–57), and the usual Calendar and Court Directory (42 pp.). The third volume contains a history of the reigning Qájár dynasty from 1194/1779 to 1300/1882 (pp. 32–387), followed again by the Calendar for the last mentioned year.

Next year the author began the publication of a new work in three volumes entitled *Maṭla'u'sh-Shams* ("the Dawning-place of the Sun"). This opens with a perfunctory apology for the incomplete condition in which the "Mirror of the Lands" was left. However, says he, since the next two letters of the alphabet are *ḥá* (ح) and *khá* (خ), and since Khurásán is the most important province beginning with the latter, and since His Majesty Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, whose faithful servant he is, and to whom this and his other works are dedicated, had recently made the journey thither in order to visit the holy shrine of the Imám 'Alí Riḍá at Mashhad, he has decided to devote this book to an account of that province, which, since it lies to the East, is hinted at in the title. In the first volume (published in 1301/1884) he accordingly describes the route to Mashhad by way of Damáwand, Fírúzkúh, Bisṭám, Bujnúrd and Qúchán, giving a full account of each of these places and the intervening stations.

Maṭla'u'sh-Shams, A.H. 1301–3 (A.D. 1884–6).

The second volume (published in 1302/1885) contains a detailed description of Mashhad, its monuments, its history from 428/1036 to 1302/1885, the most notable men to whom it has given birth, a monograph on the eighth Imám 'Alí Riḍá, and in conclusion (pp. 469–500) a valuable list of the books contained in the Mosque library. In the midst of all this topographical matter is inserted (pp. 165–216) the text of Sháh Ṭahmásp's diary, of which such free use was made in a previous chapter[1]. The third volume (published in 1303/1886) contains an account of the Sháh's return journey by the ordinary Pilgrim route through Níshápúr, Sabzawár, Sháhrúd, Dámghán and Samnán, with full descriptions of these and the intervening stations, and biographical notices of eminent men connected with each. A *Sál-náma*, or Calendar and Court Directory for the current year, completes each volume, and it is only fair to add that the price of each is stated on the last page as twelve *qráns*, at that time about seven shillings.

Other works by the same author.

Henceforward most of Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán's numerous works included a *Sál-náma*, or "Year Book" for the current year, placed at the end of each volume and having a separate pagination. His biographies of eminent Muslim women, entitled *Khayrátun Ḥisánun*, published in three volumes in the years 1304–7/1887–90, lacks this addition, which is, however, found in the *Kitábu'l-Ma'áthir wa'l-Áthár* (published in 1306/1888–9), on the Memorabilia of forty years of the reign of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, an invaluable book of reference for students of the history, biography and evolution of modern Persia down to the date of publication. The plan of a geographical dictionary was taken up by another writer,

The *Ganj-i-Dánish* of "Ḥakim."

Muḥammad Taqí Khán called Ḥakím, who in 1305/1887–8 published, under the title of *Ganj-i-Dánish* ("the Treasure of Learning"), a com-

[1] See pp. 84 *et seqq. supra*.

plete Encyclopaedia of Persian place-names comprising 574 large pages. One welcome feature of this book is that the author prefixes a long list of the authorities and books of which he made use in his compilation. This includes a number of European (including ancient Greek) works.

These Persian lithographed books, notwithstanding their shortcomings, are, as a rule, pleasant to handle, well written, well bound, and printed on good paper. Some of them, like the *Khaṭṭ u Khaṭṭáṭán* ("Calligraphy and Calligraphists") of Mírzá-yi-Sanglákh, and the excellent edition of the *Mathnawí* with Concordance of Verses (*Kashfu'l-Abyát*) associated with the name of 'Alá'u'd-Dawla, are really beautiful books, while almost all are far superior to the Indian lithographs. They are, however, hard to obtain in Europe, and indeed anywhere outside Ṭihrán, Tabríz and perhaps Iṣfahán. Even the British Museum collection is very far from complete, while my own collection, originally formed by purchase in Persia[1], owes much to the fact that I was able to add to it a number of volumes from two very notable Persian libraries, those of the late M. Charles Schefer and of the late Sir A. Houtum-Schindler. As has been already said, few greater services could be rendered to Persian scholarship than the proper cataloguing and describing of these lithographs, and the devising of means to place them on the European book-market. Since lithography can be carried on with simple apparatus and without any great technical skill or outlay of money, it is often practised by comparatively poor scholars and bibliophiles, who print very small editions which are soon exhausted, so that many books of this class rank rather with manuscripts than with printed books in rarity and desirability[2].

[1] For a list of the books I bought in Persia in the autumn of 1888, see my *Year amongst the Persians*, pp. 554–7.

[2] Compare p. 551 of the book mentioned in the preceding footnote.

CHAPTER X.

THE MOST MODERN DEVELOPMENTS (A.D. 1850 ONWARDS).

I have endeavoured to show that under the Qájár Dynasty, especially since the middle of the nineteenth century, the old forms of literature, both prose and verse, took on a fresh lease of life, and, so far from deteriorating, rose to a higher level than they had hitherto reached during the four centuries (roughly speaking A.D. 1500–1900) with which we are dealing in this volume. We must now consider three or four quite recent developments due in the first instance to what Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí Khán "Tarbiyat," the real author of my *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia* (pp. 154–66), calls "Modernizing Influences in the Persian Press other than Magazines and Journals." Amongst these he assigns an important place to the various scientific text-books compiled by, or under the supervision of, the numerous Europeans appointed as teachers in the *Dáru'l-Funún* and the Military and Political Colleges in Ṭihrán from A.D. 1851 onwards, and the Persian translations of European (especially French) books of a more general character, such as some of Molière's plays and Jules Verne's novels, which resulted from an increased interest in Europe and knowledge of European languages. Of such books, and of others originally written in Persian in this atmosphere, he gives a list containing one hundred and sixty-two entries, which should be consulted by those who are interested in this matter. The Revolution of A.D. 1906, with the remarkable development of journalism which it brought about, and the increase of facilities for printing resulting from this, gave a fresh

Modernizing influences.

The *Dáru'l-Funún*.

impulse to this movement, which, checked by the difficulties and miseries imposed on Persia by the Great War, seems now again to be gathering fresh impetus. What we have to say falls under three heads, the Drama, Fiction and the Press, of which the first two need not detain us long.

The Drama.

The Drama.

The only indigenous form of drama is that connected with the Muḥarram mournings, the so-called "Passion Plays" discussed in a previous chapter[1], and even in their case it is not certain that they owe nothing to European influence. Three at least of Molière's plays (*Le Médecin malgré lui*, *Le Misanthrope*, and another entitled *The Ass*, which I think must be intended for *L'Étourdi*) have appeared in Persian translations, but are seldom met with, and seem never to have attained any great popularity. I possess only *Le Misanthrope*, printed at Constantinople in the *Taṣwíru'l-Afkár* Press in 1286/1869–70. The title is rendered as *Guzárish-i-Mardum-guríz* ("the Adventure of him who fled from mankind"), the characters are Persianized, and the text is in verse and follows the original very closely, though occasionally Persian idioms or proverbs are substituted for French. Here, for instance, is the rendering —in this case a paraphrase—of the "Vieille chanson" in Act I, Scene 2:

Translations of Molière.

"Si le roi m'avait donné
Paris, sa grand' ville,
Et qu'il me fallût quitter
L'amour de ma mie,
Je dirais au roi Henri
'Reprenez votre Paris,
J'aime mieux ma mie, o gai!
J'aime mieux ma mie!'"

[1] Pp. 172–94 *supra*.

گر بیك موی تُرْكِ شیرازی‘
بدهد پادشه بمن شیراز‘
گویم ای پادشاه گرچه بُوَد‘
شهرِ شیراز شهرِ بی انباز‘
تُرْكِ شیراز کافی است مرا‘
شهرِ شیراز خویش بستان باز‘

The following Persian version of Act II, Scene 7, if compared with the original, will give a fair idea of the translator's method. The characters are *Mú'nis* (Alceste), *Fatína* (Célimène), *Laylá* (Éliante), *Náṣiḥ* (Acaste), *Na'ím Beg* (Philinte) and *Farrásh* (un garde de la Maréchaussée):

مؤنس (به پیشِ فرّاش میرود) . . . چه هست فرمایش؟
بیا به بینم!
فرّاش دارم دو حرف با سرکار‘
مؤنس توان دو حرفِ خودت را کنی بلند اظهار‘
فرّاش رئیسِ دیوان آن را که بنده‌ام فرّاش‘
مرا بدست بدادست حکم حاضر باش‘
بتو...
مؤنس بکه؟ بمن؟
فرّاش آری بتو‘
مؤنس برای چه‌کار‘
فرّاش بحرفِ مفت (امیدی) و حضرتِ سرکار‘
فتینه بناصح: چسان؟
ناصح امیدی و او گشته‌اند دست و بغل‘
بچند شعر که نگذاشته‌است وقع و محل‘
کنون ز پیش بخواهند بست واره‘ کار‘

مؤنس من و مداهنه هرگز نمیکنم اقرار،
ناصح ولیك حکم چنین رفته هین بجنب ازجا،
مؤنس میانِ ما چه بخواهند داد صلح و صفا،
بحکمهای بزرگان مگر بود تنسیق،
که شعرهای بد مردمان کنی تصدیق،
از آنچه گفته‌ام انکار نیست زان مرجو،
بد است هرچه بخواهی
ناصح و لیك مضمون نو،
مؤنس نمیتوان گذرم شعرها پر و پوچ است،
ناصح قبول رای تو خواهند وجای خواهش هست،
برو دِا
مؤنس میروم امّا نمیتوان ابدا
ز رای خویش بگردم
ناصح برو تو خود بنما،
مؤنس مگر بحکم شهی خاص گردد و منسوب،
که شعرهای ستیزیده یافت باید خوب،
و گرنه فاش بگویم که شعرهاش بدند،
بباید اینکه چنین شاعران بدار کشند،
(به نعمان بگ و نعیم بگ همین که دید میخندند)
حقیقةً که چنین سخره هم نبود گمان،
که بوده باشم و هستم بکان!
ناصح روان شو هان،
فتینه کجا شمارا باید.....
مؤنس روم ولی در دم
بیآیم اینجا تا کش مکش برم از هم،

No indication of the translator's identity appears on the title-page of my edition, nor is there any prefatory matter. Curiously enough, in the very same year in which this Persian version of *Le Misanthrope* was published (1286/1869–70) Aḥmed Veſíq (Aḥmad Wafíq) Pasha printed his Turkish translations of *George Dandin*, *Le Médecin malgré lui*, and *Le Mariage Forcé*[1], while *Tartufe* appeared in Turkish somewhat later[2].

Mírzá Ja'far Qarája-dághí's plays.

In 1291/1874 there was lithographed in Ṭihrán a volume containing seven Persian plays with an Introduction on the educational value of the stage by Mírzá Ja'far Qarája-dághí. These plays were originally written in Ádharbáyjání Turkish by Mírzá Fatḥ-'Alí Darbandí, and were published in Tiflis about A.D. 1861. Five of them have been republished in Europe, with glossaries, notes and in some cases translations. These are (1) the *Wazír of Lankurán*, text, translation, vocabulary and notes, by W. H. D. Haggard and G. le Strange (London, 1882); (2) *Trois Comédies traduites du dialecte Turc Azeri en Persan et publiées...avec un glossaire et des notes par C. Barbier de Meynard et S. Guyard* (Paris, 1886); (3) *Monsieur Jourdan*, with translation, notes, etc. edited by A. Wahrmund (Vienna and Leipzig, 1889). The three comedies contained in No. 2 are the "Thief-catching Bear" (*Khirs-i-qúldúr-básán*), "the Advocates" (*Wukalá-yi-Murá fa'a*), and "the Alchemist" (*Mullá Ibráhím Khalíl-i-Kímiyá-gar*). The two remaining plays, hitherto unpublished in Europe, are "the Miser" (*Mard-i-Khasís*) and "Yúsuf Sháh the Saddler[3]."

[1] E. J. W. Gibb's *History of Ottoman Poetry*, vol. v, p. 14.

[2] *Ibid.*, p. 59 and n. 1 *ad calc.*

[3] "The Alchemist" was translated by G. le Strange in the *J.R.A.S.* for 1886 (pp. 103–26); "Yúsuf Sháh" in the same Journal for 1895 (pp. 537–69) by Colonel Sir E. Ross; and the text of the same was published in 1889 at Madras by E. Sell. See E. Edwards's *Catalogue of the Persian printed books in the British Museum*, 1922, col. 207–8.

Three more plays, written at a date unknown to me, by the late Prince Malkom Khán, formerly Persian Minister in London, were partly published as a *feuilleton* (*pá-waraq*) in the Tabríz newspaper *Ittiḥád* ("Union") in 1326/1908. A complete edition, from a copy in the library of Dr F. Rosen, the well-known scholarly German diplomatist, was published in 1340/1921–2 by the "Kaviani" Press in Berlin. These plays are (1) the "Adventures of Ashraf Khán, Governor of 'Arabistán, during his sojourn in Ṭihrán in 1232/1817"; (2) the "Methods of Government of Zamán Khán of Burújird," placed in the year 1236/1820–1; and (3) "Sháh-qulí Mírzá goes to Karbalá and spends some days at Kirmánsháh with the Governor Sháh Murád Mírzá."

Three plays by Prince Malkom Khán.

Finally in 1326/1908 there appeared at Ṭihrán a bi-weekly newspaper called "the Theatre" (*Tiyátr*) which published plays satirizing the autocratic régime. I possess only a few numbers, containing part of a play entitled "Shaykh 'Alí Mírzá, Governor of Maláyir and Túysirkán, and his marriage with the daughter of the King of the Fairies."

The newspaper *Tiyátr*.

These are all the Persian plays I have met with[1]. All are comedies, and all are satires on the administrative or social conditions of Persia. In the "Wazír of Lankurán" a rather weak and common-place love-story is combined with the satire, but generally speaking this element is lacking, and the object of the writer is simply to arouse dislike and contempt for the old-fashioned methods of government. In other words, these productions, like the "Travels of Ibráhím Beg," of which we shall shortly have

[1] Since this was written I have come across a little comedy entitled "Ja'far Khán comes from Europe" (جعفر خان از فرنگ آمده) by Ḥasan Muqaddam, printed at Ṭihrán and actually performed there about two years ago.

to speak, are primarily political pamphlets rather than plays. Hardly one of them has ever been acted on the stage, and none has produced an effect comparable to Kemál Bey's Turkish play *Waṭan, yakhod Silistra*[1]. In short the drama has not succeeded in establishing itself in Persia even to the extent which it has done in Turkey.

The Novel.

Of stories after the style of the "Arabian Nights" or the more popular and indigenous "Ḥusayn the Kurd" there is in Persia no end, but of the novel properly so called there is even less to be said than of the drama. Two rather ambitious attempts in this direction have recently come under my notice, and it is characteristic of recent tendencies to glorify Zoroastrian Persia that both of them deal with pre-Islamic times, the one with Cyrus, the other with Qubád and his son and successor Anúsharwán (Núshírwán) and the heresiarch Mazdak.

The Novel.

The former (or rather the first volume of it, which, to judge by the colophon, was intended to be followed by two more volumes) was completed in 1334/1916, and printed at Hamadán in 1337/1919. It is entitled "Love and Lordship" (*'Ishq u Salṭanat*), and was written by a certain Shaykh Músá, Director of the "Nuṣrat" Government College at Hamadán, who was good enough to send me a copy in January, 1920. It is described in the colophon as "the first novel (*roman*) composed in Persia in the Western fashion":

"Love and Lordship," a historical novel of the days of Cyrus.

و می توان گفت اوّلین رُمانی است که در ایران با اسلوبِ مغرب زمین تألیف شده

[1] Gibb (*op. laud.*, vol. v, p. 15) alludes very briefly to the outburst of patriotic enthusiasm aroused by this play "Fatherland" when it was first acted in the theatre of Gedik Pasha. Sulṭán 'Abdu'l-'Azíz was highly displeased and alarmed, and banished Kemál Bey to Famagusta in Cyprus.

It aims at being a historical novel, but the proper names generally have their French, not their Old Persian, forms, *e.g.* "Mítrádát" (correctly explained as *Mihr-dád*), "Akbátán" (Ecbatana, instead of *Hagmatána*, for Hamadán), "Agrádát," "Ispákú (Spako)" and "Siyákzar" (Cyaxares, for Huvakhshatara), though Cambyses (Kambújiya) takes the intermediate form "Kámbúziyá." The lengthy descriptions of the scenes and persons introduced into the story, and the numerous dialogues are evidently copied from European models. The story itself, into which an element of love as well as of war is introduced, is readable if not very thrilling, but is overloaded with dates, archaeological and mythological notes, and prolix historical dissertations ultimately based for the most part on the statements of Herodotus mixed with information derived from the Avesta. There is no attempt to make use of archaic language or to eschew the use of Arabic words, but the author has at any rate avoided glaring anachronisms. The following short extract (p. 247) from the description of the preparations for the marriage of Cyrus will suffice to show how far removed is the style of this book from that of the type of story hitherto current in Persia:

بلی این تهیّه تهیّهٔ عروسی‌است، و گمان ندارم که عروسی جز برای کورس پادشاهِ با اقتدارِ پارس و مدی باشد، چه که امروز کسی جز او این قدر در نزدِ اهالی اکباتان محبوبیّت ندارد که مردم عروسی اورا چون عیدی بزرگ دانسته و بازارهارا زینت کرده و از صمیمِ قلب اظهارِ سرور و شادمانی نمایند،

"Yes! These preparations are the preparations for a wedding, and I do not think that it can be the wedding of anyone else than Cyrus, the mighty King of Persia and Media, for today none but he commands in so great a measure the affection of the people of Ecbatana, so that they regard his wedding as a great festival, and have decorated the bazaars, and from the bottom of their hearts make manifest their joy and gladness."

I do not know what measure of success this "historical novel" has achieved in Persia, nor did I ever meet with more than the one copy sent me by the author, accompanied by a letter dated 4 Ṣafar, 1338 (Oct. 30, 1919), in which he requested me to review it in the *Times*. I hope he will accept this brief notice as the best I can do to make his book known in Europe as a praiseworthy attempt to instruct while entertaining his countrymen, and to introduce a literary form hitherto unknown in Persia.

"The Ensnarers: or the Avengers of Mazdak."

The second of the two historical novels mentioned above was printed at Bombay in 1339/1920–1, was written by Ṣanʿatí-záda of Kirmán, and is entitled "the Ensnarers: or the Avengers of Mazdak[1]." Like the last it is incomplete, for it ends (on p. 110) with the words "here ends the first volume," though how many more the author intended to add does not appear, nor do I know whether any further instalment was actually published. In general style it much resembles "Love and Lordship," but presents more archaeological errors, as, for instance, where (p. 10) a portrait of the Sásánian king Bahrám Gúr is described as bearing a label written in the cuneiform character (*khaṭṭ-i-míkhí*)!

"Sherlock Holmes" in Persia and Turkey.

Before leaving this subject I must at least mention a Persian translation of three episodes in the career of the immortal Sherlock Holmes, translated from a Russian version by Mír Ismaʿíl ʿAbdu'lláh-záda, and printed at the Khurshíd Press in Ṭihrán in 1323/1905–6. They are entitled respectively the "Episode of the Gold Spectacles," the "Account of Charles Augustus Milverton[2]," and "the Village Lords." Holmes in passing through a Russian medium has been transmuted into "Khums" (خمس) or "Khúmis" (خومس): Dr Watson

[1] دام گستران یا انتقام خواهان مزدك

[2] The original is entitled "the Adventure of Appledore Towers."

has been more fortunate. The adventures are narrated in the simplest possible style, and would form an admirable reading-book for beginners in Persian, if the book were obtainable in any quantity, which is unlikely. In Turkey Sherlock Holmes had an enormous success, and I remember a news-vendor on one of the Bosphorus steamers offering me a Turkish version of the "Engineer's Thumb," while the late Sulṭán 'Abdu'l-Ḥamíd was said to entertain the greatest admiration for Sir Arthur Conan Doyle, and to desire above all things to put him in charge of his Secret Police.

The "Travels of Ibráhím Beg, and the cause of his enthusiasm."

It is hard to say whether Ḥájji Zaynu'l-'Ábidín of Marágha's fictitious "Travels (*Siyáḥat-náma*) of Ibráhím Beg," which, according to Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí Khán "Tarbiyat[1]," had an appreciable effect in precipitating the Persian Revolution of A.D. 1905–6, should be reckoned as a novel or not. The hero and his adventures are, of course, fictitious, but there is little exaggeration, and they might well be actual. The book is a bitter satire on Persian methods of government and social conditions, which are depicted in the most sombre colours, with the definite object of arousing discontent in order to bring about reform. The Persians are very sensitive to ridicule, but on the whole bear it much better than most European nations, and most Persian reformers have made extensive use of satire as a means of promoting their objects. This *Siyáḥat-náma* is well and powerfully written in a simple yet forcible style, and I know of no better

[1] See my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, pp. 22 and 164. The Persian text was printed in three volumes, the first at Cairo without date; the second at Calcutta in 1323/1905, though publication was apparently delayed until 1907; the third at Constantinople in 1327/1909. The name of the author appears only on the title-page of vol. iii. A German version of the first volume by Dr Walter Schulz was published at Leipzig in 1903 with the title *Zustände im heutigen Persien wie sie das Reisebuch Ibrahim Begs enthüllt.*

reading-book for the student who wishes to obtain a good knowledge of the current speech and a general, if somewhat lurid, idea of the country.

In this connection mention should also be made of the Persian translation made by the talented and unfortunate Ḥájji Shaykh Aḥmad "Rúḥí" of Kirmán of Morier's *Ḥájji Bábá*, published by Colonel D. C. Phillott at Calcutta in 1905[1]. This book, like the last, is a clever satire on the Persians, the more remarkable as being the work of a foreigner; but it belongs rather to the domain of English than Persian literature. All that I had to say about it is contained in the Introduction (pp. ix–xxiii) which I contributed to the edition published by Messrs Methuen in 1895, and all that need be said about the Persian translator and his work has been well said by Colonel Phillott in his Introduction to the Persian text.

The Persian translation of *Ḥájji Bábá*.

The Press.

Of Persian Journalism, which has been the most powerful modernizing influence in Persia, I have treated so fully in a previous monograph on the subject[2] that little need be said here, save by way of summary. Printing was introduced into Persia about a century ago by 'Abbás Mírzá, and the first Persian newspaper appeared about A.D. 1851, in the third year of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh's reign. It was soon followed by others, but these early news-sheets, issued by the Government, were entirely colourless, and even when I was in Persia in 1887–8 the only Persian newspaper worth reading was the *Akhtar* ("Star"), published weekly at Constantinople. It was founded in 1875, and lasted about twenty years. Prince Malkom Khán's *Qánún* ("Law")

Development of the Press in Persia.

Five earlier newspapers of importance.

[1] See pp. vii–viii of the English Introduction to this work, and also my *Persian Revolution*, pp. 93–6.

[2] *The Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*, Cambridge, 1914.

appeared in 1890 and was printed and published in London, but in consequence of its violent attacks on the Persian Government, the Sháh, and his Ministers, its circulation in Persia was prohibited. The Calcutta *Hablu'l-Matín* first appeared in 1893, the *Thurayyá* ("Pleiades") in Cairo in 1898, and the *Parwarish*, which replaced it, in 1900. These were the most important Persian papers published outside Persia, and it was not until 1907, when the Revolution was an accomplished fact, and the conflict between King and Parliament was at its height, that independent and influential newspapers began to appear in Persia itself. Amongst the most interesting of these from a literary point of view I should place the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl* ("Trumpet of Isráfíl"—the Angel of the Resurrection), the *Nasím-i-Shimál* ("Breeze of the North"), the *Muṣáwát* ("Equality"), and the *Naw Bahár* ("Early Spring").

The best post-Revolution newspaper.

The first, second, and fourth of these supplied me with many fine poems from the pens of Dakhaw, Sayyid Ashraf of Gílán, and Bahár of Mashhad, for my *Press and Poetry in Modern Persia*, but the *Charand-parand* ("Charivari") column of the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl* also contained some excellent and original prose writing of which I shall now give two specimens, since they are unlike anything else which I have met with in Persian. Both are by Dakhaw: the first appeared in No. 1 of the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl* (May 30, 1907); the second in No. 2 (June 6, 1907).

The *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl* and its *Charand-parand*.

چرند پرند

بعد از چندین سال مسافرت هندوستان و دیدن ابدال و اوتاد و مهارت در کیمیا و لیمیا و سیمیا الحمد لله بتجربهٔ بزرگی نائل شدم، و آن دوای ترکِ تریاك است، اگر این دوارا در هر یك از ممالك خارجه کسی کشف میکرد ناچار صاحب امتیاز میشد،

انعامات می گرفت، در همهٔ روزنامه‌ها نامش ببزرگی درج میشد، امّا چکنم که در ایران قدردان نیست!

عادت طبیعت ثانوی‌است همینکه کسی بکاری عادت کرد دیگر باین آسانیها نمیتواند ترك کند، علاج منحصر باین است که بترتیب مخصوصی بمرور زمان کم کند تا وقتیکه بکلّی از سرش بیفتد،

حالا من بتمام برادران مسلمان غیّور تریاکی خود اعلان میکنم که ترکِ تریاك ممکن است باینکه اوّلًا در امرِ ترك جازم و مصمّم باشند، ثانیًا مثلا یك نفر که روزی دو مثقال تریاك میخورد روزی یك گندم از تریاك کم کرده دو گندم مُرْفِین بجای آن زیاد کند، و کسیکه ده مثقال تریاك می کشد روزی یك نخود کم کرده دو نخود حشیش اضافه نماید و همین طور مداومت کند تا وقتیکه دو مثقال تریاك خوردنی به چهار مثقال مُرفین و ده مثقال تریاك کشیدنی به بیست مثقال حشیش برسید، بعد از آن تبدیلِ خوردنِ مُرْفین به آبِ دزدكِ مُرْفین و تبدیلِ حشیش بخوردن دوغ وحدت بسیار آسان‌است، برادران غیّور تریاکی من در صورتیکه خدا کارهارا این طور آسان کرده چرا خودتان‌را از زحمت حرفهای مفت مردم و تلف کردن این همه مال و وقت نمی رهانید، ترك عادت در صورتیکه باین قسم بشود موجب مرض نیست و کار خیلی آسانی است،

و همیشه بزرگان و متشخّصین هم که میخواهند عادت زشتی از سر مردم بیندازند همین طور میکنند مثلا ببینید واقعًا شاعر خوب گفته‌است که عقل و دولت قرین یکدیگرست، مثلا وقتیکه بزرگان ما فکر میکنند که مردم فقیرند و استطاعت نان گندم خوردن ندارند و رعیّت همهٔ عمرش‌را باید بزراعتِ گندم صرف کند و خودش همیشه گرسنه باشد به بینید چه میکنند،

روز اوّل سال نان‌را با گندم خالص می پزند، روز دوم در هر خروار یك من تلخه، جَو، سیاه دانه، خاكِ اره، یونجه، شن.. مثلا مختصر عرض میکنم.. کلوخ، چارکه، گلوله هشت مثقالی میزنند، معلوماست در یك خروار گندم که صد من است یك من ازین چیزها هیچ معلوم نمیشود، روز دوم دو من میزنند، روز سوم سه من، و بعد از صد روز که سه ماه و ده روز بشود صد من گندم صد من تلخه، جو، سیاه دانه، خاكِ اره، کاه، یونجه، شن، شده است در صورتیکه هیچ کس ملتفت نشده و عادتِ نانِ گندم خوردن هم از سرِ مردم افتاده است،
واقعًا که عقل و دولت قرین یکدیگر است،

برادرانِ غیّور تریاکی من البتّه میدانید که انسان عالم صغیر است و شباهت تمام بعالم کبیر دارد یعنی مثلا هرچیز که برای انسان دست میدهد ممکن است برای حیوان، درخت، سنك، کلوخ، در، دیوار، کوه، دریا هم اتّفاق بیفتد و هرچیز هم برای اینها دست میدهد برای انسان هم دست میدهد چرا که انسان عالم صغیر است و آنها جزوِ عالم کبیر، مثلا این‌را میخواستم بگویم همان طور که ممکن است عادتی‌را از سر مردم انداخت همان طور هم ممکن است عادتی‌را از سر سنك و کلوخ و آجر انداخت چرا که میان عالم صغیر و عالم کبیر مشابهت تمام است، پس چه انسانی باشد که از سنگ و کلوخ هم کم باشد،

مثلا یك مریضخانهٔ حاجی شیخ هادی مجتهد مرحوم ساخت موقوفاتی هم برای آن معیّن کرد که همیشه یازده نفر مریض در آنجا باشند، تا حاجی شیخ هادی حیات داشت مریضخانه بیازده نفر مریض عادت کرد، همینکه حاجی شیخ هادی مرحوم شد طلّاب مدرسه به پسر ارشدش گفتند ما وقتی تورا آقا میدانیم که

موقوفات مریضخانه‌را خرج ما بکنی، حالا به بینید این پسر خلف ارشد با قوّتِ علم چه کرد، ماه اوّل یك نفر از مریضهارا کم کرد، مه دوم دو تا، ماه سوم سه تا، ماه چهارم چهار تا، و همین طور تا حالا که عدّهٔ مریضها به پنج نفر رسیده، و کم کم بحسنِ تدبیر آن چند نفر هم تا پنج ماه دیگر از میان خواهد رفت، پس به بینید که با تدبیر چطور میشود عادت‌را از سر همه کس و همه چیز انداخت حالا مریضخانهٔ که بیازده مریض عادت داشت بدون اینکه ناخوش بشود عادت از سرش افتاد چرا؟ برای آنکه آن هم جزو عالم کبیر است و مثل انسان که عالم صغیر است میشود عادت‌را از سرش انداخت، (دخو)

Translation.

"After several years travelling in India, seeing the invisible saints[1], and acquiring skill in Alchemy, Talismans and Necromancy[2], thank God, I have succeeded in a great experiment; no less than a method for curing the opium-habit! If any one in any foreign country had made such a discovery, he would certainly have received decorations and rich rewards, and his name would have been mentioned with honour in all the newspapers. But what can one do, since in Persia no one recognizes merit?

A cure for opium-eating.

"Custom is a second nature, and as soon as one becomes habituated to any act, one cannot easily abandon it. The only curative method is to reduce it gradually by some special procedure, until it is entirely forgotten.

"To all my zealous, opium-eating, Muslim brethren I now proclaim the possibility of breaking the opium-habit, thus. First, they must be firmly determined and resolved on abandoning it. Secondly, one who, for example, eats two *mithqáls*[3] of opium daily should every day diminish this dose by a grain (*nukhúd*) and add two grains of morphine

[1] The *Abdál* ("Substitutes") and *Awtád* ("Pegs") are two classes of the *Rijálu'l-Ghayb*, or "Men of the Unseen World," who play an important part in the cosmogony of the Mystics.

[2] Concerning these Occult Sciences, see pp. 441–2 *supra*.

[3] The *mithqál* = 4·60 grammes, and is divided into 24 *nukhúd* ("peas"), each of which consists of 4 grains or barley-corns (*gandum*).

in its stead. One who smokes ten *mithqáls* of opium should daily reduce the amount by one grain, adding instead two grains of *ḥashísh* (Indian hemp). Thus he should persevere until such time as the two *mithqáls* of opium which he eats are replaced by four *mithqáls* of morphine, or the ten *mithqáls* of opium which he smokes by twenty *mithqáls* of *ḥashísh*. After this it is very easy to substitute for morphine pills hypodermic injections of the same, and for *ḥashísh* 'curds of Unity[1].' O my zealous, opium-eating brethren, seeing that God has made matters so easy, why do you not save yourselves from the annoyance of men's foolish chatter, and the waste of all this time and money? Change of habit, if it be effected in this way, does not cause illness and is a very easy matter.

"Moreover great and eminent men who wish to make people forget some evil habit act in precisely this way. See, for example, how well indeed the poet says that intelligence and fortune are closely connected with one another. For example, when our great men consider that the people are poor and cannot eat wheaten bread, and that the peasant must spend all his life in cultivating wheat, yet must himself remain hungry, see what they do.

"On the first day of the year they bake the bread with pure wheat-flour. On the second day in every hundredweight (*kharwár*) they put a maund of bitter apricot stones, barley, fennel-flower, sawdust, lucerne, sand—I put it shortly as an illustration—clods, brick-bats and bullets of eight *mithqáls*. It is evident that in a hundredweight of corn, which is a hundred maunds, one maund of these things will not be noticed. On the second day they put in two maunds, on the third three, and after a hundred days, which is three months and ten days, a hundred maunds of wheat-flour have become a hundred maunds of bitter apricot stones, barley, fennel-flower, sawdust, chaff, lucerne and sand, and that in such fashion that no one has noticed it, while the wheaten bread habit has entirely passed out of men's minds.

"In truth intelligence and fortune are closely connected with one another!

"O my zealous, opium-eating brethren! Assuredly you know that man is a little world, and has the closest resemblance to the great world; that is to say, for example, that whatever is possible for man may happen also in the case of animals, trees, stones, clods, doors,

[1] *Dúgh-i-Waḥdat*, or *Banjáb*, is a mixture of *ḥashísh* and curdled milk similar to *asrár*, *ḥabb-i-nashát*, etc. *Búq-i-Waḥdat* ("the trumpet of unity") is the name given by *ḥashísh*-smokers to a paper funnel through which the smoke of the drug is inhaled.

walls, mountains and seas; and that whatever is possible for these is possible also for men, because man is the microcosm, while these form part of the macrocosm. For example, I wanted to say this, that just as it is possible to put a habit out of men's minds, even so is it possible to put a habit out of the minds of stones, clods, and bricks, because the closest resemblance exists between the microcosm and the macrocosm. What sort of a man, then, is he who is less than even a stone or a clod?

"For example, the late *mujtahid* Ḥájji Shaykh Hádí[1] built a hospital and settled on it certain endowments so that eleven sick persons might always be there. So long as Ḥájji Shaykh Hádí was alive the hospital was accustomed to receive eleven patients. But as soon as Ḥájji Shaykh Hádí departed this life, the students of the college said to his eldest son, 'We will recognize you as the Master only when you spend the hospital endowments on us!' See now what this worthy eldest son did by dint of knowledge. In the first month he reduced the number of patients by one, in the second by two, in the third by three, in the fourth by four; and so in like fashion until the present time, when the number of patients has been reduced to five, and gradually, by this excellent device, these few also will disappear in the course of the next five months. See then how by wise management it is possible to expel habit from the minds of every one and every thing, so that a hospital which was accustomed to eleven patients has entirely forgotten this habit without falling ill. Why? Because it also forms part of the macrocosm, so that it is possible to drive a habit out of its mind, just as in the case of man, who is the microcosm."

"Dakhaw."

چرند پرند، مکتوب شهری،

کبلائی دخو! تو قدیمها گاهی بدردِ مردم میخوردی مشکلی بدوستانت روی میداد حلّ میکردی، این آخرها که سر و صدائی از تو نبود میگفتم بلکه تو هم تریاکی شدهٔ، در گوشهٔ اطاق پای منقل لم دادهٔ امّا نگو که تو ناقلای حُقّه همان طورکه توی صور اسرافیل نوشته بودی یواشکی بی خبر نمیدانم برای تحصیل علم کیمیا و لیمیا و سیمیا گذاشتی در رفتی بهند، حکماً گنج نامهٔ هم

[1] See my *Persian Revolution*, pp. 406–7.

پیدا کرده'' در هر حال اگر سؤ ظنّی در حقّ تو برده‌ام باید خیلی خیلی به بخشی عذر میخواهم' باز الحمد لله بسلامت آمدی جای شکرش باقی‌است چرا که خوب سر وقتش رسیدی' برای اینکه کارها خیلی شلوق پلوق است'

خدا رفتگان همه‌را بیامرزد خاك براش خبر نبُرد. در قافازان ما یك ملّا اینکعلی داشتیم روضه خوان خیلی شوخ بود. حالا نداشته باشد با من هم خیلی میانه داشت وقتی که میرفت روضه بخواند اوّل یك مقدّمهٔ دور و درازی مے. چید' هرچند بی ادبی است میگفت مطلب این طور خرفهمرتر میشود (در مَثَل مناقشه نیست) بنظرم می آید برای شما هم محض اینکه درست بمطلب پی ببرید یك مقدّمه بچینم بد نیست'

در قدیم الایّام در دنیا یك دولت ایران بود در همسایگی ایران هم دولت یونان بود' دولت ایران آن وقت دماغش پُر باد بود' از خودش خیلی راضی بود' یعنی بی ادبی می شود لولَهنگش خیلی آب میگرفت' کبّادهٔ ملك الملوکی دنیارا می کشید' بلی آن وقت در ایران معشوق السّلطنه' محبوب الدوله' عزیز الایاله' خوشگِل خلوت' قشنگِ حضور' ملوس الملك نبود' در قصرها هم سُرسُرَه نساخته بودند' ملّاهای آن وقت هم چماق الشریعه' حاجب الشریعه' پارك الشریعه نداشتند' خلاصه آن وقت کالسکهٔ الاسلام' میز و صندلی المذهب' اسب روسی الدین وجود نداشت' خوش آن روزها واقعًا که درست عهد پادشاه وِزْوِزَك بود' مخلص کلام' یك روز دولت ایران لشکرهای خودش‌را جمع کرد' یواش یواش رفت تا پشتِ دیوار یونان' برای داخل شدن یونان یك راه بیشتر نبود که لشکر ایران حکمًا باید ازآن راه عبور کنند' بلی پشت این راه هم یك کوچهٔ آشتی کُنان مسجد آقا سیّد عزیز الله

یعنی یك راه باریك دیگر بود ولی لشکر ایران آن راه‌را بلد نبود همینکه لشکر ایران پشتِ دیوار یونان رسید دید این یونانیهای بدذات هفت خط با قشون جلوِ راه‌را گرفته‌اند، خوب حالا ایران چه خاك بسرش کند؟ برود چطور برود، بر گردد چطور بر گردد، مانده سفیل و سرگردان، خدا رحمت کند شاعررا خوب گفته‌است (عَ) نه در غربت دلم شاد و نه روئی در وطن دارم آلخ، از آنجا که باید کارها راست بیآید یك دفعه لشکر ایران دیدند یواشکی یك نفر از آن جعفر قلی آقاها پسر بیگلر آقاهای قزّاق یعنی یك نفر غریب نواز یك نفر نوع پرست یك نفر مهمان دوست از لشکر یونان جدا شد، و همه جا پا ورچین پا ورچین آمد تا اردوی ایرانیها و گفت سلام علیکم خیرِ مقدم! خوش آمدید صفا آوردید، سفر بی خطر، ضمناً آهسته با انگشتِ شهادت آن کوچهٔ آشتی کنان‌را بایرانیها نشان داد، گفت ما یونانیها آنجا لشکر نداریم اگر شما از آن راه‌ببروید می توانید مملکت مارا بگیرید، ایرانیها هم قبول کرده و از آن راه رفته داخل خاك یونان شدند،

حالا مطلب اینجا نیست، راستی تا یادم نرفته اسم آن غریب نوازرا هم عرض کنم، هرچند قدری بزبان ما سنگین‌است امّا چه میشود کرد، اسمش (افیالتس) بود، خدا لعنت کند شیطان‌را نمی دانم چرا هر وقت من این اسمرا می شنوم بعضی سفرای ایران یادم می افتد، باری برویم سر مطلب، در آن وقت که جناب چکیدهٔ غیرت نتیجهٔ علم و سیاست معلّم مدرسهٔ قزاقخانه جناب میرزا عبد الرزّاق خان مهندس بعد از سه ماه پیاده‌رَوِی نقشهٔ جنگی راه مازندران‌را برای روسها کشیدند ما دوستان گفتیم چنین آدمِ با وجود حیف است که لقب نداشته باشد،

بهست نفر سه شبانه روز هم نشستیم فکر کردیم که چه لقبی برای ایشان بگیریم چیزی بعقلمان نرسید، حالا از همه بدتر خوش سلیقه هم هستند، میگویند لقبی که برای من میگیرید باید بکر باشد یعنی پیش از من کس دیگر نگرفته باشد، از مستوفیها پرسیدم گفتند دیگر لقب بکر نیست، کتابهای لغت‌را باز کردیم، در زبان فارسی عربی ترکی فرنگی از الف تا یا یك کلمهٔ نیست که اقلّاً ده دفعه لقب نشده باشد، خوب حالا چه کنیم؟ یعنی خدارا خوش میآید این آدم همین طور بی لقب بماند،

از آنجا که کارها باید راست بیآید یك روز من در کمال اوقات تلخی کتاب تاریخی که جلوِ دستم بود بر داشتم که خودمرا مشغول کنم همینکه کتاب‌را باز کردم در صفحهٔ دست راست سطر اوّل دیدم نوشته است (از آن روز ببعد یونانیها بافیالتس خائن گفتند و خونش‌را هدر کردند) ای لعنت بشما یونانیها مگر افیالتس بشما چه کرده بود که شما اورا خائن بگوئید، مگر مهمان نوازی در مذهب شما کفر بود؟ مگر بغریب پرستی شما اعتقاد نداشتید؟ خلاصه همینکه این اسمرا دیدم گفتم هیچ بهتر از این نیست که این اسمرا برای جناب میرزا عبد الرزّاق خان لقب بگیریم، چرا که هم بکر بود هم این دو نفر شباهت کامل بهم داشتند، این غریب نواز او هم بود، این مهمان پرست بود او هم بود، این میگفت اگر من این کاررا نمی کردم دیگری می کرد، او هم میگفت، تنها یك فرق در میانه بود که تکمه‌های سرداری افیالتس از چوب جنگل وطن نبود، خوب نباشد این جزئیّات قابلِ ملاخطه نیست، مخلص کلام، ما دوستان جمع شدیم یك مهمانی دادیم شادیها کردیم فوراً یك تلگراف هم بکاشان زدیم که پنج شیشه گلابِ قَمْصَر و دو جعبه جَوْزقند زود بفرستند که بدهیم لقب‌را بگیریم، در همین حیص و بیص جناب

حاجی ملك التّجار راه آستارارا بروسها واگذار کردند، نمی دانم کدام نامرد حکایتِ این لقب‌را هم باو گفت دو پاش‌را توی یك کفش کرد که از آسمان افتاده ام این لقب حقّ و مالِ من است، حالا چند ماه است نمی دانی چه الم سراتی راه افتاده، از یك طرف میرزا عبد الرزّاق خان بقوّهٔ علم هندسه، از یك طرف حاجی ملك التّجّار بزور فصاحت و بلاغت و شعرهای امرؤ القیس و ناصر خسرو علوی، کبلائی دخو نمی دانی در چه انشر و منشری گیر کرده ایم.. اگر بتوانی مارا از این بلیّه خلاص کنی مثل این است که یك بندهٔ در راه خدا آزاد کردهٔ خدا ان شاء الله پسرهات‌را ببخشد، خدا یك روزِ عمرت‌را صد سال کند، امروز روز غیرت است دیگر خود میدانی، زیاده عرضی ندارم،

خادم با وفای شما (خر مگس)،

Translation.

Charand-parand. City letter.

"Kablá'í[1] Dakhaw!

A modern Persian Ephialtes.

"In old days you used sometimes to be a help to people: if any difficulty befel your friends, you used to solve it. Latterly, there being no sign or sound of you, I kept telling myself that perhaps you too had taken to opium and were lolling[2] at the foot of the brazier in the corner of the room. Now don't tell me that[3] you, you queer mug[4], quietly, without any one's knowledge (I do not know whether in order to study Alchemy, Talismans and Necromancy, as you have written in the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl*) have cut and run to India. Surely then you have found the key to a treasure also! At any rate, if I have entertained an unworthy suspicion of you, you must

[1] For the half slang use of "Kablá'í" (=*Karbalá'í*), see my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, pp. 179–82.

[2] *Lam dádan* (slang), "to loll, lounge."

[3] Equivalent to *balki*, "perhaps."

[4] *Náquláy ḫugga*, explained as equivalent to the French "drôle de type."

forgive me: I ask your pardon! Anyhow, praise be to God, you have got safely back, a lasting cause of thankfulness, for you have come at just the right moment, seeing that affairs are all topsy-turvy.

"May God forgive everybody's departed friends[1]! May the earth not whisper it to him! In Qáqázán we had a certain Mullá Ínak-'Alí[2], a *rawḍa-khwán*[3] and a very impudent fellow. Whatever may be the case now, he was at that time very thick with me. When he went to recite a *rawḍa*, he used first of all to put forward a long-winded prologue. He used to say (saving your presence)[4], 'In this way the matter will be more ass-plain' (no need to quarrel over a mere illustration). It occurs to me that it would not be a bad thing if I too were to begin with a prologue for you, simply in order that you may get the hang of the matter.

"In olden days there was in the world one great Persian Empire with the State of Greece as its neighbour. At that time the Persian Empire was puffed up with pride[5]. It was very well pleased with itself, and, if you will pardon the expression, its pipe took a lot of filling[6]. Its ambition was the King-of-Kingship of the world. Yes, there was then in Persia no 'King's Darling,' 'State's Sweetheart,' 'Pet of the Province,' 'Beauty of the Privy Chamber,' 'Charmer of the Presence,' or 'Minion of the Kingdom[7].' Nor had they yet made 'slides' in their palaces[8]. Nor did the Mullás of that time include a 'Club of the Canon Law,' 'Chamberlain of the Canon Law,' or 'Park of the Canon Law.' At that time, in short, there did not exist a 'Carriage of Islám,' 'Table

[1] This formula is common amongst the Zoroastrians. See my *Year amongst the Persians*, p. 375. Here it implies that the Mullá was dead.

[2] *Ínak* is the Turkish for a cow. The name is, of course, meant to be ridiculous. Qáqázán may be a misprint for Qázán.

[3] See pp. 181–2 *supra*.

[4] *Har chand bi-adabist*, "Although it be an incivility" to use such an expression. *Khar-fahm* ("ass-plain") means comprehensible to the greatest fool.

[5] "To have wind in the brain," a common expression for conceit.

[6] *Lulahingash khaylí áb mí-girift*, "Its jug held a lot of water," said of one who has a great capacity for self-esteem.

[7] The innumerable titles conferred by the Persian Government form a constant subject of mockery. The fictitious titles here mentioned are, of course, intended to be both barbarous in form and degrading in meaning.

[8] The reference is to the *sursurak* in the Nigáristán Palace at Ṭihrán. See my *Year amongst the Persians*, p. 96.

and Chair of the Faith,' or 'Russian Horse of Religion.' Fine days were those indeed, which were in truth the time of King Wizwizak[1]!

"But to be brief. One day the Persian Government collected its armies and quietly advanced to the back of the wall of Greece. Now to enter Greece there was only one way, by which way the Persian army must needs pass. Yes, but behind that way there was a lane like the Áshtí-kunán[2] of the Mosque of Áqá Sayyid 'Azízu'lláh, that is to say, there was another narrow lane, but the Persian army did not know about it. As soon as the Persian army arrived behind the wall of Greece, they saw that these seven-fold rascals of Greeks had blocked the road with troops. Well, what dust must Persia now scatter on her head? How, if she would advance, should she advance, or how, if she would retreat, could she retreat? She was left abased and confounded. God have mercy on the poet who so well says, 'Neither does my heart rejoice in exile, nor have I any honour in my native land,' etc. But, since things must somehow come right, suddenly the Persian army saw one of those Ja'far-qulí Áqás[3], a son of the Begler-Áqá of Cossacks, in other words a certain friend of the foreigner and hospitable humanitarian, gently detach himself from the Greek army, and, stepping softly[4], approach the Persian host. 'Peace be upon you,' said he; 'Your arrival is fortunate! You are welcome! Your visit is a pleasure! May your journey be without danger!' All the while he was quietly pointing out to the Persians with his forefinger that Áshtí-kunán lane. 'We Greeks,' said he, 'have no troops there. If you go that way, you can take our country.' The Persians agreed, and by that road entered the Greek land.

"This, however, is not the point... By the bye, while I remember, let me mention the name of this foreigner's friend, though it comes a trifle heavy on our tongues; but what is to be done? His name was Ephialtes...God curse the Devil[5]! I don't know why it is that whenever I hear this name I think of some of our Persian Ministers...But let us return to the point.

"When His Excellency, that double-distilled essence of zeal and

[1] An imaginary "good time" in the remote past, as we might say "in the days of good King Cole."

[2] I understand that this is the name of a narrow lane, or passage, in Ṭihrán. It means "Reconciliation Street."

[3] The name of a Persian officer in the Cossack Brigade.

[4] *Pá-war-chín*, "picking up the feet."

[5] An expression used when some ill-natured or inappropriate idea occurs to the mind, as though it had been suggested by Satan.

sum of science and political acumen, Mírzá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq Khán, engineer, and lecturer in the School of the Cossack barracks, after a three months' pedestrian tour drew for the Russians a military map of the road through Mázandarán, we his friends said, 'It is a pity that such a man of spirit should not have a title.' So some twenty of us sat for three days and nights considering what title we should obtain for him, but nothing occurred to our minds. Worst of all, he was a man of taste. 'Any title obtained for me,' says he, 'must be virgin; that is to say, no one else must have borne it before me.' We enquired of the State Accountants, who said there was no 'virgin title' left. We opened our dictionaries, and found that neither in the languages of the Persians, Arabs, Turks, or Franks from A to Z was there one single word left which had not been employed as a title at least ten times over. Well, what were we to do? Would it be pleasing to God that this man should thus remain untitled?

"However, since such things must come right, one day, being in a state of extreme dejection, I picked up a history book which was at hand in order to distract my mind. No sooner had I opened the book than I read in the first line of the right-hand page: 'Ever afterwards the Greeks stigmatized Ephialtes as a traitor whose blood might lawfully be shed.' O you cursed Greeks, what had poor Ephialtes done to you that you should call him a traitor? Is hospitality to strangers blasphemy in your creed? Do you not believe in kindness to foreigners?

"In short as soon as I saw this name I said, 'Nothing could be better than that we should adopt this name as a title for Mírzá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq Khán, both because it is "virgin," and because these two persons have the closest resemblance to one another. This one was kind to strangers and so was that one. This one was hospitable to guests and so was that one. This one said, "Had I not acted thus, another would have done so," and so did that one. There was only one difference between them, namely, that the buttons of Ephialtes's coat were not made of native forest-wood. Well, supposing they were not, such trifles are unworthy of consideration.'

"In short, we friends assembled and gave an entertainment and made great rejoicings. We also instantly despatched a telegram to Káshán bidding them send quickly five bottles of Qamṣar rose-water and two boxes of sugared walnuts, so that we might present them [to the Sháh] and secure the title. In the midst of these proceedings Ḥájji Maliku't-Tujjár[1] conceded the Astárá road to the Russians.

[1] This title, "King of the Merchants," was at this time borne by Ḥájji Muḥammad Káẓim, whose accomplishments were reputed greater than his honesty.

I don't know what scoundrel told him the history of this title, but he put his two feet in one shoe[1] and declared that he was a heaven-sent genius, and that this title was his rightful property. Now for some months you don't know what a hullabaloo is going on, with Mírzá 'Abdu'r-Razzáq Khán on the one hand, supported by his science of Geometry, and Ḥájji Maliku't-Tujjár on the other with his persuasive eloquence and his quotations from the poems of Imru'u'l-Qays and Náṣir-i-Khusraw-i-'Alawí. O Kablá'í Dakhaw, you don't know in what toil and moil we are caught! If you can deliver us from this calamity it would be as though you had freed a slave for God's sake, and may God, if He will, forgive your sons!

"May God make one day of your life a hundred years! Today is a day for zealous endeavour. For the rest, you are the best judge. I have nothing more to submit.

"Your faithful servant, GADFLY."

It is difficult in a translation to do justice to these articles, which mark an absolutely new departure in Persian satire, and are written in a style at once idiomatic and forcible. Though they appeared under variou pseudonyms, I fancy they were all written by Dakhaw, who, little as he wrote, on the strength of them and a few of his poems[2] deserves, in my opinion, to occupy the first rank amongst contemporary Persian men of letters. It is to be regretted that, though a comparatively young man, he has apparently produced nothing during the last ten or twelve years.

Originality of Dakhaw both in prose and verse.

Of the last twelve years I have little to say. The beginning of 1912 saw the culmination of Russian violence and oppression in Persia, and, for the time being, the end alike of liberty and literary effort. Then came the War, when Persia became the passive victim of three contending foreign armies,

The last twelve years (A.D. 1912–1923).

[1] This means to stand firm, be obstinate.

[2] Especially "*Kablây*," and his elegy on Mírzá Jahángír Khán, the latter a poem of rare beauty and feeling. See my *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*, pp. 179–82 and 200–4.

with little profit to expect from the success of any one of them, while there was scarcity everywhere and famine and devastation in the western provinces. To Persia at least the Russian Revolution came as a godsend, while the subsequent withdrawal of Great Britain after the failure of the Anglo-Persian Agreement left her at last more or less mistress in her own house. How far she will be able to make use of the breathing-space thus accorded her remains to be seen.

Persia and Germany.

Surprise has sometimes been expressed that during the War there should have existed in Persia a considerable pro-German party, largely composed of prominent Democrats and Reformers. The explanation is simple enough. Imperial Russia was hated and feared, and with good reason, and any Power which diverted her attention from her victim and threatened her supremacy was sure of a large measure of popularity, while Persia had no reason to fear or dislike Germany, which lay remote from her borders and had at no time threatened her independence. Germany, of course, took advantage of this sentiment, and carried on an active propaganda, of which the curious history remains to be written.

The old *Káwa* newspaper (1916–1919).

One of the chief organs of the propaganda was the *Káwa* (*Kaveh*) newspaper published at Berlin, nominally once a fortnight, from January 24, 1916, to August 15, 1919. There was a long gap between the combined Nos. 29 and 30, July 15, 1918, and Nos. 31 and 32, October 15, 1918; between No. 33, Nov. 15, 1918, and No. 34, March 1, 1919; and between this last and the final number of the old series mentioned above, which appeared five months and a half later. On January 22, 1920, appeared the first number of the New Series (*Dawra-i-Jadíd*), which definitely renounced politics in favour of literature and science, while keeping the same external form and high

The new *Káwa* (1920–1921).

standard of style and typography. In this form the paper, now appearing only once a month, endured for two years more, the last number (No. 12, Jahrg. 2, Neue Folge) being dated December 1, 1921, and containing no less than 33 large pages, closely printed in double columns.

Articles of interest in the old *Káwa*.

During its propagandist days the contents of the *Káwa* were, of course, chiefly political, and, though valuable for the light they throw on events in Persia, and especially on the doings of the Nationalist "Committee of Defence," have little bearing on literary matters until after the armistice, though here and there exceptions to this rule occur. Thus No. 4 (March 14, 1916) contains a Kurdish poem[1]; No. 20 an obituary notice of that eminent man of letters Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣádiq "Qá'im-maqámí[2]," better known by his title of *Adíbu'l-Mamálik*, who died on the 28th of Rabí' ii, 1335 (Feb. 21, 1917); No. 21 an account of some of the scientific results obtained by Captain Niedermayer's mission to Afghánistán[3]; No. 23 an article by Professor Mittwoch on the artist Riḍá-yi-'Abbásí[4]; No. 26 an account of Persian students in Germany; No. 33 (Nov. 15, 1918), *à propos* of a new publication, which, though bearing the Persian title *Ráh-i-Naw* (the "New Road"), was written in German, a brief sketch of various attempts to reform or replace the Persian alphabet; No. 34 (March 1, 1919) an account of the foundation in Berlin of a Persian Literary Society, and a letter from Mírzá Muḥammad of Qazwín on a point of Persian orthography; and No. 35 (August 15, 1919) a long and very interesting article by the writer last named on the

[1] Reprinted from the Persian newspaper *Rastakhíz* ("the Resurrection").

[2] So called on account of his descent from the celebrated Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim *Qá'im-maqám*. See pp. 311–16 *supra*.

[3] Translated from the *Neue Orient*, Nos. 4 and 5, May, 1917.

[4] Translated from No. 7 of *Die Islamische Welt*.

oldest recorded Persian verses subsequent to the Arab conquest in the seventh century after Christ[1].

High literary and critical value of the new *Káwa*.

The *Káwa* of the New Series, which began on Jan. 22, 1920, is, on the other hand, almost entirely literary, and contains numerous articles of the greatest value and interest. The Persian colony in Berlin, though comparatively small, included several men of great intellectual distinction, and, though ardent patriots, keenly alive to the national faults, and eager to absorb what was best of European learning. The special characteristic of the best German scholarship is its sobriety, thoroughness, painstaking accuracy, and exhaustive examination of relevant material from all available sources. This steadying influence is exactly what the Persians, with their tendency to ingenious but rash conjectures and premature theories, most need. In the leading article which opened the New Series the editor, Sayyid Ḥasan Taqí-záda, thus defined his aims:

The new *Káwa's* definition of its aims.

"The *Kawá* newspaper was born of the War, and therefore its conduct was correlated with the situations arising from the War. Now that the War is ended and International Peace has supervened, the *Káwa* considers its War period as concluded, and now enters on a Peace period. It therefore adopts, as from the beginning of the Christian year 1920, corresponding with the 9th of Rabí' ii, A.H. 1338, a new basis and line of conduct. It has nothing to do with the former *Káwa*, and is, indeed, a new paper, the contents of which will for the most part consist of scientific, literary, and historical articles. Above all else, its object will be to promote European civilization in Persia, to combat fanaticism, to help to preserve the national feeling and unity of Persia, to endeavour to purify and safeguard the Persian language and literature from the disorders and dangers which threaten them, and, so far as possible, to support internal and external freedom...In the opinion of the writer of

[1] Two such early attempts are discussed, both taken from Arabic books of authority, such as Ibn Qutayba's *Kitábu'sh-Shi'r wa'sh-Shu'ará*, the *Kitábu'l-Aghání*, and Ṭabarí's great history. The earliest goes back to the reign of Yazíd ibn Mu'áwiya (A.H. 60–4 = A.D. 680–4).

these lines, that which is today in the highest degree necessary for Persia, which all patriotic Persians should exert themselves to promote, literally, with all their strength, and should place before everything else, is threefold.

"First, the adoption and promotion, without condition or reservation, of European civilization, absolute submission to Europe, and the assimilation of the culture, customs, practices, organization, sciences, arts, life, and the whole attitude of Europe, without any exception save language; and the putting aside of every kind of self-satisfaction, and such senseless objections as arise from a mistaken, or, as we prefer to call it, a false patriotism.

"Secondly, a sedulous attention to the preservation of the Persian language and literature, and the development, extension, and popularization thereof.

"Thirdly, the diffusion of European sciences, and a general advance in founding colleges, promoting public instruction, and utilizing all the sources of material and spiritual power...in this way...

"Such is the belief of the writer of these lines as to the way to serve Persia, and likewise the opinion of those who, by virtue of much cultural and political experience, share his belief.

"Outwardly and inwardly, in body and in spirit, Persia must become Europeanized.

"In concluding this explanation of fundamental beliefs, I must add that in the writer's opinion perhaps the greatest and most effective service of this sort which one could render would be the publication in Persia of translations of a whole series of the most important European books in plain and simple language."

Some interesting articles in the new *Káwa*.

In pursuance of this programme, there are a certain number of articles on the German system of education, the proceedings of the Perso-German Society[1], and the arrangements for facilitating the studies of Persian students in Germany; but matters connected with the language and literature of Persia supply the subject-matter of most of the articles. Thus we find in the year 1920 a series of admirable articles by Taqízáda (signed *Muḥaṣṣil*) on the most notable Persian poets of early times[2]; an original article written in Persian by

[1] *Deutsch-Persische Gesellschaft.*

[2] *Káwa*, Nos. 1, pp. 2–6; 4, pp. 15–24; 8, pp. 10–4; and 10, pp. 9–14.

Dr Arthur Christensen of Copenhagen on the existence of verse in Pahlawí[1]; a discussion on the evolution of the Persian language during the last century[2]; articles entitled "Bolshevism in ancient Persia" on Mazdak[3]; comparisons between Eastern and Western research and its results (greatly in favour of the latter), entitled *Munázara-i-Shab u Rúz* ("Dispute between Night and Day")[4]; the four periods of the Persian language since the Arab conquest[5]; "a Touchstone of Taste," on good modern Persian verse and what the writer calls "Karbalá'í verse"[6]; Pahlawí, Arabic and Persian sources of the *Sháh-náma*[7]; ancient and modern translations from Arabic into Persian[8]; and a very interesting article on the "Sources of eloquent Persian and 'Khán-i-Wálida Persian'"[9], in which the writer ridicules and condemns the slavish imitation of Turkish idiom and style practised by certain young Persians resident in Constantinople. These articles, in most cases, display a wealth of knowledge, critical ability, and originality which I have nowhere else encountered in Persian, and deserve a fuller analysis than can be accorded to them in this volume.

The last year (1921) of the *Káwa*.

During the last year of its existence (1921) the *Káwa* maintained the same high standard, publishing many articles, both historical and literary, which were fully up to the level of the best European scholarship. A series of important historical articles on "the Relations of Russia and Persia during the period of the Áq-Qoyúnlú and Ṣafawí dynasties, down to the beginning of the reign of Áqá Muḥammad Khán

[1] Nos. 4–5, pp. 24–6.
[2] Nos. 3, pp. 3–5; and 4–5, pp. 3–4.
[3] Nos. 3, pp. 5–11, and 4–5, pp. 8–15.
[4] Nos. 4–5, pp. 7–8; 6, pp. 3–6; 8, pp. 5–10.
[5] No. 7, pp. 5–8.
[6] No. 7, p. 4.
[7] Nos. 11, pp. 7–12; 12, pp. 7–12.
[8] No. 9, pp. 4–5.
[9] No. 12, pp. 3–5. The *Khán-i-Wálida* is where most of the Persian merchants in Constantinople live or have their offices.

Qájár," written by Sayyid Muḥammad 'Alí Jamál-záda, also appeared as a monthly supplement, and showed very wide and judicious use of all available sources, both Eastern and Western. The sudden cessation of the paper after December, 1921, was a great loss to Persian learning and scholarship.

The *Irán-shahr*.

In June, 1922, there appeared at Berlin a new Persian literary and scientific review entitled *Irán-shahr*, edited by Ḥusayn Kázim-záda, which, though described as a "Revue...bimensuelle," actually appeared only once a month. It is of a lighter and more popular character than was the *Káwa*, and shows a more marked preference for matters connected either with pre-Islamic Persia, or with the problems with which the progressive Persians of today are confronted. No. 7 (December, 1922) contains a long article on the sending of Persian students to Europe, in the third section of which, "on the place and manner of study" (pp. 162–4), the writer argues that such students should go to England or Germany rather than to France, for the following reasons:

German education preferred to French for Persian students.

"We Persians (with the exception of the people of Ádharbáyján, whose nature and character agree better with those of the Anglo-Saxons), in respect to character, nature, capacity and mental tendencies, more closely resemble and approach the French, that is to say the Latin races, since quick and piercing intelligence, self-confidence, versatility of thought, wit and acuteness of perception, sociability and amiability in intercourse on the one hand, and inconstancy, fickleness of character, quickly-developed weariness and want of perseverance, recklessness, and lack of moderation in action on the other, are characteristic of the nature and disposition both of ourselves and of the French."

This view seems to have commended itself to the Persians generally, for while in August, 1922, there were seventy

Persian students in Germany, in the following December the number had increased to over 120[1].

The post-War Press of Persia.

In Persia itself the Press, paralysed for a time after the Russian aggressions of 1912, has resumed its activities, especially since the conclusion of the War; but owing to the badness of the communications and the irregularity of the posts one has to be content with somewhat fragmentary information about it. No. 4 of the *Káwa* for 1921 (pp. 15–16) contained a brief list of Persian papers and magazines which had come into being since the beginning of A.H. 1334 (November, 1915). These, forty-seven in number, were arranged alphabetically, the place of publication, name of the editor, and date of inauguration, being recorded in each case. Ṭihrán heads the list with eighteen papers, next comes Shíráz with seven, Tabríz and Rasht with four each, and Iṣfahán, Mashhad, Kirmán, Kirmánsháh, Khúy, Bushire, Bákú, Herát, Kábul and Jalálábád (the last three in Afghánistán) with one or two each. More than half of these papers (twenty-five) first appeared in A.H. 1338 (began on Sept. 26, 1919). That the list is far from exhaustive is shown by the fact that of nine Persian magazines of which copies were sent me by their editors or by friends, only two, the *'Álam-i-Niswán* ("Women's World") and the *Armaghán* ("Gift"), appear in the above list. The latter is one of the best, containing many poems, including some by the late *Adíbu'l-Mamálik*, and accounts of the proceedings of the "Literary Society" (*Anjuman-i-Adabí*) of Ṭihrán. The others are the *Bahár* ("Spring"), very modern and European in tone, but including some interesting poems; the *Furúgh-i-Tarbiyat* ("Lustre of Education"); the *Dánish* ("Knowledge"), published at Mashhad; the *Mimát u Ḥayát* ("Death and Life"), entirely devoted to European inventions and material progress; the *Firdawsí*, edited and written by *diplomés* of the American College at Ṭihrán; the *Párs*, written half in

[1] *Írán-shahr*, No. 3, p. 55, and No. 7, p. 153.

Persian and half in French, which first appeared at Constantinople on April 15, 1921; and the *Ganjína-i-Ma'árif* ("Treasury of Sciences"), of which the first number appeared at Tabríz on October 24, 1922. None of these approach the *Irán-shahr*, still less the *Káwa*, in excellence of matter or form. An exception should perhaps be made in favour of the *Gul-i-Zard* ("Yellow Rose"), which appeared in Ṭihrán about the end of August, 1920, and in which the editor, Mírzá Yaḥyá Khán, used to publish the poems he composed under the *nom de guerre* of Rayḥání.

The establishment in Berlin of the "Kaviani" Printing-press (*Cháp-khána-i-Káwayání*) owned and managed by Mírzá 'Abdu'sh-Shukúr and other Persians anxious to meet the growing demand for cheap, correct, and well-printed Persian books, marks another very important stage in the Persian literary revival; and at the present time there exists no other Press which can rival it in these respects. Besides modern plays and treatises on Music, Agriculture and the like, and tasteful editions of such well-known classics as the *Gulistán* of Sa'dí and the "Cat and Mouse" (*Músh u Gurba*) of 'Ubayd-i-Zákání, the managers have had the spirit and enterprise to print such rare works of the great writers of old as the *Zádu'l-Musáfirín* ("Travellers' Provision") of Náṣir-i-Khusraw, a book of which only two manuscripts (those of Paris and King's College, Cambridge) are known to exist; and are now (November, 1923) printing the *Wajh-i-Dín* ("Way of Religion") of which the unique manuscript has recently been discovered at Petrograd, though books of this sort, recondite in character, costly to print, and unlikely to command a large sale, must almost inevitably be published at a loss. In Mírzá Maḥmúd Ghaní-Záda the Press possesses a most competent scholar, who carries on the high traditions of criticism and accuracy established by Mírzá Muḥammad Khán of Qazwín.

The "Kavíani Press" in Berlin.

Its great services to scholarship.

INDEX

In the following Index where many reference-numbers occur under one heading the more important are printed in **Clarendon** type, which is also used for the first entry under each letter of the alphabet. To save needless repetition, all references to any name common to several persons mentioned in the text are brought together under one heading, the individuals bearing this name being arranged either in chronological order, or in order of importance, or in classes (rulers, men of letters, poets, etc.). The letter b. between two names stands for Ibn ("Son of..."), and n. after the number of a page indicates a footnote. The addition in brackets of a Roman number after a name or book indicates the century of the Christian era in which the man lived or the book was written. Prefixes like Abú (" Father of...") and Ibn ("Son of...") in Muḥammadan, and de, le, von in European names are disregarded in the alphabetical arrangement, so that names like Abú Sa'íd, Ibn Síná, le Strange, de Slane, *etc.*, must be sought under S, not under A, I, L or D. Titles of books and foreign words are printed in *italics*. A hyphen preceding a word indicates that the Arabic definite article al- should be prefixed to it.

Aaron (*Hárún*), 207, 217
Abarqúh, 55, 56
'Abbás, uncle of the Prophet Muḥammad and ancestor of the **'Abbásid Caliphs** (A.D. 750–1258), 23, 24, 41 n., 54 n., 127, 394, 424–5, 437–9; **'Abbás** b. 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib (perished with the Imám Ḥusayn, his half-brother, at Karbalá), 190, 192, 340; **Sháh — I Ṣafawí** (A.D. 1587–1629), 4, 5, 6–8, 9, 25, 28, 99, 100, 101, 102–112, 118, 119, 256, 258, 266, 364 n., 368, 369, 406, 407, 408, 426, 427 n., 428, 434; **Sháh — II Ṣafawí** (A.D. 1642–67), 111, 112, 264, 267; **Sháh — III Ṣafawí** (A.D. 1731–6), 113, 134–5; **— Mírzá** (eldest and favourite son of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh Qájár, d. A.D. 1833), 146, 155, 311, 313, 314 n., 315, 468; **— Efendi** ('Abdu'l-Bahá, *q.v.*), 217 n., 218 n., 220; **— of Bisṭám** (poet, better known as **Furúghí** and **Miskín**, *q.v.*), 328, 336; **Ḥájji —** (fictitious), 183, 185
'Abbásábád (near Iṣfahán), 266
Abdál (a class of the *Rijálu'l-Ghayb*, or "Men of the Unseen"), 469, 472 n.
Abdál Beg (renegade Christian painter), 283
Abdálí Afgháns, 125, 138
'Abdu'l-'Azíz Khán (Afghán envoy to Constantinople, A.D. 1726–7), 131–2
'Abdu'l-Bahá ('**Abbás Efendi**, *q.v.*), 207, 217 n., 218 n., 220
'Abdu'l-Báqí (a descendant of Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh, killed at Cháldirán, A.D. 1514), 76; **Sayyid — Ṭabíb** (poet, xviii), 283
'Abdu'l-Ḥamíd, Sultán — (xix–xx), 13 n., 467
'Abdu'l-Jabbár (artist at the court of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110
'Abdu'lláh b. -Ḥusayn b.'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib, 393; **— -Aftaḥ** (son of the Imám Ja'far-Ṣádiq), 391; **— -i-Shírází** (saint, xiii), 37; **— Khán Uzbek** (xvi), 105; **— -i-Yazdí, Mullá** (xvi), 427; **— -i-Túní, Mullá** (xvii), 368; **— Afghán** (brother of Mír Ways, xviii), 125; **Mírzá —**, physician (xviii), 283
'Abdu'l-Majíd Belshah (d. A.D. 1923), 366 n.
'Abdu'l-Muḥammad-Maḥallátí (xix), 149
'Abdu'l-Mú'min Khan Uzbek (xvi), 104, 105

'Abdu'l-Muqtadir, Mawlawí — (xx), 448 n.
'Abdu'l-Qádir-i-Badá'úní (historian of Akbar, xvi–xvii), 242, 243, 249
'Abdu'r-Raḥím Khán-khánán (xvi), 165, 245, 252
'Abdu'r-Raḥmán Bey Sheref (Turkish historian, xx), 71 n.
'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí, called Fayyáḍ (philosopher, xvii), 250 n., 408–9, 426, 427, 435–6; — Khán (of the Cossack Brigade, A.D. 1907), 476–8, 481–2
'Abdu'sh-Shukúr (proprietor of the "Kaviani" Press, Berlin, 1924), 490
Abdu'l-Wahháb Nashát (poet, d. A.D. 1828–9), 307, 311
'Abdu'l-Wási'-i-Jabalí (poet, xii), 299
Abíward, 109
Abraham (*Ibráhím*), 388, 389
Ábtín (legendary father of Firídún), 310 and n.
Abwábu'l-Janán (A.D. 1645, by Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ), 407, 435
"Accomplishments" (*Kamáliyyát*), 26–7
"Achmetes" (*i.e.* Aḥmad Pasha), 70
Acre, 151 n., 154, 187 n. See *'Akká*
Adab (newspaper), 346–7
Adam, 207, 217, 388
Ad-ham (poet, xvii), 267
Ádhar (poet and biographer). See *Átash-kada, Lutf-'Alí Beg*
Ádhar Kaywán (xvii), 258
Adharbáyján, 45, 47, 52, 55, 82, 87, 93, 104, 139, 279, 316, 347, 375 n., 451, 462, 488
Adíb Ṣábir (poet, xii), 299
Adíbu'l-Mamálik (poet and journalist, d. A.D. 1917), 303, 346–9, 484, 489
'Ádil Sháh Afshár (A.D. 1747–8), 116, 138, 141
'Adliyya (Ministry of Justice), 347
Adonis, 188
Adrianople, 76, 154, 237
Adventure of Appledore Towers, 466 n.
Advocates, The — (*Wukalá-yi-Muráfa'a*), 462
Afḍal of Qá'in, Mullá — (xvi), 427
Afgháns, Afghánistán, 10, 24, 111, 115–118, 121–133, 135, 138, 139, 168, 278–9, 282, 450, 451, 484, 489
Aflákí (author of the *Manáqibu'l-'Árifín*), 35
Afrásiyáb, 13, 14, 414
Africa, North —, 59
Afshár, 52 n., 137 n.
Áfitáb (newspaper), 347
Aftaḥiyya sect, 391
Ágáh (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 1828–9), 225 n., 311
Aghá (or Áqá), title given to eunuchs, 141
Aghayeff, Aḥmad Bey — (xix–xx), 346
Agra, 255, 256, 266, 267
Agradates, 465
Ahar, 50
Ahlí (poet of Turshíz, d. A.D. 1527–8), 233–4; — (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 1535–6), 233–4
Ahlu'l-Buyútát, 209 n.
Ahlwardt, 358 n., 444 n.
Aḥmad-A'rábí, Sayyid — (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 33 n.; — b. 'Alí-Najáshí (d. A.D. 1063), 355, 358, 405; — (son of Rashídu'd-Dín Faḍlu'lláh (xiv), 33; — Mírzá (brother of Sháh Isma'íl I Ṣafawí), 59; — Mírzá (another Ṣafawí prince, put to death by Sháh Isma'íl II in A.D. 1577), 99; — Khán (ruler of Gílán, *circá* A.D. 1567), 96; — Beg Áq-qoyúnlú, 58 n.; — Ján (envoy to Sulṭán Salím, A.D. 1514), 75; — b. Muḥammad-Ardabílí, Mullá—, known as Muqaddas-i-Ardabílí ("the Saint of Ardabíl," d. A.D. 1585), 369, 406; — b. Abú'l-Fatḥ (author of the *Aḥsanu'l-Qiṣaṣ*), 30; — i-Rází (author of the *Haft Iqlím*, composed in A.D. 1619), 448; — b. Zaynu'l-'Ábidín-'Alawí (opponent of Xavier, xvii), 421; — Qazwíní (musician at Court of Sháh 'Abbás I, xvii), 110; — Hátif, Sayyid — (poet of Iṣfahán, xvii–xviii), 283–297, 305; — Páshá of Baghdád (*circá* A.D. 1732), 134; — Khán Abdálí, afterwards — Sháh Durráni (A.D. 1747–73), 138; — b. Zaynu'd-Dín-Aḥsá'í, Shaykh — (d. A.D. 1827), 407, 410–411, 421–2, 429, 434; — Niráqí, Mullá — (d. A.D. 1828–9), 411; Wafíq (Vefíq) Pasha (Turkish scholar and man of letters, xix), 462; — Ṣafá'í (son of the poet Yaghmá), 338; — -i- Rúḥí-i-Kirmání (put to death in A.D. 1896), 468; — Bey Aghayeff (xix–

xx), 346; Aḥmad Sháh Qájár, Sulṭán — (regnant), 158
Aḥmadábád (Gujerát), 252
Aḥmadnagar, 169 n.
-Aḥsá, 364
-Aḥsá'í. See under *Aḥmad b. Zaynu'd-Dín* (d. A.D. 1827) and *Shaykhís*
Aḥsanu'l-Qiṣaṣ, 30 n.
Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh (composed in A.D. 1577), 5, 14, 20, 28 n., 32 n., 43, 48 n., 54–56, 58 n., 64 n., 71, 72, 77 n., 78, 80–83, 85, 87, 88, 89, 92, 94, 98, 100, 168–172, 231 n., 413–415, 444
'Á'isha (wife of the Prophet Muḥammad), 392
Á'ína-i-Ḥaqq-numá (by Xavier), 421
'Ajá'ibu'l-Makhlúqát (of -Qazwíní), 448 n.
-'Ajamí, Shrine of —, 46 n.
Akbar (Moghul Emperor of India, A.D. 1556–1605), 92, 137, 165, 245, 249, 250
Akbar-náma (poem by Faydí), 244
Akhbári Sect, 374–6, 402–3, 407, 434
Akhláq-*i-Jaláli*, 424, 427; — -*i-Muḥsini*, 424; — -*i-Náṣiri*, 405, 424
Akhlát, 58
Akhtar (newspaper), 157, 468; — Press, 344
'Akká (Acre in Syria), 151 n., 154, 187 n.
Aksún (a black brocade), 209 n.
'Álam-i-Niswán (periodical), 489,
'Álam-Sháh Begum (daughter of Úzún Ḥasan, xv), 47
'Alamu'l-Hudá (d. A.D. 1044), 405.
Alamút, 89, 102
'Alá'u'd-Dawla Samnání (xiii), 37; — Dhu'l-Qadar (*circá* A.D. 1510: the "Aliduli" of the Venetian travellers), 58, 61, 77 n.; —, edition of *Mathnawí* named after —, 457
'Alá'u'd-Dín Maḥmúd (physician of Sháh 'Abbás I), 427
Alchemist (*Kímiyá-gar*, a Persian comedy) 462 and n.
d'Alessandri, Vincentio — (A.D. 1571), 50 n., 85
Alexander the Great (*Iskandar-i-Rúmí*), 13–14, 52, 80 n., 199, 209, 211 n., 246, 247, 270, 391
Alfiyya of Ibn Málik, 363, 364
Algebra (of 'Umar Khayyám), 425
'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib (First Imám of the Shí'a, cousin and son-in-law of the Prophet Muḥammad, vii), 16, 17, 19, 28, 29, 32, 33 n., 43, 44, 46, 52, 54, 58, 86, 87, 174–6, 178, 180, 192 n., 230, 235, 236, 248, 264, 356, 369, 385, 390, 391, 392, 418, 433; — b. -Ḥusayn b. 'Alí, entitled Zaynu'l-'Ábidín (Fourth Imám, vii–viii), 18, 179, 181 n., 347, 393; the Third Imám -Ḥusayn had three sons named 'Alí, distinguished according to their ages by the titles -Akbar, -Awsaṭ and -Aṣghar; -Akbar, 191, 193, 393; — -Awsaṭ (identical with — *Zaynu'l-'Ábidín* just mentioned) and Aṣghar, 393; — Riḍá (Eighth Imám, viii–ix), 36, 65, 87, 109, 394, 455, 456; — Naqí (Tenth Imám, ix), 394; Khwája — (grandson of Shaykh Ṣafiyu'd-Dín, d. A.D. 1427), 19, 45–6; doubtful identifications of him with Sayyid — -'Ajamí, or — b. 'Alawí, buried in Palestine, 45–46 and footnote; — Mírzá, or Sulṭán — (brother of Sháh Isma'íl I Ṣafawí), 21, 48 n., 49; Mír — Shír Nawá'í (d. A.D. 1501), 83, 163, 227, 234; — Beg Áq-qoyúnlú, 58 n.; — Beg Chákarlú (Turkmán Sulṭán, *circá* A.D. 1500, possibly identical with preceding), 51; Sídí — Ra'is (Turkish naval officer, A.D. 1554–6), 10 n.; — b. 'Abdu'l-'Alí-'Ámilí, Shaykh Núru'd-Dín, called Muḥaqqiq-i-Thání (d. A.D. 1533), 250, 406, 428; Sulṭán — Mírzá (Ṣafawí prince, murdered by Sháh Isma'íl II in A.D. 1577), 99; — Páshá or Ághá (envoy to Sháh Ṭahmásp in A.D. 1562), 90–1; — Páshá (minister of Sulṭán Báyazíd II), 70 and note; Mullá — Mudhahhib (teacher of Shaykh-i-Bahá'í), 427; — Sháh (early xviii), 284; — Mardán Khán (*circá* A.D. 1750), 139; Shaykh — Khán (general of Karím Khán-i-Zand, *circá* A.D. 1760), 140; — Murád nephew of Karím Khán-i-Zand, d. A.D. 1785), 142; — Riḍá (historian of Zand dynasty), 140 n.; Mír Sayyid — of Iṣfahán, poetically surnamed Mushtáq, 283, 248;

Mullá — Núrí (early xviii), 376, 437; — Akbar (poet of Shíráz, surnamed Bismil, author of the *Tadhkira-i-Dilgushá*, *circâ* A.D. 1821), 304; — Ashraf (brother of the preceding, poetically surnamed Ágáh), 311; — Muḥammad of Shíráz, called the Báb, *q.v.* (put to death in A.D. 1850), 150: Ḥájji — Khán-i-Marágha'i *Ḥájibu'd-Dawla*, 153. 454; — Aṣghar b. — Akbar (lithographer, xix), 381
'Alí-qulí Salím (poet at Akbar's Court), 166; Shámlú (servant of Sháh Isma'íl II -Safawí, xvi), 99; — Khán (general of Sháh 'Abbás I), 104; — Khán (nephew and successor of Nádir Sháh, A.D. 1747–8), 138; see also 'Ádil Sháh, *supra*
"Alidoli," or "Aliduli" (an Italian corruption of 'Alá'u'd-Dawla, *q.v.*), 58, 61
'Alláma-i-Ḥillí ("the Sage of Ḥilla"), whose proper name was Ḥasan b. Yúsuf b. 'Alí b. Muṭahhar (*q.v.*), and who died in A.D. 1325, 356, 406
Alma Qúlághí, Battle of —; 82
Alqáṣ Mirzá (brother of Sháh Ṭahmásp? put to death in A.D. 1576–7), 81, 89, 93
"Alumut" (an Italian corruption of Alwand, *q.v.*), 62
Alwáḥ ("Tablets," plural of *Lawḥ*), 423
Alwand (prince of the "White Sheep" Dynasty, defeated by Sháh Isma'íl I in A.D. 1503), 52, 55, 58, 61, 62, 68, 82
Amalu'l-Ámil fí 'Ulamá'i Jabal 'Ámil (xvii), 356, 359, 360, 449
Amání (poet of Mázandarán, d. A.D. 1651), 251, 258.
Amánu'lláh Khán (Afghán general, A.D. 1722), 130
Amar, Emil — (translator of *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*), 444 n.
Amásiya, 76
America, 12, 150, 422, 489
'Ámil, Jabal — (in Syria), 360, 449
Amíní (poet, xvi), 81
Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl (father of Shaykh Safiyyu'd-Dín, xiii), 32 n., 37
Amírí, 303, 347. See above, *Adíbu'l-Mamálik*
Amír-i-Kabír, or Amír Nizám (Mírzá Taqí Khán, d. A.D. 1852), 152–3
Amír Nizám, Ḥasan 'Alí Khán-i-Garrúsí (*circâ* A.D. 1870), 347
'Amr and Zayd, 380 and n.
Anatolia, 48, 70. See also *Asia Minor*
Anatomy, 425
Andakhúd, 109
'Andalíb (Mírzá Ḥusayn Khán, poet, xix), 309
Angels, 384, 390, 394–8
Angioletto (Venetian traveller in Persia, xv–xvi), 22, 47, 49, 60–61
Anglo-French rivalry in Persia, 146
Anglo-Persian War (A.D. 1856–7), 154, 450; — Agreement (A.D. 1919, 157, 483
Anglo-Russian rivalry in Persia, 147
Anglo-Saxon character, 488
Angora, 15
Anjuman-i-Adabí ("Literary Society" of Ṭihrán), 489; — *i-Khâqán* (biographies of poets), 298; — *i-Ma'árif* (Turkish Academy), 450
'Anqá (mythical bird), 263
Anthropomorphism (*tashbíh*), 17, 382
Antichrist (*Dajjál*), 399
Antinomianism (*suqúṭ-i-'ibáddt*), 382
Ants, instinct in —, 440–1
Anúsharwán (Khusraw —, Sásánian king, vi), 52, 391, 401, 464. See also *Núshírwán*
Anwarí (poet, xii), 246, 284, 299, 348
Anwár-i-Suhayli, 83, 412
'Anwáru'n Nu'mániyya (by Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh-Jazá'irí, A.D. 1678), 361 n., 366
Apostates, punishment of —, 402
Apostles of Christ (*Ḥawáriyyún*), 207, 218
Apotheosis (*Ittiḥád*), 382
Aqá Khán, 148–9
'Aqá'idu'sh-Shí'a, 381–402
Aq-qoyúnlú Turkmán dynasty. See *White Sheep*
Arabia, Arabs, 18 (democratic tendencies), 77, 125, 388 (Prophets of —), 401 (idolatrous —): Arab conquest of Persia, 3, 14 n., 32, 122, 128, 485, 487
Arabian Medicine, Philosophy and Science, 424–5, 437–440
Arabic language, 15, 359, 363, 388, 415–420, 425 n.
Ibnu'l-'Arabí, Shaykh Muḥyi'd-Dín —, 37

'Arabistán, 126, 129
-*A'ráf* (Purgatory), 401
Ardabíl, 21, 28, 32, 33, 35, 36, 37, 41, 44, 45, 47, 48, 49, 50, 51, 60, 67, 88, 109, 369, 370
-Ardabílí, -Muqaddas —, 369, 406
Arda Viráf-náma, 396 n.
Ardistán, 307
Arfa'u'd-Dawla, Mírzá Riḍá Khán, 344 n.
'Árif of Qazwín (contemporary poet), 223, 345
Aristotle, 201, 212
Arjásp, 230. See *Umídí*
Arjawán (on the Caspian), 51
Arjísh, 58, 93
Armaghán (Persian magazine), 346 n., 489
Armenia, Armenians, 49, 128, 134, 451
Armenia and Erzeroum, by the Hon. Robert Curzon, 152
Arnold, Mathew —, 186
'Arshiyya, *-Ḥikmatu'l-* — (by Mullá Ṣadrá), 430
Art and Architecture during the Ṣafawí period, 24–25
Artillery, 75, 93, 105, 106
Arzinján, or Erzinján, 22, 52, 62, 75, 76, 77
Asadí (poet, xi) 299; Salmán-i- — (contemporary student), 346 n.
Ásaf (Solomon's chief Minister), 310
Ascension (*Mi'ráj*) of the Prophet, 390, 395
Asfár of Mullá Ṣadrá, 429–430 and note
-A'shá (Arabian poet), 284
Ash'arí sect, 384
Ash'ath b. Naffs, 392
'Áshiq (poet of Iṣfahán, xviii), 283
Ashraf, Malik-i- — (xiv), 45; — (place in Mázandarán), 109; — (Afghán prince, killed A.D. 1730), 116, 131, 133; — (of Gílán, contemporary poet), 223, 345, 469
Aṣlán, Malik — (Dhu'l-Qadar dynasty), 77 n.
Ashtí-kundn, *Kúcha-i-* — ("Reconciliation Lane"), 475–6, 480
'Áshúrá (the 10th of Muḥarram, or *Rúz-i-Qatl*), 29, 188. See also *Ta'ziya*.
Asia Minor, 16, 20, 44, 51, 67, 106. See also *Anatolia*
Asmá (Ja'da bint-Ash'ath b. Nafls, vii), 392
Asmá'u'r-Rijál of -Najáshí (d. A.D 1063), 355
Asrár, pen-name of Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár (d. A.D. 1878), 326, 411, 437; — *i-Á'hudí* ("Secrets of the Self"), by Dr Muḥammad Iqbál, 431 n.; — *i-Qidsíyí*, 442; — *u'l-Ḥikam*, by Ḥájji Mullá Hádí of Sabzawár, 437; — *u'sh-Shahádat* ("Mysteries of Martyrdom"), 182, 188, 194
"Assambei" (Italian corruption of *Ḥasan Beg*, or *Uzún Ḥasan*, *q.v.*), 48
Astárá, 51, 277, 478, 481
Astarábád, 56, 59, 109, 137, 234, 251, 428
Astumar (supposed to be Lake Van), 49
Átash-kada (of Luṭf-'Alí Beg *Ádhar*), 87 n., 231, 235, 236, 238, 241, 244, 251, 264, 266, 282–4
Áthárú'l-Bilád (of -Qazwíní, xiii), 397 n., 448
Ibnu'l-Athír (the historian, xiii), 118 n.
Atonement, Doctrine of — in Islám, 187, 188. See also *Intercession*
'Aṭṭár, Shaykh Farídu'd-Dín — (xiii), 220
Ibn 'Aṭṭásh, Aḥmad —, execution of —, 222
Attributes of God, 382–6
Aṭwáqu'dh-Dhahab of -Zamakhsharí, 317
Austria, Austrians, 106, 452
Avesta, 14 n., 122, 465
Avicenna (Shaykh Abú 'Alí b. Síná), 201, 212, 257, 357, 425, 430–1, 438
"Awakening of the Persians" (*Ta'rikh-i-Bídárí-yi-Íráníyán*, *q.v.*), 413
'Awaḍ-Khawwáṣ (ancestor of Ṣafawís), 32 n., 36
Awḥadí (poet, xiii–xiv), 267
Awjí (poet, xvii), 267
Awranzíb (Moghul Emperor, A.D. 1659–1707), 165
Ayás Bey of Latakia (killed at Cháldirán, A.D. 1514), 76
Aybu Khwája (descendant of Chingíz Khán), 64 n.
'Aynu'l-Ḥayát (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, xvii), 409, 417
'Aynu'l-Kamál (the Evil Eye so called), 117 n.

Ázád (Afghán ruler of Ádharbáyján, xviii), 139–140; — (poet, xix), 225 n.
Azalís, 187 n., 423
-Azhar, University of — in Cairo, 377, 416
Azhidaháka (*Ḍaḥḥák* of the Muslim writers), 14 n.
'Azímábád, 452
'Azízu'lláh, Mosque of Áqá Sayyid —, 475, 480
'Azra'íl (the Angel of Death), 389, 395
Azraqí (poet, xi), 299

Baal, Priests of —, 188
Báb (Mírzá 'Alí Muḥammad of Shíráz, put to death in A.D. 1850), and his followers the Bábís, 121, 122, 147, 149–151, 153–4, 156, 162, 187 n., 194–220 (poem), 329, 354, 355, 380–1, 399 n., 403, 411, 415, 420–3, 430, 446
Ibn Bábawayhi (eminent Shí'a theologian, d. A.D. 991–2), 358, 377, 405, 448
Bab-el-Wad (Hebron), 46 *ad calc.*
Bábil (grandfather of Shaykh Záhid of Gílán), 42
Babinger, Dr F. —, 35 n., 44 n., 45 n., 46 n., 47 n.
Bábu'lláh ("the Gate of God," 'Alí so called), 385
Bábur (Tímúrid founder of the Moghul Empire in India, d. A.D. 1530–1), 63, 64, 66, 74 n., 85, 91, 92, 234
Babylon (meaning Baghdád, *q.v.*), 112
Badakhshán, 322, 451
Badá'úní (author of the *Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh*), 165
Badhlu'r-Raḥmán, Professor —, 440
Badí'u'z-Zamán Mírzá (Tímúrid prince), 55, 64, 77, 99
Badru'd-Dín Muḥammad (father of the poet 'Urfí), 245
Báfq, 238
Baghdád, 24, 30–31, 55, 58, 62, 93, 106, 112, 127, 134, 140, 149, 154, 235, 236, 279, 280, 321, 364, 425
Bahá'í, a follower of *Bahá'u'lláh*, *q.v.* *Shaykh-i-* —, 28. See *Bahá'u'd-Dín-'Ámilí*, *infra*
Bahár (contemporary poet), 223, 345; 469; — (newspaper), 469
Bahá'u'd-Dawla, Bahman Mírzá — (xix), 149, 450 n.
Bahá'u'd-Dín-'Ámilí, Shaykh — (theologian, d. A.D. 1621–2), 28, 110, 250, 253, 278, 364, 366, 372, 407, 408, 426–8, 429
Bahá'u'lláh, Bahá'ís, 151, 187 n., 194–220 (poem), 354, 415, 420–3; — "*the Splendour of God*" (book by Ibráhím Khayru'lláh), 214 n.
Bahjatu'r-Rawáj (treatise on music), 223 n.
Bahman Mírzá. See above under *Bahá'u'd-Dawla*
Bahrám Gúr (Sásánian King), 466; — Mírzá (son of Badí'u'z-Zamán Mírzá), 99; — Mírzá (son of Sháh Ṭahmásp, xvi), 81, 88–9
Bahrámábád (near Kirmán), 126
Baḥrayn, 125, 356, 360, 364, 374, 421, 433
Baḥru'l-'Ulúm (Sayyid Muḥammad Mahdí of Burújird, d. *circá* A.D. 1825), 410
Bajazet, 70; a corrupt spelling of *Báyazíd*, *q.v.*
Bakhtiyárís, 139
Bakí Áqá (daughter of Úzún Ḥasan), 47
Abú Bakr (the First Caliph, vii), 17, 22, 53, 54, 74, 80 n., 94, 95, 104, 391, 392, 418
Bákú, 52, 109, 130, 135, 346, 347, 489
Ba'labakk (Baalbek), 407, 428
Bal'amí (translator of -Ṭabarí's history into Persian), 412
Balance (*Mízán*), 400
Balkh, 51, 55, 82, 109
-Balkhí (schismatic), 384
Balúchistán, Balúchis, 24, 128 n., 133
Bam, 149
Bandar-i-'Abbás, 279, 280
Bang (Cannabis Indica, *Ḥashísh*), 87 n., 470, 473
Bankipore Library, 358
Banná'í (poet, killed in A.D. 1512), 63, 83, 94, 227
Baptist Mission Press, Calcutta, 358 n.
Baqá'í (poet, rival of Hiláli, xvi), 235
Baqiyyatu'lláh ("the Remnant of God," the Imám Mahdí so called), 394
Baráhínu'l-'Ajam (by Sipihr), 326
Barahút, Wádí —, 307 and note
Bárbad (minstrel of Khusraw Parwíz), 221
Barbaro, Josepho—(Venetian traveller, xv), 10

Barbier de Meynard, 462
Bar-hlán (the seven great noble families of Ancient Persia), 109 n.
Bárík Parnák (ruler of 'Iráq-i-'Arab about A.D. 1500), 55
Barkhiyá (father of Ásaf, Solomon's Prime Minister), 310 and note
Barníqí, Shamsu'd-Dín —, 44
St Bartholomew, Massacre of —, 72
Barzakh (the "World of the Barrier"), 395, 397
-Basásírí (xi), 54 and note
Baṣra, 200, 210, 279, 363, 429
"Bassa" (*i.e.* Pasha), 70
Ibn Baṭúṭa (traveller, xiv), 27
Baydn, Persian — (by the Báb), 150, 197, 422
Báyandarí, 67 and note, another name for the "White Sheep" (*Áq-Qoyúnlú*) dynasty, *q.v.*
Báyazíd of Bisṭám (saint and mystic), 336, 357; — II (Ottomán Sulṭán, A.D. 1482–1512), 9, 57, 65, 67–9, 70, 71, 72; — son of Sulaymán I (Ottoman Prince, A.D. 1562), 89–91
Bayburt, 76
Bayram Beg (Humáyún's envoy), 57; — Khán-Khánán (murdered in A.D. 1561), 165, 245
Baysunghur, or Baysunqur (of the "White Sheep" dynasty), 49–50, 58 n.
Bayt Maḥsír (Hebron), 46 n.
Ibnu'l-Bayṭár (botanist), 441
Bazm-i-Wiṣál, 317
Ibnu'l-Bazzáz (author of *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*, xiv), 34
Bear, the Thief-catching — (*Khirs-i-Qúldúr-básán*, Persian comedy), 462
Bedr ed-Dīn der Sohn des Richters von Simāw by F. Babinger, 44 n., 48 n.
Beer, Ernst —, 140 n., 445 n.
Bees, Habits of — observed by Mír Dámád, 428–9
Belfour, F. C. —, 115, 277
Benares, 115
Bengal, Asiatic Society of —, 358
Berlin, 13 n., 425, 483–9
Bethune, Sir Henry Lindsay —, 147
Bíbí Fáṭima (wife of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, xiii), 42
-Bidá (doctrine of —), 385
Bídábád (quarter of Iṣfahán), 410
Bí-dil (poet), 178, 269
Biḥáru'l-Anwár (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí), 359, 366 n., 409, 417
Bihbihání, Muḥammad 'Alí —, 420
Bihzád (artist, *circa* A.D. 1500), 25
-Bírúní, Abú Rayḥán — (xi), 357, 449
Bísh bád, kam ma-bád (a curse), 54
Bismil, Mírzá 'Alí Akbar of Shíráz (poet, *circa* A.D. 1821), 304–5, 311, 317; *Murgh-i-* —, 166 n.
Bisṭám, 328, 336, 455
Bitlís, 58
"Blasi," 62
Blochet, E. —, 444 n.
Blochmann, 210 n., 249 n.
Blunt, Wilfrid Scawen —, 196
de Boer, Dr T. J. —, 424 n., 425, 426 n.
Bolsheviks, Bolshevism, 371, 487
Bombay, 149
Bosphorus, 467
British Legation at Ṭihrán, 370; — Museum, 457. See *Edwards*, *Rieu*.
Brockelmann's *Gesch. d. Arab. Litt.*, 57 n., 440 n.
Brydges, Sir Harford Jones —, 142–4, 146
Búdáq Sulṭán (father of Shaybak or Shaybání Khán), 64 n.
Buddhists, 258
Buhlúl (the "Wise fool"), 387
Bujnúrd, 455
Bukhárá, 51, 64, 136, 250, 258, 265, 269, 282 n.
Buláq, 253
Bulgháy (descendant of Chingíz Khán), 64 n.
-Búní, Shaykh — (occultist), 442
Bunker, Mr — (*Lunatic at Large*), 322
Búq-i-Waḥdat, 473 n.
Buqrát (Hippocrates), 201
Búqu'l-'Ishq (poet, xvi), 97
Burhán (Niẓám Sháh, A.D. 1508–1553), 169 n.; — (descendant of Shírwán-sháh, *circa* A.D. 1549), 96; — u'd-Dín, Qáḍí — (*circa* A.D. 1384), 406
Bury, Professor J. B. —, 186 n.
Busbecq, 11, 93
Busḥaq (poet of Shíráz), 241
Bushire (Abú Shahr), 489
Bustánu's-Siyáḥat (A.D. 1831–2), 450–2
Buwayhid (or Daylamite) dynasty, 3, 8, 30–31, 54 n.

Buzghush, Shaykh — of Shíráz, 42
Byron, 227
Byzantine Empire, 80 n.

Caesarea, 23, 76
Cain (*Qábil*), 207, 217
Cairo (*-Qáhira*), 425, 469
Calcutta, 469
Caliph (*Khalífa*), Caliphate (*Khiláfat*), 3, 11, 13, 15, 16, 17, 24, 58, 104, 126–7, 131–2, 348, 363, 391; Cursing of first three Caliphs, 53–54, 58, 74, 104, 135, 363
Calligraphy, History of — (*Khaṭṭ u Khaṭṭáṭán*), 450 (by Mírzá Ḥabíb), 457 (by Mírzá-yi-Sanglákh)
Cambridge University Library, 15 n., 49 n., 51 n., 52 n., 53 n., 55, 56 n., 59 n., 63 n., 65 n., 77 n., 194 n., 431
Cambyses (*Kambujiya*), 465
Canaan (*Kan'án*), 207, 217 and note
Canopus (*Suhayl*), 184, 185
Capuchin Mission (Iṣfahán), 9
Carabas (corruption of *Qará-bágh*), 49
Caramania (*Qaramán*), 48
Carmel, Mount —, 204, 214
Cartwright (xv), 10
Cashmere (*Kashmír*), 110, 245, 451
Caspian Sea, 6, 42, 51, 62, 116, 139, 139
Catholicism, Persian converts to —, 6
Caucasus, 347, 451
Cawnpore (*Kánpúr*), 281 n.
Cellini, Benvenuto —, 303
Chaghatáy Turks, 234
Chahár Maqála ("the Four Discourses," xii), 196–7, 209 n., 412, 434 n.
Chahár-súq (cross-roads), 95 n.
Chahár-tár (player on four-stringed lute), 110 and note
Chahil Sutún (palace at Iṣfahán), 92
Chákarlú, 'Alí Beg — (Turkmán ruler, xv), 51
Chakma wa shalwár (boots and breeches), 320, 322
Chaláwí, Ḥusayn Kiyá-yi- — (ruler of Samnán about A.D. 1500), 55, 56
Cháldirán, Battle of — (Aug. 23, 1514), 9, 24, 57, 73, 75–7, 82
Changí (harper), 110 and note
Charand-parand ("Charivari"), 469–482
Chardin (the Chevalier —), 10, 20, 113, 115
"Chasan Chelife," 70. See *Ḥasan Khalífa*
Chelsea, 221
Chighála-záda Sinán Páshá (Turkish general, *circá* A.D. 1603), 106
China (*Chín, Ṣín*), 128, 202, 205, 211 n., 212, 215, 451
Chingíz Khán, 3, 64 and note, 94, 322
Chrestomathie Persane (by M. Ch. Schefer), 9 n.
Christ, 187, 420. See *Jesus* (*'Isá*)
Christensen, Dr Arthur —, 487
Christians, 6, 7, 9, 112, 113, 123, 137, 187, 188–9, 293–4, 314 n., 401, 421, 422, 434, 452. See also *Georgians, Missionaries*
Cicala, 106
Circassians, 101
Clavijo, 41 n., 57
Clements Markham, 41 n.
Clive, Lord —, 186
Clouston, J. Storer —, 322 n.
"Committee of Defence," 484
Communism (*Ibáḥat*), 382 and note
Comneni, 47
Constantinople, 11, 65, 66 n., 76, 77 n., 89, 93 n., 94, 104, 130, 131, 133, 157, 158, 164 n., 173 n., 344, 450, 452, 468, 487, 490
Contarini, Ambrosio —, 10
Continens of Rhazes (-Ḥáwí of -Rází, x), 438–9
Controversial Tracts, etc., by Professor Samuel Lee, 421
Copenhagen, 487
Cossacks, 480 n., 481
Court Directory, Persian —, 454–6
Cowley, Lord —, 154
Creasy's *History of the Ottoman Turks*, 11 n., 75, 90 n., 93
Crimea, 76, 103
Croesus, 209 n.
de la Croix, Pétis —, 10
"Cudi de Lac," 101 n.
Cuneiform writing (*khaṭṭ-i-mikhí*), 466
Curds, 58 n. See *Kurds*
Cureton, 15 n.
Curzon, Hon. Robert —, 152; Lord — of Kedleston, 92 n., 109, 132 n.
Cyaxares, 465
Cynic (*Kalbí*), 200, 201
Cyprus, 154, 464 n.
Cyrus, 464, 465

Dabistán, 258, 436
Dághistán, 269

Dahḥák, 14
Dá'í (court-poet of Sháh 'Abbás, xvi), 110; — (poet, d. A.D. 1742–3), 282
Dajjál (Antichrist), 399
Dakhaw (contemporary poet and writer), 223, 345, 469–482
Dalá'il-i-Sab'a ("Seven Proofs" of the Báb), 422
Dámád, Mír Muḥammad Báqir — (philosopher and theologian, d. A.D. 1630), 110, 250, 252, 256–7, 372, 406–7, 408, 426–9
Damascus, 179, 406
Damáwand, 455
Dámghán, 133, 456
Ḍamír (thought-reading), 434 n.
Ḍamírí (poet, xvii), 110
Dandin, George —, 462
Daniel (the Prophet), 204, 214
Dánish (newspaper), 489
Dárá, Dáráb, 13, 14
Dáráb [jird], 59, 218 n.
Darband, 48, 60, 109, 130, 134, 135
Darmesteter, James —, 122
Dáru'l-Funún (College at Ṭihrán), 155, 441, 458
Dáru's-Salám, 204. See *Baghdád*
Dáru't-Tarjuma (Translation Bureau), 347
Darwinian theory, 211 n.
Dastán, Mírzá Ibráhím — (son of the poet Yaghmá), 338
Dastúru'l-Inshá (by Ṣárí 'Abdu'lláh, d. A.D. 1668), 9 n.
Dastúru'l-Wuzará (by Khwándamír, A.D. 1510), 447
Davies, John —, 114
Dáwarí (poet, xix), 163, 300–301, 319–322
Dawlatí (wife of Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl and mother of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín), 37
Dawlatsháh (author of "Memoirs of the Poets," A.D. 1550), 447
Dawlat Shaykh, 64 n.
Death slain, 401
Deccan, 168, 169, 253, 259, 266, 267, 269, 365
Delhi. See *Dihlí*
Democracy, Arabian —, 18
Dengiz Beg Shámlú (envoy of Sháh 'Abbás, put to death A.D. 1613–4), 6 n.
Derenbourg, M. Hartwig —, 444 n.
Despina Khátún ("Despinacaton"), 47
Determinism (*Jabr*). See *Fatalism*
Deutsch-Persische Gesellschaft, 486 n.
Development of Metaphysics in Persia (by Shaykh Muḥammad Iqbál), 430 n., 431, 436
Devil, 384
Abú Dharr, 208, 218
Dharra u Khurshíd (poem by Zulálí, d. A.D. 1614–5), 252
Dhu'l-Fiqár Khán of Samnán (patron of Yaghmá), 337
Dhu'l-Qadar (Turkish tribe), 52 n., 58, 77, 104, 414
Dhu'l-Qarnayn, 80 n. See *Alexander the Great*
Dhu'n-Nún, Amír — (ruler of Qandahár about A.D. 1500), 55
Dhu'r-Rumma (Arabian poet), 357
Diego, Don — of Persia (about A.D. 1600), 6
Dihlí (Delhi), 28, 91, 92, 136, 168, 169, 266, 281
Dijla (the Tigris), 321
Dilgushá, Garden of — at Shíráz, 221
Dínár, 410 n.
Dín Muḥammad Sulṭán Uzbek (xvi), 92
Divine Right of Kings, 18
Ḍiyá (Ziyá) Páshá (xix), 164 n., 173, 242
Diyár Bakr, 47, 55, 58, 69, 82, 106
Dizful, 46, 59, 279
Doe, John —, 380
"Dog of the Threshold of 'Alí," or "of the Immaculate Imáms," 354, 369
Donisthorpe, Horace —, 440
Dorn, Bernard —, 30, 450 n.
Doyle, Sir Arthur Conan —, 467
Dreams, Shah Ṭahmásp's —, 86–8
Droit Musulman by M. Amédée Querry, 377–8
Dúgh-i-Waḥdat, 473 n.
Dunlop's *Perzië*, 10, 129
Durra-i-Nádirí (by Mírzá Mahdí Khán of Astarábád), 445
Dutch, 10, 129, 280

Ecbatana (Hagmatána, Hamadán), 465
Edom, 204, 214
Edwards, Edward —, 304 n., 330 n., 335, 379 n., 453, 462 n.
Egypt, 11, 14 n., 24, 69, 77, 416, 427, 451, 453
Elephant, Year of the —, 391

Elias, Ney —, 64 n.
Elizabeth, Queen —, 85, 92, 412
Ellis, A. G. —, 5, 14 n., 34, 35, 43 n., 54 n., 55 n., 58 n., 71 n., 414
Engineer's Thumb (by Sir A. Conan Doyle), 467
England, 5, 105, 107, 146, 147, 154, 156, 452, 488
Enoch (Idrís), 390
Envoûtement, 375
Ephialtes, 476–7, 480–1
Epirus, 72
"Epistles to the Kings" (*Alwáḥ-i-Saláṭín*), 423
Erivan, 109, 130, 135, 137
Erlangen, 425
Erskine, W. —, 57 n., 64, 85, 91, 170 n.
Erzeroum, 135, 152; Treaty of —, 146
Erzinján, 22. See *Arzinján*
"Essential meanings of words," 409
Estat de la Perse en 1660, 9, 20 n., 115, 116
Ethé, Professor Hermann —, 25, 168, 233 n., 234, 264 n., 265
l'Étourdi (Molière), 459
Euclid, 201, 212
Eunuchs, 141
Euphrates (*Furát*), 341
Euphuists, 412
Europe (monthly review), 153 n.
Europeans, Persian view of —, 452; — as instructors in Persia, 458; —, their ships highly esteemed, 280
Evil not created by the Devil, 384
Evil Eye (*'Aynu'l-Kamál*), 117 n., 216 n., 274 n.
Executions, compulsory attendance at —, 108

Abu'l-Faḍl (Akbar's Minister), 242, 249, 252; — b. Idrís of Bitlís, 72
Fairchild, Blair —, 222
-Fakhrí, Kitábu'l- —, 127, 180 n., 443–4
Fakhru'l-Muḥaqqiqín, 406
Famagusta (Cyprus), 464 n.
-Fárábí, Abú Naṣr — (philosopher), 257, 449
Faraḥábád (near Iṣfahán), 128, 129, 132
Faráhán, 303, 311
Abu'l-Faraj-i-Rúní (poet), 246, 299
Faras-náma (by Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín), 278
Farazdaq (Arabic poet), 357
Farghána, 64
Farhád Mírzá (uncle of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh), 157, 313; — Páshá (Turkish General, xvi), 104; — *u Shírín* (romantic poem by Waḥshí and Wiṣál), 238, 317, 319
Farhang (Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim, poet, of Shíráz, xix), 300, 319, 322–5
Ibnu'l-Fáriḍ (Egyptian mystic and poet), 357
Farídu'd-Dín 'Aṭṭár (mystical poet, xiii), 357, 449; — Aḥmad Taftázání (d. A.D. 1510), 63, 69
Farmán-farmá (grandson of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh), 146
Farqadán ("Guard-stars"), 295 and note
Farrukh Khán (Persian plenipotentiary at Paris in A.D. 1857), 154, 450; —Yasár (Shírwán-sháh, killed in A.D. 1500), 22, 52, 60, 82
Farrukhí (poet, xi), 265, 299
Fárs (province), 49, 56, 57, 59, 60, 82, 134, 225, 283
Faṣíḥ (poet, xvi), 243
Fatalism (*jabr*), 382, 384 n., 385, 386–7, 424
Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh Qájár (A.D. 1797–1834), 115, 145–6, 298, 303, 304, 305, 309, 311, 314 n., 315, 368, 374–6, 411; — Khán Qájár (*circâ* A.D. 1728), 132, 139; — Khán of Káshán (poetically surnamed *Ṣabá*, *q.v.*), 309–310; — -i-Darbandí (xix), 462
Abu'l-Fatḥ Beg Báyandarí (ruler of Kirmán, *circâ* A.D. 1500), 55; — -Ḥusayní (xvi), 34–5; — (son of Karím Khán-i-Zand, xviii), 142; — of Gílán (*Ḥakím*, xvi), 245
Fatḥí (rhapsodist at Court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110; — (Indian poet), 267
Fáṭima (daughter of the Prophet Muḥammad, wife of 'Alí, and mother of the Imáms al-Ḥasan and al-Ḥusayn, vii), 17, 18, 29, 32, 33 n., 176 n., 178, 180, 182, 185, 190, 192, 391, 392, 400 n., 451; — *-Kubrà* and *Ṣughrà* (daughters of the Imám-Ḥusayn), 181, 393
Fáṭimid Caliphs, 54 n., 98
Fatwá (legal decision), 372
Fawá'id-i-Ṣafawiyya (composed A.D. 1796–7), 444

Fawá'idu'l-Madaniyya (by Mullá Muḥammad Amín, d. A.D. 1623-4), 374
Fayḍ, Mullá Muḥsin-i- —. See under *Muḥsin*
Faydí (Fayżí, Feyżí, poet at Akbar's Court, d. A.D. 1595), 163, 164, 167, 242-5, 249, 267
Fayyáḍ, 'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí (theologian and philosopher, xvii), 250 n., 408-9, 435-6; Sultán — (heretic suppressed by Sháh Isma'íl, *circá* A.D. 1508), 59
Felenk and I'elenk (factions), 119
Ferdinand, the Archduke, 11, 93
Feuvrier, Dr —, 371
Fig, Valley of the —, 214, 219
Fighání, Bábá — of Shíráz (d. A.D. 1519), 164, 229-230, 242
Figuerosa, Don Garcias de Silva —, 10
Fihrist (of -Túsí, xi), 355, 405
Fín (near Káshán), 56, 152
Findariski, Mír Abu'l-Qásim-i- — (d. *circá* A.D. 1640), 250, 257-8
"Firangí ambassador" at the Court of Yazíd, 188
Firangís Khánum (daughter of Sháh Isma'íl, xvi), 81 n.
Firdawsí (poet, xi), 13, 228, 229, 299, 309; — (magazine), 489
Firídún (legendary Persian king), 12, 13, 14, 310; — Bey (compiler of Turkish State Papers, xvi), 8, 12, 13 n., 66-9, 73-80, 88 n., 91, 93 n.
Fírúzkúh, 55, 56, 455
Fírúz Mírzá (A.D. 1840), 149
Fírúzsháh-*i-Zarrín-Kuláh* (ancestor of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín), 32 n., 36
Fishing as a pastime, 51
Five Years in a Persian Town (by Napier Malcolm), 195
Flügel, 66 n.
Fonahn, Dr Adolf —, 439
Forbes's *Persian Grammar*, 387 n.
"Four Books" of the Shí'a, 359, 405
"Fourteen Immaculate Ones" (*Cháhárdah Ma'ṣúm*, *i.e.* the Prophet, Fáṭima, and the Twelve Imáms), 400
France, 5, 6, 146, 153, 450
Franks (*Firangí*), 275, 283
Frederick Duke of Holstein, 114
Free Will, 15, 384-5, 386-7, 424
French, 226-7, 371, 452, 458, 488; — language, 10, 323-5, 459-62, 465, 490; — Legation at Tihrán, 378
Fuḍúlí (Fuzúlí), poet of Baghdád (d. A.D. 1562-3), 236-7
Fúlád-Oghlán (descendant of Chingiz Khán), 64 n.
Furát (Euphrates), 340
Furúghí of Qazwín (court-poet of Sháh 'Abbás, xvii), 110; — of Bistám (xix), 26, 168, 225, 307 n., 326, 328, 336-7
Furúgh-i-Tarbiyat (magazine), 489
Furúghu'd-Dawla (son of Ḥasan 'Alí Mírzá *Shiyá'u's-Saltana*), 328

Gabr (guebre), 80 n., 95, 126, 179. See also *Magian*, *Zoroastrian*
Gabriel (Jibrá'íl), the Archangel, 175, 177, 229, 291, 294 n., 297, 388, 389, 390
Ganja, 99, 104, 109, 134, 229
Ganj-i-Dánish ("the Treasure of Learning," published in 1887-8), 456-7
Ganjína of Nashát (d. A.D. 1828-9); — *-i-Ma'árif* (magazine), 490
Gardanne, General —, 146
"Gates" (*Abwáb*), 150. See *Báb*
Gawhar-i-Murád ("the Pearl of Desire," by 'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí), 408, 435
Gedik Páshá, Theatre of — at Constantinople, 464 n.
Genoa, 6
Georgia, Georgians, 37, 44, 52, 95, 103, 104, 107, 123, 134, 137, 140, 144, 298, 375 n.
Germany, 5, 6, 13 n., 128, 153, 483-9; people of —, 425, 463; language of —, 10, 12
Geschichte *der Arabischen Aerzte* (by Wüstenfeld), 440 n.; — *der Chalifen* (by Weil), 54 n.; — *der Medizin* (Max Neuburger), 438
Ghálib, Sayyid Muḥammad Ḥusayn (poet, xviii), 283
Ghaní-záda, Mírzá Maḥmúd —, 490
Ghaybat ("Occultation" of the Twelfth Imám), 150, 381, 398-9
Ghazála, 393. See *Shahrbánú*
-Ghazálí, 449
Gházán Khán (xiv), 18, 41
Abu'l-Ghází Ḥusayn b. Bayqará, Sulṭán — (Tímúrid, xv-xvi), 63, 64, 69, 77, 83

Ghazna, 228; House of —, 3, 18
Ghujduwán, Battle of — (A.D. 1512), 66
Ghulát (extreme Shí'a), 17, 58, 385, 395, 452
Ghúrí, Sulṭán — (of Egypt, xvi), 69
Ghúriyání, Khwája Kalán — (xvi), 97
Ghuzz Turks, 348
Gibb, E. J. W. — (*History of Ottoman Poetry*), 13 n., 20 n., 89 n., 107 n., 163 n., 164 n., 210 n., 236–7, 242, 250, 265, 462 n., 464 n.
Gibbon (*Decline and Fall of the Roman Empire*), 186
Gílán, 19, 36, 50, 96, 104, 130, 134, 135, 223, 237, 238, 277, 279, 280, 451, 469; dialect of — (Gílakí), 43
Gílkhwárán, 36 n. See *Kalkhorán*
Giustiniani, Nicolo — (A.D. 1514), 72
Gobineau, M. le Comte de —, 147 n., 153, 403, 423, 430 n., 431, 435, 436
Gog and Magog (*Yajúj wa Májúj*), 211 and note, 400
Goldziher, Prof. Ignaz —, 424 n.
Good and Evil, Problem of —, 384–5
Gospels (*Injíl*, *Ingilyún*), 137, 204, 214, 388
di Govea, Antonio —, 10
Grahame, George —, 190, 198, 229
Grand Maître des Assassins, un —, by S. Guyard, 149 n.
Grebaiodoff (Russian Minister murdered at Ṭihrán, Feb. 11, 1829), 146, 312
Greeks, 47, 475–481; Philosophy and Science of the —, 219, 424–5, 437–8, 457
Green birds of Paradise, 395, 397
Grey, Charles —, 48 n., 49 n.
"Guard-stars" (*Farqadán*), 295 and n.
Guebre, 80 n. See *Gabr*, *Magian*, *Zoroastrian*
Gujerát, 168, 169, 252
Gulistán (place), 52, 146; (book) 269, 326, 335, 490
Gul-i-zard (magazine), 490
Gulkhandán (fortress), 56
Gulnábád, Battle of — (March 8, 1722), 126–8
Gulshan-*i-Maḥmúd*, 298; — -*i-Ráz*, 37; — -*i-Ṣabá*, 309
Gurgán (Jurján), 130, 234
Gurgín Khán, 123–4
Guzárish-i-Mardum-guríz (Persian version of *le Misanthrope*), 459
Gyawur ("giaour"), 80 n. See *Gabr*
Gyuk Cháy (near Síwás), 71

Ḥabíb, 328, 332 (the early pen-name of *Qá'ání*, *q.v.*); Mírzá — of Iṣfahán (xix), 450; Shaykh — Aḥmad (contemporary), 442; — *u's-Siyar* (by Khwándamír, A.D. 1523), 445
Ḥablu'l-Matín (newspaper), 469
Ḥádhiq (poet, xvii), 267
Ḥádí, Ḥájji Mullá — of Sabzawár (philosopher, d. A.D. 1878), 326, 409, 411, 426, 430, 431, 436–7; Ḥájji Shaykh — [-i-Najmábádí], 471, 474
Ḥadíqatu'*l-Ḥaqíqa* (by Saná'í), 256; — *'s-Su'adá* (by Fuḍúlí), 237
Ḥáfiẓ (of Shíráz, xiv), 25, 122, 216 n., 222, 268, 299, 348, 382 n., 383 n.; — Pasha (A.D. 1625), 107; — (title of *Qur'án*-reciters), 110
Haft-*band* (of Muḥtasham), 173–7; — *Iqlím* (of Amín Aḥmad-i-Rází), 231 n., 234, 235, 241 n., 448 and note; — -*Kishwar* (of Fayḍí), 244; — *Manẓar* (of Hátifí), 229; — *Paykar* (of Niẓámí), 229; — *Sín* ("the seven S's"), 333 n.
Haggard, W. H. D. —, 462
Ḥájibu'd-Dawla, Ḥájji 'Alí Khán —, 153, 454
Ḥájji Baba (Morier's), 195, 468; — Khalífa ("Kyátib Chelebi"), 66 n.; — Mírzá Áqásí, 147, 149, 151, 329
Ibnu'l-Ḥájib, 362
Ḥakím, Mírzá Maḥmúd — (poet and physician, son of the poet Wiṣál, d. A.D. 1851), 300; —, Muḥammad Taqí Khán (A.D. 1887), 456–7
Hakluyt Society, 41 n., 48 n., 49 n., 50 n., 57 n., 60 n., 85 n., 90 n.
Halákí (poet of the time of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Ḥálatí (poet of the time of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Halévy, 397 n.
"Half the World" (*Nisf-i-Jahán*, "Medio Mundo"), Iṣfahán so called, 4
Ḥalíma (daughter of Úzún Ḥasan), 47
Hamadán (Hagmatána, Ecbatana), 57, 82, 89, 109, 130, 132, 134, 258, 279, 451, 464, 465
-*Ḥamása*, 270
Hamerton, P. G. —, 226

von Hammer, 66 n., 71 n., 72, 73
Ḥamza, Abu'l-Qásim — (son of the Seventh Imám Músá Káẓim), 33 n., 36; — ("White Sheep" dynasty), 58 n.; — (son of the Ṣafawí Sháh Muḥammad Khudá-banda, d. A.D. 1586), 101, 102
Ibnu'l-Ḥanafiyya (son of 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib), 17, 391
Hanauer, Rev. Canon J. E. —, 46 n.
Ibn Ḥanbal (Aḥmad b. Muḥammad —, A.D. 855), 353
Abú Ḥanífa (d. A.D. 767), 353, 387
Hanway, Jonas — (xviii), 4, 112, 116, 118, 119 n., 126, 127, 129, 130 n., 132 n., 134, 136
Ḥaqqu'l-Yaqín (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí), 381, 417, 418
Ḥaram. See *Holy Cities*, *Mecca*, *-Madína*
Ḥarára (a kind of ballad), 222
Ḥarfí (poet of Iṣfahán), 237
Harford Jones Brydges, Sir —, 142–6
Hárímu'r-Rashíd, 394, 438
-Ḥaríri, 412
Ḥárith (slayer of Muslim's children), 191, 193
Ḥasan b. 'Alí (the Second Imám), 16 n., 173, 175, 176 n., 193 n., 392–3; — -'Askarí (the Eleventh Imám), 394; — b. Muḥammad (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 33 n.; — -Baṣrí, 384; — b. Yúsuf b. 'Alí b. Mutahhar-Ḥillí (called 'Alláma-i-Ḥillí, *q.v.*, d. A.D. 1326), 356, 406; — (of the Áq-qoyúnlú dynasty, A.D. 1466–1478), see Úzún Ḥasan; — Khalífa (xv), 70; — Beg (Turkish governor of Morea, killed in A.D. 1514), 76; — Beg Rúmlú (author of *Aḥsanu't-Tawárikh*, A.D. 1577–8, *q.v.*), 85, 100, 444; — Beg (gaoler of Alqáṣ Mírzá, xvi), 89; — Áqá (Turkish officer, xvi), 91; — Beg (favourite of Isma'íl II, xvi), 99–100; — Páshá (Begler-begi of Rumelia, killed in A.D. 1514), 76; — Mírzá, Sulṭán — Ṣafawí (xvi), 99; — of Yazd, Mullá — (defies Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh), 368–9; — of Shíráz, Ḥájji Mírzá —, and of Ashtiyán (opponents of Tobacco concession in A.D. 1890–1), 370–1; — Muqaddam (author of a play), 463 n.
Ḥasan 'Alí Khán-i-Garrúsí (A.D. 1890), 347; — Khán-i-Nawwáb (xix), 301–2, 319; — Mírzá *Shujá'u's-Salṭana* (early patron of Qá'ání and Furúghí, xix), 328
Abu'l-Ḥasan-Jandaqí, 337. See *Yagḥmad*; Sayyid — Khán (head of Isma'ílí sect, xviii), 148; — Mírzá, called Ḥájji Shaykhu'r-Ra'ís (xix–xx), 303, 420
Háshim-i-Qazwíní, Háfiz — (time of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110
Ḥashísh (Indian hemp), 87 n., 470, 473 and note
Hasht Bihisht, 151
Hátif of Iṣfahán (poet, xviii), 221, 277, 283–297, 305, 309
Hátifí (poet of Kharjird, d. A.D. 1520), 25, 83, 227–9
Ḥátim of Tayy, 401; — of Káshán (poet of the time of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110
-Ḥáwí ("Continens") of -Rází (Rhazes), 438–9
-*Háwiya* (the lowest Hell), 400–401
Hayátí (poet), 167
Ḥayátu'l-Qulúb ("the Life of Hearts"), by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí (xvii), 409, 417
Ḥaydar, Shaykh — (father of Sháh Isma'íl I, xv), 19, 21, 47–9, 60, 67, 70; — -i-Mu'ammá'í (poet of the time of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110; — (rhapsodist, contemporary with the preceding), 110; — Mírzá (son of Sháh Ṭahmásp I, xvi), 98; — Mírzá (nephew of Sháh 'Abbás I), 104; — 'Alí Khán Nawwáb (xix), 328
Ḥaydarábád (Deccan), 269, 365
Ḥaydarí and Ni'matí (factions), 119 n.
Ḥayrat (pen-name of Abu'l-Ḥasan Mírzá, *q.v.*), 303
Ḥayratí (poet, d. A.D. 1553), 97, 170
Ḥayya ilà khayri'l-'amal, 54
Ḥazár-jaríb, 283
Ḥazín, Shaykh 'Alí — (xviii), 115, 117–118, 265, 277–281, 450
Heaven and Hell described, 395–401, 418
Hebron, 46 n.
Hells, the Seven —, 400–401
Heraclius, Prince of Georgia (xviii), 140
Herát, 25, 44, 63, 69, 83, 86, 94, 95, 97, 99, 100, 125, 133, 147, 154, 229, 234, 334 n., 489

Herbert, Sir Thomas —, 10
Heretics put to death, 57, 71–3
Hermes, 201, 212
Herodotus, 465
-*Hidáya* of -Maybudí, 57 n.
Hidáyat (the pen-name of Riḍá-qulí Khán, *q.v.*), 224, 225, 304, 307 n., 326, 344
Hijáz, 280, 427, 451
Hijrat-i-Ṣughrà ("the Minor Migration," Dec. 1905), 446 n.
-*Ḥikmatu'l-'Arshiyya* and *Ḥikmatu'l-Ishráq*, 430
Hiláli (poet, put to death in A.D. 1528), 25, 83, 94, 227, 234–5
-Ḥilli, 378, 405 (see -*Muḥaqqiq-Awwal*); 54 and note, 406 (see *'Alláma-i-Ḥilli*)
Ḥilyatu'l-Muttaqín ("the Ornament of the Pious," by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí), 409, 417
Himmat (poet, xix), 300
Hind (wife of Abú Sufyán, vii), 178, 180 and note
Hindí language, 259 n.
Hindús, 179, 181, 258, 452
Hindúsháh b. Sanjar...-Kírání (author of *Tajáribu's-Salaf*, xiv), 443
Hindustán, 282. See *India*
Hippocrates (*Buqrát*), 212, 439
Hirschberg, Dr Julius —, 425, 440
Ḥisábí (poet of the time of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110
Hishám b. 'Abdu'l-Malik (Umayyad, viii), 393
Histoire de la Médecine Arabe (by Dr L. Leclerc), 440 n.
Histoire des Mongols (by d'Ohsson), 45 n., 322
Holmyard, 440
Holstein, Frederick Duke of —, 114
Holy Cities, 11, 24, 59, 280. See *Karbalá*, *Mecca*, -*Madína*, *Najaf*, etc.
Hoopoe (*Hudhud*), 190, 192
Horn, Dr Paul —, 13 n., 84 n., 86 n., 87 n., 88 n., 90
Houtsma, 18 n.
Houtum-Schindler, Sir Albert —, 5, 33 n., 48 n., 223, 305, 450 n., 457
Huart, M. Clément —, 35, 40
Húd (the Prophet), 388
Ḥujjatu'l-Islám (Ḥájji Sayyid Muḥammad Báqir so entitled), 368
Ḥujjatu'lláh (title of the Imám Mahdí), 394
Húlágú Khán (Mongol, xiii), 37, 41 n., 148, 405
Ḥulúl (Incarnation), 382
Humáyún (Moghul Emperor of India, xvi), 28 n., 57, 91–2, 165, 169–170
Hunar, Mírzá Isma'íl — (son of the poet Yaghmá), 338
Ḥunayn b. Isḥáq ("Johanitius"), 357
Ḥúrís (of Paradise), 190, 192 and note
Hurmuz, Island of —, 107
Ḥurr-'Ámilí, Shaykh —, 28
Ḥurr b. Yazíd-Riyáḥí, 190
Ḥusayn b. 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib (the Third Imám), 17, 30–31, 87 n., 135, 176 n., 177, 178, 180, 182, 184–193, 241, 392–3, 399, 434; — b. Bayqará, Sultán Abu'l-Ghází — (Tímúrid, xv–xvi), 55–6, 63, 64, 69, 77, 83; — Sháh-i-Ṣafawí (A.D. 1694–1722), 111, 113–4, 116, 120, 123, 125, 128, 129, 131, 138, 139, 283; — b. Manṣúr-Ḥalláj (mystic, x), 336, 357; — Kiyá-yi-Chaláwí (killed by Sháh Isma'íl I about A.D. 1503), 55, 56; — -i-Maybudí, Mír — (xvi), 57; — Wá'iẓ-i-Káshifí (xv–xvi), 83, 182, 227, 237; —, Shaykh — (father of Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, xvi), 427; — 'Alí Beg (Persian ambassador to Spain, A.D. 1599), 5, 6 n.; —, Khwája — (poet) and — Tanbúra'í (musician), contemporaries of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, 110; — Páshá (Governor of Baṣra, xvii), 363. Mullá — Rafíq (poet of Iṣfahán, xviii), 282; — Ḥusayn of Yazd (turbulent ecclesiastic, A.D. 1817), 148; Sayyid — -i-Ṭabáṭabá'í of Ardistán (poetically surnamed Mijmar, *q.v.*, d. A.D. 1810), 307–8; — Khán, poetically surnamed 'Andalíb (xix), 309; Mírzá — b. 'Abdu'lláh (A.D. 1857–8), 450; — qulí (author of *Minháju't-Tálibín*, *q.v.*), 423; — Dánish Bey (contemporary man of letters), 8 n., 29; — i-Kurd (fictitious hero of popular romance), 464
Ḥusn-i-ta'lil ("poetical aetiology"), 164
-*Ḥuṭama* (the sixth of the Seven Hells), 400–401
Huwarqilyá, *Jism-i-* —, *Arḍ-i-* —, 397 and note; 403
Ḥuwayza, 58, 362, 367

Ibáhat, 382. See *Communism*
Ibráhím, the Patriarch, see *Abraham*; — (son of the Prophet Muḥammad), 391; — b. Adham (saint, viii), 36, 357; — b. Ja'far (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 33 n.; —, commonly called Shaykh Sháh (xv), 47; — (brother of Sháh Isma'íl I), 48 n.; — Mírzá (son of Sháh Ṭahmásp I), 98; — (nephew of Nádir Sháh, *circâ* A.D. 1750), 138; — Sháh (xviii), 284; — (son of Mullá Ṣadrá, xvii), 376, 408 n., 429; — Khán (custodian of Alqáṣ Mírzá, xvi), 89; Ḥájjí — (betrayer of Luṭf-'Alí Khán-i-Zand), 143 n., 145 and note, 146; Mírzá — (opponent of Henry Martyn), 421; — Dastán (son of the poet Yaghmá), 338; — Khayru'lláh (Bahá'í propagandist in America), 214 n.; *Siyáḥat-náma-i-* — *Beg*, 463–4; 467–8
'Ibrat-náma of Ṣabá (xix), 309
Iḍáḥu'l-Ishtibáh (of -Ḥillí, xiii–xiv), 356
Idolatry, 386, 401
Idrís (Enoch), 388; — of Bitlís (historian, xvi), 72
Iḥqáqu'l-Ḥaqq (Refutation of the Bábís), 423
I'jáz Ḥusayn, Sayyid — (d. A.D. 1870), 357
Ijtihád (doctrine of —), 353, 382. See also *Mujtahid*
'Ilmu'r-Rijál (Biography of Traditionists), 355
Íltí-oghlán (descendant of Chingíz Khán), 64 n.
'Imádu'l-Kuttáb (contemporary poet and calligraphist), 303
Imámate, Imáms, 16–9, 22, 28, 32, 36, 46, 48 and note, 53–5, 88, 109, 148, 150, 162, 172–3, 181, 197, 214, 236, 241, 372, 382, 386, 391–5, 451
Imámí Sect, 18. See *Shí'a* and *Twelve, Sect of the* —
Imámí (poet of Herát, xiii), 334 n.
Imám-qulí Mírzá (Ṣafawí prince murdered in A.D. 1577), 99
Ímán and *Islám*, 401–2
'Imrán (father of Moses), 292
Imru'u'l-Qays (old Arabian poet), 478, 482
Ínak-'Alí, Mullá —, 475, 479
Incarnation (*Ḥulúl*), 382
India, 4, 24, 25, 115, 123, 135, 136, 148, 154, 164–170, 189, 205, 215, 241, 245–6, 252, 253, 254, 255, 258–260, 265–6, 277, 280–1, 282, 283, 284, 300, 356, 365, 408, 431, 438, 451, 453, 472; literary taste in —, 226, 227, 229, 300
Inṣáf (fairness, a Persian characteristic), 196 n.
"Inspector's head," 375
Intellectual Life (by Hamerton), 226
Intercession (Doctrine of — in Islám), 179, 186–7, 390
Iqán (Bábí apology), 422–3
Írán and Túrán, 13; — (newspaper), 157
Írán-shahr (magazine), 488–9, 490
'Iráq, 47, 55, 57, 59, 82, 191, 192, 234, 255, 347, 366, 410, 451
'Iráq-i-'Ajam (newspaper), 346, 347
Irish language, 185 n., 223
Irsálu'l-mathal ("Proverbial Commission"), 164
Irshád (newspaper), 346, 347
'Ísá, see Jesus; *Mírzá* — of Faráhán. *Qá'im-maqám*, 147 n., 303, 311, 347
Iṣaiah, 204, 214
'Ísáwiyya (N. African order of dervishes), 59
Iṣfahán, 4, 6, 9, 10, 15, 25, 56, 59, 92, 107, 109, 110, 115, 116, 118, 119, 120, 123–133, 134, 139, 140, 141, 167, 184, 186, 195, 198, 222, 225, 237, 265, 268, 277–9, 281, 282, 283, 284, 307, 325, 365–6, 368, 408, 410, 427, 428, 429, 436, 450, 451, 489
Isfaranján (in Gílán), 36
Isḥáq Beg *'Udhrí* (poet, died A.D. 1771–2), 283
Ishmael, 388. See *Isma'íl*
"*Ishpukhtar*" (Inspector), 375
'Ishq u Saltanat ("Love and Lordship," a novel), 464
Ishráq (pen-name of Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Dámád, *q.v.*), 257, 407, 428
Ishráqiyyún ("Illuminati," Platonists), 431
Iskandar (Alexander the Great, *q.v.*), 13, 14; — Munshí (author of the *Ta'ríkh-i-'Álam-árá-yi-'Abbásí*, composed in A.D. 1616, *q.v.*), 99, 108, 109, 444

Islám Sháh b. Shír Sháh (the Afghán ruler of Dihlí, d. A.D. 1553–4), 168
Islamische Welt, Die —, 484 n.
Isma'íl b. Ja'far-Ṣádiq (Seventh Imám of the Isma'íliyya), 391; — b. Muḥammad (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 33 n.; — b. Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl (ancestor of the Ṣafawís, xiii), 37; Sháh — I (A.D. 1502–1524), 5, 9, 12–15, 19–24, 25 n., 49–83 *passim*, 92, 101 n., 112, 158, 172, 224, 229, 360, 444, 447; his character and appearance, 22–23, 60–63; Sháh — II (A.D. 1576–7), 98–100, 101, 102; Sháh — (xviii), 284; — Khán Sarbáz (poet), 188; — son of Yaghmá, poetically surnamed Hunar, 338; — Naṣírí Qarája-Dághí (A.D. 1890), 344; — 'Abdu'lláh-záda (A.D. 1905), 466
Isma'ílí Sect, 17, 18, 147–9, 391
Isnáds, 443
Israel, Children of —, 207, 388
Isráfíl (Angel of the Resurrection), 400
Iṣṭakhr, 49
Istibṣár (of -Ṭúsí, d. A.D. 1067), 359, 405
Istidlálíyya (Bahá'í controversy), 214 n.
Italy, Italians, 6, 58 n., 60; — language, 10
I'timádu'd-Dawla (Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, xix), 84 n., 454
I'timádu's-Saltana (Ḥájji 'Alí Khán Ḥájibu'd-Dawla, father of the above), 454
Ittiḥád (Apotheosis), 382; — (Tabríz newspaper), 463; — *u'l-Islám* ("Union of Islám," by Ḥájji Shaykhu'r-Ra'ís), 420 n.
Iṭṭilá' (newspaper), 157

Jabal 'Ámil (Syria), 360, 427
Jabání, Battle of — (A.D. 1500), 82
Jabr (Fatalism, *q.v.*), 382
"Jachia" (*i.e.* Yaḥyá Páshá), 70
Jacob (Ya'qúb), 207
Ja'da bint-Ash'ath (vii), 392
Ja'far-Ṣádiq (the Sixth Imám, viii), 391, 394; — b. -Ḥusayn b. 'Alí (vii), 393; — b. Muḥammad (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 33 n.; — Bey (Turkish officer, A.D. 1514), 76; Shaykh — -Baḥráni (xvii), 364–5; — b. Ṣádiq-i-Zand (A.D. 1785), 142; — of Iṣfahán, poetically surnamed Ṣáfí (xviii); Mírzá — Qarája-dághí (xix), 462; — -quli Áqá (officer of Persian Cossacks, A.D. 1907), 476, 480; — *Khán az Firang ámada* (Persian comedy), 463 n.
Ja'farí, *Ithná-'ashariyya* ("Sect of the Twelve") why so called, 394
Jaffa, 46 n.
Jahán, Qádí-i- — (contemporary of Sháh Ṭahmásp I), 92
Jahángír Mírzá ("White Sheep" dynasty), 58 n.; — (Moghul Emperor of India, A.D. 1605–1628), 253, 255, 447; Mírzá — Khán of Shíráz (editor of the *Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl*, put to death in A.D. 1908), 302, 345, 482 n.
Jahánsháh (Turkmán ruler of Ádharbáyján, xv), 47
Jaḥím (the fourth of the Seven Hells), 400–401
-Jáḥiẓ (Arab philologist and polygraph, ix), 440–441
Jalájil-i-Bákharzí (musician at Court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Jalál (or Jelál, Turkish heresiarch, A.D. 1519), 106; — (chief astrologer of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, A.D. 1593), 7; — i-Asír (poet, A.D. 1640), 251, 258, 268–9
Jalálábád (Afghánistán), 489
Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí (xiii), 35 n., 37, 38, 220, 357, 411, 449; — Dawání (philosopher, *circa* A.D. 1500), 69, 83, 231, 427
Jalá'u'l-'Uyún (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, d. A.D. 1700), 410, 417
Jamá'a, Ibn —, Qádí (A.D. 1384), 406
Jamál, Áqá — Iṣfahání, 373
Jamálu'd-Dín, Sayyid — (Spiritual director of Shaykh Záhid of Gílán, xiii), 42; — b. Muṭahhir-Ḥillí, Shaykh —, 54; — Muḥammad b. Badru'd-Dín, 245, see 'Urfí; — Muḥammad b. Ḥusayn-Khwánsárí (theologian and jurisconsult), 373; Sayyid — -Afghán (xix), 155, 371
Jamál-záda, Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí — (contemporary writer), 488

Jámí, Mullá Núru'd-Dín 'Abdu'r-Raḥmán — (poet and writer, xv), 25, 26, 40 n., 42 n., 69, 83, 162, 163, 220, 227, 228, 230, 242, 299, 362
Jámi'-i-'Abbásí (by Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, d. A.D. 1622), 407, 428
Jamshíd, 29, 246, 247
Jandaq, 337
Jání Beg Khán (xiv), 45; Ḥájji Mírzá — of Káshán (historian of the Báb, killed in A.D. 1852), 198, 218 n., 446
Janissaries (*Yeñi-cheri*), 77, 106
Japan, 205, 215
-Járbardí, 362
Jarír (old Arab poet), 284
Jarrett, H. S. —, 249
Jaubert, 146
Jawhar (servant of Humáyún), 91
Jawshan-i-Kabír, 437
Jayḥún (the River Oxus), 208, 219; — (poet of Yazd, xix), 325
-Jazá'irí, Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh — (xvii), 360–367
Jenkinson, Anthony — (xvi), 10, 85, 90, 91, 92
Jerusalem, 46 n., 204, 214
Jesuits, 116
Jesus (*'Ísá*), 174, 176, 187, 189, 207, 217, 388, 390, 392, 420
Jews, 179, 181, 214 n., 392, 400, 404, 421, 452
Jibrá'íl (Gabriel, *q.v.*), 175
Jigar-gúsha, 185 n.
Jihád (Religious War), 371, 377
Jihannam (the first of the Seven Hells), 400–401
Jinn, 36 and note, 39, 42, 111, 190, 192, 388, 389, 396
Jisr-i-Júbán, 76
Jones, Sir William —, 229 n.; E. R. —, 424 n., 425
"Jonuses" (Yúnus Páshá, executed in A.D. 1517), 71
Joseph (Yúsuf), 207, 217
Jourdan, Monsieur — (Persian comedy), 462
Journalism, Persian —, 413
Juan di Persia, Don — (xvi–xvii), 4, 5 and note, 6, 21, 101 n., 102 n.
Jubilee (of Queen Victoria), 322
Judaism, 137. See also *Jews*
Judas Iscariot, 207, 218
Jújí (son of Chingíz Khán, xiii), 64 n.
Julfá (suburb of Iṣfahán), 128
Junayd, Shaykh — Ṣafawí (xv), 19, 47, 51, 52
Jurjání, Sayyid-i-Sharíf-i- —, 59, 427
Justice (*Iṣṣáf*), a Persian characteristic, 196
Juwayní (author of the *Ta'ríkh-i-Jahán-gushá*, xiii), 443

Ka'ba, 386
"*Kábilí*" (poem by Dakhaw, A.D. 1907), 345, 482 n.
Kábul, 136, 489
-*Káfí* (of -Kulayní, x), 359, 405
-*Káfiya* (of Ibnu'l-Ḥájib), 362, 363, 364
Ká'ká (poet of the time of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110
Kalám, Ahl-i- —, 376, 403, 426; *'Ilmu'l-* —. See *Mutakallimún*
Kalán, Khwája — -i-Ghuriyání (xvi), 97
Kalát-i-Nádirí, 132
Kalb-'Alí ("the Dog of 'Alí"), a common name amongst the Shí'a, 235 n.
Kalím, Abú Ṭálib — (poet, d. A.D. 1651), 164, 166, 250, 258–263, 268
Kalkhorán (in Gílán), 36
Kalo Ioannes (last Christian Emperor of Trebizond), 47
Kamákh (near Arzinján), 77
Kamál (or Kemál) Bey, Námiq — (Turkish reformer and writer, xix), 464
Kamáliyyát ("Accomplishments"), 27 and note
Kamálu'd-Dín 'Arabsháh, Khwája — (xiii), 37; Ḥusayn of Ardabíl (the first to write in Persian on Shí'a theology, A.D. 1500), 359–360; Khwája — Ságharchí (A.D. 1510), 65–6
Kamárij, Battle of — (A.D. 1753), 140
Kandahar, 112. See *Qandahár*
"*Kanlu oldum*" ("I am guilty of bloodshed"), 113
Kánpúr (Cawnpore), 281 n.
Karak, 406
Karámát ("Gifts" or miracles of Saints), 40 and note
Karbalá, 28, 30, 58, 147, 149, 174, 175, 176 n., 177–181, 182, 187, 188, 189, 197, 198, 344 n., 370, 371, 372, 375, 393, 396, 451, 463
"Karbalá'í verse," 487

Karím Khán-i-Zand (A.D. 1750–1779), 121, 139–142, 144, 282, 368
Kár-Kiyá Mírzá 'Alí (ruler of Láhiján, A.D. 1500), 50
Karnál, Battle of — (February, 1739), 136
Káshá, Mírzá — (fictitious), 184, 186
Káshán, 28, 55, 56, 108, 130, 152, 162, 170, 225, 258, 309, 326, 344, 407, 432, 477, 481
Kashfu'l-*Abyát* (concordance of verses in *Mathnawí*), 457; — -*Ḥujub* (Shí'a bibliography, A.D. 1870), 355 n., 357–8, 359, 361 n., 364 n., 366 n., 374 n.
Kashkúl (of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín al-'Ámilí, d. A.D. 1622), 253, 278, 407, 428
Kashmír. See *Cashmere*
Kasru Aṣnámi'l-Jahiliyyat (by Mullá Ṣadrá), 430
Ibn Kathír (historian), 30, 31
Ká'ús (legendary King of Persia), 81
"*Kaveh*" (*Káwa*) newspaper, 346, 348, 483-9, 490
"Kaviani" (*Káwaydní*) Press, Berlin, 346, 463, 490
Káwa, Káwaydní, the legendary blacksmith who revolted against the tyrant Ḍaḥḥák (*Azhidahák*), and, raising aloft his leather apron, made it, under the name of *Dirafsh-i-Káwaydn*, the standard and symbol of all Persian patriots, lovers of freedom, and foes of foreign dominion. The paper and Press mentioned above (under "*Kaveh*" and "*Kaviani*") are named after this blacksmith and his flag, but spell their names thus in the Roman character. See 14 n.
Kawthar, Water of — in Paradise, 401
Kay, Kayání, Kay-Khusraw, 13, 14
Kaysání Sect, 17, 391
Kayván, 436; — Cháwúsh (A.D. 1502), 68
Kázarún, 55, 97
Káẓim, Sayyid — of Rasht, 421. See *Shaykhís*
Káẓimayn, 366
Kazimirski, A. de Biberstein —, 417
Káẓimzáda, Mírzá Ḥusayn —, 488
Kemál Bey. See under *Kamál*
Khaby (a kind of divination), 434 n.
Khadíja (wife of the Prophet Muḥammad), 391, 392; — (sister of Úzún Ḥasan, xv), 47
Khá·lim 'Alí Páshá (xvi), 71
Ibn Khaldún (historian, xiv–xv), 163, 425, 442, 445
Khálid b. -Walíd, 170, 171; — Bey (killed in A.D. 1514), 76
Khalífa, 16, see *Caliph, Caliphate*; — Sultán (xvii), 264
Khalíl Shírwánsháh (xv), 52; — Áq-Qoyúnlú (xv), 58 n.; — Khán Afshár (xvi), 101; — u'lláh, Sháh — (head of the Isma'ílí sect until A.D. 1817), 148
Khalkhál, 51
Ibn Khallikán (biographer, xiii), 446
Khamsa ("Quintet" of Niẓámí and Fayḍí), 229, 244
Khanikoff, 35 n.
Khánish Khánum (daughter of Sháh Isma'íl I), 81 n.
"Khán-i-Válida Persian," 487
Khán-Khánán (Bayram Khán and his son 'Abdu'r-Raḥím, xvi), 166, 245
Khán Malik-i-Ḥusayní-i-Sásání, 346, 348
Kháqán (title of Emperor of the Turks), 14 and note, 52; — (pen-name of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh), 146, 298
Kháqání (poet, xii), 52, 246, 299
Kharábát (anthology compiled by Ḍiyá Páshá, xix), 164 and note, 173, 242, 248, 270
Khárak (island in Persian Gulf), 154
Khárijí (pl. Khawárij), 392
Kharjird (in Khurásán), 227
Khaṭá'í (pen-name of Sháh Isma'íl I), 13
Khaṭar, Muḥammad 'Alí, son of the poet Yaghmá, 338
Khaṭṭ u Khaṭṭáṭán ("Calligraphy and Calligraphists," by Mírzá Ḥabíb of Iṣfahán), 450, 457
Khawáriqu'l-'Ádát (thaumaturgy), 40 n.
Khaybar, 392
Abu'l-Khayr Khán (descendant of Chingíz Khán), 64 n.
Khayrátun Ḥisánun (biographies of eminent women), 456
Khayyám, 'Umár — (astronomer and poet), 425
Khiḍr, 270
Khiva (Khíwaq), 136, 347. See also *Khwárazm*

Khudá-dfarín ("Creator of Gods"), 151
Khudá-banda (Uljáytú, Mongol, xiv), 18; Sháh Muḥammad — (Ṣafawí, A.D. 1577–1587), 98, 100–103; — (son of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 111
Khudá-verdí (barber), 101, 103
Khudáwand-náma (of Ṣabá, d. A.D. 1822), 309
Khulásatu'l-*Ḥisáb* (by Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, d. A.D. 1622), 428; — *-Ifiqáh* (of Yaghmá), 339
Khuld-i-Barín (poem by Waḥshí, d. A.D. 1583), 238; — (history, A.D. 1660), 100, 445
Khúnkár (title of Ottoman Sulṭáns), 90 n.
Khurásán, 25, 55, 63, 64, 65, 66, 78 n., 82, 95, 99, 101, 104, 105, 133, 138, 140, 151, 167, 227, 229, 230, 233, 234, 328, 399, 451, 455
Khurram (Russian wife of Sulṭán Sulaymán I), 89
Khurram-ábád (Luristán), 104, 279
Khurshíd Press (Ṭihrán), 466
Khusraw Parwíz (Sásánian king), 221; Amír — of Dihlí (poet, xiii), 164, 167, 242 n.; — Khán (*circá* A.D. 1713), 124; — Mírzá (son of 'Abbás Mírzá, A.D. 1829), 313, 314 and note
Khusraw wa Shírín (poem by Niẓámí), 248; — (poem by Sayyid Muḥammad Ṣádiq), 283
Khutan, 321
Khúy, 76, 130, 489
Khúzistán, 82
Khwája Mawláná-yi-Iṣfahání (poet, d. A.D. 1521), 78–80
Khwándamír (historian, xvi), 445, 447
Khwánsár, 251, 252
Khwár, 55
Khwárazm, 78 n., 347. See also *Khiva*
Khwárazmsháhs, 3
King, Sir Lucas White —, 64 n.
King's College, Cambridge, 229 n., 490
Kirámí Sect, 384
Kirmán, 55, 64, 76, 82, 104, 118, 126, 128 n., 131, 133, 137, 148, 149, 151, 157, 184, 186, 238, 280, 328, 413, 446, 451, 466, 489
Kirmánsháh, 131, 134, 151, 184, 186, 279, 347, 410, 463, 489
Kitáb *al-Aghání*, 485; — *Akmad* (by Yaghmá), 339; — *Aqdas* ("the Most Holy Book" of the Bahá'ís), 423; — *-Fakhrí*, 444; — *-Hayawán* (of -Jáḥiẓ), 440; — *Hidáya* (of -Maybudí), 57 n., 430; — *-Ma'áthir wa'l-Athár*, 456; — *-Milal* (of -Shahristání), 15 n., 16–17; — *-Shi'r* (of Ibn Qutayba), 485; — *-Sufra*, 182–6; — *Sukúku'd-Dalá'il* (of Yaghmá), 339; — *-Wáridátu'l-Qalbiyya* (by Mullá Ṣadra), 430
Knolles, Richard —, 70, 72, 90 n.
Korah, 209 n. See *Qárún*
Krusinski, 4, 10, 21 n., 111, 112, 114 n., 115, 116, 119, 129
Kúfa, 174, 176, 190, 191, 192, 193, 200, 210
Kufwí (poet, xvi), 168
-Kulayní, Muḥammad b. Ya'qúb (d. A.D. 941), 358, 404 n., 405, 448
Kulthúm, 179, 181; Umm —, 392
Kurdish poem, 484
Kurdistán, Kurds, 27, 46, 58, 76, 125, 151, 279, 347
Kútáhiya, 89
Kutub-*Arba'a* ("the Four Books"), 359; — *-Khijál*, 355, 405

Láhiján, 21, 50, 277
Lahore, 136, 266, 267, 281 n., 440
Lámi'í (poet), 299
Lane-Poole, Stanley —, 169 n.
Langlès, 115
Lár, 149, 279, 283
Latakia, 76
Latin, 10, 359, 425 n.; — races, 488
Law, Muhammadan —, 377–8
Lawḥ-i-Maḥfúẓ ("Preserved Tablet"), 388. See also *Alwáḥ*
Lawḥí (poet), 194
Laylá wa Majnún, 206, 216, 229, 283
Laylatu'l-Qadr ("Night of Worth," on which the *Qur'án* was revealed), 388
Lazgís, 125, 137
-Lazzá (the fifth of the Seven Hells), 400–1
Leclerc, Dr L. —, 440 n.
Lee, Samuel —, 421
Leroux, E. —, 9 n.
Lion in the Ḥusayn-legend, 189; — killed by Sháh Isma'íl, 62
Lippert, Prof. Julius —, 447 n.

Lisání (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 1533), 235–6
Lisánu'l-Mulk (historian, xix), 326, 413, 445. See also *Sipihr*
London, 450, 469
Louis Philippe, 325
Lucknow (Lakhnáw), 281
Lú'lú'atu'l-Baḥrayn, 356, 360, 406n., 408, 449
Lunatic at Large (by J. Storer Clouston), 322 n.
Luqmániyya College (Tabríz), 347
Lur, Lurístán, 59, 76, 104, 279, 443
Luṭf 'Alí Beg (poetically surnamed *Ádhar*, author of the *Átash-kada*, *q.v.*), 277, 282–4, 309; — Khán (Persian General, A.D. 1720), 125, 129; — Khán-i-Zand (A.D. 1789–1794), 121, 142–4

Ma'álimu'l-'Ulamá (by Muḥammad b. 'Alí b. Shahr-áshúb, d. A.D. 1192), 356
Ma'áthir-i-Sulṭániyya (History of the Qájár dynasty to A.D. 1826), 144 n.
Macaulay, Lord —, 186
Macdonald, Professor Duncan Black —, 40, 442
Macedonia, 72
McNeill, Sir John — (British Minister in Persia, A.D. 1838–1841), 147
McTaggart, Dr J. E. —, 431
-Madína, 24, 174, 175, 391, 392
Madras, 462 n.
Mafátíḥu'sh-Sharáyi' (by Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, d. A.D. 1680), 432
Magians (*Majús*), 179, 181, 292, 293, 297, 401. See also *Gabr*, *Zoroastrian*
Magic, Lawful — (*Siḥr-i-Ḥalál*), poetry so called, 196
Mahallát of Qum, 148
Mahd-i-'Ulyá ("the Supreme Cradle," title of the Queen-mother in Persia), 151, 332
Mahdí, the Imám — (Twelfth Imám, *-Qá'im*), 150, 151, 197, 394; — Khán of Astarábád (author of the *Durra-i-Nádirí*), 445; Ḥájji — (father of Ḥájji Mullá Ḥádí of Sabzawár), 436
Maḥmud of Ghazna, Sulṭán — (x–xi), 228; — III of Gujerát (d. A.D. 1553), 168–9; Mír — Afghán (murdered in A.D. 1725), 116, 118, 125–131; — Áqá *Cháwúsh-báshí* (envoy of Sulṭán Báyazíd II, A.D. 1502), 68; Sulṭán — Mírzá (Ṣafawí prince, murdered in A.D. 1577), 99; — -i-Shabistarí (author of the *Gulshan-i-Ráz*, d. A.D. 1320), 37, 220; — Qárí of Yazd (author of the *Díwán-i-Albisa*, d. A.D. 1585), 241; Mírzá — (physician, poetically surnamed *Ḥakím*, son of Wiṣál, d. A.D. 1851), 300, 319
Maḥmúd u Ayáz (poem by Zulálí, d. A.D. 1614), 252
Majálisu'l-Mú'minín (by Sayyid Núru'lláh Mar'ashí of Shúshtar, put to death in A.D. 1610), 54 n., 230, 234, 235, 236, 249, 356, 358, 447
Májid, Sayyid — of Baḥrayn (xvii), 433–4
Majlis (newspaper), 346–7
Majlisí family, 28, 120, 253, 416. See under *Muḥammad Báqir* and *Muḥammad Taqí*
Majma'u'l-Bayán (by Shaykh Ṭabarsí), 409
Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá (by Riḍá-qulí Khán, xix), 25, 147 n., 172, 225, 228 n., 230, 232, 234 n., 235 n., 238, 241, 243–4, 245 n., 251, 265, 298–9, 300 n., 304, 305, 309, 315 n., 319, 323, 325 n., 326 n., 328, 337, 344, 408, 411, 428, 432
Majnún, 206, 216. See also under *Laylà*
Majús, 179, 181. See above under *Magians*
Makhzanu'l-Asrár (of Niẓámí of Ganja, xii), 248
Mákú, 151
Maláyir, 463
Malcolm, Sir John —, 4, 7, 8, 46 n., 77, 85, 91, 100 n., 101, 111, 116, 134, 137 n., 138 n., 139, 141 n., 144, 145 n., 146, 372, 373, 420 n.; Rev. Napier —, 195
Maliḥa (poisons the Twelfth Imám), 399
Málik b. Anas (d. A.D. 795), 353; Ibn — (Arab grammarian), 363–364
Malik (poet of Qum, xvii), 110, 253, 259, 267; — *u't-Tujjár* (Ḥájji Muḥammad Kázim, xix–xx), 478, 481, 482
Malkom Khán *Názimu'd-Dawla*, Prince — (xix), 463, 468

Mameluke (*Mamlúk*) dynasty, 14 n.
Ma'mún ('Abbásid Caliph, ix), 394, 438
Ma'n b. Zá'ida, 207, 217
Manáqibu'l-'Árifín (by Aflákí, A.D. 1318), 35, 40
"Manifestation" of the Báb (*Zuhúr*, May 23, 1844), 150
Man lá Yahḍuruhu'l-Faqíh (by Ibn Bábawayhi, d. A.D. 991), 359, 405
Mann, Oskar —, 137 n., 445 n.
Manṣúr ('Abbásid Caliph, viii), 394, 438; — Beg Parnák (xv), 49
Manṣúriyya College (Shíráz), 360–1, 363, 364
Maqámát (of -Ḥaríri), 412; — (of Adíbu'l-Mamálik), 349
Maráǵha, 44, 131, 467
Marand, 76
Mar'ash, 69; — ſ Sayyids, 102
Márdín, 414–415
Mariage forcé, le — (Molière), 462
Máriqín ("Rebels," i.e. the Khárijites), 392
Máriya, Plain of — (Karbalá so called), 178, 180
Marjána (mother of Ibn Ziyád), 178, 180
Markaz-i-Adwár (by Faydí), 244
Markham, Sir Clements —, 4
Marta (daughter of Úzún Ḥasan, xv), 47
Martin, Dr R. F. —, 63 n.
Martyn, Henry — (missionary), 421–2
Martyrdom, Passion for —, 195–8
Marwán (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 683–5), 23, 343
Mary (Maryam) the Copt (wife of the Prophet), 391
Mashá'ir (of Mullá Ṣadrá), 408 n., 430
Mashhad, 30, 65, 94, 98, 105, 109, 133, 137, 138, 157, 223, 230, 251, 279, 284, 345, 346, 347, 367, 371, 394, 428, 429, 436, 455, 456, 469, 489
Mashhad 'Alí, 30
Mashshá'ún ("Peripatetics," Aristotelians), 431
Masíḥ, Mírzá — (*Mujtahid*, A.D. 1829), 315
Masíḥí (Turkish poet), 237
Mas'úd-i-Sa'd-i-Salmán (poet, d. A.D. 1131), 299; Mawláná — (*circá* A.D. 1500 ruled in Káshán), 55
Ma'ṣúm, Mír — (poet, xvii), 259, 268; — Kamáncha'í (musician at the Court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110; — (darwísh and mystic, xviii), 420
Maṭá'inu's-Ṣúfiyya (by Muḥammad Rafí', A.D. 1806), 420
Materials for the Study of the Bábí Religion (by E. G. Browne), 150, 154 n., 197 n., 198, 422 n.
Mathnawí (of Jalálu'd-Dín Rúmí, xiii), 35 n., 411, 457
Maṭla'u'sh-Shams (by Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, xix), 84 n., 455
Mawṣil (Mosul), 137
Mawṣillú (tribe), 14
Mawzún (poet), 194
Maybudí, Mír Ḥusayn — (xvi), 57
Maydán-i-Sháh (Iṣfahán), 368
Maykhána (poem by Zulálí, xvi–xvii), 252
Mázandarán, 65, 102, 109, 130, 132, 140, 141, 151, 153, 197, 251, 258, 284, 355, 476, 481
Mazdak (heresiarch and communist, vi), 382 n., 452, 464, 466, 487
Maẓhar (poet of Cashmere at Court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Mecca, 24, 45, 123, 124, 149, 177 n., 192 n., 252, 258, 279, 284, 374 n., 386, 391, 399, 427. See also *Holy Cities*
Médecin malgré lui, Le — (Molière), 459, 462
Media, 465
Medina. See *-Madína*
Mejd ed-Dín (Majdu'd-Dín, historian), 46 n.
Mélanges Asiatiques, 30, 35 n.
Merchants, European — in Persia, 107
Merv (*Marw*), 82, 109
Mesopotamia, 24, 27, 427. See also *'Iráq*
Metempsychosis (*Tanásukhu'l-Arwáḥ*), 382
Methuen, Messrs —, 468
Miftáḥu'l-Faláḥ (by Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, xvi–xvii), 428
Miftáḥu'l-Labíb (by Sayyid Ni'matu'lláh-Jazá'irí), 364
Mihínbánú Sulṭánum (daughter of Sháh Isma'íl, xvi), 81 n.
Mijmar (poet of Ardistán, d. 1810), 225, 307–8
Mikhlát (of Shaykh-i-Bahá'í), 407, 428

Abú Mikhnaf Lút b. Yaḥyà, 188
Mimát u Ḥayát ("Death and Life," newspaper), 489
Minhájú'ṭ-Ṭálibín (Refutation of the Bábís), 423
Minorsky, V. —, 35 n., 36 n., 153 n., 375 n.
Minúchihrí (poet, xi), 265, 299
Miqbásu'l-Maṣábíḥ (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí), 417
Mi'ráj (Ascension of the Prophet), 390
Miracle Plays, 28–9. See also *Muḥarram, Ta'ziya*
Miracles of the Prophet, 40 n., 389–390
Mirátu'l-Buldán (by Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, xix), 454–5
Mirátu'l-Mamálik (by Sídí 'Alí Ra'ís, xvi), 10 n.
Mírkhwánd (historian, xv), 5, 83, 250, 304, 413. See also *Rawḍatu's-Safá*
Mírzá Buzurg (Mírzá 'Ísá of Faráhán, the elder *Qá'im-maqám*, d. A.D. 1831), 311; — of Núr, 316
Mírzá Kúchak, 317. See *Wiṣál*
Misanthrope, Le — (Molière), 459
Miser, The — (*Mard-i-Khasís*, a Persian comedy), 462
Mishkátu'l-Anwár (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí), 409
Miskín, Mírzá 'Abbás of Bisṭám (poet, d. A.D. 1858), 328, 336. See also *Furúghí*
Missionaries in Persia, 107, 195, 421–2
Mithradates, 465
Miṭláq ("the great Divorcer"), the Imám Ḥasan so named, 393
Mittwoch, Professor E. —, 484
Mochyn du ("the Black Pig," Welsh song), 223
Moghul Emperors of India (A.D. 1525–1857), 25, 28, 92, 123, 164. See also *Akbar, Bábur, Humáyún, Jahángír* and *Sháh Jahán*
Molière, 458–462
Mongols, 3, 14 n., 37, 41, 122, 127, 128, 147, 299, 322, 348, 405, 412, 439
Moon, Cleaving of the — (*Shaqqu'l-qamar*), 389
Moore, Thomas —, 80 n.
Morier's *Hajji Baba*, 195, 468
Moscow, 6
Moses (*Músá*), 207, 254 n., 292, 297 n., 388
Mosul, 137. See *Mawṣil*
Mu'ammá'í, Amír Ḥusayn — (d. A.D. 1498), 83; Mír Ḥaydar — (poet at Court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110
Mu'áwiya (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 661–680), 16 n., 46, 175 n., 392
Mubárak, Shaykh — (father of the poet Faydí, xvi), 245
Muddatu'l-'Umr (by Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, xviii), 278
-Mufíd, -Shaykh — (Muḥammad b. Muḥammad...-Ḥárithí, d. A.D. 1022), 405, 449
Muḥammad (the Prophet), 16, 17, 80, 173, 174, 176, 235, 314 n., 381, 387–392, 451; — b. 'Alí called Ibnu'l-Ḥanafiyya, 17, 391; — b. Ḥusayn b. 'Alí (brother of the Fourth Imám 'Alí Zaynu'l-'Ábidín), 393; — b. 'Alí Zaynu'l-'Ábidín, see Muḥammad Báqir; — b. 'Alí-Riḍá, see Muḥammad Taqí. Amongst the ancestors of the Ṣafawís and descendants of the Imám Músà-Káẓim mention is made (in the footnote on pp. 32–3) of six persons named Muḥammad, viz. Nos. 6, 9, 11, 13, 16, 18, and one, No. 20, named Abú Muḥammad; and, on p. 37, of a son of Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl and brother of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín likewise so named. — (Kings and Princes named Muḥammad):— Mírzá or Beg of the "White Sheep" dynasty, early sixteenth century, probably identical, 58 n., 74; — Khudá-banda (Ṣafawí, A.D. 1578–1587), 98, 100–103; — III (Ottoman Sultán, A.D. 1595–1603), 106; — Sháh (Moghul Emperor of Dihlí, A.D. 1739), 136; Sayyid — (grandson of Sháh Sulaymán II the Ṣafawí, xviii), 138; Áqá — Khán Qájár (assassinated in A.D. 1797), 139–145, 158, 298, 487; — Sháh Qájár (A.D. 1834–1848), 149, 151, 311, 329, 381; Sulṭán — Sháh, contemporary pontiff of the Isma'íliyya, commonly known as the Áqá Khán, *q.v.*, 149 n. (Muḥammad ibn —) — b. 'Abdu'l-Wahháb-Qazwíní (Mírzá Muḥammad Khán, contemporary scholar),

86, 372, 484, 490; — b. 'Alí b. Músá, 358, see Ibn Bábawayhi; — b. 'Alí b. Shahr-áshúb (d. A.D. 1192), 355–6; — b. Ḥasan b. 'Alí...-Ḥurr-'Ámilí (d. A.D. 1686), 356, 359, 449; — b. Ḥasan b. 'Alí-Túsí, 355, 358, see -Túsí; — b. Makkí-'Ámilí (put to death in A.D. 1384), 406, see Shahíd-i-Awwal; — b. — b. Nu'mán -Ḥárithí, 405, see Shaykh-Mufíd; — b. -Murtaḍá, 359, see Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ; — b. Ṣádiq b. Mahdí, 357, see under *Nujúmu's-Samá* ("Stars of Heaven"), of which he was the author; — Sulaymán-Tanukábuní, author of the *Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá*, *q.v.*, 354–5 and 449; — b. 'Abí Tálib of Gilán, 277, see under 'Alí Ḥazín *supra*; — b. Ya'qúb, 358, see -Kulayní. — (Muḥammad Beg) — (envoy of Sulṭán Salím I, A.D. 1514), 73; — Ḥájji — (uncle of Luṭf-'Alí Beg, xviii), 283. — (Muḥammad Khán) — Ustájlú (A.D. 1509), 414–415; Khán — (killed at Cháldirán, A.D. 1514), 76; — Qájár (assassin of Nádir Sháh, A.D. 1747), 137 n.; Mírzá — Qazwíní (contemporary scholar), 261, 372, 484, 490. — (Muḥammads distinguished only by profession, native place, or pen-name.) Qáḍí — -i-Káshí (*circá* A.D. 1500), 55, 59; Ra'ís — Karra (*circá* A.D. 1500), 55–6; Sayyid — Kamúna-i-Najafí (killed at Cháldirán, A.D. 1514), 76; four Muḥammads are mentioned on p. 110 amongst the musicians and rhapsodists of the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, a harper (*Changí*), a drummer (*Tanbúra'í*), a violinist (*Kamáncha'í*), and a *Shahnáma-khwán*, surnamed Khursand; Áqá — 'Áshiq, poet of Iṣfahán (d. A.D. 1767), 283, 325; Sayyid — Shu'la (xviii), poet of Iṣfahán, 282; Sayyid — Saḥáb, poet of Iṣfahán (d. A.D. 1807), 305–6; — -qulí Afshár Ulfat, poet (d. 1824), 311; — *Akhbárí* of Baḥrayn (*circá* A.D. 1825), 374–6; Mullá — Mámaqání (*circá* A.D. 1850), 422; Sayyid — (father of Mír Dámád, xvi), 428

Muḥammad 'Abduh, Shaykh — (Grand Muftí of Egypt and Chancellor of the University of al-Azhar, died A.D. 1905), 377, 416

Muḥammad 'Alí Sháh Qájár (succeeded to the throne of Persia in A.D. 1907: deposed in A.D. 1909), 158; — son of Karím Khán-i-Zand (*circá* A.D. 1781), 142; — Mírzá (buys a mansion in Paradise), 370, 411; Mullá — "*Súfí-kush*" (*circá* A.D. 1750), 368; Áqá — Bihbihání (another great antagonist of the Súfís), 420; Mírzá — (son of Bahá'u'lláh, contemporary), 218 n. 1; Mírzá — (author of *Nujúmu's-Samá*, *q.v.*, *circá* A.D. 1870), 449; Mírzá — Láhijí, see Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín; — Beg son of Abdál Beg (xviii), 283; —, poet of Yazd (xix), 325, see Jayḥún; — Khaṭar, son of the poet Yaghmá, 338; — Gulshan (father of the poet Qá'ání), 328; Mírzá —, see Ṣá'ib; — Subúḥ, *q.v.*, of Iṣfahán, 282; — Surúsh, *q.v.*, of Si-dih (d A.D. 1868), 325

Muḥammad Amín b. Muḥammad Sharíf of Astarábád (d. A.D. 1623), founder of the Akhbárí school (*q.v.*), 374

Muḥammad Báqir, the fifth Imám (vii–viii), 393–4; Mír—-i-Dámád, *q.v.*; Mullá — b. Muḥammad Taqí-i-Majlisí (d. A.D. 1700), 120, 194, 358, 359, 366, 379, 381, 403–4, 409–410, 416–418, 432; Ḥájji Sayyid — b. Muḥammad Taqí, entitled *Ḥujjatu'l-Islám* (d. A.D. 1844), 368, 378, 410; Mullá — b. Ḥájji Zaynu'l-'Ábidín of Khwánsár (author of the Rawḍátu'l-Jannát, composed in A.D. 1870, *q.v.*), 356–7, 448; — Mírzá (Ṣafawí prince, murdered at the age of two in A.D. 1577), 99

Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán Qájár (killed in A.D. 1757), 139–141; — called Zargar (poet of Iṣfahán, d. A.D. 1853), 325; — Khán *I'timádu's-Salṭana* (d. A.D. 1896), 84 n., 453–6

Muḥammad Ḥusayn Mírzá (nephew of Sháh Isma'íl II, murdered by his uncle in A.D. 1577), 99; — of Tabríz, calligraphist (xvii), 100; — Ghálib (poet, xviii), 283; — Hidáyat (contemporary), 357
Muḥammad Iqbál, Shaykh — (author of *Development of Metaphysics in Persia* and *Asrár-i-Khúdí*, *q.v.*, contemporary thinker), 430, 431, 436; — Professor —, Ph.D. (contemporary scholar), 56 n.
Muḥammad Karím Khán of Kirmán, Ḥájji — (head of the later Shaykhís and rival of the Báb, xix), 421
Muḥammad Kázim of Khurásán, Mullá — (patriotic *mujtahid*, d. Dec. 12, 1911), 371
Muḥammad Mahdí, Sayyid — of Burújird, entitled *Baḥru'l-'Ulúm* ("the Ocean of Learning") (d. *circá* A.D. 1824), 379, 410
Muḥammad Muḥsin Mírzá (son of Sulṭán Ḥusayn Mírzá the Timúrid, A.D. 1504), 56
Muḥammad Mú'min (musician at the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110; —, poetically surnamed Dá'í (d. A.D. 1742), 282; — -Ḥusayní (author of the *Tuḥfatu'l-Mú'minín*, *q.v.*, A.D. 1669), 439
Muḥammad Rafí' b. Muḥammad Shafí' of Tabríz (author of the *Maṭá'inu'ṣ-Ṣúfiyya*, A.D. 1806), 420
Muḥammad Raḥím (court-physician to Sulṭán Ḥusayn, *circá* A.D. 1700), 283
Muḥammad Ṣádiq (poet of Tafrísh, xviii), 282, 283; — Qá'im-maqámí, better known as Adíbu'l-Mamálik, *q.v.* (d. Feb. 21, 1917), 346–9, 484; — Ṭabáṭabá'í (editor of the newspaper *Majlis* in A.D. 1906), 347
Muḥammad Ṣáliḥ (cruelly put to death about A.D. 1574), 97; — Khán (one of the assassins of Wádir Sháh in A.D. 1747), 137 n.
Muḥammad Shafí', Professor — (contemporary scholar), 281 n.
Muḥammad Ṭáhir Waḥíd (poet, d. A.D. 1708), 258, 264–5
Muḥammad Taqí, the ninth Imám (ix), 46, 394; Mullá — -i-Majlisí (d. A.D. 1660), 253, 403–4, 409, 417; — of Káshán, state-historian and poet, entitled Lisánu'l-Mulk and Sipihr (xix), 326, 344, 445; Mullá — of Qazwín (assassinated by Bábís about A.D. 1847, and hence entitled Shahíd-i-Thálith, "the Third Martyr," *q.v.*), 411, 421; — Khán, called Ḥakím (author of the *Ganj-i-Dánish*, A.D. 1887), 456; — of Hamadán (author of the *Iḥqáqu'l-Ḥaqq*, A.D. 1908), 423
"Muḥammads," "the Three —" (*i.e.* -Kulayní, Ibn Bábawayhi and -Ṭúsí *q.v.*), all before A.D. 1067; and, in a later age (between A.D. 1600 and 1700), Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, and the author of the *Amalu'l-Ámil*, *q.v.*, 358–9, 366 n., 405
Muḥaqqiq-*i-Awwal* ("the First Verifier," xiii), 378, 405–6; — -*i-Thání* ("the Second Verifier," xvii), 28, 379, 406, 409; — -*i-Ṭúsí* (Naṣíru'd-Dín-i-Ṭúsí, d. A.D. 1274), 405; — -i-Ardabílí (xvii), 370
Muḥarram (month of mourning), 28–31, 162, 194. See *Rawḍa-khwán*, *Ta'ziya*
Muḥassin (son of 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib, vii), 392
Muḥsin, Mír Sulṭán — (d. *circá* A.D. 1508), 59; Mullá — -i-Fayḍ (philosopher and poet, d. A.D. 1680), 250, 359, 377, 407–8, 411, 426–7, 432–6
Muḥtasham (poet of Káshán, d. A.D. 1587), 28, 110, 162, 172, 173–7, 178, 193, 241
Muḥyi'd-Dín ibnu'l-'Arabí, Shaykh — (d. A.D. 1240), 37, 432, 434, 449; — of Barda'a, Qáḍí — (xiv), 45
Mu'izzí, Amír — (poet, d. A.D. 1148), 168, 299
Mu'izz-i-Káshí, Mír — (calligraphist, xvii), 110
Mu'izzu'd-Dawla (Buwayhid, x), 30–1
Mu'jamu'l-Buldán (of Yáqút, xiii), 397 n., 454
Mu'jizát (Miracles, *q.v.*), 40 n.
Mujtabà (title of the Imám Ḥasan), 393

Mujtahids, 353–4, 367–380
Mujtahidu'sh-Shu'ará, 307. See *Mijmar*
Mukhliṣ (poet), 194
Mukhtárí (poet, xii), 299
Ibn Muljam (the murderer of 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib), 392
Mullás, 353–4. See *Mujtahids* above
Mumítu'd-Dín ("the Slayer of Religion"), Shaykh Muḥyi'd-Dín so called, 434
Munajjim-báshí ("Chief Astrologer," author of a history entitled *Ṣaḥá'ifu'l-Akhbár*, *q.v.*), 106 n.
Munázara-i-Shab u Rúz ("Dispute of Night and Day," title of an article in the *Á'ína* newspaper), 487
Munkir and Nakír (the Angels who conduct the "Questioning of the Tomb"), 370, 396
Munsha'át-i-Rashídí (xiii–xiv), 33–4
Munshá'átu's-Saláṭín (Turkish State Papers collected and arranged about A.D. 1583 by Firídún Bey, *q.v.*), 8 n., 66 n.
Muntakhabu't-Tawárikh (by 'Abdu'l-Qádir-i-Badá'úní), 165 n., 242 n., 243 n., 245 n., 249
Muntaẓam-i-Náṣirí (by Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán *I'timádu's-Salṭana*, A.D. 1881–3), 455
Munyatu'l-Fúḍalá (title ascribed to the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*), 444
Múqán, Plain of —, 144 n.
Muqbil (poet), 194
Murád Beg Báyandarí (ruler of Yazd, *circá* A.D. 1500), 55; Sulṭán — Áq-qoyúnlú (ruler of 'Iráq, *circá* A.D. 1500), 55, 58, 69, 76, 82; Sulṭán — III (A.D. 1574–1595), 92; Sulṭán — IV (A.D. 1623–1640), 107
Múrchakhúr (near Iṣfahán), 133, 142
Murída (disciple), 20
Murshid (spiritual director), 19–20
Murshid-qulí Khán Ustájlú (tutor of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, A.D. 1586), 101, 104
Murtaḍá (title of 'Alí b. Abí Ṭálib, *q.v.*); Sayyid —, entitled 'Alamu'l-Hudá, *q.v.*
Músá (the Prophet *Moses*, *q.v.*); — Káẓim (the seventh Imám, viii), 19, 33 n., 36, 87 n., 391, 394, 405; — Beg Afshár (one of the murderers of Nádir Sháh, A.D. 1747), 137 n.; — of Bisṭám, father of the poet Furúghí (xviii–xix), 336; Shaykh — of Hamadán (author of *'Ishq u Salṭana*, "Love and Lordship," A.D. 1910), 464
Musammaṭ (a kind of poem), 163 and note
Musáwát (newspaper), 469
Muscat, 280
Músh u Gurba ("the Mouse and the Cat," a poem by 'Ubayd-i-Zákání, xiv), 490
Musha'shi' Sayyids of Huwayza (chastised by Sháh Isma'íl I in A.D. 1508), 58
Mushtáq (poet of Iṣfahán, xvii), 283, 284
Mushtáq 'Alí (Ṣúfí killed by fanatics about A.D. 1796), 420
Music, Persian —, 222–3
Muslim b. 'Aqíl, martyrdom of — (vii), 190–3
Abú Muslim ('Abbásid propagandist, viii), 23
Mustafá (title of the Prophet Muḥammad, *q.v.*), 178, 180; — Mírzá (son of Sháh Ṭahmásp, murdered by his brother Sháh Isma'íl II in A.D. 1577), 98
-Mustanṣir bi'lláh (Fátimid Caliph, A.D. 1035–1094), 54 n., 98
-Musta'ṣim (the last 'Abbásid Caliph, A.D. 1242–1258), 41 n.
Muṭahhar-Hillí, 356
Mutakallimún (Schoolmen), 376, 402, 426
Mu'tamanu's-Sulṭán (earlier title of Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, *q.v.*), 454
Mu'tamadu'd-Dawla (title conferred on the poet Nashát by Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh), 311
-Mu'tamid ('Abbásid Caliph, A.D. 870–892), 394
-Mutanabbí (Arab poet, d. A.D. 965), 357
-Mu'taṣim ('Abbásid Caliph, A.D. 833–842), 394
Mutawalli (pl. *Matáwila*, Shí'a so called in Syria), 16
Mu'tazila (sect), 17, 384, 424
-Mu'tazz ('Abbásid Caliph, A.D. 866–9), 394
Muṭí' (poet, xvii), 267
Mutiny, Indian —, 154
Muẓaffar Sulṭán (governor of Rasht,

barbarously put to death about A.D. 1574), 96; — 'Alí (artist at court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), and Ḥafiẓ — of Qum (musician at the same, about A.D. 1600), 110; — u'd-Dín Sháh Qájár (A.D. 1896–1907), 157–8
Mysteries of Sound and Number (by Shaykh Ḥabíb Aḥmad), 442

Nabíl (numerically equivalent to Muḥammad), of Zarand, Bahá'í poet (d. A.D. 1892), 151 n., 187 n.
Nádir-qulí, 116, 132, afterwards Nádir Sháh (A.D. 1736–1747), 11, 52 n., 113, 116, 121, 122, 128, 132–8, 139, 141, 144 n., 158, 280, 281, 283, 284, 420
Nafaḥátu'l-Uns (by Jámí, xv), 40 n., 42 n.
Nafsiyya (prose work by 'Urfí on Súfíism, xvi), 248
Na'ím (Bahá'í poet, xix), 163 n., 198–220
Najaf, 58, 59, 76, 251, 370, 372, 376
-Najáshí, Aḥmad b. 'Alí — (author of the *Asmá'u'r-Rijál*, d. A.D. 1063), 355, 358, 405
Najíbu'd-Dín Buzghúsh. See below under *Najmu'd-Dín*
-Najjár (heretical views of —), 384
Najmu'd-Dín Kubrà (xiii), 37; — Buzghúsh (d. A.D. 1279), 37, 42 and note; — Mas'úd of Rasht (called Najm-i-awwal, "the First Star," d. A.D. 1510), 59, 74 n.; he was succeeded by Najm-i-thání, "the Second Star," Amír Yár Aḥmad-i-Khúzání (killed in A.D. 1512), 59, 66, 74, 83, 231; — Ja'far b. Yaḥyà, entitled Muḥaqqiq-i-awwal, *q.v.* (d. A.D. 1325), 378, 405–6
Nakhjuwán, 76, 93, 104, 109, 130
Nákithín ("troth-breakers," 'Á'isha, Ṭalḥa and Zubayr), 392
Nallino, Professor —, 13 n.
Nal u Daman (poem by Faydí, xvi), 244
Náma-i-Dánishwarán (xix), 446
Namakdán (by Jayḥún of Yazd), 326; — *-i-Ḥaqíqat* (by Shifá'í, d. A.D. 1627), 256
Námí (poet, xvi), 231
Nán u Ḥalwá ("Bread and Sweetmeats," by Shaykh-i-Bahá'í, xvii), 253, 407, 428
Napoleon, 128, 199, 209, 325
Náqiḍín ("Covenant-breakers," a name applied by the followers of 'Abbás Efendi 'Abdu'l-Bahá to the partisans of his half-brother Muḥammad 'Alí), 220
Narjís Khátún (mother of the Imám Mahdi, A.D. 869), 394
Nasab-náma-i-Silsila-i-Ṣafawiyya (or *Silsilatu'n-Nasab*, *q.v.*, xvii), 4, 5, 13 n., 35 and note, 36, 40
Nashát (poet of Iṣfahán, d. A.D. 1828), 225, 307, 311
Násikhu't-Tawáríkh (general history by Lisánu'l-Mulk, *q.v.*, xix), 145 n., 148, 326, 413, 445
Nasím (poet), 194; — *-i-Shimál* (newspaper), 345, 469
Nasimatu's-Saḥar fí-man tashayya'a wa sha'ar (biography of Shí'a poets who wrote in Arabic), 358
Náṣir-i-Khusraw (poet, philosopher and propagandist, xi), 177, 257, 299, 357, 412, 478, 482, 490; — 'Alí (poet, xvii), 269; — u'd-Dín Sháh Qájár (A.D. 1848–1896), 151–8, 161, 224, 298, 319, 329, 336, 344, 370, 441, 450, 454–6, 468; — u'd-Dín (of the Dhu'l-Qadar dynasty, xv–xvi), 77 n.
Naṣíru'd-Dín-i-Ṭúsí (called Muḥaqqiq-i-Ṭúsí, d. A.D. 1274), 405
Naṣír b. 'Abdu'lláh, Mírzá — (poet, d. A.D. 1778), 283
Naṣru'd-Dín Efendi, Khoja (Khwája), Turkish wit, 416
Naṣru'lláh Zaytúní, Qádí — (*circa* A.D. 1500), 54; — (Zoroastrian general of Afgháns, A.D. 1722), 126, 130
Abú Naṣr Fatḥu'lláh Khán Shaybání (poet of Káshán, xix), 326, 344
Nassau Lees, 40 n.
Nationalism, ancient and modern, 12–14
Nawá'í, Mír 'Alí Shír — (xv), 83, 163, 227
Naw Bahár (newspaper), 345, 469
Naw'í (poet, xvii), 168, 267
Nawrúz (Persian New Year's Day), 135, 333–4
Nawwáb Mírzá Ḥasan 'Alí Khán (xix), 301–2, 319
Nayríz, 153, 218 n.
Názimu'l-Islám of Kirmán (xx), 413, 446

Naṣírí (poet, xvii), 167, 250, 252, 268
Náẓir u Manẓúr (poem by Waḥshí, xvi), 238
Nero, 23, 62
Neuburger, Dr Max —, 438
Neue Orient, 484 n.
Nicholson, Dr R. A. —, 431 n.
Nicolas, A.-L.-M. —, 422 n.
Niedermeyer, Captain —, 484
Nietzsche, 431 n.
Nigáristán (palace in Tihrán), 479 n.; — *-i-Dárá* (biographies of poets of Fath-'Alí Sháh's reign), 298
Niháwand, 279
Ni'matu'lláh, Sháh — of Kirmán (saint and poet, xiv–xv), 76; — *-Jazá'irí*, Sayyid — (theologian, xvii), 360–7, 376
Niráqí, Mullá Aḥmad *-i-* — (theologian and poet, d. A.D. 1828), 411
Nisá, 109
Níshápúr, 132, 133, 252, 456
Niyází (poet, xvi), 81
Niẓámí (poet of Ganja, xii), 229, 244, 248, 299
Niẓámu'l-Mulk (Minister of Alp Arslán and Maliksháh, xi), 412; — (King of the Deccan, d. A.D. 1553), 168–9
Noah (*Núḥ*), 207, 217, 388
Nöldeke, Prof. Th. —, 209 n.
Núḥa-i-Sína-zaní (a special form of poem by Yaghmá), 339–344
Nujúmu's-Samá ("Stars of Heaven," A.D. 1870), 357, 358, 359 n., 449
Nuqṭa ("Point," title assumed by the Báb), 197; — *-i-A'lá*, or — *-i-Bayán* (the same), 150
Nuqṭatu'l-Káf (contemporary history of the Báb by his admirer and disciple Ḥájji Mírzá Jání of Káshán, killed in A.D. 1852), 218 n., 446
Nuqṭawiyya sect, 8
Núr (in Mázandarán), 316
Núr 'Alí Sháh (Súfí killed by fanatics, *circâ* A.D. 1806), 420
Núr-bakhshí, Qiwámu'd-Dín — (A.D. 1520), 231
Núr-i-Iṣfahání, Qáḍí — (poet, *circâ* A.D. 1600), 110
Núru'd-Dín 'Abdu'l-Wahháb (envoy of Sháh Isma'íl I to the Turks, about A.D. 1515), 77; — (physician of Sháh Ṭahmásp, A.D. 1544), 92
Núru'lláh b. Sharíf-Mar'ashí of Shúshtar (author of the *Majálisu'l-Mú'minín*, *q.v.*, put to death by Jahángír in A.D. 1610), 356, 447
Núshírwán (Anúsharwán, Sásánian king, vi), 52, 96, 391, 464
Nuṣrat College, Hamadán, 464
Nuṣratu'd-Dín Aḥmad, Atábak of Luristán (A.D. 1324), 443
Abú Nuwás (Arab poet, ix), 357

Occultation (*Ghaybat*) of the Twelfth Imám, 150
Occult Sciences, 441–2
Oelschläger. See *Olearius*
Ogotáy Qá'án (son of Hasan 'Alí Mírzá *Shujá'u's-Saltana*, xix), 328
d'Ohsson (author of *Histoire des Mongols*), 45 n., 322
Olearius, 10, 15 n., 28, 114–115
Olives, Mount of —, 214, 218
Opium-eating, 472–3
'Osmán, Ṭopál — (Turkish general, killed in A.D. 1733), 134
'Osmánlí. See *Ottoman, Turk*
Ottoman Turks, 6, 11, 13, 24, 26, 44, 55, 57, 60, 63, 65, 66–9, 80 n., 87–8, 103–7, 135, 315, 316; — poetry, Persian influences on —, 163–5
Oude, Catalogue of the Library of the King of — by Sprenger, 165 n.
Ouseley, Sir Gore —, 227 n.
Oxus (*Ámú, Jayḥún*), 219

Pádzahr-i-ḥaywání ("animal antidote"), 59
Pahlawí, 209 n., 487
Palestine, 45, 46 n., 428
Pan-Islamism, 24, 303
Pantheism (*Waḥdatu'l-Wujúd*), 382, 383
Pan-Turanian Movement, 15
Parí-Khán Khánum, 81 n., 101, 102, 172
Paris, 323–5 (Farhang's poem on —), 444, 450, 459, 490; Treaty of —, 154
Parishán, Kitáb-i- — (by Qá'áni, A.D. 1836), 326–8, 335
Parry, 10
Párs (newspaper), 489
Pársí-nigárí (use of pure Persian by Yaghmá), 338; *cf.* 423
Parwána (earlier pen-name of the *Adibu'l-Mamálik*, *q.v.*) 347

Parwarish (newspaper, A.D. 1900), 469
Passion Plays, 29, 186–194. See *Muḥarram*, *Pelly, Sir Lewis* —, and *Ta'ziya*
Pelenk and *Felenk*, 119
Pelly, Sir Lewis —, 29, 186, 187 n., 188 n., 190 n., 193 n.
Peloponnesus, 72
Pentateuch (*Tawrát*), 204, 214, 388
"Perfection," "the Blessed —" (*Jamál-i-Mubárak*, title of Bahá'u-'lláh, *q.v.*), 214 n.
Persecution, 69, 77, 92, 94–5, 120, 147, 227. See *Bábís*, *Shí'a*, *Súfís*, *Sunnís*
Persepolis, 133
Persian belief in Divine Right of Kings, 18; — Gulf, 107, 154, 451; — language, 13; — *Revolution* (by E. G. Browne), 371
Peshawur, 136
Peter the Great, 131
Petrograd, 490
Pharaoh (*Fir'awn*, pl. *Farâ'ina*), 14, 336
Phillipe, Don — of Persia, 6
Phillott, Col. D. C. —, 468
Philosophy, 422–437
Pír (spiritual director), 19, 20; — *-záda* (family name), 42
Plato (*Aflátún*), 201, 202, 212
Platts (ed. of *Gulistán*), 269 n.
Pliny, 441
Point (*Nuqṭa*, *q.v.*), 150
Poland, 5
Polytheism (*Shirk*), 385–6
Pope, the —, 5, 7
Portugal, Portuguese, 4, 10, 92, 107
Pote Collection of MSS. (Eton and King's Colleges), 35, 229 n.
Predestination (*Jabr*), 15, 384–5. See also *Fatalism*
Press and Poetry of Modern Persia by E. G. Browne, 155 n., 162 n., 223, 302, 303 n., 340, 343, 345, 346, 371, 441, 447, 454 n., 457 n., 467 n., 468 n., 469, 478 n., 482 n.
Priests, Christian —, 4–6, 9–10. See also *Missionaries*
Printing introduced into Persia, 155, 468
Prophetic Office, 387–8
Prose, Varieties of —, 412
Psalms (*Zubúr*, *Mazámír*), 388
Psychical Research, 40
Ptolemy, 201, 212
Purchas's Pilgrims, 105
Pushtô (Afghán) language, 122

Qá'án, 14 n. See also *Khâqán*
Qá'ání (poet, d. A.D. 1853), 26, 163, 168, 177–181, 225, 227, 265, 299, 307 n., 326–335, 336, 337, 339, 344
Qábíl (Cain), 207, 217
Qábús-náma (xi), 412
Qádisiyya, Battle of — (vii), 126–7
Qahqaha, Castle of —, 89, 96, 98
Qá'im-i-Ál-i-Muḥammad (the *Twelfth Imám* or *Imám Mahdí*, *q.v.*), 150, 394, 419; — ('Abbásid Caliph, A.D. 1031–1075), 54 n.; — *maqám* (Mírzá 'Ísá of Faráhán, d. A.D. 1831, and his son Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim, put to death in A.D. 1835), 147 and note, 152, 303, 311–316, 346, 347, 484 n.
Qájárs, 10, 26, 29, 52 n., 115, 121, 122, 128, 132, 139, 140–158, 168, 224, 298, 299, 300, 375, 455, 487–8. See also under the names of the individual kings of this dynasty
Qamṣar (near Káshán), 477, 481
Qanbar-i-*Rawḍa-khwán*, Sayyid — (satirized by Yaghmá), 339
Qandahár, 55, 112, 118 n., 123–5, 136
-*Qánún* (newspaper), 468–9
Qánúní ("the Law-giver," title of Sulṭán Sulaymán I), 81
Qáqázán (? Qázán), 475, 479
Qará-bagh, 49, 346
Qaramán (Caramania), 48
Qâren, 199, 209 and note
Qárún (Corah, amongst the Muslims proverbial for his wealth, like Croesus in Europe), 199, 207, 209, 217
Qárs, 104
Qarshí, Massacre of Sunnís at — in A.D. 1512, 63, 83, 94, 227
Qárúyál (or Quryál, or Qúriyán), 47
Qásim (son of the Prophet Muḥammad, died in infancy), 391; — Beg ibn Jahángír Beg ibn 'Alí Beg (ruler of Diyár Bakr about A.D. 1500), 55; Mawláná — (poet, *circâ* A.D. 1554), 169–170
Abu'l-Qásim Ḥamza (son of the seventh Imám Músà Káẓim, and ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 33 n.; — Findariskí (xvi–xvii), 250, 257–8, 408, 435; Mírzá — *Qá'im-*

maqdm (*q.v.*), 147, 311-316, 484 n.; — (poet of Shíráz, xix), 225 n.
Qásimí (poet to Sháh Isma'íl, xvi), 83, 229 n.
Qásimu'l-Anwár (poet, xiv-xv), 44
Qásimu'l-Arzáq ("the Assigner of Daily Bread," 'Alí so called), 385
Qásiṭín ("Wrong-doers," Mu'áwiya and the Umayyads so called), 392
Qaṣr-i-Zar (in Fárs), 59
Qaṣṣábiyya (by the poet Yaghmá), 339
Qaṭrán (poet, xi), 299
Qawá'idu'l-Islám (Shí'a theological work by -Ḥillí), 54 and note
Qáyin (in Khurásán), 427
Qayṣar-i-Rúm, 80 n.
Qayṣariyya (Caesarea), 71
Qazwín, 4, 10 n., 26, 85, 90, 97, 98, 100, 104, 105, 109, 110, 129, 130, 131, 135, 170–172 (Ḥayratí's satire on the people of —), 223, 264, 282 n., 345
-Qazwíní, Zakariyyá b. Muḥammad b. Maḥmúd (geographer, xiii), 397 n., 448
-Qifṭí (author of the *Ta'ríkhu'l-Ḥukamá*, xiii), 447
Qipcháq, Dasht-i- —, 45
Qiṣaṣu'l-'Ulamá (Biographies of Shí'a doctors, by Muḥammad b. Sulaymán of Tanukábun, A.D. 1873), 120, 354-5, 356, 358, 360 n., 361, 368 n., 369 n., 370 n., 372, 373, 376, 377, 378 n., 379 n., 404–9, 416, 426, 427 n., 428, 429, 432, 434, 435, 449
Qishrí (formalist, externalist), 376, 402
Qiwámu'd-Dín Núr-bakhshí (A.D. 1519), 231 and note
Qiyás (analogy), 374
Qizil-básh (also called *Qizil-burk* and *Surkh-sar*, "Red-heads"), 12, 13, 14, 48 (why so called), 68–9, 74, 76, 80 n. (*Qizil-burk*), 93, 102, 104, 106, 236 and note
Qoja Beg Günduzlu (one of the assassins of Nádir Sháh), 137 n.
Qubád (Sásánian king), 464
Qúchán, 455
Qudsí (poet of Mashhad, d. A.D. 1646), 251, 258
-Quds wa'l-Khalíl (Jerusalem and Hebron), 46 *ad calc.*
Quellenkunde der Persischen Medizin (by Dr A. Fonahn), 439
Querry, M. Amédée —, 377, 378
"Questioning of the Tomb" (*Su'ál-i-Qabr*), 396
Quhrúd, 109
"Quintet," 229. See *Khamsa*
Qum, 30, 56, 100, 130, 148, 149, 237, 253, 259, 283, 309, 419
-*Qur'án*, 16, 36, 39, 110, 114, 137, 209 n., 210, 212 n., 214, 215 n., 217 n., 243, 254 n., 330 n., 361, 374, 381, 382, 388–390, 401, 415, 418, 430, 432
Qúríyán (Qaruyál, or Quryál), 47
Qurratu'l-'Ayn (the Bábí heroine, put to death in A.D. 1852), 154, 197, 421
Ibn Qutayba, 485 n.
Quṭbu'd-Dín Aḥmad (great-grandfather of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín), 32 n., 36–7

Rabino, H. L. —, 30
Rabí'u'l-Asbí' (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, d. A.D. 1700), 417
Ráfiḍí, 234. See *Shí'a*
Raffiq, Mullá Ḥusayn — (poet, xviii), 282
Rafsinjan, 126
Ráḥatu's-Sudúr (history of the Saljúqs by -Ráwandi), 18 n., 56 n., 222 and note
-Raḥím, -Malik — (Buwayhid, xi), 54 n.
Ráh-i-Naw (newspaper), 484
Raj'at ("Return," doctrine of —), 197, 398–400
Rangín (in Gílán), 36
Raphaël du Mans, Père — (xvii), 9, 20, 115, 116
Ráqim (poet, xvii), 267
Rashaḥát-i-Saḥáb (by Saḥáb of Iṣfahán, d. A.D. 1807), 305
Rashídu'd-Dín Faḍlu'lláh (xiv), 19, 33
Rasht, 50, 59, 96, 135, 184, 186, 222, 410, 489
Rasmí (poet, xvi), 166
Rastákhíz ("the Resurrection," newspaper), 484 n.
-Ráwandí, Abú Bakr Najmu'd-Dín Muḥammad — (author of the *Ráḥatu's-Sudúr*, xii-xiii), 222
Rawḍa-khwán, 29, 181 (why so called); 182–194
Rawḍátu'l-Jannát (Biographies of eminent Muslims, compiled in A.D. 1870), 251, 257, 356–7, 358,

359, 408–411 *passim*, 416, 417, 421–2, 426–432 *passim*, 435, 446, 448
Rawḍatu's-Ṣafá (vols. i–vii by Mírkhwánd, xv; supplementary vols. viii–x by Riḍá-qulí Khán *Hidáyat*, xix), 5, 7, 8, 102, 250–251, 304, 317, 413, 445
Rawḍatu'sh-Shuhadá ("Garden of the Martyrs," by Ḥusayn Wa'iẓ-i-Káshifí, xv), 29, 181, 237
Ray, 232, 233, 438
Rayḥání, Yaḥyá Khán — (contemporary poet), 490
-Rází (Abú Bakr Muḥammad b. Zakariyyá, physician, x), 425, 438–9, 449
Recording Angels (named *Sá'iq* and *Shahíd*), 398, 400
"Red-heads." See *Qizil-básh*
Redhouse, Sir James —, 35
"*Reign of Terror at Tabríz*" (by E. G. Browne), 371 n.
Religions et Philosophies dans l'Asie Centrale (by the Comte de Gobineau). See *Gobineau*
Religious Attitude and Life in Islam (by D. B. Macdonald), 40
Renaissance, 438
Resurrection (*Qiyámat*), 382, 390, 399–401, 422
"Return" (*Raj'at*, *q.v.*), 419
Revolution of 1906 in Persia, 121, 122, 155–8, 162, 302, 303, 340, 344, 345, 467; *Persian Revolution of* 1905–1909 (by E. G. Browne, 1910), 155, 302, 468 n.
Rhodes, 81
Riḍá-qulí (son of Nádir Sháh, xviii), 135, 136, 138; — Khán, poetically surnamed *Hidáyat*, *q.v.* (born A.D. 1800, died 1872), 5, 7, 25, 26, 28, 102, 164 n., 172, 224, 230, 233, 234, 235, 245, 250, 251, 256, 258, 264, 265, 298, 299, 304, 305, 307, 309, 311, 316, 317, 319, 326, 344, 413, 445. See also *Majma'u'l-Fuṣaḥá*, *Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín*, etc.
Riḍá-yi-'Abbásí (portrait-painter, xvii), 25, 484; Shaykh — yi-Kurd (poet, date unknown), 29; Sayyid — b. Mahdí, 370; — of Kirmán (assassin of Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh, A.D. 1896), 155; — Khán (Commander-in-chief and practically Dictator of Persia, A.D. 1923–4), 15; — Khán, Mírzá —. See *Arfa'u'd-Dawla*
Rieu, Dr Charles — (author of the British Museum Catalogues of Arabic, Persian and Turkish MSS.), 35 n., 54 n., 57 n., 66 n., 83 n., 229 n., 231 n., 233, 235 n., 237 n., 238, 241 n., 243 n., 251, 252, 253, 256, 257, 264, 265, 278 n., 281 n., 298, 408 n., 420 n., 447 n., 453
Rijálu'l-Ghayb ("Men of the Unseen World"), 472 and note
Risála-i-Khayrátiyya (by Áqá Muḥammad 'Alí Bihbihání), 420
Riyáḍát (mortification, discipline), 382
Riyáḍiyyát (the exact or mathematical sciences), 437
Riyáḍu'l-'Árifín (by Riḍá-qulí Khán, xix), 230, 251, 265, 304, 305, 309 n., 319, 326 n., 436, 437
Riyáḍu'sh-Shu'ará (by Wálih, A.D. 1748), 229
Roe, Richard —, 380
Rome, 5, 6; Church of —, 359
Rosen, Dr F. —, 463
Rosenzweig-Schwannau (ed. of Ḥáfiẓ), 216 n.
Ross, Col. Sir E. —, 462 n.
Ross, Sir E. Denison —, 15 n., 50 n., 64 n., 358, 444
Roxburgh Club, 105 n.
Rúdagí, or Rúdakí (poet, x), 221, 299
Rúḥí, Ḥájji Shaykh Aḥmad — of Kirmán (put to death in A.D. 1896), 468
Rukná (poet, xvii), 268
Ruknu'd-Dín Mas'úd of Kázarún (burned to death about A.D. 1574), 97
Rúm, 166–7. See *Asia Minor*
Rumelia, 76
Rúmlú, 14, 52 n.
Ruqayya (daughter of the Prophet Muḥammad), 392
Rús-i-Manḥús (the "sinister Russians"), 316
Russia, 4, 5, 114, 128, 130, 131, 134, 146, 147, 155, 156, 157, 312–316, 371, 374–5, 476, 478, 480–483, 489; Russian wife of Sultán Sulaymán, 89–90; — Mission massacred at Ṭihrán in A.D. 1829, 146, 312–316; — cruelties in Tabríz, 371; — general's death compassed by Persian theologian, 374–5; — aggression in Persia, poem on —, 348

Rustam Áq-qoyúnlú, grandson of Úzún Ḥasan (xv), 49, 50, 58 n.; — Beg the Kurd, Ḥájjí — (A.D. 1502), 68-69; — Rúz-afzún (ruler of Mázandarán, A.D. 1510), 65; Sháh — of Luristán (A.D. 1508), 59, 76; — Khán (general, A.D. 1713), 124; — *u's-Siddát* (Sayyid Qanbar, satirized by Yaghmá), 339; *Kamán-i-* — (the Rainbow), 414
Rúzbihání, Ṣabrí — (poet at court of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110
Rúz-i-Qatl (the "Day of Slaughter," *i.e.* the *'Áshúrá* or 10th of Muḥarram), 29, 188. See also *Múḥarram*, *Passion Play*, *Ta'ziya*, etc.
Rúznáma-i-Írán-i-Sulṭání (newspaper), 346, 347

Ṣabá (Fath-'Alí Khán of Káshán, poet, d. A.D. 1822), 307 n., 309-310
Sabá (Sheba), 190, 192
Ṣabáḥí (Ḥájji Sulaymán, poet of Káshan, d. A.D. 1791), 142, 178, 282, 309
Ṣabrí Rúzbihání (poet of the court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Sabzawár, 105, 136, 326, 436-7, 456
Ibn Sa'd ('Umar — b. Abí Waqqáṣ, vii), 178, 180, 188
Sa'dí (of Shíráz, xiii), 37, 42, 246, 299, 348, 490
Ṣádiq Beg (artist at the court of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110; — Khán (brother of Karím Khán-i-Zand, killed in A.D. 1782), 140, 142; — Khán-i-Qá'im-maqámí (d. A.D. 1917), 346-9. See *Adíbu'l-Mamálik*
Ṣadr, Office of —, 59, 427
Ṣadrá, Mullá — of Shíráz (philosopher, d. A.D. 1640), 257, 376, 407, 408, 411, 426, 427, 428-432, 434-7
Ṣadru'd-Dín, Shaykh — (son of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, whom he succeeded in A.D. 1334 and died in A.D. 1392), 19, 34, 35, 39, 42-46; — Muḥammad (calligraphist at the court of Sháh 'Abbás I), 110. See also under *Ṣadrá* above
Sa'du'd-Dín-Taftázání, 63; — (Turkish historian), 72; — 'Ináyatu'lláh Khúzání, Amír — (burned to death, xvi), 97
Ṣadúq, title of *Ibn Bábawayhi*, *q.v.*
Ṣafá, 225, 307 n., an error for *Ṣabá*, *q.v.*
Ṣafá'í, Mullá Aḥmad-i-Niráqí (d. A.D. 1828), 411; Mírzá Aḥmad —, son of the poet Yaghmá, 338
Safar-náma (of Náṣir i-Khusraw, xi), 412
Safárat-náma-i-Khwárazm (Riḍá-qulí Khán, A.D. 1855), 304
Ṣafawí Dynasty (A.D. 1502-1736), 1-133 *passim*, 168, 372, 487; historical importance of the —, 3-4; historical records of the —, 4-11; characteristics of the —, 11 *et seqq.*; poetry under —, 26-8, 221, 250, 354; rise of the —, 32-83; culmination and decline of the —, 84-120; — greatly venerated by their subjects, 86; Shí'a faith promoted by —, 353-4
Ṣafí I, Sháh — (A.D. 1629-1642), 111, 231; — II (subsequently called Sulaymán I, A.D. 1666-1694), 111
Ṣáfí (Mírzá Ja'far, poet, of Iṣfahán, xviii), 282
Safínatu'l-Maḥmúd (anthology of Fath-'Alí Sháh's poets, xix), 298
Ṣafí-qulí Khán (Persian general, xviii), 125
Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, Shaykh Abu'l-Fatḥ Isḥáq — (born A.D. 1252, died 1334), 4, 19, 32-44, 46 n., 88, 115; pedigree, 32-3 *ad calc.*, 87 n., 444
Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá (biography of the above-mentioned Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín), 4, 19, 32 n., 38-42, 444
Ságharchí, Kamálu'd-Dín — (xvi), 65-6
Saḥábí (poet, of Astarábád, d. A.D. 1601), 251
Ṣaḥá'ifu'l-Akhbár (Turkish version of Munajjím-báshí's history), 106 n.
Ṣahbá, Áqá Taqí — (poet, of Qum, xviii), 283
Ṣáḥib-Díwán (A.D. 1888), 221
Ṣáḥib-Qirán, 108
Ṣáḥilán (near Tabríz), 76
Sahl 'Alí, Imám-záda — (near Hamadán), 57
Sahwu'l-Lisán ("Lapsus Linguæ," Sharíf's compilation of Lisání's poems so called), 236
Ṣá'ib (poet of Tabriz, d. A.D. 1670), 25, 163-5, 242, 250, 251, 258-261, 265-276, 299

Sa'íd ('Umar b. Sa'd, *q.v.*, appears to be intended), 170, 171
Abú Sa'íd (Tímúrid, A.D., 1452–1467), 100
Sá'iq (Recording Angel), 400
Sa'ír (the second of the Seven Hells), 400–401
Sajjád (title of the Fourth Imám 'Alí b. -Ḥusayn, better known as *Zaynu'l-'Ábidín*, *q.v.*), 179, 181 and note, 393
Sakína (daughter of the Imám Ḥusayn, vii), 179, 181, 393
Sakísá (minstrel of Khusraw Parwíz), 221
Sakkákí (earlier pen-name of *Fighání*, *q.v.*), 230 n.
Ṣaláḥu'd-Dín Rashíd b. Muḥammad Ḥáfiẓ (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 32 n., 36–7
Saláma, 393. See *Shahrbánú*
Sale's *Qur'án*, 209 n.
Ṣáliḥ (Prophet sent to ancient Arabs), 388; — b. Quṭbu'd-Dín Aḥmad (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 32 n.; — Beg (assassin of Nádir Sháh), 137–8
Salím I (Ottoman Sulṭán, A.D. 1512–1520), 9, 11–14, 20, 23–4, 65 n., 67, 71 n., 72, 73–80, 93; — II (Ottoman Sultán, called "the Sot," A.D. 1566–1574), 90–92; — (poet of Ṭihrán, d. A.D. 1647), 251, 258
Saljúq Dynasty, 3, 18, 54, 222
Salmán-i-Asadí (Persian student), 346 n.
Salmás, 106
Sál-náma (Year Book), 456
Salsabíl (river in Paradise), 175, 177, 228 n., 229
Sám Mírzá (son of Sháh Isma'íl I, xvi), 25 n., 81, 88, 89, 231 n., 237, 238, 447; — (grandson of Sháh 'Abbás the Great, who succeeded him in A.D. 1629 under the title of *Sháh Ṣafí I*, *q.v.*), 111
Sámánid Dynasty, 221
Samarqand, 64, 348
Sámarrá, 366
Samnán, 55, 337, 347, 456
Saná'í (poet, xii), 220, 299, 357, 449
Ṣan'atí-záda of Kirmán (contemporary writer), 466
Sanglákh, Mírzá-yi- —, 457
Ṣaní'u'd-Dawla (early title of Muḥammad Ḥasan Khán, better known by his later title of *I'timádu's-Salṭana*, *q.v.*), 453–6
Sanskrit, 244
Saqar (the third of the Seven Hells), 400–401
Sáqí-náma (of Umídí, xvi), 231; — (of Ẓuhúrí, xvii), 253
Sar-afráz Khán, Nawwáb — (xviii), 283
Sarbáz (Isma'íl Khán, poet), 188
Sardáriyya (of Yaghmá), 337, 338
Sárí (in Mázandarán), 65
Ṣári 'Abdu'lláh Efendi (d. A.D. 1668), 9 n.
Sar-máya-i-Ímán (by 'Abdu'r-Razzáq-i-Láhijí), 408, 435
Sásánian Dynasty (iii–vii), 3, 4, 18, 29, 32, 52, 60, 126, 209 n., 221, 382 n., 393, 466
Sawáti'u'l-Islám (Faydí's Commentary on the *Qur'án*), 244 n.
Sayyida (wife of Sháh Khudá-banda, xvi), 103
Sayyidu'sh-Shuhadá ("the Chief of Martyrs," *i.e.* the *Imám Ḥusayn*, *q.v.*), 393
"Schach Culi," 70. See *Shah-quli*
Schefer, M. Charles —, 9, 10, 20 n., 115, 116, 304, 457
Schemann, Ludwig —, 153 *ad calc.*
Schindler, Sir Albert Houtum- —, 5, 450 n. See also *Houtum-Schindler*
Schultz, Dr Walter —, 467 n.
Scotland, 5
Scan Bhean Bhochd, 223
Don Sebastian of Portugal (xvi), 92
"Sechaidar," 47. See *Ḥaydar, Shaykh* —
Sell, E. —, 462 n.
Seniory of Venice, 5
Seth (Prophet), 388
"Seven," "Sect of the —" (*Sab'iyya*), 17. See *Isma'ílís*
"Seven Martyrs" of the Bábís (*Shuhadá-i-Sab'a*), 196
"Seventy-two Sects" (*Haftád u du Millat*), 15
Shafí'á Athar (poet of Shíráz, xviii), 282 n.
Shafí'í (poet), 194
-*Shifá*, 362
Sháh 'Abdu'l-Aẓím, Shrine of —, 151, 155
Shahíd-*i-awwal* ("the First Martyr,"

put to death in A.D. 1384), 406; —*-i-thánt* ("the Second Martyr"), 379. 427; —*-i-thálith* ("the Third Martyr," assassinated by a Bábí in A.D. 1847), 411, 421; but on p. 447 this title is given to Sayyid Núru'lláh of Shúshtar, *q.v.*, who was put to death by Jahángír in A.D. 1610
"*Sháh-i-Dín-panáh*" (Ṭahmásp so entitled), 84
Shahinsháh-náma (by Ṣabá, xix), 309
Sháh Jahán (A.D. 1628–1659), 259, 260, 408
Sháh-náma (of Firdawsí, xi), 13, 14 n., 228 n., 229, 309, 339, 487; — *khwáns* (rhapsodists), 110; —*-i-Isma'íl* (by Hátifí, A.D. 1512), 83, 229
Sháh-qulí (xvi), 69, 70, 71, 75
Shahr-angíz and *Shahr-ashúb* (a kind of topical ballad), 237, 238
Shahr-ashúb (name of a Shí'a divine), 355
Shahrbánú (daughter of Yazdigird and wife of the Imám Ḥusayn, vii), 393
Shahr-i-Bábak, 149
Shahristání (author of the *Kitábu'l-Milal*, xii), 15 n., 16–17, 449
Sháhrúd, 104, 456
Sháhrukh (Timúrid, xv), 44; — Shírwánsháh (killed by Sháh Ṭahmásp in A.D. 1540), 96; — Dhu'l-Qadar (A.D. 1508), 414; — (grandson of Nádir Sháh, xviii), 138, 140
Shah-seven ("King-lovers," a coalition of tribes created by Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 106, 119
Sháh Shujá' (infant son of Sháh Isma'íl II killed by his successor, A.D. 1577), 101
Shahsuwár-i-Chahár-tárí (musician at the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110
Sháh u Darwish or *Sháh u Gadá* ("the King and the Beggar" by Hiláli, xvi), 234
Shakí, 104
Shakíbí (poet, xvi), 167
Shalláq-i-Sipáhí (chronogram yielding A.H. 909 = A.D. 1503–4), 56
Shamákhí, 104, 125, 134, 450
Shamási (near Ardabíl), 50
Shamkhál Khán (put to death by Sháh Khudá-banda about A.D. 1577), 101
Shámlú (one of the Seven Tribes), 14, 52 n.
Shams-i-Shupurghán'í (musician at court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110
Shams-i-Tabríz (xiii), 37
Shamsu'd-Dín Barníqí of Ardabíl, 44; — Kuhistání (poet, xvi), 235
Shamsu'l-Ma'árif (by the Shaykh al Búní), 442
Shamsu'sh-Shu'ará, 325. See *Surúsh*
Shápúr (poet, xvii), 267
Sharafsháh (ancestor of the Ṣafawís), 32 n.
Sharafu'd-Dín Ḥasan, 256. See *Shifá'í*
Sharáyi'u'l-Islám (by Najmu'd-Dín-Hilli, xiii), 54 n., 378, 405–6
Sharḥu'*l-Fawá'id* and — *'s-Ziyárati-'l-Káhira* (by Shaykh Aḥmad-Aḥsá'í, xviii–xix), 411; — *s-Ṣadr* (by Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, A.D. 1654), 432 and note
Sharíf, Sayyid-i- — (killed at Chálditán, A.D. 1514), 59, 76; — of Tabríz (compiler of Lisání's poems, xvi), 236
Sharmí (poet of Qazwín at court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Shawáhidu'r-Rubúbiyya (by Mullá Ṣadrá, xviii), 430, 437
Shawkat (poet of Bukhárá, d. 1695), 250, 258, 265, 269, 282 n., 299
Shawqí (poet, xviii), 267
Shaybak, 63, 74. See *Shaybání*
Shaybání, or Shaybak, Muḥammad Khán — Uzbek (killed in battle with Sháh Isma'íl at Ṭáhirábád in A.D. 1510), 63, 64–6, 74, 78 and note, 82, 94; —, Abu'n-Naṣr Fatḥu'lláh Khán — of Káshán (poet, xix), 326, 344
Shaykh Sháh (Shaykh Ibráhím, grandson of Ṣadru'd-Dín and great-grandfather of Sháh Isma'íl I, d. A.D. 1447), 47; — son of Farrukh Yasár Shírwánsháh, 60, 96
Shaykhí sect, 150, 355, 397 n., 399 n., 402–3, 407, 408, 410–411, 421, 422, 429, 430
Shaykhu'r-Ra'ís. See *Avicenna* and *Abu'l-Ḥasan Mírzá*
Shaykhu't-Tá'ifa. See *-Ṭúsí*
Shaypúrghú'í (trumpeter), 110 and note

Shaytán-qulí, 70. See *Sháh-qulí*
Abú Sha'yún, 208, 218
Sheba (Sabá), 190, 192
Sherley brothers (Sir Anthony and Sir Robert, xvi–xvii), 5, 6, 10, 105
Sherlock Holmes, 466–7
Shí'a (*Ithná-'ashariyya*, "Sect of the Twelve"), 16–19, 20, 22, 23, 26, 32, 43, 46, 52–4, 56, 58, 64, 65, 66, 70–73, 83, 92, 94–5, 122, 132, 135, 230, 234, 235, 264, 353–404, 409, 415–423, 424; the doctrine of the Perfect —, 150. See also *Ghulát*
Shiblí (Súfí saint), 357; — Nu'mání (Indian scholar, author of the *Shi'ru'l-'Ajam*, *q.v.*), 164, 165, 229, 241, 242, 244, 246, 248, 250, 251, 252, 254, 258, 259, 260, 262, 265, 266 n., 268, 269, 299
Shifá (of Avicenna), 430
Shifá'í (Sharafu'd-Dín Ḥasan, physician and poet, d. A.D. 1627), 250, 256, 268
Shihábu'd-Dín Suhrawardí, Shaykh —, 88; — *-Maqtúl*, 430
Shílún (? Solon), 201, 212 and note
Shimr, 178, 180
Shíráz, 42, 55, 56, 76, 100, 104, 125, 130, 133, 140, 141, 143 n., 151, 157, 184, 186, 221, 222, 225, 230, 233, 235, 241, 245, 246, 258, 279, 282 n., 283, 300, 302, 305, 316, 317, 322, 326, 328, 360, 363, 365, 407, 420, 429, 434, 451, 489
Shírín u Khusraw (by Hátifí, d. A.D. 1520–1), 229
Shirley. See *Sherley*, above
Shír Ṣárim (Kurdish chief, killed in battle in A.D. 1510), 58
Shi'ru'l-'Ajam ("Poetry of the Persians," by Shiblí Nu'mání), 164, 165, 166 n., 229, 241, 244, 246, 250, 251, 258, 259, 265 n., 266 n., 299 n.
Shír u Shakkar (by Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín-'Ámilí, xvi–xvii), 253, 428
Shírwán, 22, 52, 60, 82, 106, 134, 135, 137, 450
Shírwánsháh, 41, 47, 48, 52, 96
Shu'ayb (Jethro), 388
Shujá'u's-Salṭana, Ḥasan 'Alí Mírzá —, 328
Shu'la (poet of Iṣfahán, xviii), 282
Shurúr, Battle of — (A.D. 1501), 52, 82
Shúshtar, 59, 184, 186, 279, 356, 366, 447
Sidratu'l-Muntahá ("Lote-tree of the Limit"), 401
Si-dih (near Iṣfahán), 198, 325
Ṣifát (Attributes of God), 382–6
Ṣifátu'l-'Áshiqín (by Hiláli, d. A.D. 1528), 234
Sikandar or Iskandar, *Alexander the Great*, *q.v.*, 13–14; — *náma* (of Nizámí of Ganja, xii), 229
Silsilatu'n-Nasab-i-Ṣafawiyya, 4, 5, 13 n., 20, 32 n., 35, 36, 37, 40, 42, 44, 45, 46
Similitudes, World of — (*'Álam-i-Mithál*), 397
Simon, Dr Max —, 425
Simon Peter, 207, 218
Símurgh (mythical bird), 263 n.
Ibn Síná. See *Avicenna*
Sinai, Mount — (*Jabal Túr*), 292
Sinán Páshá Chigála-záda ("Cicala," A.D. 1605), 106
Sion (*Ṣayyún*), 204, 214
Sipihr (Mírzá Muḥammad Taqí of Káshán, *Lisánu'l-Mulk*, *q.v.*, xix), 326, 344, 413
Ṣirát, Bridge of —, 401; — *-Mustaqím* (by Mír Dámád), 407
Sírján, 149
Sirru'lláh ("God's Secret"), 217 n. See *'Abbás Efendí*, *'Abdu'l-Bahá*
Sistán, 125
Síwás, 71, 76, 106 n.
Siyáḥat-náma-i-Ibráhím Beg (about A.D. 1900), 463–4, 467–8
Siyámak ("*Siyáh-marg*") son of Shírwánshah, 41
Siyásat-náma (of the *Nizámu'l-Mulk*, xi), 18 n., 412
Siyáwushání, Mawláná Isḥáq — (calligraphist at the court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Sízdah band (of Shifá'í, d. A.D. 1627), 256
Smart, W. A. — (Consul), 196, 302
Smith, Vincent —, 249, 445 n.
Socrates (*Suqráṭ*), 201, 212
Soláq-záda (Turkish historian), 72
Solomon (Sulaymán), 190, 192, 310 n.; a legend of —, 111
Solon (*Shílún*), 212
"Sophi," "the Great —," 20, 21, 23, 61, 112; — sect, 48, 50. See *Súfí*

Spain, Spanish, 4, 5, 6, 7, 10, 101 n. See also *Don Juan di Persia*
Spirit (*Rúḥ*), Five grades of —, 389
Sprenger, Dr A. —, 165, 234, 281 n., 355
Squeezing of the Tomb, 396–7
Stewart, Major Charles —, 91
le Strange, Guy —, 360 n., 462
Strettell, Alma — ("Twelve Persian Folk-Songs"), 222
Style, good and bad —, 412–415
Su'dl u Jawáb (by Ḥájji Sayyid Muḥammad Báqir, *circa* A.D. 1820), 378–381
Ṣubúḥ (poet of Iṣfahán, xviii), 282
"Suffavean," 48, 51. See *Ṣafawís*
Ṣúfí-kush ("the Ṣúfí-slayer," title given to Áqá Muḥammad 'Alí, xviii), 368
Ṣúfís, 19–21, 26–7, 47, 50–51, 56, 120, 220–221, 254 n., 354, 376, 383, 403–4, 409, 411, 420–1, 422, 452
Abú Sufyán (father of Mu'áwiya, the first Umayyad Caliph, vii), 180 n.
Sufyání (appearance with Antichrist in the last days), 399
Ṣuḥuf (Book revealed to Abraham), 388
Sulaymán, Sulṭán — I (A.D. 1520–1566), 9, 11, 13 n., 67, 76, 80, 81, 87, 89, 92, 93, 236; — Mírzá (murdered by his brother Sháh Isma'íl II in A.D. 1577), 98; — Páshá (great-grandson of the Tímúrid Abú Sa'íd, xvi), 100; Sháh — I -i-Ṣafawí (originally named Ṣafí, A.D. 1669–1694), 111, 112–113, 439; Sháh — II (xviii), 138, 284; — Efendi (Turkish envoy to Persia, A.D. 1728), 133; — *Ṣabáḥí* (poet of Káshán, *circa* A.D. 1791) *q.v.*; — Khán (prominent Bábí put to death in A.D. 1852), 196, 213 n.; — *u Bilqís* (poem by Faydí, xvi), 244
Sulaymániyya, 27
Sulṭániyya, 88
Sulṭánu'l-Fuqará (poet at the court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Sulṭánum Khánum (sister of Sháh Ṭahmásp I, xvi), 92
Sunduq (Turkmán envoy to Constantinople, A.D. 1553), 94
Sunnís, 16–19, 22, 43–4, 53, 55, 57, 63–4, 66, 74, 78, 93–5, 97, 123, 132, 137, 170–2, 234, 353–4, 363, 391, 402, 420, 447
Suqúṭu'l-'Iḥtidát (Antinomianism, neglect of religious duties), 382
Ṣúr-i-Isráfíl (newspaper), 302, 345, 469–482
Surkh-sar ("Red-head"). See *Qizil-básh*
Sursurak ("the Slide"), 221, 479
Surúsh (Angel), 294–5; — (poet of Iṣfahán, d. A.D. 1868), 225, 307 n., 325
Súzaní (poet, xii), 348
Sykes, Sir Percy Molesworth —, 92 n., 144 n., 154, 156
Syria, Syrians, 16, 36, 51, 77, 360, 388 (Prophets), 427, 428, 451

-Ṭabarí (Muḥammad b. Jarír —, historian, ix–x), 188, 217 n., 412, 443, 449, 485
Ṭabarsarán, 48
-Ṭabarsí, Shaykh —, 153, 197–8, 409
Ṭabíb, Sayyid 'Abdu'l-Báqí — (poet and physician to Nádir Sháh, xviii), 283
Tabkhí (poet of the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110
Tabríz, 21, 22, 23, 44, 45, 49, 52, 53, 61, 62, 71, 76, 77, 96, 104, 109, 130, 131, 134, 144 n., 151, 153, 155, 222, 230, 235, 236, 237, 265 n., 266, 346, 347, 360, 371, 380, 422, 454, 489, 490
Tadhkiratu'*l-Aḥwál* (by Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, A.D. 1741), 277–281; — *Ál-i-Dáwúd* (A.D. 1803), 444; — *Dawlatsháh* (xv), 447; — *Dil-gushá* (A.D. 1821), 304, 307, 309, 317, 328, 337; — *Mu'dṣirín* (by Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, A.D. 1752), 281; — *Muḥammad-Sháhí* (xviii–xix), 298
Tafrísh, 282
-Taftázání, Faridu'd-Dín Aḥmad — (put to death in A.D. 1510), 63, 69
Tafwíḍ, 386. See *Free Will* and *Fatalism*
Tahdhíb (of Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín -'Ámilí), 364; — *u'l-Aḥkám* (of -Túsí, xi), 359, 405
Ṭáhir (son of the Prophet Muḥammad), 391; — (poet of Qazwín, xviii), 282 *ad calc.*
Ṭáhir-ábád, Battle of — (A.D. 1510), 65

Ṭahmásp, Sháh — I (A.D. 1524–1576), 5, 9, 10 n., 19, 28, 34; 43, 50 n., 52, 57, 81, 84–98, 100–103, 106, 172, 238, 241, 406, 456; — b. Muḥammad Khudá-banda (*circâ* A.D. 1586), 101; Sháh — II (put to death by Nádir Sháh's son Riḍá-qulí in A.D. 1739), 129–136
Tajáribu's-Salaf (Persion version of the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí* made by Hindú-Sháh, *q.v.*, in A.D. 1324), 443
Táj-i-duwázdah tark (the scarlet cap with twelve gores worn by the *Qizil-básh*), 48
Táju'd-Dín Ibráhím. See *Záhid-i-Gílání, Shaykh —*
Takallú (one of the Seven Tribes), 52 n., 70 n.
Takfír (denunciation as an infidel), 372
Takya-i-Humáyún (the Royal Theatre, Ṭihrán), 194
Ṭalḥa (vii), 392
Ṭálib-i-Ámulí (poet, d. A.D. 1626), 164, 250, 253–256, 267
Abú Ṭálib (uncle of the Prophet Muḥammad), 392; — Mírzá (son of Sháh Muḥammad Khudá-banda, *circâ* A.D. 1586), 101–2; — Kalím (poet, d. A.D. 1651), 164, 166, 250, 258–263, 268; Shaykh — (father of Shaykh 'Alí Ḥazín, d. A.D. 1715), 278
Ṭáliqán (in Khurásán), 399
Abú Tammám (compiler of the *Ḥamása*, ix), 270
Tanásukh (Metempsychosis, *q.v.*), 382
Tanbúra'l (drummer), 110
Tanukábun, 355
Ṭáqdís (poem by Mullá Aḥmad-i-Niráqí, d. A.D. 1828), 411
Taqí, Mírzá — (founder of a College at Iṣfahán, xvii), 366; Áqá — (poet of Qum, called *Ṣahbá*, *q.v.*, xviii), 283; — Khán *Amír-i-Kabír* (put to death by Náṣiru'd-Dín Sháh on Jan. 9, 1852), 152–3, 316, 329, 333; — -záda, Sayyid Ḥasan — (contemporary), 29, 485
Taqiyyu'd-Dín Muḥammad (prime minister, xvii), 264
Ṭáqiya-i-Turkmání (the Turkmán cap), 48
Taqiyya (prudential concealment of opinions), 16 n., 17
Taqlíd (submission to ecclesiastical authority), 382
"Tarbiyat," Mírzá Muḥammad 'Alí Khán — (contemporary), 458, 467. See *Press and Poetry of Modern Persia*
Ta'ríkh-*i*-*'Álam-árá-yi*-*'Abbásí* (by Iskandar Munshí, A.D. 1616), 5, 6, 7, 8, 47, 48, 88, 99 n., 100, 101 n., 103 n., 105 n., 107–8, 172, 238, 256, 257, 427 n., 428, 444; — *i-ba'd-Nádiriyya* (xviii), 137 n., 445; — *i-Bídári yi-Íráníyán* (A.D. 1910), 413, 446; — *i-Guzída* (by Ḥamdu'lláh Mustawfí of Qazwín, xiv), 118 n.; — *u'l-Ḥukamá* (by -Qiftí, xiii), 447; — *i-Jadíd* (the "New History," xix), 197 n.; — *i-Jahán-gusháy* (by Juwayní, xiii), 443; — *i-Waṣṣáf*, 443; — *i-Zandiyya* (xviii), 140 n., 141 n., 142 n., 444–5
Tartars (more correctly *Tatárs*), 3. See *Mongols*
Tartufe (by Molière, translated into Turkish), 462
Ṭárum, 22, 51
Tashbíh (Anthropomorphism), 17, 382
Táshkand, 64
Tashríḥu'l-Aflák (by Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín-'Ámilí, xvii), 428
Taṣníf (ballad), 162, 221–3
Taṣwíru'l-Afkár (Press in Constantinople), 459
Tauris, 61. See *Tabríz*
Ṭá'úsí sect, 391
Tavernier, 10, 112
Tawakkul (or Túklí) b. Isma'íl, 34. See *Ibnu'l-Bazzáz* and *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*
Tawḥíd (Doctrine of the Divine Unity), 382–6
Ṭayfúr (poet at the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110
Ṭayyib (son of the Prophet Muḥammad), 391
Táza Bahár (newspaper), 345
Táza-gú'í (originality of expression), 163
Ta'ziya ("mourning"), 28, 29, 162, 172–194, 459
"Techellis" (Tekellú, Takallu), 70–72
"Teckel Schachoculu" (Tekellú Sháh-qulí), 70 and note
Teixeira, 10

Telegraph, Indo-European —, 154–5
Tennyson, 227
Thábit b. Qurra, 357
Thales, 201, 212
Thaná'í (poet, xvi), 242; — pen-name of Mírzá Abu'l-Qásim *Qá'im-maqámi*, *q.v.*
Theologians, Rise of the Great Shí'a —, 26–8, 83, 114
Thevenot, 10
Thibet, 128
Thiqatu'l-Islám (put to death by the Russians at Tabríz on Jan. 1, 1912), 371
Thurayyá ("Pleiades," newspaper), 469
Tiflís, 104, 109, 130, 134, 298, 462
Tigris (*Dijla*), 198, 321
Ṭihrán, 105, 137, 146, 149, 151, 155, 194, 198, 222, 231, 251, 258, 279, 301, 303, 312, 319, 328, 346–8, 368, 371, 374, 378, 441, 451, 454, 458, 463, 466, 489, 490
Times, 466
Tímúr, 9, 25, 46, 57, 348; House of —, 3, 25, 63–4, 77, 83, 229; — *-náma* (of Hátifí), 229
Ṭiqṭaqí, Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín Muḥammad — (author of the *Kitábu'l-Fakhrí*), 443
Tiyátr ("the Theatre," newspaper), 463
Tobacco concession (A.D. 1890–1), 156, 370–1
Tolerance, Growth of — in modern Persia, 420
"Tom, Dick and Harry" (English equivalent of *'Amr and Zayd*), 380 n.
Tomb, State of the Dead in the —, 396–7
Ṭopál 'Osmán (or *'Uthmán*, Turkish general, killed in October, 1733), 134
Transmigration of Souls (*tanásukh*), 382
Transoxiana (*Má wará'a'n-Nahr*), 4, 24, 63, 92, 125, 451
Travel, Five Advantages of —, 433
Traveller's Narrative (ed. and transl. by E. G. Browne), 150, 154 n., 294 n., 329, 381, 397 n., 399 n., 420 n., 422 n.
Trebizond, 47, 48
Trinity, The —, 293–4
Trois Ans à la Cour de Perse (by Dr Feuvrier), 371
Trois Comédies Persanes (ed. and transl. by C. Barbier de Meynard and S. Guyard), 462
Tsar of Russia, Murder of — by Bolsheviks, 371
Tsitsianoff (Russian general called by the Persians *Ishpukhtar*), 374, 375 and note
Túbá (tree in Paradise), 401
Ṭúfán (poet of Hazár-jarib, d. A.D. 1776), 283; — *u'l-Buká* (the "Deluge of Weeping"), 182
Ṭughril (the Saljúq, A.D. 1037–1063), 31, 54
Tuḥfatu'l-*Mú'minín* (on Materia Medica, composed by Muḥammad Mú'min-i-Ḥusayní in A.D. 1669), 439; — *'s-Zá'irín* (the "Pilgrims' Present," by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, d. A.D. 1700), 410, 417
Tuḥfa-i-Sámí (biographies of contemporary poets compiled by Sám Mírzá in A.D. 1550), 25, 88 n., 230, 237, 447
Túklí (or Tawakkul), 34 and note. See *Ibnu'l-Bazzáz* and *Ṣafwatu's-Ṣafá*
Túmán, value of the —, 410 n.
Tunis, 425
Abú Turáb, Mír — (Turkmán envoy to Constantinople, A.D. 1553), 94
Túrán, 13, 282
Turkey, 4, 10, 92, 130, 134, 135, 137, 146, 164, 241, 246, 250, 260, 265, 451, 453, 467; Turks, 10, 135, 140, 280, 427, 450; Turkish dynasties, 3; Turkish language, 14–15, 250, 375 n.; Turkish literary taste, 226, 227, 265, 300, 412, 443, 487; "Turkish Ṣúfís," 46. See also *Ottomans*
Turkí (poet of Shíráz), 182 n.
Turkistán, 451
Turkmán-cháy, Treaty of — (A.D. 1826), 146
Turkmáns, 47, 50, 93, 137, 230. See also *White Sheep*
Turner Macan (ed. of *Sháhnáma*), 228
Turshíz, 233, 234, 253
Ṭús, 94
-Ṭúsí, Muḥammad b. -Ḥasan b. 'Alí (d. A.D. 1067), 355, 358, 405
Ṭúṭí, Mír — (Turkmán envoy to Constantinople in A.D. 1553), 94

Túysirkán, 463
Twelve, Sect of the — (*Ithná-'ashariyya*), 17, 391. See *Shí'a*

'Ubayd-i-Zákání (poet and satirist, xiv), 241, 490; — u'lláh Khán-i-Uzbek (d. A.D. 1540), 43, 73–4, 77, 92, 94–5, 97, 227, 234–5
'Udhrí (poet, d. A.D. 1771), 283
'*Ulamá* (doctors of theology), 353 *et seqq*. See *Mujtahids*, *Mullás*
Ulfat (poet of Káshán, d. A.D. 1824), 225 n., 311
Úljaytú (Khudá-banda, Mongol ruler of Persia, xiv), 18, 413
Úlu'l-'Azm (the Five Great Prophets), 388
'Umar b. -Khaṭṭáb (the second Caliph, assassinated in A.D. 644), 17, 22, 29, 53, 54, 74, 80 n., 95 n., 104, 391, 392, 418; — b. Sa'd b. Abí Waqqáṣ (vii), 178, 180
Umayyad Caliphs, 16 n., 180 n., 392–4
Umíd (or Ummíd, poet of Kirmán-sháh, xix), 225 n.
Umídí (or Ummídí, poet of Ṭihrán, d. A.D. 1519 or 1524), 59, 230–233
Umm 'Abdi'lláh (wife and cousin of 'Alí Zaynu'l-'Ábidín, the fourth Imám), 393
Umm Kulthúm (daughter of 'Alí and Fáṭima), 392
Ummí ("illiterate," an attribute of the Prophet Muḥammad), 389
'Unṣurí (poet, xi), 299
Urdú (or Hindustání) language, 164, 300
'Urfí (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 1590), 25, 163, 164, 167 n., 241–9, 265, 268, 299
Ibn Abí Uṣaybi'a (author of the well-known biographies of Physicians, xiii), 447
"Ussein Alibeg" (A.D. 1599–1600), 5 n.
Ustá (fortress of —), 56
Ustájlú (one of the Seven Tribes), 52 n.
Uṣúlí school, 374, 376, 402
Uṣúlu'l-Káfí (Mullá Ṣadrá's commentary on the —), 430
'Uthmán (the third Caliph, assassinated in A.D. 656), 17, 22, 53, 54, 80 n., 94, 95, 104, 391, 392, 418; Qará — (of the *Áq-qoyúnlú* or "White Sheep" dynasty), 58 n.
'*Uyúnu'l-Anbá fí Ṭabaqáti'l Aṭibbá* (Lives of notable Physicians, by Ibn Abí Uṣaybi'a), 447
Uzbeks, 19, 43, 45, 60, 63–6, 73, 74 n., 77, 78, 83, 86–7, 92, 93, 94, 97, 103, 104, 105, 107, 109, 125, 136, 137, 227, 235
"Uzen Aly Bech" (A.D. 1599–1600), 5 n.
Úzún Ḥasan (Áq-qoyúnlú, A.D. 1466–1478), 47–49, 51, 58 n.

Valladolid, 21 n.
Valle, Pietro della —, 10
Vámbéry, Arminius —, 10 n.
Van, Lake —, 49, 106
Venice, Venetians, 5, 6, 10, 21, 22, 47, 48, 50 n., 51, 85–6
Verlaine, Paul —, 344
Verne, Jules —, 458
Victoria, Queen —, 322; "Victorian Era" of Persia (A.D. 1848–1896), 161
Vienna, 11
Virgin Mary, 398
Volga, 6

Wadí'at (Trusts, Law of —), 379–380
Wádí's-Salám (Terrestrial Paradise), 397
Wafayátu'l-A'yán (Biographies of Ibn Khallikán, xiii), 446
-*Wáfí* (by Mullá Muḥsin-i-Fayḍ, xvii), 359
Waḥdatu'l-Wujúd (Pantheism), 382, 383, 420
Waḥíd (title given by the Báb first to Sayyid Yaḥyá of Dáráb or Nayríz, and after his death to Mírzá Yaḥyá *Ṣubḥ-i-Azal*), 208, 218 and note; Muḥammad Ṭáhir — (poet, d. A.D. 1708), 258, 264–5
Waḥídí (poet of Qum, xvi), 237
Wahrmund, A. —, 462
Waḥshí (poet of Báfq, d. A.D. 1583), 110, 238–240, 241
Wajh-i-Dín (by Náṣir-i-Khusraw, xi), 490
Wajhu'lláh ("the Face of God," title given to 'Alí), 385
Wakíl (Regent), 139. See *Karím Khán-i-Zand*
Walí (poet of the court of Sháh 'Abbás), 110
Wálih (of Qum, poet at the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110; —

of Dághistán (author of the *Riyáḍu'sh-Shu'ará*), 229, 269
Wámiq u 'Adhrá (romantic poem), 283
Wáqifí sect, 391
Wasá'il (of Muḥammad b. Ḥasan b. Ḥurr-'Ámilí), 359
Wásiṭa ("Means" or "Channel of Grace"), 150
Waṣṣáf (historian of Mongols, xiv), 413
Waṭan, yakhod Silistra (Turkish patriotic play by Kemál Bey), 464
Watson, R. G. — (author of the *History of Persia*), 3, 139 n., 144 n., 145 n., 146 and note, 147, 148 n., 151 n., 152 n., 311 n., 312 n., 314 n., 316 n., 450 n.; Dr — (in *Sherlock Holmes*), 466
Ways, Mír — (Afghán), 118 n., 123–5
Wazír of Lankurán, 462, 463
Weil's *Geschichte der Chalifen*, 54 n.
Welsh song (*Mochyn du*), 223
"White Hand" (*Yad-i-Bayḍá*) of Moses, 254 n.
"White Sheep" (*Áq-qoyúnlú*) Turkmán dynasty (A.D. 1378–1502), 21, 47, 51, 54, 58 and note, 63, 67–9, 76, 230, 487
Who's Who, 149 n.
"Why-less" (*Bí-chún*), God so called, 212 and note, 218
Wiedemann, Dr Eilhard —, 425, 440
"Wiklís" (?Wilkins), Mr —, 452
Wine-drinking, 114
Wiqár (poet, son of Wiṣál, xix), 178, 225, 300, 307 n., 319
Wiṣál (poet of Shíráz, d. A.D. 1846), 168, 178, 225, 300, 307 n., 316–319
Wizwizak, King —, 475, 480
Woepcke, 425, 440
Wood-worm and Solomon, Legend of the —, 111
Wüstenfeld, 440 n., 448 n.

Xavier, 421

Yadu'lláh ("the Hand of God," 'Alí so called), 385
Yaghmá (poet of Jandaq, xix), 26, 168, 326, 337–344
Yaḥyà, Sayyid — of Dáráb (*Waḥíd-i-Awwal*), and Mírzá — *Ṣubḥ-i-Azal* (*Waḥíd-i-thání*), two notable followers of the Báb, 218 n.; Ḥájji Mírzá — Dawlatábádí (contemporary scholar), 225, 307; Mírzá — Khán *Kayḥání* (contemporary poet and editor of the *Gul-i-Zard*, or "Yellow Rose"), 490
Yájúj (Gog), 201, 211 and note
Yaman, 279, 451
Ya'qúb b. Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl (younger brother of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín, xiii), 37 n.; Sultán — Áq-qoyúnlú (son of Úzún Ḥasan, xv), 49, 58 n.; — Khán Dhu'l-Qadar (xvi), 104
-Ya'qúbí (historian, ix), 18, 36
Yáqút (geographer and biographer, xiii), 397 n., 454
Yár Aḥmad-i-Khúzání, Amír — (entitled *Najm-i-thání*, *q.v.*), 59
Yasá'úl, Darwísh Muḥammad — (A.D. 1510), 65
Yá-Sín, Ál-i- — (the Prophet's family so called), 343
Yazd, 55, 56, 118, 126, 130, 133, 148, 151, 153, 184–6, 195, 258, 325, 348, 368, 410, 427
Yazdání (son of the poet Wiṣál, xix), 300, 319
Yazdigird (last Sásánian king of Persia, vii), 18, 393
Yazdikhwást, 89
Yazíd b. Mu'áwiya (Umayyad Caliph, A.D. 680–683), 178, 180, 188, 485
Yazídí sect (so-called "Devil-worshippers"), 46, 58
Year amongst the Persians (by E. G. Browne), 109 n., 147 n., 156 n., 198 n., 213 n., 221 n., 300 n., 326 n., 335 n., 411 n., 436 n., 442 n., 457 n., 479 n.
"Young Persians," 15
Yúnus Páshá (executed A.D. 1517), 71 n.
Yúsuf (Joseph), 239–240; Romance of — and Zulaykhá (Potiphar's wife) by Lutf-'Alí Beg *Ádhar* (xviii), 284; Fakhru'd-Dín — b. Amínu'd-Dín Jibrá'íl (younger brother of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín), 37 n.; — b. Aḥmad b. Ibráhím-Baḥráni (d. A.D. 1773), 356, 449; — b. Yaḥyà-Yamaní-Ṣan'áni (author of the *Nasimatu's-Saḥar*), 358; — *the Saddler* (Persian comedy), 462
Yúsufí (heretic put to death by Sháh 'Abbás the Great in A.D. 1593), 8

Zabardast Khán (Afghán general, A.D. 1724), 130
Zádu'l-*Ma'ád* (by Mullá Muḥammad Báqir-i-Majlisí, xvii), 417; — *Musáfirín* (of Náṣir-i-Khusraw, xi), 490
Ẓafar Khán (patron of the poet Ṣá'ib, xvii), 266
Záhid-i-Gílání, Shaykh — (d. *circá* A.D. 1300), 38, 41–43, 115, 277
Ẓahír-i-Fáryábí (poet, xiii), 284
Ẓahíru'd-Dín b. Buzghúsh (xiii), 42
-Zahrá (*i.e.* Fáṭima, *q.v.*), 343
Zakariyyá b. Muḥammad b. Maḥmúd -Qazwíní (author of the *Átháru'l-Bilád* and *'Aja'ibu'l-Makhlúqát*, xiii), 448
-Zamakhsharí (philologist, xii), 317
Zand dynasty (A.D. 1750–1794), 121, 139–144, 148, 282, 283
Zanján, 153
-Zanjání (Arab grammarian), 361
"*Zan-qahba*," the poet Yaghmá, *q.v.*, so called, 337–9
Zarand, 151 n.
Zargar ("Goldsmith," pen-name of Áqá Muḥammad Ḥasan of Iṣfahán, d. A.D. 1853), 325
Zarrín-*Kuláh* ("Golden-cap"), Fírúzsháh — (ancestor of Shaykh Ṣafiyyu'd-Dín), 32 n., 36; — -*Táj* ("Golden-crown"). See *Qurratu'l-'Ayn*
Zayd b. 'Alí b. Ḥusayn (d. A.D. 712), 393; — b. Ḥasan, whom the Zaydí sect (pp. 17, 391) recognize as Imám, 391; 'Amr and Zayd (equivalent to John Doe and Richard Roe in Muslim law-books), 380 and note
Zaynab (daughter of the Prophet Muḥammad), 392; — (daughter of 'Alí and Fáṭima and sister of the Imám-Ḥusayn), 179, 181, 191, 193, 392; — Khánum (daughter of Sháh Isma'íl I, xvi), 81 n.
Zaynu'l-'Ábidín, 'Alí b. -Ḥusayn, the fourth Imám, *q.v.*, 393; — (artist at the court of Sháh 'Abbás the Great), 110; — (printer of Tabríz, *circá* A.D. 1820), 378; — of Shírwán (author of the *Bustánu's-Siyáḥat*, *circá* A.D. 1831), 450; — (praised by Qá'áni), 332; — of Marágha (author of the *Siyáḥat-náma-i-Ibráhím Beg*), 467
Zaynu'd-Dín, called "the second Martyr" (*Shahíd-i-thání*), 427
Zaytúní, Qáḍí Naṣru'lláh — (*circá* A.D. 1500), 54
Zeno (*Zínún*), 201, 212; Catarino — (Venetian traveller in Persia, xv), 10, 22, 60
Zíj-i-Ilkhání (by Naṣíru'd-Dín-Ṭúsí, xiii), 405
Ẓillu's-Sulṭán (son of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh, A.D. 1835), 146
Zínatu'l-Mádá'iḥ (Biography of Poets of Fatḥ-'Alí Sháh's reign), 298
Ziyá (Ḍiyá) Páshá (*circá* A.D. 1874), 164 n., 173, 228 n., 242
Ibn Ziyád (vii), 178, 180
Ziyárat-náma (of the Báb), 430 n.
Zoroastrians, 3, 80, 95, 122, 126, 130–1, 230 n., 258, 294 n., 384, 396 n., 401, 423, 452, 464, 479 n. See also *Gabr* (or *Guebre*), *Magian*
Zotenberg, H. —, 217 n.
Zubayr (vii), 392
Zubda (by Shaykh Bahá'u'd-Dín-'Ámilí, xvii), 428
Ẓuhúr (the "Manifestation" of the Báb on May 23, 1844), 150
Ẓuhúrí (poet of Turshíz, d. A.D. 1615), 234, 250, 253, 268
Zuláli (poet of Khwánsár, d. A.D. 1615), 251, 252
Zustände im heutigen Persien (by Dr Walter Schulz), 467 n.